



JOHN A. SEAVERNS



3 9090 013 418 187

Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Cummins School of Veterinary Medicine at
Tufts University
200 North Deerfield Street
North Deerfield, MA 01863



Wm Hughes
1900



THE COMPLEAT
HORSE - MAN,
AND
Expert Ferrier.

In Two Books.

The first, Shewing the best manner of Breeding good Horses, with their Choice, Nature, Riding and Dieting, as well for Running as Hunting, and how the Rider ought to behave himself in the Breaking and Riding of Colts; as also teaching the Groom and Keeper his true Office, touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge; and prescribing the best manner how a perfect Stable ought to be situated and made; not heretofore so fully described by any.

The second, Directing the most exact and approved manner how to know and cure all Maladies and Diseases in Horses: a work containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to Ferrier, or Horse-Leach: The Cures placed Alphabetically; with hundreds of Medicines never before Imprinted in any Author.

Published at the earnest request of sundry Noble and Worthy Gentlemen, for the general good and benefit of the Nation.

By *Thomas de Grey*, Esquire. 

The Fifth Edition corrected, with some Additions.

London, Printed by *J. R.* and *R. H.* for *Samuel Lowndes*, and are to be sold by most Bookfellers, 1684.





To the Right Honourable

J A M E S,

Marquess *HAMILTON*;

Earl of *Arran* and *Cambridge*, Baron of *Even*,
Aberbroth, and *Ennerdale*, Master of the Horse to his
Majesty, Knight of the Honorable Order of the
Garter, and one of his Majesties most
Honorable Privy Council.

My Lord,

TO have presented this peice of *Horse-man-*
ship to any other hand than Yours, had been
very improper as well in regard of the place
your Lordship bears, as of my respects to your noble
Person.

Here is a subject (My Lord) worthy of your
consideration, and the employments of your thoughts
even serious ; for in this most generous Crea-
A 3 ture,

The Epistle Dedicatory.

ture, next unto man, consisteth the pleasure, honour, and defence of a most flourishing Kingdom.

I have given part of my Youth to the investigation of this beautiful and useful Creature; I have searched many Nations for my better information; and albeit I have found some Climates more Fortunate than this of ours, in the production of a happy shape to this Creature, for the most part our Horses not being drawn out with such delicate Lineaments, nevertheless some of them I have (where care and diligence have been used in the Breed) of most absolute and perfect shape; and where as frequently, the Barbary Jemmet, Turkey, and Neapolitan Coursers, are cried up for their beauties, yet as in some shapes they exceed, so in some other they may be found defective.

But if we regard the spirit, Vigor and doing of a Horse, no Nation, or Soil, produceth a more Active, than this our Island of Great Britain, as hath been well experienced by many Noble and memorable Services.

Unto which if we add a due observation in our breed, both on the one side of the Stallion or Sire, and the Dam, our lost glory will be soon recovered.

But

The Epistle Dedicatory.

But since the laying aside of the great Saddle and Cannon, and neglect of the Horse of menage, since the applying our Breed only to Racing or (as I may better say) in furnishing our selves with Horses of speed to run away from our Enemy, the most Antient Honour of Horse-manship peculiar to this our Kingdom, and for which all other Nations highly esteemed us, is now almost vanished and lost; inso-much as were we pressed with thoughts of Defence (from which the most prudent and watchful Eye of Heaven guards us) we should be forced (I write this in blushes) to pull Horses from the Coach and Cart to fill up our Troop.

Let it therefore be Recorded (my Noble Lord) that whilst you were Master of the Horse to his Majesty, an exact observation was established throughout this whole Kingdom, for the due breeding of serviceable Horses: to the furtherance of which most Noble Design, if these my Observations shall any way conduce, I shall bless my Pen that it ever waded in such a subject; professing my self to owe unto my Country all I have, and to it my Labours, as a most loyal Subject and true Patriot, I most humbly offer.

And my good Lord, these Observations gathered in my Youth, I was advised by some Noble Friends (though

The Epistle Dedicatory.

though now old to publish for the general good of this our Kingdom : Otherwise for my own part I should have rather suppressed them, as not being now so fit a subject for me to treat off, but the publique good hath over-swayed me. Wherefore with these Oblations I conclude, Kissing your Lordships Hands, and shall ever profess my self,

Your Lordships

Most humble

Servant,

Thomas De La Grey.

To



To the Reader.

WHen I do consider (*benevolent Reader*) the inconvenience whereinto that Man is plunged, who brings himself upon the publick Stage of promulgating his Books in Print, be the Subject never so laudable, and the Author no less cautelous and sufficient, endeavouring with all diligence to prevent the brand of a black coal, nevertheless all industry applied, he shall not pass without obloquy and aspersion.

This very consideration hath so affrighted and deterred me, that albeit I have had many great motives exciting me to make a tender of the Love, Duty, and Service I bear to my Country; yet when I do contemplate the many censures I must undergo, I have been evermore disheartned as well from beginning, as going forward in this my desired purpose. Notwithstanding partly through the respect I bear to my Countries profit and honour, and partly by means of the importunity of many my right noble and generous friends, who have been eye-witnesses to sundry of my Cures, and those not a few uncouth and rare, I have adventured now in my declining days, to leave this Work as a Monument to ensuing times, no whit doubting, but that the judicious will friendly accept thereof; but as for the malevolent and ignorant, I am most confident that the quills they shall dart at me, cannot go as from a Porcupine, and therefore will do me the less hurt or damage.

I therefore am bold to put into thy hand this poor Work of mine, which I have digested in two Books: In the first I lay thee down rudiments, how thou mayst breed Horses to thy best advantage and liking, which al-

To the Reader.

ally observe these my grounds and principles, assure thy self thou wilt in short time aspire to that which will be thy honour and renown.

And to the end thou mayst the more perfectly and easily understand the full drift and sam of this my first Book, I will here give unto thee an Epitome of it in a few lines, which may do thee much pleasure in the perusal thereof.

In the Introduction I shew thee how needful a creature the Horse is beyond all others, and what admirable things Horses in former times have perpetrated and done; whereof I produce the instances of the famous acts of sundry brave and generous Horses, whose love to their Masters have been so great, as hardly to be credited, if ancient Histories, and Annals of good integrity had not engraven them in the memory of never dying posterity. We read of *Bucephalus*, what he did for the good, life, and safety of his Master; of the Horse of *Dionysus*, with what undaunted courage he comported himself in battel for the relief and succour of his Lord; it is recorded also of the Horse of *Antiochus*, what ill success befel *Centurctus*, who, when he had slain *Antiochus*, would needs back the Horse of his slain Master. It is also noted what inly love *Nicomedes* his Horse bare to his Lord and Master, which after his death of meer grief famished himself. We read of *Aethon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, who was evidently observed and seen to weep at the Funeral of his Master. *Silius* makes report of two famous Horses called *Pelorus* and *Ciræus*, the one eminent for his prowess and hardiness in War, and the other for his unparalleled Swiftness. Moreover we may read, how that this poor creature hath so well merited of man, as that many have erected Monuments and Sepulchers, celebrated Exequies, builded and founded munificent Cities, set up Pyramides, made Epitaphs, erected goodly Statues, instituted Plays and Games,
and

To the Reader.

and all these in honour of the Horse ; besides many other remarkable things right worthy of note.

In the way of Breeding, I do intimate unto thee the manner how, the season when, the Place where, together with the colours, marks, and shapes, as well of thy Stallions, as of thy Race, or Stud Mares, and from what defects they must be free, what signs are best wherein to cover, what course to take with them that they may conceive, what exercise is fittest for them as well when they be with Fole, as after foling, how to cherish thy Mares when their Colts shall run by them, and how to breed up thy Colts till they come to handling, backing, and riding, with other circumstances very necessary to be known : and thus much briefly for the first Book.

The second Book consisteth chiefly of the manner how thou mayst cure all such diseases and maladies (both intrinsecal and extrinsecal) whereunto either the life of the Horse, or any of his limbs or members may be any way endamaged or in danger. This I have handled by way of familiar Dialogue, which I hold to be best, for avoiding of prolix and over-tedious discourses ; by reason it will very much help the memory of the Reader, and keep his mind the better attent upon the state of the Question or subject in hand ; and by that means I may myself be the better able also to explicate and deliver my meaning much more clearly. In which Dialogue, I have introduced as prolocutors, three persons only, viz. First, *Hippophilus* a Gentleman, one who is the true lover of the Horse : Secondly *Hippiatrus* the Ferrier or *Marshal*, one most expert in Horse-leach-craft : And thirdly *Hippoferus* his Servant and journey-man, sometimes his Apprentice bred up by him, from whom *Hippoferus* hath had his education and knowledge in this Art ; these be all the *Dramatis personæ* to this Scene. Wherefore in the first Chapter, I do endeavour to illustrate unto thee the

To the Reader.

true Office of the Ferrier: wherein I do produce an exact examen of this function.

In the second Chapter, I do inculcate as well the causes of health as of sickness, wherein I make an abridgement of all those things which all learned Physicians and Chirurgions (both antient and modern do, from the grounds and principles of profound Philosophy, find to govern and bear rule in the body of the Horse, without which he can have no flesh, bones, sinews, blood, or life it self, wherewith to make up the entire structure of an organical body, and such are first the Elements; secondly, the Humours; thirdly, the natural faculties; fourthly, the instrumental members; fifthly, the Spirits animal; sixthly, the Spirits vital; seventhly, the natural parts, and so of the residue. And having sufficiently discussed all these things in due order and method, I do then shew thee what means we have to preserve the Horse from all inward diseases, which I do find to be four in number, *viz.* By Purge, by Sweat, by Phlebotomy, and by Vomit; and then do I proceed to inculcate unto thee the causes of health and long life, which I do make to be in number twelve, which if thou do well observe they will redound to thy great utility and profit.

In the third Chapter I do demonstrate certain things most befitting a Ferrier to know and understand well, before he shall take upon him to administer; in the handling whereof I do begin first with the four Elements, anatomizing unto thee their true natures and virtues, and how and where they be situate, a thing most needful to be known; then I go along with the two proper Elements, shewing from whence the seed and menstrual blood is ingendred; then I pass forwards in intreating of the four Humours, explaining their natures and virtues, pointing unto the places of their abode and residence, and what relation and coherence they have unto the four Complexions.

To the Reader.

Complexions, I do also shew thee what are the two spirits Animal, and the two Vital, their natures, virtues, and places of abode and residence in the body of the Horse. After all this I shew thee, that duly observing the complexion of the Horse thou art to cure, thou mayst thereby the sooner, better, and with more security and ease, perfect thy cure; and, I go yet further with thee, in shewing unto thee an exact way whereby to know by the complexion it self the diseases whereunto the Horse is most propense; then I make known what be the causes of the evil dispositions of the Horse, which bringeth and begetteth unavoidable infirmity and sickness, whereof they be two in number, *viz.* Intrinsecal, and Extrinsecal, together with a definition of the nature of sickness: and so I go along in teaching thee the manner how thou oughtest to administer such Drinks, Potions, Clysters, and Medicines, without any the least peril to thy Horse, as also the time of the day most suitable to that purpose; and what exercise is most requisite to be had after Physick or Medicine. And lastly, I come to touch briefly upon his Urine and Ordure, whereby to give the rules infallible how to know and understand the true state of the body of the Horse, as well in health as in sickness.

In the fourth Chapter of this second Book, I do begin to handle the Cures in particular, wherein I run a course by my self, which I have not known any before me undertake: For whereas Master *Blunde vile*, Master *Markham*, and others, do begin with all the inward diseases which are to be cured by way of Physick, and then with the outward maladies which do appertain unto Chyrurgery; I have thought it much better to take the diseases Alphabetically, mixing the extrinsecal with the intrinsecal; by which means they will the sooner and more easily be found, and turned unto more readily. And whereso-

ever

To the Reader.

ever you shall find this * * inserted in the end of any cure, I have set the same there, to let you know that Receipt to be undoubted, and approved for good and certain, being by my self often practised and used. And those receipts that have not the mark, are such cures which I did procure from sundry able Ferriers, whereof I have had no trial or experience at all, for want of time and means; and therefore dare not avouch or cry them up for Mathematical, albeit they do appear unto me to be probably good, but by reason I have not tried them, I would not adventure a *Probatum*, or *ecce* upon them. Nevertheless if God permit me to reprint, I doubt not but by that time to give them for approved and warrantable, and to add many more unto them which I have already by me, which I do forbear to publish at this present, albeit I do know many of them to be as probably good as any of those.

In other Chapters I go clean through the whole Alphabet, according to the method used in the fourth Chapter; and therefore let this abstract suffice for the present. And forasmuch as I have discoursed the former things of breeding, &c. in my first Book; yet my intention was not at the first to trench so deep into that subject, but to shew principally the *Ferriers* Craft and Art, out of an earnest desire I have to excite and stir up our young Gentlemen to assume some knowledge of a Mystery so necessary for them to apprehend, or at least-wise to have a glimpse of, considering how rare a thing it is to find a skilful *Ferrier* among our rural or Country Smiths. For if the Nobility and Gentry of this our Isle of *Great Britain* did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horse-manship were, and how much they are esteemed and admired, who are the true professors thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and have good Horses: but it much troubleth me
to

To the Reader.

to see how little esteem Gentlemen now a days have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Menage, yet for Hunting; but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting forsooth, or Harriers, which be as fleet as petty Grey-hounds wherewith they do so much overstrain the strength of their poor Horses (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Clayes, and wet and rough lands) that albeit those Horses be strong and able, yet are they so toiled out therewith, as that when they come home at night, they would pity the heart of him who loveth a Horse, to see them so be-mired, blooded, spurred, lamentably spent, tyred out: Whereas, if such Horses had been ridden to the great Saddle and Cannon, they would have infinitely delighted all men, who should have beheld them.

But let me leave them unto their toilsome sports, and let my speech be directed to such Heroick and Generous spirits, who have a desire to inform and better their understanding in the secrets of this brave Mystery; who if they have a will to be edoctrinated therein, then for a Mathematical ground of true Horse-manship, I must tell them, that the having and possessing of good Horses, yea and riding it self is little worth without the knowledge of the *Ferriers* Craft, at the least in the Theorick or Speculative part, if not in the Practick; and therefore I could wish that every worthy Gentleman should have a good insight thereinto, albeit he doth not make it his Trade, Occupation or frequent practice, and profession. Yet it would not be amiss, he be able to know every disease in a Horse, its Symptoms, and how it cometh, together with the true sign thereof, which indeed is a matter of very great consequence. For when a Nobleman (*V.G.*) Knight or Gentleman shall have a Horse that doth well merit his affection, and which shall be for his turn, if any accident or malady shall befall him, albeit

To the Reader.

he may not himself take upon him the cure, and to drench, Bloody, or dress him with his own hands; yet (sending for a *Ferrier*) he may discourse with him upon the nature of the Disease, and thereby come to understand whether the *Ferrier* speaketh according to Art or not, and whether his intended course of administering be answerable to true Art and perfect Science, and probably a secure way to perfect the cure; so as if the Master and Owner of the Horse be not himself enabled with some superficial knowledge at the least, at what time he shall consult with the *Ferrier*, if not (I say) able to judge of the mans sufficiency (the Smith himself being indeed insufficient) by mistaking the infirmity, he may ignorantly administer or apply such contrary medicines, whereby instead of labouring to cure him, he shall most easily and infallibly kill him, to the no small regret and grief of the Owner.

But *Ferriers* and *Smiths* may peradventure greatly re-pine, and grumble at the publication of this Work of mine, like as to my knowledge, and in my hearing, they have most virulently exclaimed, and vehemently inveighed against Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham* and others, wishing their Books burned, and the Authors at the Good year, for publishing and Printing them; pretending much wrong to be done to such poor men who have served Apprentiships to the Trade, having none other way or means of livelihood but only this. But hereunto I answer, that these men have no cause at all to fear any prejudice thereby; and I dare boldly affirm the promulgation of Books will be so far from their harm or hinderance, as that it will be infinitely to their benefit: For when they shall find any one Nobleman, Knight, or Gentleman, who will undergo so much pains as either to Bloody, Drench, Corrosive, Cauterize, apply Cataplasmes, Emplasters, Powders, Unguents, or the

To the Reader.

the like to his Horse, whatsoever he hath attained unto by reading or otherwise; you shall have a thousand, who upon any the least occasion will send for a *Ferrier* to take the Cure in hand. Again, instead of this pretended prejudice; this commodity will accrew to my brethren *Smiths*, *Marshals*, and *Ferriers*, viz. they shall by promulgation of Books (of this nature) become much more able, and *imbati in studiis*, that is, much more learned and indoctrinated in this generous faculty than ever they were before; by which means they will be esteemed much more famous and eminent, and cried up for the most expert and able men in this most noble Science. For how cometh it to pass, that Physicians, Chyrurgions, Lawyers, Divines, and all other Artists do become so great Doctors of their Arts and Professions, and admired for most famous and learned men, and so frequently sought after, enquired out, and sent for when occasion is? Is it not for what they have attained unto by study and reading, until which time they were not so hardy as to adventure upon practice? So as without their Liberty, they could never have been able to have attained unto that eminent knowledge they have afterwards aspired unto; neither could they otherwise have been possibly able to practice and work by true Art and Science. For the Works of learned and eminent men, are the only thing that doth enable them, which are left as a never dying Monument to ensuing and endless Posterity, as the common good to the weal publick, even to all ensuing ages: Imitating therein the ancient Sages of Greece, that when any man had invented that thing which was known to be commodious to the Republick, lest the thing should be buried with the Inventor, and by that means raked up with him in the ashes of perpetual oblivion: They ordained that the first Inventor should set up his Science to be known by way of record in their publick

To the Reader.

lick Schools in spacious Tables and in Capital Characters of Gold with this Impress, or Title, *τις. Καλλιον η̄ δειότερον αγαθον τῶ̄ ἔχει, η̄ τῶ̄ ἐστι*, *Bonum pulchrius; & divinius, quod Gentī est, quam Unī*; that is, That thing is to be esteemed better and more excellent which is communicated to the Weal Publique in general, rather than what is imprisoned in the bosom of any particular man. Wherefore that thing (I say) whereat I do principally aim, is to publish the true Art of the *Ferrier*, a Faculty wherein I have been daily versed, and diligently practised for more than forty years, and that unto my no small labour and expence, and I do well assure my self that peradventure no one Gentleman in this our Kingdom more, who hath done greater, more difficult, or desperate Cures.

During the time of my travels, I have for my better indemnity, not only perused what authors I could meet with, who have written upon this subject; but I did also make my self an eye-witness to the cures of the most famous *Marshals* and *Ferriers*, the cities and places afforded where I came, omitting no diligence which might inform or enable my knowledge; neither would I be too credulous, or give too much belief to fame or reports, for we have a maxim in the Civil Law, which saith: *Fama per se parum momenti habet ad probandum*: Fame alone is not of credit sufficient to satisfy or convince the understanding of man, until such time as he hath made trial. For the common proverb is, *Qui facile credit, facile decipitur*. He that easily beleiveth, is easily deceived. And truly thus much I am able to speak, that *France* and *Flanders* (for that in those two places I had most commerce and experience, albeit I travelled many other parts of Christendom) were the two Kingdoms in which I found the best, ablest, and most expert *Marshals*, or *Ferriers*: but of all the places where ever yet I came, I am able

of

To the Reader.

of my own knowledg to say thus much (and that with no small grief) that the worst Ferriers generally I do find to be those who are of our own nation : nevertheless, I do not conclude or condemn all for insufficient ; for some there be well known unto me very quaint and expert Ferriers, who can work very well, and according to true art and Method. I have therefore in this elaborate Work of mine given you several Receipts for every Cure, and most of them approved by my particular practice and experience ; others again I have inserted which are the cures of other able men, which by reason they do sound probable unto me, I have suffered them to pass among my own, (though I never had means or opportunity to make trial of them.) And the reason why I have inculcated so many several receipts to each cure, are two, viz. First because that receipt which will cure one disease, will not always cure the same malady in another Horse. Secondly, you shall find some receipts either very difficile to make, or the ingredients not easily to be gotten, otherwise they prove more chargeable than the owner of the Horse is well able to defray : and therefore I have given thee receipts for all sorts and degrees of Horses ; howbeit those receipts which are most costly and intricate to make and compound are commonly the very best, and work the best effects, and therefore I leave thee to thy self to make thy own choice, Now if any man shall say that I have robbed or rifled other mens labours : I answer, I have not robbed, but approved them ; for by the same rule I may aswel object, that whosoever worketh by my book robbeth me ; for if that be theft, I pray what Physician is there in the whole world, promulgating his science may not be as much censured and accused for rifling the aphorisms of *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, yea and of others the ancients, and modern authors also ? But howsoever I am so far from traducing

To the Reader.

other mens endeavours, as that I do both reverence and admire them, and esteem my self unworthy their Scholar. But I know no reason why I may not publish my knowledge of this noble Art; for what saith a venerable Author? *Qui se dicit scire quod nescit, temerarius est: & qui negat scire quod scit, ingratus est.* As that man is to be accompted for most temerarious and rash, that shall take upon him to know that which in truth he knoweth not; so also doth he shew himself to be most ingrate, who denieth to know that thing which truely he doth know. Innumerable are the grounds which may be laid to the rearing of this Structure, which being so well known to all, by setting each down in particular, I shall therein but only *Sisyphi saxum volvere*: consume much time (which to me is most precious) and labour to little purpose, and less profit; and therefore I will in this discourse draw towards an end, lest I might tire thee out with too long an Epistle; yet less I thought I could not inculcate, by reason there are many things in this worthy and noble Science, which might otherwise seem to be very dark and abstruse; and the cures I have (I say) carried Dialogue-wise. *Ne inquam & inquit sepius interponeretur*; meerly to avoid confusion: For *Aristotle* saith well; *Omne Ens naturaliter appetit suam perfectionem.* Every *Ens*, that is to say; every man hath a natural propension to arrive unto that perfection which he hath a will or desire to understand.

Now the reason why I did enterlace my first Book with the honours and perfections which Horses in former times have atchieved, as also with such rules and principles of breeding, shape, marks, colours, &c. was lest otherwise I might be like to one who telleth a sick man of a soveraign-medicine for his infirmity, and yet conceals from him the use thereof. And therefore I do make it my chiefest desire, and principal intention yea my obligation,

To the Reader.

ligation, not only to illustrate each disease, together with its cure, but also to make up all the Attributes belonging to a perfect Horse, and such defects which be incident to so noble and useful a creature, being likewise discovered.

If therefore it may please thee sometimes to retire thy self in the perusal of this Treatise, and with due and serious Judgement, not so much reflect upon the Method and form of this work, as of the matter or subject it self, then I doubt not but that thou wilt receive such benefit and contentment, as that thereby thou wilt be much bettered and enabled in thy understanding both for the breeding and well ordering of young Horses, and in the cure of every of their maladies. And forasmuch as I have brought this my first work to its period, which I may rightly resemble to a Structure or Building, my special care hath been to make it fair and beautiful to the eye, and to grace, garnish, and set it forth with varieties of divers sorts; wherein I have been very diligent to give it all satisfaction I have been able, and therefore I have laboured to paint and polish it forth with what variety is most necessary for so exquisite building.

Lastly, Sithence nothing more imports a building than to lay a sure and substantial foundation, and withal to make the walls so tite and impregnable, as to be able to resist not so much wind and weather, as the violence, assaults, and battery of detracting enemies; my care therefore hath been to have it founded and situate upon the unmoveable rock of a pregnant truth. And therefore considering I have applyed all this pains, and spent so much time and cost, which I might have otherwise both employed and applyed to my more particular commodity, by which I have not only finished this structure, and made it commodious for thee, but I do also present it
unto

To the Reader.

unto thee meerly for thy proper use and habitation ; and therefore I hope that thou wilt not make such use thereof, as men do of an Inn, where they take a bait or repast, for one meal, or for a lodging, for one night and away, to wit, by only taking a superficial view thereof : but that thou wilt make it thy abode at the least for some time : I mean by reading and digesting the whole work in order as it lieth treatably and seriously, and after by putting in practice, what therein thou shalt find to be fit for thy use ; so shalt thou reap and enjoy the benefit, my self the comfort, and the common-wealth the honour.

If any leaks be in the printing, impute them either unto the misprision of the printer, or else to the negligence of him unto whom the charge of the correcting was committed ; and if any be in the Author, let the fault light upon those who spurred him so fast on to hast it to the Press ; but howsoever shew thy charity in correcting the faults and slips, as well of the one, as of the other, So shalt thou shew thy self to the world like thy self, truly Noble, and oblige the Author to remain ever thy humble Servant, and true Friend : Farewel.

Thomas de Grey.

To my Worthy Friend Monsieur de Grey, upon his
exquisite piece of *Horse-man-ship* and *Ferriery*.

WHen Troy's *Palladium*, on whose fatal stay
Their fortunes, hopes, their God's, their *Aitars* lay,
Was by *Ulysses* cunning hand surpriz'd,
And *Pallas* wou'd to see Troy sacrific'd ;
The Greeks pretending recompense, return
A Horse, whose entrails that vast City burn.
How different is thy Gift, since here we see
Pleasure with safety, strength with wit agree ?
This frame exceeds that ; but to nobler ends :
That hurts by fraud, by knowledge this defends :
And though in *Ilium's* tierse an Army rest,
'Twill be far more to COMPREHEND this Beast ;
Since ignorance hath taught our Isle to lay
Her Art on *Jades* that only run away.
But when I look on thine, and there behold
Souldiers made knowing, and the knowing bold :
I cry, had this been given for that of wood,
Minerva had return'd, and *Ilium* stood.

S. J. B. B.

To his good Friend, *Thomas de Grey*, upon his Book
called the *Expert Ferrier*.

WHilst other Readers vex in fruitless ways,
And write adventurous Lines for vulgar praise ;
Thou in a Noble Art, and useful skill
Ventest the labours of a modest Quil,
To make us by thy well spent Industry,
Supine neglects to know, and rectifie ;

Since in this Piece of thine, the Horse appears
 (Whilst him his Rider as a Pilot steers
 Through storms of courage) by thy awful hand
 Enforc'd to suffer, and obey Command.
 Then, Thou, his innate Spirit to maintain
 By propagation of a generous strain,
 Unpractis'd Precepts with judicious heed
 Freely afford'st us in his better breed.
 And lastly, that this work may fully please,
 Experimental Cures of each Disease,
 Which frequently occur in this brave beast
 Are, with the less approv'd by thee express't:
 That all may say, We in this Book have found
 A Horse well bred, well menaged, and sound.

S. T. H.

To my knowing Friend, Monsieur de Grey.

OLD Edward, Noble Worcester, that Branch
 Sprung from great John of Gaunt, and Royal
 Of Thee our de la Grey was wont to say, (Blanch.
 To see I kee on thy Horse of menage play,
 Was solid pleasure, for the Excellence
 That fed the Eye, went further then the Sense.
 And I believe it, since the Active part
 That shines in Precepts of thy skilful Art.
 And comes to us from speculations taught
 Through long experience, and with labour wrought
 In these thy choice Philippicks, makes this Land
 Blest in the fair production of Thy hand.
 Our skilful Markham, and old Blundevil,
 Or whose'er hath toucht this Marshal Quil,
 Receives by Thee more light than was his own,
 Or was by th' Antients, or by Moderns known.

G. F.

Upon Monsieur de Grey his most elaborate piece of
Horse-man-ship and Ferriery.

THis Book's inform'd with a high Genius ! this
Above the malice of detraction is !
Nor needs a friend's Encomium blaze it forth ;
Its proper virtue vindicates its worth :
Yet, Since, by th' Author's happy care and pain
I understood how first to use the rein,
And manage seripeds, I could not chuse
But vent this grateful Rapture of my muse,
How that by it he amply doth impart
The essence of the Horsemens, Ferrier's Art ;
So that the Horse shall to perfection grow,
And no disease his courage brave o'rethrow.
Now I will leave Pegasus airy courses,
And sue to mount one of his well-train'd Horses.

Ed. R.

To my well deserving Friend, Thomas de Grey, upon
his exact piece of *Horse-man-ship and Ferriery.*

IF I, who love a Horse next to my life,
Should now be mute in the commending strife
Of this thy Horsemenship, my de la Grey,
I might henceforth be banisht all the play
At Bansteed, Winchester, and Salsbury,
And sit me down under this Horse and die :
Nay, I will write before thy book, and fill
The vacant room of some deserving quill ;
And wish in all my sport to be as sure,
As when thou work'st upon a desperate Cure.

To the Author of the Expert *Ferrier*.

Here's *Mirroure*, eak *Model* of true Honour ;
Fame waits on Thy name, Then wait'st upon Her.
By caval'ry the Golden Fleece thou'st won ;
Therein, Thou art a *Non-pareil*, That one.
Whose Fame shall die ? Thine ? It shall remain
The Age, presag'd by Ovid's sublime *Strain*.

I. H. D. M.

To my ever honoured Friend *Thomas de Grey*, upon
his select Piece of *Horse-man-ship* and *Ferriery*.

SAge hast Thou made our *Later Age*,
Thou art the *Phoenix* of our *Time* ;
Certes, Thy rare Piece I presage,
Hath won the Fleece it's so sublime.
My younger Pen cannot but wait on thee,
Whose Name shall ever be most dear to me.

Francis Hawkins.

THE COMPLEAT
HORSE-MAN,
 AND EXPERT
FERRIER.

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

THE INTRODUCTION.

IF we will but take to our serious consideration how many great Obligations we have to admire the infinite goodness of Almighty God in creating such a marvellous number of Creatures, meerly for the use and service of Man, whereof no one of them can be wanting; and that amongst them all, we have none more useful, or which can be less spared than the Horse; no dumb Creature more generous, nor any that cometh so near unto the pleasure of Man, none can serve him better in time of Peace and War; none better for Manuring and Tilling the Earth, and to cause it to produce its Fruits; none more useful for bringing in the fruits of the Earth; none more behoofeful to bear and carry him his long and tedious journeys, in heat and cold, through thick and thin, by night and day; none better to carry him

B

from

from danger, and to land his Master at the port of safety, than the Horse: and for his pastimes and recreations, no creature to be compared to this: neither is there any creature created by the great Creator of all things, which doth so perfectly understand and connive with the nature and mind of man, or that beareth a more inly love to man, as doth this poor creature the Horse; for upon all occasions he sweateth, he trudgeth, he toyleth, he drudgeth, he moyleth, he laboureth *Pro viribus*, with great alacrity and cheerfulness (so long as his vital spirits last) to give comfort and content to him that feedeth and cherisheth him; yea, and that (I say) with such joy and alacrity, as if (like to a reasonable creature) he found himself obliged thereto in the bond of all sincere duty and gratitude. For should I speak rather like a Philosopher than a Christian, I could not but agnize nature to be admirable in all her works, wherein man doth owe unto her infinite, and those very great thanks, in that she hath accommodated and plentifully furnished him with all things needful for his use, as also in that she hath propagated (among all other) the Horse, the most useful for the service of man, and who best acknowledgeth his Master. And that this may be the better anatomized, I will shew you what I find recorded by authentical Authors of the excellency of this praiseworthy Creature.

The so much renowned *Bucephalus*, who carried his Master through so many conquered Kingdoms, serves for an example to all ensuing Ages, who would not suffer any man but great *Alexander* to back him, who seemed to be proud at what time he carried so glorious and victorious a charge; and it is also written of him, that being wounded at the siege and sacking of *Thebes*, he carried him courageously through the Troops and throngs of all the Combatants, with incredible valour and courage, nothing at all esteeming or prizing the loss of his blood, being most desirous, and no less willing to do his Master all faithful service, to the utmost of his power, and to the effusion of the last drop of his blood, labouring to purchase unto himself by his (not to be paralleled) valour, and his resolute perseverance, a victorious advantage over the enemy. What never-dying high renown the Horse of *Cesar* got, I hold little inferiour to that of *Bucephalus*. *Dionysus* the Tyrant of *Sicity*,

Sicily, in a great and well fought Battel, was himself so hard put to it, that he was constrained to forsake his Horse, nevertheless the poor beast made his way through the throngs of the Enemy; who all bloody and miery as he was, gat him to a rendezvous at his Stable. *Centaurus* of *Galatia*, having in battel slain *Antiochus*, he in a bravado mounted his Horse, who soon found by good experience, (albeit no whit to his advantage) that the said Horse retained a resentment of the death of his slain Master: for the Horse so soon as he felt this his new Lord upon his back, never gave over flinging, yarking, plunging and bounding, commanding the bit with his teeth, launching out sometimes this way, sometimes that way, with so great impetuosity and fury, that at length he cast his rash Rider to the Earth, and then fell to him with his heels, redoubling his strokes in so thick and violent a manner, not giving over till he had slain him outright, whereby he gave him little cause to triumph and glory in his temerarious attempt. We read of *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, whose Horse so intirely loved him, as that his Master was no sooner dead, but the Horse presently forsook his meat, and so continued, until such time as he languishing for very grief, dyed of Famine. *Virgil* the Prince of Poets, maketh honourable mention of *Aethon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, son of *Evander*, who saith that this *Aethon* being present at the funeral of his Master, wept for sorrow, as these two verses do inculcate:

*After came Aethon, bold in Fight, now weeping,
And in his Tears his mournful Visage steeping.*

Silius Italicus in his ninth Book doth highly extol two horses, to wit, *Pelorus*, and *Ciræus* speaking of them in this manner.

*Ready Pelorus was to th' hand and rayn,
Obedient still, and of a generous Strayn:
Hearing his Masters voice Ciræus hies
'Fore the beholders, and the wind out flies.*

The tractableness and love that the Horse beareth to man, have been the occasion that sundry great personages have reci-

procally answered it, by erecting of Statues, and by building of most famous Cities to their honour and memory. *Alexander*, before-mentioned, founded an opulent City in honour of *Bucephalus*, and gave it his name, and celebrated his exequies. The *Egyptians* erected most magnificent Pyramids, and sumptuous Sepulchers to such Horses as had served them well in their wars. *Octavius Caesar*, and after him, *Adrian* the Emperour, interred their Horses with great pomp and solemnities, and caused famous Epitaphs to be engraven upon their monuments. The Emperour *Commodus* did the Like to his Horse *Parfinus*, and commanded that he should be buried in the *Vatican*. *Romulus* did institute Playes and Games called *Equiria*, in honour of Horses, and caused them to be presented in the field of *Mars*. The *Æthiopians* did so highly esteem of these noble creatures, as that they armed their Helmets with the skins of Horses, suffering their ears to remain on, and they did wear their Tails upon their Crests, like as now a-dayes men use their Plumes. Other Nations have done the like, who held Horses in no little esteem. We read of a *Roman* Emperour, who made his Horse a Senator. The ancient Astrologers have likewise attributed so much to Horses, that they have placed one winged amongst the cœlestial signes. The Poets hold that the Fountain (where the nine Muses used to bathe themselves, and to drink) sprang up, by the blow of the foot which *Pegasus* gave against the two-topt Hill, *Parnassus*. *Neptune*, God of the Sea, is surnamed *Hippius*; by reason that (as the Poets do fable) the first Horse, that was ever seen, received his origin from him, or from a stone whereon *Neptune* had poured water. There remaineth much more to be said in honour of the Horse, than there hath been already delivered. Wherefore omitting further Eulogiums and Attributes, I hasten to matters of greater consequence. Sithence therefore the case so standeth, that this dumb Creature is by Almighty God given unto man, as a Creature of so useful importance; what thankfulness then are we bound to give unto him for so great a Blessing and Benefit? And therefore what diligence is required of us; yea, and what carefulness ought we to use, in travelling to attain to this so necessary a Creature in the most exact manner we are able? Nor can this possibly be acquired to our true content,

unless

unless we do apply our best endeavours herein; for the Antients have this Proverb, *All rare and excellent things are hard to compass.* And therefore we ought to apply all care and industry to attain unto good Horses, which can never be so well done, as by *breeding* them; for they must be the Horses that will be best able to serve us in those offices whereunto we shall intend them, according as hereafter shall be most exactly illustrated.

C H A P. II.

Of the best manner of Breeding.

THere are so many diversities of opinions, so mainly defended *pro & con*, that make men fearful to bring that to publick view, which long practice and experience hath brought them to know and understand to be most true and infallible: Nevertheless I presuming, that the more judicious may peradventure favour my Reasons and Grounds; allowing them at least for probable and good, if they shall adventure to make trial, which if they be pleased so to do, I am confident they will both allow and approve of this my manner of *breeding*, above all other ways heretofore practised; who finding it to be much better, will never be brought from the same method: and therefore I would not have any man to condemn me before he shall first have made tryal.

My Counsel therefore is, that such generous Spirits, unto whom Almighty God hath extended his benign hand, would take to their consideration, how needful a thing it is for them to lay hold upon this so noble and profitable a blessing and benefit, by applying their best care and diligence to breed good, able and serviceable Horses, which may be as easily performed, and in a manner with as little cost, as in breeding Jades and Baffles, unuseful and unprofitable. For by procuring a good and able Stud of choice Mares, and by endeavouring to get select Stallions, which for mettle, spirit, shape, colour, marks, and the like, shall be known to be rightly bred, and truly generous, as well (I say) the Mares as the Stallions; and these,

young, handsome, of size indifferent, that is, neither too small, nor too large, long legged, or under-bodied ; but well knit, limb'd, and jointed ; it will be beyond all peradventure, but that you shall have Horses fit wherewith to serve your Country upon all occasions, and your own turn, and your friends, and acquire to your self no small honour and commendations both from your Prince, and the Weal Publick. And this the better to be performed, you must understand that some things are necessary to be considered. First, that your grounds be fit for *breeding*, and those not to be such as be low, wet, fenny, moorish, or marish ; but they must be Pastures upland, hilly, and in some places stony and rocky, for Grounds of this nature are very profitable for your Colts, to scope, run and play in ; it helpeth their wind, it knitteth their joynts ; and hardeneth and maketh tough their hooves : Some of your Grounds ought also not to be without Underwoods, Bushes, Furfels, Broom, and the like ; these will serve for shelter at what time the cold winds do blow ; the residue of your Grounds ought to have Lawns and Plains, wherein should be better grass than the former ; and in these Lawnes, is needful there should be great Oakes, and such like Timber-trees for them, whereby to shelter them from the scorching Sun in the extream heats, especially during the time of the Canicular days ; and these trees will also defend them from the buzzing & stinging Fly, which otherwise would greatly annoy and afflict them : You must also accommodate your Grounds with partitions convenient, as well for change, which sometimes is most requisite, as also whereby to segregate each sort of Cattel by it self ; as your young and old, rafe or breeding Mares by themselves, your weanlings by themselves, your Fillies by themselves, and your stoned Colts by themselves, according as your best judgment shall dictate ; otherwise your breed will be in confusion and come to nothing, and so you may run the hazard to lose both your cost and pains. Places must be also made apart, wherein both your Mares with foal, and those who have their Colts sucking upon them, may run by themselves with all quietness and retiredness ; and every of these partitions must be so sufficiently fenced, as that no one sort of cattel can break into the other. And I do yet further advise, that these Grounds be well furnished with sweet and whole-

wholesome water, whereof ought not to be any want, either in Winter or Summer ; for otherwise you may endanger the tainting and surfeting of them.

Furthermore, that certain Sheds and Hay-houfes be erected for them to be fed in, during the time of the Winter, when grafs is scanty, and not so much nourishing, and the cold Winds, Frosts, Rains, and Snows, may greatly pinch and annoy them : in which housings, would be set up Racks and Mangers whereat to feed them ; there would also be laid clean straw for them to lye upon, which will very much comfort and keep them warm : But above all, the greatest care must be had to the fences in general, whether wall (which is evermore the best) pale, quicksets, broad ditches, or high bankes, lest they should at any time break forth, and trespass your neighbours to Bastardize, and wrong your breed. And you ought also to institute a trusty and diligent Bayliff or servant, whose only function should be to make his fence-walk morning and evening, as duely as any well experienced Keeper or Wood-man doth his Pale-walk, to see that his fences be fast, and his Cattel safe : and let him not fail every day, once at the least, to take a true tale and inventory of every sort of Cattel he hath in his several Grounds, for fear any should be missing, or some misfortune befall any of them ; and if he shall find any wanting, let him not rest searching, until he hath found it ; and if it be in danger or sick, let him not give over himself if he can, (otherwise let him haste to call company and strength enough) to free it out of harmes way.

Now as touching the grounds themselves, as I would not have them too rich, or too rank and deep with grafs ; so must they not be too barren, short and mossie ; for as well in this subject, as in all other things, the golden mean is evermore to be preferred. Having thus provided your self a Stud of the choicest and ablest Mares, for age, colour, shape and marks, your Stallions also of like attributes, your care must be to see your Mares well covered, for in this chiefly consisteth the life and quintessence of your *breeding*. Be you therefore marvelous careful, that neither your Stallion nor Mare have any of these ensuing defects ; *viz.* neither Moon-eyes, watry-eyes, or bloud-shotten-eyes, or other defect in their eyes or sight, no taint
in.

in their Wind by Glanders or otherwise, no way subject to Mainge, Mallender, Sellender, Splents, Spaven, Curb, Ringbone, Scratches, Kybed heels, or any other the like forances; that they be not Cock-thropled, but their Throples very loose; for let either Stallion or Mare have any of these maladies, then be you well assured their Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents: Insomuch as when you esteem your self confident of such young Horses, you so much desired to be master of, you will be mistaken; for instead of a Stirrier or Horse for manage, you have bred him fit for nought else but the plough; and in the place of a Hunter, he proves a Millhorse; and in hope you had a Horse for a Course, he proves for no better use but the Cart; and him you desire to have for your own Pad-saddle, you will be constrained to sell him to a Carrier, to bear a Pack-saddle with a burthen.

To come to intreat of the time most fitting for covering your Mares, let that be so done, that they may cast their Foles in the dead of Winter; as either in *December* or *January*; for during their time of going with Fole, to wit, from the day of their Covering, unto that of their Foling, is commonly twelve moneths, and ten days; Yet some do aver, they do want eleven days of twelve moneths, of which computation there is just three weeks odds; Others again do affirm, that a Mare goeth but only eleven moneths and ten days, wherein is greater odds; but I have found it to be a most certain rule which never did fail me (unless in a young Mare upon her first Colt, who will want some few days of the ordinary account) and long and frequent experience hath made me to be very perfect, that a Mare goeth (unless some mischance or other accident hath otherwise occaion'd) twelve moneths and ten days: For when at any time I have been present when a Mare hath been covered, I have in the very minute entred into my Almanack, the very day and hour in which she took the Horse; and because I would not be deceived, I have been present at her foling, and I have found the time never to fail me. And therefore I could wish all *breeders* to observe with me the same course, and they shall find this account to fall out just as I have delivered. If your Mare be covered about *S. Lucies* day, which is the thirteenth of *December*; then will she sole about *S. Thomas* day

day, the same month in the year following: But before you suffer her to be covered, let neither the Stallion nor Mare be at grass, but taken into the house, six weeks or a month at the least; during which time, let them be both very well fed with good old Hay and Straw, well dusted and sifted, to the end they may have strength and seed to perform the office for which you have them. But if you will have your Mare certainly to conceive, cut take blood from both sides of her neck, and let her bleed at either vein well-nigh a quart; which must be done five or six days before she is to be covered; and the next day after bleeding, give her in a quart of new milk, half iij. of *Artimisia*, *alias Mugwort*, chopped very small, a piece of sweet Butter, $\frac{1}{2}$ 2. of *London Treacle* warm; all these put upon the fire till the Butter and Treacle be dissolved, and give this to the Mare blood-warm in the morning fasting, and so the next morning again, and let her drink be white water. This drink is most soveraign to cause conception, it provoketh seed abundantly, it openeth the pores in the Body, and causeth the Mare to keep the seed she receiveth from the Stallion; moreover this drink comforteth the womb and matrix very much: so as it is great odds but that she being thus ordered, will be sped and conceive, unless she be a Mare of great sterility; which supposed, she is not to be kept for a race or breeding Mare.

Moreover, if you be desirous to have your Mare to conceive a Horse-colt, rather than a Filly; observe then this lesson I shall here give you, and you shall find it an infallible rule, which will never Miss, *viz.* At what time you would have your Mare to be covered, Let it be done when one of the first five masculine Signs do reign, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer* or *Leo*; but if she shall be covered when any of the Feminine or watry signs are predominant, as *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, or *Pisces*; then be you confident it will be a Fill, for this have I often tryed, and found it seldom or never to fail me, especially if the Wind be either West or North (but West is best) at the time of her covering. And you will find this my rule to be most infallible, for experience hath taught it me: And I have attained unto more knowledge by experience, than I was ever able to aspire unto, either by reading and Study, or by hearing what others have dictated, taught,

or told me: For we have a maxim, *Experience is the best and ablest mistress, and moderatrix.*

Now for the manner of the covering of your Mare, let her be brought into some place abroad, and there fastned to some strong post, then bring out to her some stoned Jade first to dally with her, and he will provoke her to an aptitude and desire of coity, which done, let the Stallion be led forth towards her, betwixt two or more lusty strong men who may be able to master him if he should prove unruly, and let him leap her; and let this be done in a morning betimes fasting; which done, another man standing by with a pail of cold water ready in his hand, in the very time when the Horse is dismounting, let him cast the cold water upon her shape, which by reason of the coldness, the strength of the castrer, and the saddeness thereof, will cause her to shrink in, and truss up her body, and it will be the means to make her retain the seed in the matrix; otherwise the womb would not peradventure so soon enclose it, but for some time after, howsoever the womb would draw together, but not so suddenly, whereby upon the Mares motion there might be some danger of dissolving. Take then away the Stallion, and let the Mare be put into some remote place alone, from sight and hearing of other Horses and Mares; but let her neither eat nor drink in four hours after, neither let her have any water at all till night, and then give her either a sweet mash, or white water. After she hath been thus Covered, you shall know whether or not she hath either conceived, or lost, or cast her seed, by many evident symptoms which will appear to your eye; for if she retain a good stomach to her meat, and so continueth, if she do not neigh at hearing or sight of other horses, if she do not piss oft times in the day, casteth not her eye about gazing continually at every noise she heareth, pricketh not up her ears, and that in three or four days after her covering, her Belly seemeth to be more gant, her hair more slick and close to her skin, shewing of a brighter colour, and she seemeth to fall away and become lean: if (I say) any of these Symptoms do appear in her, then is it an evident sign she hath kept her seed and conceiveth, but if the contrary appear in her, then hath she lost it and ingendred not.

But as for offering her the Horse again ten days after, together

ther with such like circumstances, I hold them impertinent for this place, being so frequently known and practised, and therefore my labour may well be spared. But for her keeping and ordering after her Covering, let her not drink that she desireth, but continue her with the same diet which formerly she had before her covering for three weeks or a month after, lest the seed might fortune to be impaired, before the Colt be sufficiently formed in the womb; and let her be kept sweet and clean as may be, and that without any labour or exercise during that three weeks or month: After which term you may, if you please, inure her to moderate labour, wherein have a special care of four things: First, that she be not at any time galloped, or run off from her wind: Secondly, that she be not put to carry heavy burthens: Thirdly, that she be neither laboured or travelled in extream heat: And lastly, that her exercise be not such which may provoke her to sweat violently; for every of these things will cause her to miscarry.

She being thus with sole; she must be kept in the house until mid-*May* at least, and then let first her shoes be taken off, her feet pared well, the frush and heels opened, and plates after the manner of running shoes (but not to come home to the heels) set on; let her run in the driest Ground you have, yet not so short of grass, but that she may at her ease fill her belly at least once a day; and about the latter end of *September*, (if not before) let her be very carefully taken into the house, but so quietly, that you shall not endanger the hurting of her belly, either by the ruffling of other Horses and Mares against her, or through her unruly leaping, or inconsiderate brushing against posts, doors, or the like. Let her be kept thus in the house to the time of her foaling, and let her diet be as before is prescribed.

And when the time of her foaling approacheth, let her keeper attend carefully upon her, putting her into a house convenient for her, unhaltred and untied, lest in foaling, the Colt receive damage, by reason that Mares do commonly cast their soles standing: Wherefore let not the room whereinto you put her, be too streight, but very warm (for warmth is a great comfort as well to Mares with sole, as in foaling) and let good store of straw be layed, that the sole may fall from the Mare the softer, and be in less danger of harm; and let her (I say) be watched

for fear the Fole come not right, and so soon as she hath foled and licked it dry, let her keeper presently milk and stroak her, and that before the Colt do suck her; which will both cause her to give down her milk, making the same to multiply, and also keep the Udder that the milk do not clod, which if it should do, the Mare might happily in short time become dry; whereof if there be any peril, I then advise you to draw as much milk from her as you can, and boil it with the leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and so bathe her Udder therewith warm, continuing so daily to do, until by this means you have broken the curd, knobs, and knots, causing them to be dissolved. And as for the water which she is to drink for some time after her foling, let it be either sweet mashes, or white water, and a month after her foling, give her a mash, putting therinto the powder of Brimstone, or Savin, or the like, which will be a great preservation of the Colt; and then if she be moderately laboured either at Plough or Harrow, if she will draw, as well the Mare as Colt will prosper the better; provided she be kept from raw meat while she remaineth in the Stable; by which means she will the sooner recover strength, lust and courage, and have store of good milk, which will cause the Colt to thrive the better, and to grow to be of the greater bone, which above all things is a matter of greatest consequence. And that you suffer not the Colt to suck the Mare when she cometh from work, until she be throughly cold, lest thereby you surfeit the Colt.

Thus much I have thought fit to handle of this subject; and albeit I have laboured herein to attain to brevity, nevertheless the premisses well considered, I shall not greatly offend in prolixity, howsoever this my manner of *breeding* being different from the old received Customes, will not (I do assure me) pass void of censure. But as touching old customes, thus much I do aver, that as they are in many cases of that force, as no law is able to abrogate; so on the contrary part, many of them are so absurd and ridiculous, as nothing can be more; for what saith the Civil Law? *Those things which by event or success of time are found to be pernicious or hurtful, even those things ought to be repealed, yea albeit they were at the first found profitable.* Which ground holdeth good in nothing so much as in old Customes, for of their absurdities, I am able to produce instances
not

not a few ; howsoever with many, *It is one of Hercules greatest labours to beat many a man from his old Customs be they never so bad ; albeit Custom is a meer Tyrant, and his sovereignty most insufferable,* as a grave Author very well observeth.

C H A P. III.

How to make and order your Stable.

HAVING thus waded into this mystery of *Breeding*, I hold it a thing very behoveful to be handled, how your stable ought to be accommodated. First therefore your stable should be situate where the air is wholsom, pure and good, and the ground dry : the structure would be either of Free-Stone or Brick, but Brick is best, most wholsom and warmest ; Besides this benefit brick hath, which stone hath not, of being very dry, for Stone will weep, and sweat drops of water against rain and misty weather, which begetteth d mps, and causeth Rheumes in Horses. Your stable ought not to have any unfavoury Gutter, Channel, or Sink near to it, no Jakes, Hogsties, or Henroust, whereby to annoy it. It would be also cieled over head, and have strong dores, with locks, bolts, and bars unto it. The Rack would not be made too high or too low, but placed in an indifferent proportion, and so artificially set, that neither the dust or the hay-seeds may fall into his Mane, or upon his neck and face. The Manger would be set at an indifferent height, made deep, and of one intire piece, as well for strength as for conveniency to be kept sweet and clean. Let the flore be pitched with flint, and not planked. The windows would be made with handsom shuts and casement, and well glazed, as well to keep out cold and wind, as also (when there may be cause) to let in the cool and fresh air. Again, take heed there be no lome wall or plaister so near as that the Horse may reach thereto with his mouth : for upon that he will gnaw, which may do him much prejudice, and be the cause of much dangerous sickness ; for Lome and Lime are suffocating things, they will infect and putrifie the blood, endanger the Lungs, and be no friend to his wind : neither suffer any dung to lie near
him.

him. Furthermore there would be made a *fan Loft*, wherein to lay hay, and convenient lodging chambers for your Grooms, whose nearness, together with their care and vigiliancy might prevent many dangers and inconveniences which may accrue unto your Horses by night. Also let a neat *Saddle-house* be contrived with Bings for Provender, and in it Presses, wherein to lay up the Saddles, Bridles, and all other furniture appertaining to Horses, and an *Aqueduct* wherewith to bring water to the Stable. And lastly, other Stalls would be erected remote, wherein upon occasion to serve the sick from the sound. Many other accoutrements there are belonging to a perfect Stable, as partitions with boards, posts, and bars, with pins driven into every post, whereon to hang Bridles and the like; shelves also fastned to the wall serving for many uses, to place necessaries upon, &c. which being known to all men, will be needless for me here to repeat.

But you may peradventure startle at paving, rather than planking your flore, preferring planks as warmer, and much better than flint or a pitched flore can be; as also for that it is a new thing, little practised, and seldom heard.

But give me leave (I pray) a little to inform your understanding in this one point, by which means your judgement may fortune to be much bettered. First therefore whereas novelty may be objected, I shall most easily assoyl that point, even from the self-same ground in the civil Law, which I inserted in the conclusion of the precedent Chapter, *viz.* That things found to be prejudicial ought to be inhibited, although they might be thought needful, and good in foreknown times. For that paving of stables is better than planking them; I have reasons not a few wherewith to satisfy a reasonable man. First, it is much more durable and lasting, supposing the flore to be pitched by an expert workman: Secondly, it less charges by much, and therefore in that point better: Thirdly, for a Horse to stand continually upon a pitched flore, it emboldneth his feet and treading the more; Fourthly, it is the most excellent thing that may be for Colts, who are unshod; for it hardneth their hoofs, so as by custom they will be as bold to go upon stones, rocky, and hard ways, as Horses that are shod: neither will a pitched flore suffer the hoof to go abroad in manner of an Oyster:

Paving of a stable much better than planking.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

ster:

ster : besides the use thereof will make their hoofs more tough, durable and hollow, insomuch as when they shall come to be shod, and to have exercise, they will carry their shoes much longer, better, and with more ease than otherwise, if they had been used to a planked flore.

Now on the contrary part, which concerneth the planked flore, that (I say) cannot in reason be so good by many degrees. First, it is more slippery, out of which reason a mettled horse may soon be in danger to be lamed or spoiled, by some sudden slip, whereof I have had often experience, which a pitched stable is not so subject unto. Secondly, the planks oftentimes shrinking, the Horse (especially if he be a stirrier who is accustomed to curvet in the stable) may easily break a plank, and his foot getting into a hole, or between the planks, the Horse plunging and striving, may easily break his leg before he shall be able to get it forth, whereof I have more than once been *oculatus testis*: Thirdly, when you put forth your Horses to run at grass, all or the most part of Summer, during which time the scorching heats will so exiccate and dry the planks, which will cause them to warp, and the pins which hold them down to the joylts will rot; and so the planks give way, especially when horses (who not being handled in some moneths before) becoming wild, rammage and unruly, are newly brought into the stable, who feeling the planks to move, yield and give way under them, will fall from starting thereat, to flinging, leaping, bounding and plunging, till they have dislocated the planks, and thereby have endangered both themselves, the residue of their Fellows, and those who might come to their help and succour, which is a thing very frequent in a flore of this nature: Fourthly, whereas you may imagine that a planked flore is warmer than a paved or pitched, I do know the contrary; for your pitched flore hath no vaults, or channels under them, like as hath your planked, wherewith to convey the water which passeth from the Horses: by which means the horse lyeth over a moist and dampish place and vault; and besides that, the evil favour of the Horse-piss will be evermore in their nose, which is most unwholsome, noysome, and many times the cause of much infirmity; neither can it in reason be so warm as is the pitched flore, for that the chinks and awger-holes bored through the planks.

The inconveniences of a Planked flore.

1.

2.

3.

4.

planks (which muſt always be kept open to let forth the Urin) do give way to the cold wind, which continually aſcendeth up to the horſe, as well lying as ſtanding, and cannot but do him much damage. I do therefore affirm, that if your Groom have a care to litter his horſe well, ſo as he may lye ſoft and warm, (which is a prime property appertaining to his office) your horſe will then proſper, and like much better upon a pitched ſtore than he can upon a planked; provided your ſtore be laid even, not higher before than behind, more than ſo much that may make the water to avoid his hinder feet, where there ought to be a ſmall gutter to cauſe it to paſs away; for in raiſing your ſtore ſo much, I do abſtract from the ancient ill cuſtom, by reaſon that a horſe ſtandeth higher before than he doth behind, his hinder legs will ſwell, and ſo he becometh lame; beſides, it giveth him a taint in the back and kidneys; and to conclude, his long ſtanding in this uneaſie manner begetteth in the poor beaſt much pain and grief, and this occaſioneth unto him (which would not otherwiſe be) the putting forth of Wind-gals, Pains, Scratches, and ſuch like noyſom ſorances.

Another thing may peradventure be thought ſtrange, which I have handled in the former Chapter, where I intreat of *breeding*; in that I would have the time of the Mares ſoling to be either in *December* or *January*, this being in the very depth of Winter, as well when the ſeaſon is commonly coldeſt, and when little or no graſs is to be had, ſo as of neceſſity the Mare muſt be houſed, and fed with hard meat, whereby her milk will be in ſo ſmall a proportion, as either to endanger the ſtarving of the Colt, or elſe at leaſtwiſe keep him ſo poor and feeble, as not to be able to grow, thrive or proſper to any purpoſe. To ſatiſſie this ſcruple, I ſay from long experience, that the Winter ſeaſon for a Mare to ſole in, beyond all peradventure, is the very beſt, as well for the Mare as the Colt, ſuppoſing ſhe be kept in a warm houſe; and as for her milk, ſhe will have great plenty, and that much better and more nourishing than that milk which the Colt ſhall ſuck from his Dam at graſs; ſo as thereby the Colt ſhall be more luſty, ſtrong, healthy, the greater of bone and ſtature, better able to endure hardineſs, better knit, cleaner limbed, more neatly joynted and hoofed, and keep his fleſh better than that Colt that is ſoled

Of the
time of
ſoling.

The Colt
better
nourished
in the ſtable,
than
at graſs in
Winter.

in *May*; *June*, or any of the hotter months: and my reason is, that albeit grass causeth greater plenitude of milk, (which I deny not) yet is not the same so good and nourishing: for the milk which the Colt sucketh at grass, is very thin and watry; and albeit winter food begetteth not so great a quantity of milk, yet the same will be thicker, more substantial and of greater nutriment, (the Mare being very well fed) which will feed the Colt very fat, and make him more lusty and strong, (as I have said) than if the Mare the whole Summer and Winter through, and in all the extremity of heats and colds had been kept abroad. Moreover, the Colt, besides the milk he draweth from the Mare, will also feed with her upon Hay, Oats, Bran, and such like food, which will do him much pleasure: But some again will say, that their teeth are so tender; as that they will not be able to chew and eat such kind of hard meats; I answer, they are very much mistaken, for, not only my self alone, but sundry others have with me been eye-witnesses of the contrary; therefore this needs no further solution. And whereas it hath been objected unto me, that that Colt which is soled in *May*, or *Solstice*, in that season, the Mare will have store of milk, thus much I do ingenuously confess, but then what manner of milk will it be? None other than such as shall be marvellous thin and watrish (as I said before) which abundance will also fail, even when the Colt hath most need thereof, that is, when the Colt beginneth to come up to some strength, and at what time he should receive most nutriment; to wit, when the winter cometh on, whose Snows, Frosts, cold rains, and Flouds will not a little nip and pinch the Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such terrible and desperate manner, that she will want her former plenty of food, warm and dry lodging, and other necessary relief and sustentation, and so in like manner, her abundance of milk, at what time her poor Colt should depend upon the enfeebled Mare, who is not able to supply its own need: by means whereof it must necessarily fall out, that she must bring both her self and her Colt to extream poverty, not being able to sustain her own life, much less her Colts and her own, and so become feeble before winter be half spent; and over and above all this, the Colt will by his running abroad with the Mare become so savage and wild, as that

if any infirmity should happen to sieze upon it, its own unruliness will be so great, that the Cure may thereby become the more difficile: for to speak truly, infinite have been, and daily are the numbers of Colts; yea, and those many times rightly bred, which have miscarried and perished in this nature.

I do therefore conclude, and as a friend to my Country aver, that the best way to breed up the ablest and most servicable Horses, is (as I have before inculcated) after this method, and none other; and therefore I am bold to advise all Noble Gentlemen, who are lovers of good Horses, and of this Mystery to make trial, and to put these my Rudiments in execution, and they will never (I do well assure me) hereafter either alter or swerve from them; for of this kind of *breeding* I have had more than forty years good experience; during which time, I intimated these my grounds to a Knight, an intimate friend of mine, who was a great lover of good Horses, and as great a Breeder, as a lover of them, and very well versed in Horse-manship, who hearing my reasons, and throughly digesting them, approved of them so well, as that he fell to follow these my instructions, and esteeming them sufficient, would never be brought from them after; he affirming, no way comparable to this: for he found by plain demonstration, that whereas in former times in breeding (as commonly he did) ten or twelve Colts yearly, when they came to Backing, Riding and proof of those ten or twelve, he thought himself well appayed, and his labour and cost well bestowed, if two or three at the most proved right, and to his mind, whereas ever after, in ten Colts thus bred and reared up, hardly any one missed, which proved not right and to his good liking: and this manner of *breeding*, made him more in love with this mystery than ever before, reason dictating it so well unto him. For, most certain it is, when the Stallion and Mare are both right, and have all their true Attributes, and the time, season, and manner of *breeding*, with all circumstances thereunto belonging, punctually and in every point duely observed; it will be a hard matter for the Colt to prove ill: but if otherwise, then marvel not if the Colt answer not your expectation, according to the Greek Adage, which saith: *κακὸς κόρακος κακὸν ὄσον*, *Fade Sire, Fade Colt*. Wherefore if upon trial it shall appear to you, that
you

you have hitherto been to seek of the true grounds, and of the original causes why you have not bred so many good Horses as you have desired, do not then wonder that *The cause of your error, and of so great a mischief hath stoln upon and deceived you*: for the great decay of good Horses, together with those infinite errors in breeding, and Horse-man-ship; that increase that, is, being so vile a manner of base Jades have so swarmed in this kingdom, as that (a lamentable case to be related) of one rightly bred, we now adays have a thousand Jades; to the great dishonour, disprofit, and weakning both of King and Countrey. And what is the reason? I shall in a word tell you: *It is impossible for a man to bring his work to its wisied perfection, who never knew the true grounds of his principles.*

C H A P. IV.

Of the Marks, Colours, and Shapes of Horses.

THE next thing befitting our subject, is to speak (albeit briefly) of the Colours, Marks, and perfect shapes of Horses: Wherein I will first deliver other mens opinions, and lastly mine own. Some there be who hold that Colours, Marks and shapes are little material to make up a perfect Horse, which I will not contradict, for my meaning is not to traduce or controul any man: but this I will say, that if a good horse have these properties adherent to his goodness, then is he questionless in much better esteem; for if beauty be added to his other inward vertues, then is he (like to the Nightingale in the beginning of *April*, heard, and hearkened unto) more praiseworthy, and better prized. For a Horse if he be good and serviceable, well mettled, bold and hardy, of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot and pace, lightly and well born, obedient mouthed, sure on foot, tough, strong and easie; will (I say) not such a Horse be well esteemed? But if together with these good properties, there shall be added, good colour, true marks, and perfect shape, which causeth him to appear most beautiful to all beholders: will not these endow-

ments set him the better forth, and cause him to be the better esteemed, of every man desired, and much more money offered for him? nay, shall not you (whose the Horse is) be come unto, be sued unto, have letters sent you from sundry friends, and will not your self prize him at a higher rate than otherwise you would have done? yes assuredly; and hereof I make no question. True it is, and I must confess no less, that a Horse may be very good, and perform his function very well, who hath neither good colour, true marks or perfect shape; nevertheless, these extrinsecal vertues are more frequently to be found, and better observed to be in good Horses, in whom are colour, marks and shape, than in horses which are otherwise. Wherefore because these things are termed exterior vertues, and therefore take their object from the eye only, I will conjoin them altogether in this my discourse, and shew you what hath been, and is the opinion of both antient and modern Writers. *Virgil* in his *Georgicks*, handling most accurately sundry points of Husbandry, among other things in his third book of *Georgicks*, describeth the Horse, as well his breeding, and his severall sorts of employments, as his colour, shape and marks; yea, and that in most exquisite manner: and thus he be-
ginneth:

Let the Males go

*Without restraint to Venery, and so
By timely breeds preserve a perfect kind.
Their first age best all wretched mortals find,
After diseases and old age do come,
Labour, and death's inexorable doom.
There still will be, whose bodies with thy will
Thou would'st wish chang'd. Therefore repair them still;
And lest thy kind quite lost thou find too late,
Prevent the loss and yearly propagate.
And such a choice you must in Horses make,
By him, whom you for Stallion mean to take,
As hope of all the race, cleet with care,
Even from a tender Fole such Colts as are
Of generous race, streight when at first they're sol'd,
Walk proudly, their soft joynts scarce knit, and bold,*

Dare lead the way, into the Rivers enter,
 And dare themselves on unknown seas to venture.
 Nor frighted with vain noises, lofty neck'd,
 Short headed, slender belly'd, and broad back'd ;
 Broad and full brested : let his colour be
 Brown-bay, or gray, white proves not commonly,
 Nor flesh colour, when wars alarums sound ;
 His nostrils gather, and breathe fire, no ground
 Can hold his shaking joints, his fear advances,
 His thick curl'd Main on his right shoulder dances.
 His back bone broad and strong, the hollow ground
 Trampled beneath his hard round hoof doth sound.
 Such was that horse, which Spartan Pollux tam'd,
 Fierce Cyllarus ; and Mars his Horses fam'd
 By th'old Greek Poets, or those two that drew
 Achilles Chariot : such a shape and hew
 At his wives coming, flying Saturn took,
 And all high Pelion with strill neighings shook.
 Yet when disease or age have brought to nought
 This horses spirit, let him at home be wrought.
 Nor spare his base old age. A Horse grown o'd,
 Though he in vain attempt it oft, is cold
 To Venerly, and when he's brought to try
 (Like that great strength'less fire in stubble dry)
 In vain he rages ; therefore first 'tis good,
 To mark his age, his courage and his brood,
 With other arts, how sad a Horse will be
 When overcome, how proud of victory.
 Dost thou not see when through the field in speed,
 Two racing Chariots from the Lists are fled,
 The young mens hearts all rise, as forth they start,
 And fear with joy confounded, strikes each heart ?
 They give their Horse the reins, and lash them on
 Their hurried wheels enflaming, as they run ;
 Now lo they go, now rise as they would flie
 Through th' empty air, and mount up to the sky :
 No resting, no delay, a sandy Cloud
 Darkens the air ; they on through shoutings loud .

Of ſtanders by, all ſweat, and ſom'd do fly :
 So great's their love of praiſe and victory.
 Firſt Eriſthonius Chariots did invent,
 And by four Horſes drawn in triumph went.
 The Peletronian Lapithes firſt found
 The uſe of backing Horſes, taught them bound,
 And run the Ring ; taught Riders t' exerciſe
 In Martial ranks both equal Myſteries :
 The Maſters of both theſe equal need
 To find out Horſe of courage, and good ſpeed,
 Though ne'er ſo nobly born, though oft in game
 They won the prize, and for their Countrey claim
 Epire, or fam'd Mycenæ, or elſe took
 Their birth at firſt from Neptune's trident ſtroke.

Theſe things obſerv'd at Covering time, they care
 To make their Stallion ſtrongly fat and fair
 The father of their brood ; for him they ſow
 Choice graſs, ſweet ſtreams, and corn to him allow ;
 Leſt he ſhould fail his pleaſant work to do,
 And th' young ones ſtarvelings from his hunger grow.
 But they of purpoſe keep the females light
 And lean ; and when they have an appetite
 To Venery, let them not drink nor eat,
 And couſe them oft, and tie them in the beat,
 When in full Barns the ripe corn crowded lies,
 As empty chaffe before the weſt winds flies.
 And this they do, leſt too much rankneſs make
 The breeding ſoil, and fatted furrows take
 Too dull a ſenſe ; but that they ſhould draw in
 Seed with deſire, and lodge it ſafe within.

But if thy mind thou more to War do give,
 Or through Jove's wood, would'ſt racing Chariots drive,
 And ſwiftly paſs by Piſa's River ſide :
 Thy firſt taſk is to make thy Horſe abide
 To ſee the ſouldiers arms, hear their loud voices,
 The trumpets ſound, and rattling Chariots noiſes :
 And oft within the ſtable let him hear
 The claſhing whip, he'l more and more appear

To be delighted with his masters praise,
 And when he strokes his neck, his courage raise.
 When first he's wear'd from sucking, let him bear
 These things, and trembling be compell'd to wear
 Soft Halters oft about his head; but when
 His life hath seen four Summers, teach him then
 To run the Ring, in order high to beat
 The ground, and both waies skilfully cur'veat
 As if he toy'd; then let him with his speed
 Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
 Scovre o're the champion fields so swift, that there
 The sands no print of his light-foot do bear.
 So when the Scythians gusts, and North-west wind
 From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind
 The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
 Corn bows with equal blasts; woods tops do yield
 A murmuring noise, long waves roul on the shore,
 Forth flies the wind, sweeps lands and waters o're;
 Thy Horse thus ordred to the races end
 All bloody fom'd, victoriously will tend:
 Or else his tamed neck will better bow
 To draw the Belgian Chariot; let him grow
 Full fed, when he is broken well, nor fear
 His growth; so fed before he's broke, he'l bear
 Too great a stomach patiently to feel
 The lashing whip, or chew the curbing steel.
 But no one care doth more their strength improve,
 Then still to keep them from Venereal love. &c.
 See how the Horses joints all tremble, when
 A Mare's known scent he through the Air doth feel;
 No stripes, no strength of men, no bit of steel,
 No Rocks, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
 Which roul whole Mountains, can his fury stay: &c.
 But strangest far
 Is those Mare's fr:ious love, which Venus sent,
 When they their Master Glaucus peace-meal rent.
 Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus
 And swim the stream of swift Ascanius,

*And when Lov's flame their greedy marrow burns,
 Most in the Spring, (for heat then most returns
 To th' bones) upon high rocks they take their places,
 And to the western wind all turn their faces,
 Suck in the blast, and (wonders to be said)
 Grow great with sole without the horses aid.
 Then o're the Rocks and Valleys all they run,
 Not to the North, nor to the rising Sun,
 Nor Capricorn quarter, nor the South whence rise
 Black showers, which darken and disturb the skies.
 Hence flows thick poyson from the groyns of these,
 Which shepherds truly call Hippomanes;
 Hippomanes, which oft bad Step-dames use,
 And charming herbs, and baneful words infuse.
 But time irreparable flies away. &c.*

Du-Bartas that famous French Poet, doth likewise in his Treatise of the Handy-crafts, excellently describe the colour, shape, and properties of a good Horse, in the fourth part of the first day of the second week, which beginneth thus:

*Cain as they say with his deep fear disturbed,
 Then first of all th' undaunted Courser curbed;
 That whilst about anothers feet he run,
 With lusty speed he might his deaths man shun.
 Among a hundred brave, light, lusty Horses,
 (With curious eye marking their curious forces)
 He chooseth one for his industrious proof,
 With round, high, hollow, smooth, brown, jetty hoof,
 With pasterns short, upright, (but yet in mean)
 Dry sinewy flanks, strong, fleshless knees, and le.m.
 With Hart-like legs, broad breast, and large behind,
 With body large, smooth flanks, and doub'le chin'd:
 A crested neck, bow'd like a half bent bow,
 Whereon a long thin curled mane doth flow:
 A firm full tail touching the lowly ground,
 With dock between two fair fat buttocks round.
 A pricked ear that rests as little space
 As his light foot; a lean, bare bonny face,*

This jowl, his head yet of a middle size,
 Full lively flaming, sprightly rouling eyes:
 Great foming mouth, hot fuming nostrils wide,
 Of chesnut hair, his forehead starrifi'd:
 Two milky feet, a feather on his breast,
 Whom seven years old at the next grass he guest.

This comely Fennet, gently first he wins,
 And then to back him actively begins;
 Steady and streight he sits, turning his sight
 Still 'twixt the ears of his Palfrey light.
 The chafed Horse, such thrall ill suffering,
 Begins to snuffe, to snort, to leap, to fling;
 And flying swift his fearful Rider makes,
 Like some unskilful Lad that undertakes
 To hold some Ships Helm, whilst the headlong tide
 Carries away its vessel, and her guide;
 Who near to drowned in the jaws of death,
 Pale, fearful, shivering faint, and out of breath,
 A thousand times (to heaven erected eyes)
 Repents him of so bold an enterprize:
 But sitting fast, less hurt than fear'd, Cain
 Boldens himself, and his brave Horse again
 Brings him to pace, from pacing to his trot,
 From trot to gallop, after runs him out
 In full career, and at his courage smiles,
 In sitting still, he runs so many miles.

His pace is fair, and free, his trot is light
 As Tigers course, or Swallows nimble flight:
 And his brave gallop seems as swift to go,
 As Biscain Dart, or shafts from Russian Bow.
 But roaring Canon from his smoaking throat,
 Never more speedy spews the thundering shot,
 (That in an army mows whole squadrons down,
 And batters Bulwarks of a summon'd town)
 Than this light Horse sends, if he do but feel
 His Bridle slack, and in his side the heel:
 Shunning himself, his sinewy strength he stretcheth,
 Flying the earth, and flying air he catcheth:

Born whirl-wind like, he makes the trampling ground
 Shrink under him, and shake with doubling sound.
 And when the sight no more pursue he may,
 In fieldy clouds he vanisheth away.

The wise wax't Rider not esteeming best,
 To take too much now of his lusty beast,
 Restrains his fury, then with learned wand,
 The triple-corvet makes him understand :
 With skilful voyce he gently cheers his pride,
 And on his neck his flattering palm doth glide :
 He stops him steady still, new breath to take,
 And in the same path brings him softly back :
 But th' angry Steed, rising and rearing proudly,
 Striking the stones stamping, and neighing loudly ;
 Calls for the Combate, plunges, leaps and prances,
 Befomes the path, with sparkling eyes he glances :
 Champs on his burnisht Bit, and gloriously
 His nimble fetlocks listeth belly-high :
 All side-long jaunts, on either side he justles,
 And's waving Crest couragiously he bristles ;
 Making the gazers glad on every side
 To give more room unto his portly pride.

Cain gently strokes him, and now sure in seat,
 Ambitiously seeks still some fresher feat ;
 To be more famous, one while trots the Ring,
 Another while he doth him backward bring :
 Then of all fear he makes him lightly bound,
 And to each hand to menage rightly round :
 To stop, to turn, to caper, and to swim,
 To dance, to leap, to hold up any lim :
 And all so done, with time, grace or dreed skill,
 As both had but one body and one will :
 Th'one for his part no little glory gains,
 Th'other through practice by degrees attaines
 Grace in his Gallop, in his pace agility,
 Lightness of head, and in his stop facility :
 Strength in his leap, and stedfast menagings,
 Aptness in all, and in his course new wings. &c.

A famous Ferrier of *Paris* delivereth these colours of a good Horse, which because they are in *French* verse, I have Englished them *verbatim* thus :

*If you desire a Horse thee long to serve,
Take a brown-bay, and him with care preserve :
The gray's not ill, but he is prized far
That is cole-black, and blazed with a star :
If for thy self, or friend, thou wilt procure
A Horse, let him white-Lyard be, he'll long endure.*

And the same *French man* sheweth, what be also the properties and marks which a good Horse ought to have ; whereof three are to be of an Oxe, three of a Fox, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman. Those three of an Oxe, are to have a fair and full eye, a large neck, and to be strong and short jointed. Those three of a Fox, are, to have a comely and short trot, small and long ears, and a bushy tail. Those three of a Hart are to have lean and dry legs, to be well risen before and a lean head. Those three of a Woman, are to be large and fair breasted, to have a beautiful and full hair, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

The same Author delivereth yet further what ought to be the colour and shape of a good Horse. Those Horses (saith he) that are of a chest-nut colour, with Mane and Tail black, are commonly good. The Sorrel if his Mane, Tail, Knees, Fetlocks, and list along their back be black, are for the most part good, if they be otherwise free from evil conditions ; as not at any time to lie down in the water, restiffe, and such like bad qualities. The Brown-bay, Dun, Dapple-grey, Iron-grey, if their extremities be black, are many times very good, if they be well chosen. All Horses (saith he) must have good Legs, good Feet, and their Fetlocks must not be overcharged with hair ; they must have also good eyes, obedient mouthed, and well mettled : they must not have fat or fleshy legs, but to have a great belly, well risen before, streight backt, not charged with over great shoulders, he must have a thin bended neck like a Carps back, a good Crouper, large thiges, round well spread Buttocks, and a train well set on, a lean, dry, and thin Head, a full

Of the colours of a Horse.

Of the shape of a Horse.

sparkling Eye, a wide Nostril, a wide, thin and lean Jaw, a loose Throple, a well-trussed together Body, and Legs not too long; being thus accounted and shaped, it is very probable he will be very serviceable. He also sheweth signs whereby to know the good or evil sight of a Horse. Every Horse (saith he) hath a feather in his Face betwixt his eyes: if the said feather be high above the eyes, then hath he assuredly a good and perfect sight; but if the feather be below his eyes, the Horse then hath oft-times a bad sight: Observe this rule well, and you shall find it to be a thing most certain. He also giveth other marks touching the Legs of a horse: which briefly are, that a horse must have his fore-legs above the knees, to be strong, flat and large, albeit the lower part of the legs be small; provided he have a good foot, which supposing, he may prove a horse of long continuance. Another Author speaking of the colours of Horses, doth denominate them after this manner, *viz.* A Brown-Bay, a Black-Roan, or Black full of silver hairs, Cole-Black, Chest-nut, Dark-Bay, Fly-bitten, or White-Lyard. The Brown-Bay is so highly esteemed with all Nations, as that they do with one assent always rank him in the very first place of colours: the *Italians* and *French* do so much prize the Brown-Bay, as that they evermore call that colour *Bayard Loyal*, the Loyal Bayard, or more properly, according to our *English* phrase, trusty Bayard. The *French*, *Italians* and *Germans* do very far commend and prefer three sorts of Colours in Horses; to wit, the Brown-Bay, the Chest-nut, and the Cole-Black; but they do evermore prefer the Brown-Bay to the first place. Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* do both accord in the choice of the Colours of the Horse, and they never do fail in preferring the Brown-Bay to the first place.

What shall I need speak any more of Colours? I will now proceed to their Marks, wherein, albeit in most things all in a manner do agree; yet only in some few points there is some small difference. All generally assent in the white Star, and white foot, if the blaze be not too broad, or the foot too high white about the Pastern, for then it is called hosed, or buskened: Some commend the shim, or rase down the face, if it be not much broader than a three-peny silk Ribbon, but then

How to know the good sight from the bad of a Horse.

Which be the best colours of a Horse.

Of the marks of a Horse.

it

it must come to end just between the Nostrils, and not to be more on the one side of the face, than on the other. This indeed is of all true Horse-men esteemed a most beautiful good Mark, and well becometh a good Horse. Some would have the foot being white, to be on the far foot behind, and some again on the near foot before: I have heard some highly commend the Horse to have two white feet a cross, to wit, the far foot behind, and the near foot before, like as had a Horse of the old Lord Sandes, being a Courser, which he brought out of Italy, with so much charge, labour and peril of his life, (as his Lordship did sundry times report unto me,) which was as a dark bay, and his two feet a-crosse white; howsoever I have known some Horse-men dislike of the same Marks, yet I could never hear the reasons of their dislike. A Knight of my acquaintance would highly commend the Horse, who had a white foot, which was bespeckled with black motly spots; affirming that a Horse so marked did betoken good mettle, great valour, and an heroick spirit; for he would always call such a Horse *Equus generosus*, a Horse of a brave spirit; and this he would report was taught him by old Sir Henry Lea, that famous Horse-man, and no less excellent Breeder, of whom this Knight bought many delicate Colts, some of which were thus marked. All good Horse-men do attest, that the Horse with much white upon his face, raw nosed, sheath, yard, tuel, and hoofs white, skin white, and legs holed, and wall-eyed, is generally weak, faint, of a cowardly condition, tender, and wathy of flesh, subject to rebellion, restlessness, to starting, stumbling, evil sighted, subject to tire, dangerous to his Keeper, for biting and striking; and in a word, of a most base and evil condition. For *the countenance is the true Index of the mind: And a lewd look prognosticateth a lewd condition: And again a deformed countenance doth delineate a wicked deformed disposition and manners.* It is holden for a good mark in a Horse to have many Feathers about his body, as upon his forehead, so it be situated above the eyes; and the higher it stands, the better: Also upon the middle of the Neck near to the Crest, under the Neck in the middle of the Throple, upon the breast, and upon both the Flanks, and upon both buttocks, which for Horses to have Feathers in these and such like places, is most commendable.

Feathers holden to be a good mark in a Horse.

Now

The perfect shape
of a Horſe.

Now as touching the perfect and true ſhape of a Horſe, wherein we have more contrariety of opinions, than are either in the Colour or Marks, whercof I have given you a taſte already : Nevertheleſs, I will demonſtrate how far commonly all do meet in the ſhape of a well timbred Horſe. Firſt therefore it is required that the hoof be black, ſmooth, dry, large, round and hollow : The Paſterns ſtraight and upright, Fetlocks ſhort, the Legs ſtraight and flat, called alſo lath-legged, the Knees bony, lean and round, the Neck long, high-rear'd, and great towards the Breſt, the Breſt large and round, the Ears ſmall, ſharp, long and upright, the Forehead lean and large, the Eyes great, full and black, the Brows well filled, and ſhooting outwards, the Jaws wide, ſlender and lean, the Noſtrils wide and open, the Mouth great, the Head long and lean like to a ſheep, the Mane thin and large, the Withers ſharp and pointed, the Back ſhort, even, plain and double chined, the Sides and Ribs deep, large, and bearing out like the cover of a Trunk, and cloſe ſhut at the huckle-bone, the Belly long and great, but hid under the ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plain, and broad, with a large ſpace betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long and large, with well fashioned bones, and thoſe fleſhy, the Hams dry and ſtraight, the Trunchion ſmall, long, well ſet on, and well couched, the Train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard and Stones ſmall ; and laſtly, the Horſe to be well riſen before. And to conclude the perfect ſhape of a Horſe, according as a famous Horſe man hath deſcribed, is in a few words, thus, *Viz.* A broad Forehead, a great Eye, a lean Head, thin, ſlender, lean, wide Jaws, a long high reared Neck, high reared Withers, a broad deep Cheſt and Body, upright Paſterns, and narrow Hoof : And this is the common allowed, and approved ſhape of a perfect Horſe ; ſo as if any of theſe things be deficient in him, he cannot be ſaid to be a Horſe of a perfect ſhape. Wherefore I conclude that if a Horſe be of a good Colour, well marked, and rightly ſhaped, and right alſo by Sire and Mare ; it will be ſeldem ſeen that he ſhould prove ill, unleſs his Nature be alienated, and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or elſe that he be otherwiſe wronged, and moſt ſhamefully abuſed by the means of a hair-brain, negligent, or inconfiderate Rider

or Groom. But I may in this point be taxed to hold a Paradox; for some may object unto me, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colours, best Marks, and truest shapes, do nevertheless prove arrant Jades, restiffe, stubborn, ill natured, subject to tiring, and the like: I answer, I acknowledge all this to be most true, for I have known Horses, who upon their first view, have been in extrinsecal shew so hopeful, as that they have promised what a man could expect from them; which notwithstanding when they have come to the test, they have been a scandal to their sex: but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of these who have thus miscarried, you shall have twenty who will prove right, and answerable to your mind: I have also known Horses, which wanting these good attributes, and who have been as different from those we call good, even as Chalk is from Cheese, who have proved very good Horses: howbeit I will not counsel you to breed upon such an one, who albeit he may bring you Colts, yet I dare not promise you he shall ever bring you a good Colt, whereof I have oft-times made Trial, as well for Horses of Menage, as for Hunters, and Horses for the Course. Neither need there any more be said upon this subject.

C H A P. V.

Of the Office of the Rider and Groom.

HAVING now bred Colts according to my Instructions, which you may well hope will prove to your mind and best liking, nevertheless some things there yet remain, whereof duly to consider; and that is, that when you have thus (I say) bred your Colts, which you may very well hope are right, your eye and judgment for Shape, Colour and Marks, promising no less; it then behooveth you to be very Cautelous in the Handling, Breaking, Riding, and well-ordering them, whether you intend them for Mennage, Course, Hunting, or the Rode; in any of which an especial care would be had to provide you of Riders, Grooms, and Keepers, such as shall be
KNOWN

known to be expert in their faculties ; in which principally consisteth either their direct making, or marring, and final ruine. For we cannot say, that a Colt (yet unhandled) at three or four years of age, is, or can be a perfect good Horse, whilst he remaineth (I say) unriden, unhandled, and unmade, until such time as he hath been taken up into the Stable, made gentle, taught to lead, content to be shod, to be Back'd, Broken, Ridden, Wayed, Mouthed ; and to be brief, brought to his utmost perfection. By this time you will come to be able to know and understand his true Worth, Vertue, Nature, Disposition, and Quality, his Pace, his Rain, or Bearing, his Toughness, Strength and Affability, his true worth and goodness, and what other attributes are besitting a generous Horse.

What
manner
of man a
Rider
ought to
be.

His Rider therefore must be an expert and able Horseman, and his Keeper every way as sufficient ; otherwise what defects you shall find in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to the Groom. Wherefore your care must be, that both Rider and Groom be known sufficient, lest for want of true Science, your Horse may est-soons be brought to assume such sinister conditions, from which he will not be weaned in a long time after. Wherefore if your Rider be known to be an able man, and your Groom sufficiently skilful, you must then expect that perfection from your Horse, you ever hoped. For my part thus much I aver, that this Noble Science (Noble, I call it, for that it is a Faculty well be-coming a truly Noble Gentleman) is an art wherein I have been versed and travelled for more than forty years, as well at home, as in parts abroad ; in which I have most diligently consumed much time, as well to the labour of my body and mind, as to my no small expense : and it doth not a little trouble me that in places where I come here in *England*, I do find so few Horse men, (considering it is an Island that doth abound in Horses, whereof no Kingdom under Heaven more) and yet so many Braggadochies there be, who will so crack and boast of their skill in this Heroick Science ; and when I shall begin to discourse with them of *Horsemanship*, they will talk so fillily, and so impertinently, as makes me blush to hear them : insomuch as I have much trouble with my patience in forbearing to let them know their absurd folly : and if I but ask them
any

any easie question concerning this mystery, they presently fall into strange and preposterous discourses, venting many incredible wonders, as far from sense, and as high above the Moon, as the Moon is above us, and they are as poor, and as ignorant in the true nature and knowledge of the Art, as not to be able to understand the very first grounds and principles in Horsemanship. Others there be, who have attained to so much superficial speculative knowledge by reading the Works of Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, getting thereby some glimpse of speculation, but less true practice, (wherein is as much difference as betwixt us and the Antipodes) and therefore in what esteem they either are or can be among Horsemen, is most easie to be imagined. Others there are, who being so active and dexterous, as to be able to sit a rough, unriden Colt, a few plunges, by fast holding with both hands to the Mane and Pummel, and by clinging with their Legs close to the body of the Horse, till by striving and his violent disordered agitation, he hath put himself from off his Wind; that will not stick presently to promise to themselves the true and entire mystery of able Horsemanship. Others again I oft meet with, who by sometimes frequenting the *Muze*, where Riders use to menage; who after have made no bones to cry themselves up for as good and as able Horsemen as any in *England*. Others I do very well know, who by reading have made some petty practice, howsoever (God knows) to very small purpose (so far forth as their diminutive skill was able to extend) upon such (not rightly bred Geldings, and small Nags of their own) wherein they have assumed unto themselves so much pretended knowledge, as that they have in their disjoynted discourses not spared to tax the famous *Alexanders*, and other eminent Riders of this our Kingdom for Novices, and meer ignorant Horsemen. Such (I say) is the vanity and arrogancy of these our days, in which ignorance dareth to traduce knowledge, and Vice lay an obloquy upon Vertue. *For unless a man do arrive unto the depth of profound knowledge, he shall be derided; but like as he either hath or hath it not, he shall be either commended or scorned.* For you shall not see one in a hundred of these pretenders of knowledge, who doth so much as understand the terms of this generous mystery; and therefore I may

truly say of them: that *not to know the terms or principles, is to be ignorant of the Art it self*: And yet I have known some of these so impudently weak, as to take upon them to teach, whereat I have not a little marvelled, it being a general received rule, *viz. It is impossible for a man to teach that which he never learned.* And further a venerable Author saith, *He that will be his own Scholar, shall be sure to have a fool to his master.* For assuredly, *great folly and weakness is to be observed in that man, who shall take upon him to be a master or teacher, who never knew what it was to be a Scholar.*

But if you desire to have your Colts come to the height of perfection, let then your care be to furnish your self of a good Rider, and such an one who is well known and cryed up to be an exquisite Horseman. He must not be of life dissolute, or debauched, nor of nature harsh, furious; cholerick, or hair-brain'd: for the least of either of these vices, are unbecoming a person of this profession; but he must be of life sober, and in his function laborious and diligent, of complexion Flegmatick, and patient, he must be master of his passions; for *A wise man knoweth how to conquer and overcome himself*: for that Rider that is cholerick, rash, hasty, and soon provoked to impatience, can never make a good Horseman, let him love the Art never so well; neither shall he be able to make a Horse so perfect as otherwise he might have done, were he otherwise conditioned; but let him apply his best endeavours, yet that Horse he maketh, shall have defects, which his inconsiderate harshness hath caused. For if your young Horse be rightly organized, and as well natured, as well mettled, and as correspondent for marks and colours, he seldom proves ill in the making, supposing his Rider be master of his Art: but if otherwise, by which means he do fall into imperfections or vices, it is not much to be wondered at; for those his evil conditions and faults are not so much to be imputed to the Horse as to his Teacher: and as touching curstness and correction to be used to young Horses, we have a general rule in Horsemanship, which is, *that he is not cryed up for a good Horseman, who wanteth knowledg how to bring his horse to perfection by sweet and gentle means, rather than by correction and severe chastisement*: yet that correction must sometimes be used, no man but knoweth, to be as necessary as his meat;

never

nevertheless let correction be so considerately applyed, as not therein to exceed the limits and bounds of moderation; Let it, I say, be done *to amendment, and not to destruction or confusion, and utter marring of him*: for discretion in a case of this nature is a most precious jewel, and highly to be valued; and when his Rider shall at any time correct him, let it be done in the very instant when he offendeth, and doth justly merit the same; and not otherwise, for else he will not know the cause why he was chastised, whereby he becometh rather confounded than amended: so on the other side, when the Horse doth well, let him be cherished and much made of, which will the better encourage him in the same way of going forward in well-doing.

And as touching the Groom, he must be a man who must truly love his Horse, and so shape his course towards him, as that the Horse may love and dote upon his Keeper, otherwise the Horse may soon get so many evil habits, which he will not easily alter or forget. For as Aristotle learnedly saith, *Like as you order him, so shall you find*: For the Horse by nature is the most loving creature to man of all other brute creatures, and none more obedient, none more intelligible, none more desirous to please; wherefore if he be sweetly, mildly, and plausibly dealt with, he will be also reciprocal: Otherwise if his Keeper be harsh, furious, choleric, and passionate, the Horse will be put besides his patience, stare, and see boggards in his Keepers face, become rebellious, fall to striking, biting, and other vices, to the often endangering as well of the life and limbs of his Keeper, as of his Rider, and others: For the old Proverb is most true, *Patience once wounded or wronged, is soon turned into fury and rage*. For the Horse is not said to be *Creatura rationalis, a creature endowed with a reasonable soul*; but is, *Creatura simpliciter animata, a creature which hath only life and sense*; as learned Philosophers do teach: a creature (I say) in whom is only life, sense, and memory, but discourse he hath not, and therefore must be governed by judgment and discretion. If therefore your Groom be a man of a loose, evil, and debauched life, or not otherwise able to govern, or to master his passions, he is wholly unfit to supply this place, and to take a charge of this nature upon him: yea he must be a man of a boundless patience, he must be judicious and discreet, by which means he may with the greater facility,

What manner of person a Groom ought to be.

cility, and less difficulty bring his Horse to be of the same identity, parity, and essence with himself, their loves and hearts truly united; so as he may at pleasure mould and fashion him into what form he desireth: He must continually toy, dally and play with him, and teach him to play the wanton, be always talking and speaking pleasing words and phrases unto him: He must lead him abroad morning and evening when the Sun shineth warm, and then run, scope, and shew him all the delight and contentment he is able; He must duly curry, curb, and dress him, wipe, dust, pick and cleanse him, feed, pamper and cherish him, keep him warm and sweet, be always fiddling and doing something about him, be often tampering with his heels & legs, often taking up his feet, rapping him gently upon the soles, and knocking him softly upon the Coffins, until his keeper hath taught him to take up any foot of himself at first bidding: His Keeper must have him always so clean of his body, setting upon his coat so perfect a gloss, as that a man may almost see his face upon it. His feet would be kept stopped, and the coffins daily anointed, his heels free from scratches, and other such like forances; and his keeper ought also to keep so continual a vigilant eye upon him, and all his actions, as well in his feeding and drinking, as otherwise, whereby no symptoms of sickness or infirmity (inward or outward) shall be able so soon to shew its head, but they may be as easily, and as soon cured and amended, or else prevented: For *to amend a fault in the beginning, is far better and more easie than when it hath been long accustomed*: For our old Proverb is, *Things are sooner prevented than amended.*

But I am loath to wade any further into this subject, for this is not that I intended when I began: yet since I am thus far imbarqued in it, I will give you a few Rules which may be profitable both to the Master and the Groom, which if they be well observed, you may undoubtedly keep your Horse long in very good estate and health. First, therefore before you put your Horse to grass (I speak now of Horses which have been ridden and exercised) some four or five days, or a week before, take blood from him according as your discretion or the Ferrrier by his Art shall dictate: The next day after give him the drink.

Rules fit
to be ob-
served.

1.

drink of *Diapente*, mentioned in *Lib. 2. Chap. 7. Sect. 2.* with good Sack, and let him after his drink be inured to hardiness some days before his turning forth, by taking by degrees his clothes from him, lest by doing things on a suddain, he fortune to take more cold than you can easily cure: neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of *May*, at the soonest, for till that time, grass will not have bite enough for him to fill his belly, nor the season warm enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warm Sun-shine day, and about the hour of ten;) for Horses pampered in warm stables, and kept close, will be subject to take cold, if a discreet order and course be not taken with them. Secondly, let him be taken up from Grass about the feast of *St. Bartholomew*, which is upon the 24 day of *August*, or soon after, for then the season doth begin to let fall cold dews, which betideth no good, but much harm to your Horse, and then beginneth the heart of Grass to fail, so as the Grass which then he feedeth upon, breedeth no good nutriment, but gross flegmatick and cold humors, which putrieth and corrupteth the blood. Let your Horse, I say, betaken up about the day before mentioned, but with all the quietness that may be for fear of heating him, by reason his greafe he gat at grass is tender, so as every little motion will dissolve the same, whereby the bloud may be inflamed, and so the Horse be brought into imminent peril, at least of sickness, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the stable, or sooner, let him be shod, and let blood, and drencht, as before is shewed you; for this preventeth Yellows, Stavers, and such like diseases, which the Gall and Spleen occasioneth, which the heart and strength of grass (through the rankness of the blood) doth ingender in his body; Then purge and cleanse him both outwardly and inwardly, like as you are taught *Lib. 2. Chap. 2.*

Thirdly, search your Horses mouth, both then and at other times often, for fear of Barbes, Bigs, Blisters, and Cankers, and such like maladies which are very incident to breed in the mouthes of Horses, which by the colour of the spots of his Gums, Tongue, and Mouth you may perceive, and so the better and more easily both prevent and cure all such diseases as are inherent to those parts. Fourthly, rub and wash sometimes your Horses mouth and tongue with Vinegar or Verjuice mingled

gled with Bay ſalt, but Verjuice is the better, and let ſome paſs down his throat, for it is both wholeſome and good. Fifthly, obſerve your Horſes Eyes and Countenance, which if you do find to be heavy, drowſie, and dull, then be you confident all is not well within him : Then take bloud from him, and give him the drink of *Diapente*, or *Diateſſeron*, and he ſhall do well again.

Sixthly, obſerve well his ſtanding, and his going, if you do perceive him to falter with any of his feet, be it never ſo little, or elſe which foot ſoever he doth favour, let the Groom preſently take up that foot, and examine it, if he can feel any place warmer than other, let him now aſſure himſelf ſomething is amiſs there ; take off the Shoe, and ſearch the foot carefully, to ſee whether Gravel, or Nail be any cauſe thereof ; but if you do find all well there, ſearch the heel and fruſh ; if you find not any thing there, ſearch higher for ſome ſwelling that may be in the paſtern-joynt in the leg, or back ſinew ; and when he hath found the fault, and cauſe of his complaint, let him preſently inform the Ferrier, who is to apply his remedies, and by this means he ſhall diſcharge his Duty as well becometh him.

Seventhly, Obſerve alſo if he put forth his foot more than uſually he was wont to do ; then aſſure your ſelf the grief lieth either in the knee or ſhoulder ; if it be ſo, preſently advertiſe the Ferrier, who knoweth what is beſt to be done with him.

Eighthly, When you are to take your journey with him, water him in the houſe, and give him his breakfast of good clean Oats, ſweet, and well ſifted ; then bridle him and tye him up to the Rack ; then curry, dreſs, and ſaddle him, but draw not the Girts too ſtreight till you come to take his back ; then preſently caſt his cloth over him, leſt he take cold, and when you come to take his back, draw his Girts ſtreight, and ſo on Gods name begin your journey, but for a mile, two, or more, go fair and ſoftly, for if you heat him too ſoon, he will not digeſt his meat, but crudities will ariſe in his ſtomach, which you ſhall perceive by his ſcowering and purging, as he travelleth, whereby you may either founder him in his body, or elſe cauſe a *Calentura*, burning Fever, or ſome other worſe Infirmity to ſeize ; and as you do travel him, when you are come ſome four

or five miles from home, alight from him and walk him, sometimes standing still to see if you may provoke him to staie, for it is very wholesome and good, which you may also do well to attempt when you dismount and walk him down any hill; and some three miles before you come to your journies end, ride him into some River or other watering place, unto his belly, but no deeper in any wise, and then let him drink, yet not so much at the first as he desireth, but by degrees, first taking up his head to cause him to wash his mouth, whereby to free it from filth and fume; then let him drink half his draught, and lastly so much as in reason he will: then observe upon what pace you brought him to the water, with the same pace (and neither softlier nor faster) ride him a mile or better, by which time he will have warmed the water in his Belly, without taking cold or harm. This watering him thus will very much refresh him, cause him to forget his wearisomness, and when he shall come to eat, it will be with very good Appetite, which otherwise he would not have done. A mile at least before you come to your journeys end, slack your pace, and begin to go more softly, to the end he may not be too hot when he shall be set up, have him without delay into the Stable warm, well littered up to the Belly; but take heed you suffer him not to be either walked; or washed, for these two things are very pernicious, and most dangerous for him, and the cause of more sickness, sorances, and death to Horses, than of all other things besides. So soon as you have brought him into the Stable, the first thing you do, off with your coat, and tye him up to the empty Rack: then litter him up to the Belly, ungird him, take off his Saddle, rub his back with speed, and put his Cloth upon him, and upon that his Saddle again, and gird him with his Sursingle, then make clean his stirrups, stirrop-leathers and Girts, and rub him down both Legs, Belly, Body, Breast, Head, Face, and Neck, and so stufte him up with clean dry straw, and let him stand so upon the Bit an hour, evermore looking upon him, lest he sweat a-new; which if you shall perceive, then to allay it, take away some of the straw wherewith he is stufed, and he will cool again; if you find him in good temper, unbridle him, and wash his mouth with water and salt, and wash also his Bit, and so bridle him up again, and give.

give him some good Hay in his Rack to champ upon, for half an hours space. After come to him again, and then unbridle him, put on his Collar-halter, and so give him fresh Hay to eat, Then rub him all over, and so let him stand till you have supped; then come to him, and give him either a sweet mash or white water, which when he hath drunk, let him eat Hay for half an hour after, and then give him his Provender, but by degrees, not too much together, for fear of cloying him, which so soon as he hath dispatched, unsaddle him, and rub his body all over, cloath him up warm, and whisp him up round with small whisps: Which done, rub his legs dry, pick, and stop his feet, and anoint the Coffins, and Cronets of his hoofs, giving him Hay for all night: and lastly shake up his litter about and under him, that so he may lye soft and warm: and thus doing, leave him to his rest.

The next morning, come to him early, and first observe whether or not he hath lain down; then look upon his Ordure, whether it be laxative or costive, or if he have avoided any greafe, which if he hath, give him with his Oats a handful or two of Hemp-seed, and so order him as you are accustomed, or otherwise, as you in discretion do find to be most requisite. Many other rudiments there are to be given, which, for that they are so commonly known to every Groom, are impertinent to rehearse: Only in a word for a close, I say, that a good Groom ought to be a man of good life, and sober demeanour, no Tipler, no haunter of Ale-houses, or Taverns, (like as too too many are) no lyer abroad from his Horse in the night, nor long from him in the day, and an early riser; the Stable must be his Compting-house; he must not be so intimate with any as with his Horse; have entercourse with none so much as with him: he must be his principal associate, and make him of his Cabinet-Council: his Horse must be his only *Idaa*, the only Mistress whom he must court, and serve: and so soon as he doth suspect but any the least inconvenience in him, let him instantly impart it to the Ferrier, and look what the Ferrier doth give in directions, let his Keeper diligently observe and execute accordingly; for it is an argument of a proud and preposterous condition in a Groom, to swarve from the instructions which the Ferrier shall at any time give. Ninthly, as the

Groom

Groom must have a special care he do not pine, or under-meat his Horse in his diet, so he must be as cautelous he do not cloy him, by laying before him too much Provender at once: but his way must be to give him little at once, and often; he must eat up all before he give him any more; yea he must eat it with good appetite, otherwise he may marr his appetite utterly, and bring him to loath his Provender; and look what Hay and Provender he doth at any time give him, let it be sweet, well dusted and throughly purged from Feathers, Hens-dung, Cats-duag, stones, gravel, and such like filth, which, are things hurtful and troublefom to his stomach and feeding; for they will cause him to refuse and forsake his meat, unless pure hunger shall constrain him thereunto; for such kind of nasty meat and food will engender in him noysome and noxious infirmities.

Tenthly, as touching the furniture and Caparison which the Horse is to wear, the Groom must be careful to keep them clean, bright, and handsome; the Saddles, after sweating and travel, well aired in the Sun and Wind, and after beaten and dusted, the stirrups wiped clean, with the strops and other such like leathers thereto belonging and appertaining, and so put up safe and handfomly with their cases and coverings upon them to preserve them from dust: The foot cloaths (if he have any under his charge) cleansed, brushed, and neatly folded up; the Bits taken from the Head-stals, and clean washed, dried before the fire, and wrapped up in an oily cloth to keep them from Rust and Canker, and the Bosses carefully also made clean, together with their Bits, and so laid up in the Press or Chest made for such like purpose. The Headstals and Reins, Croopers, and other accoutrements would likewise be wiped, made very clean, and hanged up in the Press in their proper places: The Girts, Sursingles, Stirrup-leathers, and such like necessaries, would be diligently viewed and examined, cleansed, and made clean; and if any thing be amiss or broken, let it be mended incontinently, lest they should be to do when they were to be used: In conclusion, nothing should be out of order at any time, but every thing (as well Stable as Saddlehouse) kept clean, neat, and sweet, which will purchase unto the Groom, no small respect with his Lord or Master; and much more reputation and applause of fo many as shall be an eye-witness thereof.

THE COMPLEAT
 HORSE-MAN,
 AND EXPERT
 FERRIER.

The Second Book.

CHAP. I.

*Of what points consisteth the Office of the Ferrier :
 Handled Dialogue-wise.*

Hippophilus.

M After Sergeant Ferrier, you are well encountred : I have been often at your house and shop, with a desire to have spoken with you, but could never have the good fortune to find you at home.

Hippiatrus. Sir, it may well be, that you may come often to my house, and yet miss of me, unless it be at certain set hours ; for that I having many Cures daily in my hands, and besides, I am frequently sent for by many to look upon sick Horses ; marvel not you cannot so easily find me at home : but what is your pleasure now that you have met me ?

Hippophilus. You may remember (good *Hippiatrus*) you promised me (upon our last meeting) to assist me in the perfecting
 of

of my Cures, which so long since I purposed to publish, and now I would gladly know what day and place you would appoint for the final dispatch of the business.

Hippiatrus. *Truly Sir, the time now fits well, for I have dispatched all my affairs for this day; wherefore sithence we are met so near my house, we will enter, where we will be retired into a private chamber, prohibiting any access unto us, my man Hippoferus only excepted, whom I will interrogate in such points as shall concern the Ferriers Art or Science: and you sitting by, making your self very attent to our discourse, and taking in writing the prime heads of our discussion, when any thing passeth whereof you may desire to be better informed, propose the same, and we will give you a full solution.*

Hippophilus. Your motion likes me well, for it will be the best courte you can think of whereby to give me ample satisfaction.

A formal Examen of the Office of the Ferrier.

Hippiatrus. *What is the Ferriers Art?*

Hippoferus. It principally consists of four things, to wit, Science, Experience, Knowledge, and Handy-work.

Hippiatrus. *Letting pass the first three, tell me what is Handy-work?*

Hippoferus. Handy-work, is to heat the Iron well, to Sodder well, to Forge well, to turn a Shoe well, to make and point a nail well, to pare the hoof well, to Cauterize well, to be light and well-handed, bold, and hardy in dressing of a Horse well of such Accidents as may happen unto him.

Hippiatrus. *What are the Principal Members of the Creature?*

Hippoferus. They be three, viz. the Liver, the Heart, and the Brain; and if the Creature be offended in any of these three, especially the Brain, which is in the top of the head, then I say he will die.

Hippophilus. I always took the principal members of any living creature to be four.

Hippiatrus. *Therein (Sir) you are mistaken, for any of these former three being hurt, there is evermore present death, especially the Heart, and the Brain: But if any other member besides these three be hurt, yet may your Horse live, and do well again. But which member (I pray you Sir) do you hold to be one of the four principal Members?*

Hippophilus. *The Stones or Gignitors.*

Hippiatrus. *How do you assoyl this Objection Hippoferus?*

Hippoferus. Most easily Sir, that the *Gignitors* cannot be any one of the principal Members, reason teacheth us: For you cannot so much as touch any of these three; but you do either kill the Creature outright, or else desperately endanger him. Now supposing the *Stones* may fortune to receive hurt or damage, yet if I be in despair of healing or curing them, I can nevertheless cut, or take them clean away from the body, or cause them to fall away by other good means, or by medicine, without peril of his life: he will only thereby lose his natural heat, whereby he will be disinabled from having any disposition to *Coity*, or power of *Procreation*.

Hippiatrus. *What is that which goeth from the Head of the Horse, and diffuseth it self throughout all other Members?*

Hippoferus. They are two *Sinews*, or *Tendons* which are white, and have a *Ligature* beginning at the very end of the *Nose*, and extend themselves along the *Neck*, and along the *Back*, and make their extent to the four *Legs*, and take their *Ligaments* in the fore *Fect*.

Hippophilus. I was in good hope, *Hippoferus*, you would likewise have spoken of the number of the *Sinews*, and where every one is seated; for it is a thing very material, and I do the rather desire it for that I am not as yet perfect in that point.

Hippiatrus. That was but forgotten both by my self and him Sir, wherefore *Hippoferus*, make answer to the Gentlemans demand.

The number of the sinews.

2

2

2

8

10

4

1

Hippoferus. I shall do it most gladly; wherefore as touching the *Sinews* we say, that there are in every Horse twenty nine, or thirty, great and small. First, the two great *Sinews* which I named before, which have their first Origin from the end of the *Nose*. Item two branches which are main-*Sinews* that proceed from the *Brain*, and run down the *Cheeks* to the *Teeth*. Item: there are from the *Shoulders* to the first joint of the *Armes*, or *fore-legs* downwards; two great *Sinews*. Item from the *Knees* to the *Pasterns* are four great *Sinews*, with the same number in the hinder part. Item in the fore-part of the *Breast*, and above it, as well within as without, are ten *Sinews*, some greater and some smaller. Item from the *Reins* of the *Back* to the *Stones* are four great *Sinews*. Lastly, one great main *Sinew* which runneth

runneth along to the end of the *Tail*. So as the full number of the *Sinews* are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to be discerned.

Hippiatrus. *What is that which we do commonly call principal or vital Bloud?*

Hippoferus. Those be *Veins* which are vessels of quick or running *Bloud*, which men do call *Vital Bloud*.

Hippiatrus. *What is that which men do call Vital Bloud?*

Hippoferus. It is that which when the Creature sleepeth, his bloud is in continual agitation, and never ceaseth.

Hippiatrus. *How many Veins hath a Horse in his whole Body?*

Hippoferus. To speak properly, a Horse hath but only one *Vein*, which is that which we call the *Median*, or *Lives Vein*, which is in the *Liver*, being the true Fountain, Source, and great *Tun* from whence the *Canes*, *Conduit-pipes*, and little *Veins* (as the smaller *Rivers*) do separate themselves, which do run through all the parts and members of the whole body.

Hippiat. *What call you Separation?*

Hippoferus. Separation is of two kinds, *viz.* ascendent and descendent: those which do ascend to the *Head* and *Body*, are called *Veins ascendent*; and those which do run low, or to the *Legs*, and lower members, are called *Hollow*, or *Descendent Veins*.

Hippophil. I did ever think and believe till now, that a Horse had more *Veins* than one; how then cometh it to pass that we open *Veins* in so many several parts of the body, being so different *Veins* the one from the other?

Hippiat. I answer you Sir, if you be pleased to examine your Paper, there you shall find how that *Hippoferus* told you that a Horse hath but only one *Vein*; and it is a most infallible verity, for that all those other *Canes* which you call *Veins*, are but the very same with that One, which evermore standeth full of *Bloud*, up to the top, conveyed into him, which said great *Vein* is annexed unto the *Liver*; which *Vein* doth resemble a great *Tun* or *Cistern*, which conveyeth the *Bloud* into all the lesser *Veins*, by which means, they continually remain full, having no vacancy or want: Like as a *Cistern* (*v. G.*) receiveth its water from a *Pump*; and so conveyeth and bestoweth it into and among the smaller *Pipes*, oft-times storeth with plenty of water a whole *Village* or *Town*, or at least a whole *Family*.

Hippo-

Hippophilus, *I understand you well ; but now friend Hippoferus, tell me I pray you, in how many Veins may a man take Blood from a Horse in case of necessity ?*

The number of the veins.

Hippoferus, In many parts, to wit : in the *Neck*, in the *Weeping-Veins*, under the *Ears*, and in six other places of and about the *Head* ; as in the *Palate-Veins*, in the *Tongue*, in the *Flank-Veins*, in the *Breast* and *Spur-Veins* : In the Four members, to wit, the *Legs*, *Thighs*, *Pasterns* and *Feet* ; also in sundry other places, according as necessity shall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady or disease of the said Horse.

Hippophilus. But yet I was in good hope you would have delivered the Reasons for which you do open any *Vein*, as also which they be in particular.

The particular Veins.

Hippoferus. The *Veins* which we do usually open, are ; First, the two *Temple-veins*, which easeth the pains in the *Head*, coming of Colds, Rheumes, Feavers, Yellows, and Stavers, Drowfiness, Frenzy, the Sleepy-Evil, Falling-evil, or any grief in or about the *Eyes* or *Brain*, Secondly, we open the two *Eye* or *Weeping-veins*, being most sovereign for such Diseases whereunto the *Eyes* are subject ; as *watery* or *weeping Eies* *Bloodshotten*, *Pin* and *Web*, *Haw*, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two *Palate Veins* in the *Mouth*, and those do cure the Lampafs, and any inward sickness within the Body ; as the Yellows, Stavers, Anticor, Surfeits, Drowfiness, Tiredness, or weariness of the Body ; or if the Horse have any Malady in the *Throat*, as the Strangles, Quinzey, Kernels, Pustils, either within or without ; it many times helpeth Inflammations, Glanders, or the like : For the eating or swallowing of his own blood, is most wholesom and sovereign in such cases. Fourthly, we do usually open the two *Neck-Veins*, which helpeth Farcins, Yellows, Stavers, Scabs, Mainges, Agues, Feavers, Colds, Surfeits, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any way noxious to the inward parts of the body : And it also preventeth suddain sickness, if you have any suspect thereof. Fifthly, the opening of the two *Plate* or *Breaste-Veins* do help the Anticor, Sickness of the Heart, Morfounding, which is the Foundring in the Body by over-riding, whereby the Grease of the Horse is molten, it also preventeth Diseases in the *Liver*, *Lungs*, and inward parts grieved ; and some-

sometimes hurts in the *Shoulder*, which causeth lameness before. Sixthly, we use to touch the two *Arm or Thigh Veins* before, 2 6 which helpeth foundring in the *Fore-feet*, Mallenders, Splent, Screw, Ring-bone, and such like infirmities in the *Fore-feet*, and such other higher parts. Seventhly we use to take *Blood* 4 7 from the four *shackle Veins* before, and this is very good for the Crown-Scab, Ring-bone, and such like diseases. Eighthly, 2 8 we use to strike the two *Spur Veins*, which cureth the Farcin in the *Sides*, morfounding, swelling under the *Belly*, which is a Disease called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, we prick 2 9 the two *Toe Veins*, which do help Frettizing, Foundring, Hoof-bound, beating of the Horses feet by Riding upon hard and stony ways, and the like. Tenthly, we open the two *Thigh* 2 10 *Veins* behind; and this doth help the grief of the *Kidnies*, Swelling in the *hinder legs*, Foundrings, Sellenders, Scratches, Kybes, &c. and it also helpeth diseases in and about the *Belly*, as pissing of *Bloud*, pissing oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the weakness of the *Reins*, the *Back*, *Belly*, *Guts*, or any other the inward parts, the Curb, Spaven, and such diseases which come of rankness of *Blood*. Eleventhly, we some- 4 11 times do open the four *Shackle Veins*, behind; and this is very good against foundrings and other pains in and about the *Fect*. Twelfthly, we let *Blood* in the two *flank or haunch Veins*, and 2 12 this is most profitable for all kind of Feavers, the *Stones*, Poverty, and the Felterworm. Thirteenthly, we draw *bloud* from the 2 13 two *Tail-veins*, which cureth the Mainge in the *Tail*, falling of the hair, or the Itch in the *Tail*. And these are for the most part all the *Veins* which are usually opened, or that my self have ever known, or have seen my Master open, which are very great means to help these Diseases by me mentioned. So as the full sum or number of *Veins* which Ferriers use commonly to open, are thirty. Other *Veins* there are which are of a smaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be opened. Nevertheless some *Ferriers* there are, who have fondly reported unto me that they have let Horses *bloud* in many of those small *Veins*, but I could never learn for what purpose the same was done: let this therefore which I have here set you down, suffice for this matter:

Hippophilus. I have heard you *Hippoferus* attentively, but yet I would most gladly understand one thing, which is, that whereas you say that the opening of these *Veins* doth help and cure such Diseases, I would gladly be satisfied herein; for if by the opening of these *Veins* the Horse will be cured; then we may spare much labour in applying drinks, purgations, clysters, and such other things, which we usually make and give to Horses.

Hippoferus. Sir, I assure me you cannot be so ignorant as you speak; for this opening of *Veins* and *blood-letting*, doth not always absolutely cure those diseases which I have named; but it doth sometimes assuage the Malignancy of the malady, sometimes it preventeth diseases, and sometimes again it prepareth the body the better to receive such physical drinks which do inwardly cure them, and such salves, Oyls, and Unguents, which do dry and heal up outward infirmities; but that *blood-letting* doth absolutely cure them, I say it doth not, howsoever in some cases it may.

Hippiatrus. What is that which departs from the head of the Horse, and serveth him for his principal members?

Hippoferus. I have shewed you that already; they be *sinews* and *nerves*; these *sinews* which depart and proceed from the head, give sense and feeling, arriving in the body of the creature, and so diffuse and spread themselves through all the principal members, which do descend from the head unto all the other members, which make a conjunction of the *bones*, of the *legs*, of the body, and of all the other members.

Hippiatrus. How many bones hath a Horse, and how are they situated in the body?

Of the
bones.

Hippoferus. There are in the body of every Horse, two hundred fifty and seven bones.

Hippiatrus. Name them severally.

Hippoferus. All the bones which every Horse hath whereby to make up an organical Body, are these; *Viz.* he hath in his head thirty nine, and forty teeth: the bones in his head do comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the *scull*, albeit they be composed of parts and parcels of certain other bones, also the two flat Handles, which from the *Palate*; and the *Fork* or *Throat* hath five, the *Chine* fifty two, the *Breast* one, *Ribs* thirty six, the

39

40

2

3

52

1

36

the

the *Fore-legs* and *Fore-feet* have forty four, and the *hinder-legs* and *feet* forty. So as the whole structure of the body of a Horse whereby to perfect a full building of *bones*, consisteth of about 257, or 259, if they be rightly computed; which do represent themselves altogether at what time the perfect *Anatomy* of a Horse is laid open.

44

40

259

Hippiatrus. *What natural composition hath the Head of the Horse?*

Hippoferus. He hath *Eyes* to see, *Ears* wherewith to hear, *Nostrils* to smell or scent, a *Mouth* and *Tongue* to taste and eat, and wherewith to nourish him.

Hippiatrus. *What natural composition hath the whole body of a Horse in general?*

Hippoferus. The whole body hath its *Heart*, *Liver*, *Lungs*, *Spleen*, *Stones*, and *Gignitors*: All which are called the *Noble parts*, and that most justly: For when either the one or the other of any of these parts receive hurt, or damage, the poor Beast is in peril of his life, except in the *Gignitors*, according as I have declared.

Hippiatrus. *What Maladies or Diseases are most usually incident to the Horse?*

Hippoferus. Sundry diseases, as namely, *Avyns* and *Gripings*, called in French, *Tranchaisons*, *Foundrings*, *Farcins*, *Mainges*, and very many more which severally to recite, would spend much time: Nevertheless, I will handle briefly their natures, dividing them into sorts, *viz* Moist and dry; the moist do proceed commonly from naughty *blood*, the dry cometh of heat; as the *Scab*, *Mainge*, and such like Diseases proceeding from moistness; some again are called *Leprosies*, or the *Elephantick* malady, by reason that *Elephants* are much troubled therewith, and every Disease is known by its proper symptoms.

Hippiatrus. *What be the signs whereby to know the humid or moist Diseases?*

Hippoferus. The humid or moist malady is properly called the *Glanders*, which oft-times proceeds from the *Liver* and *Lights*, when they be infected with putrefaction and rottenness; or when they breed inflamed *Lumps*, *Knots*, or *Kernels* under the *Chaul*, which all do come of cold taken by immoderate riding and labour, and want of care afterwards, which

begetteth evil humours in the body, which when they shall begin to break from the Horse, by his running and purging at the *Nose*, whereof other Horses will have a desire to lick, and thereby they do become infected.

Hippiatrus. *Many Horses there be which do run at the Nose, who have not the Glanders.*

Hippoferus. 'Tis very true, but this Disease of the Glanders may be known by its Knots, Kernels, and Pustils which are under the *Jaw*. You may also know it by the colour of the corruption which the Horse venteth: For, if that matter be green, and of a strong and offensive savour, or if it be white and stinketh, as also viscous and slimy; then be you confident it is the Glanders; but if he shall cast forth corruption at his *Nose*, which is white, and that by bits and gobbets, which doth not stink or have any evil savour or smell, then it is not the Glanders, but some distemperature which cometh of a cold lately taken, which is easily cured, if it be not let run too long, for there is great danger in delay.

Hippiatrus. *What be the arid or dry Diseases?*

Hippoferus. They are an alteration of the body, which we do commonly call Surfeits and Pursviveness, which is occasioned oft by riding of a Horse beyond his strength or breath, especially presently after water, or by putting him to too much labour, or too violent running and streining, or by washing him when he is very hot.

Hippiatrus. *How cometh a Horse to have the Tranchaisons or Gripings?*

Hippoferus. By suffering him to drink when he is too hot; or by over-riding him; they also come of bad wind which ingenders in him, and by not suffering him to stale in his riding in convenient time, and of evil humours.

Hippiatrus. *What signs have you of the Scab or Mainge?*

Hippoferus. We may with good reason say that this Disease we call the Scab, Mainge, or Itch in a Horse proceedeth of too great abundance of ill bloud, which, when it is once inflamed by over-hard riding, causeth its Leprosie to come forth upon the *Skin*, which cometh to be an itch running over the whole body, beginning betwixt the flesh and the skin, inso much as it

will

will cause the hair to fall away, from whence ordinarily doth proceed a dry scurff or scab, which is very contagious.

Hippiatrus. *How cometh the Farcin to the Creature.*

Hippoferus. No way so soon as by a bad stable, whither Swine and Poultry do resort, for their dung is most pernicious: Also by evil dressing, which may be a great cause, and by too much rankness of blood, and by some wound, hurt, or blow with a staff, especially if the staff have knags or knots upon it, sometimes by enter-firing and hewing, and lastly by spur gall-ing.

Hippiatrus. *Which be the four Maladies which do most appear, when a Horse sheweth by his action that he is in danger of death by the said Diseases?*

Hippoferus. That hapneth often by too much ventosity, or by eating too much raw meat, or to have drunk being very hot: It cometh also of the coldness of *Urin*, or having ridden him too hard too long together, not giving him leave to piss.

Hippophilus. *I pray Hippoferus, give me leave to demand of you, what you would do in such a case, by your best endeavours, to save the life of the poor beast?*

Hippoferus. In a case of this nature, I would first take blood from him, if I found just cause for it, and then should I administer a laxative clyster, which should be both comforting, and yet operative, which is inserted in *lib. 2. Chap. 6. Sect. 8. clif. 2.* Or else I would give him a drink of good operation, which you shall find in *lib. 2. Chap. 7. Sect. 8. clif. 6.* either of which, or both, are most sovereign in this case. But if I shall find, that the malice of the malady doth not continue in the body, but falleth down into the four legs, as usually it will do: Then do I use to open the Veins in those places, and in the neck also, or in any other part I shall judge shall be most necessary, and of his blood I will make a restrictive charge, adding thereunto Wheat-meal, Bole, *Sanguis Draconis*, Eggs, the strongest white-wine Vinegar, and such like, which I will more at large express in the place of Cures: This (I say) will I apply to all the four *Legs*, and over and against the *Kidnies*, the *Breast*, *Throat*, *Fect* and the like places; then would I cup the bottom of the *Soles*, I will also apply to the four *Legs*, Garters, which I will tye hard above the *Knees* and *Hams*, and so govern my self in performing

the Cure, according to the strength, vertue, and greatness of the Horse, and as my judgment shall dictate unto me.

Hippiatrus. *By how many ways may evil come to a Horse?*

Hippoferus. Two ways, viz. by nature and by accident against nature; as of those diseases which fall down into the *Legs* and *Feet* of the Horse, from whence do come Scratches, Splents, Squibs, Mallenders, &c. with other kinds of humors and accidents as well in the body of the Creature, as in the members; and *salvo aliorum iudicio*; these things appear unto me to comprehend in them the aforesaid accidents, which do happen to the Horse, even as soon by nature many times, as by accident or against nature.

Hippophilus. Hippoferus, *I do not well understand this point: You say that these things may happen as well by nature, as against nature, which are to my understanding a plain contradiction. I pray explicate yet your self more fully.*

Hippoferus. Those things which are against nature, I told you are by accident; but when I say that certain Diseases may as well come unto him by nature, as by accident; yea even in the self-same Disease, my meaning is, that if the Stallion be troubled with the same disease at what time the Mare, who is the Dam of this Colt is covered, I say that then the Colt himself shall be capable of the same malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (Parents to the same Colt) have for example a Spaven, I say that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven; and thus I have explicated my self, and assoyled your demand.

Hippiatrus. *But what call you accident, or against nature?*

Hippoferus. As thus, *verbi gratia*, if walking your Horse in your hand in the fields, or elsewhere, and that he happen to be stricken with some cudgel, leaver, or heavy bastinado, or with some sword, hatchet, bill, or other edge-tool, or that you should enforce him to do more then what nature or strength were well able to compass; or leading him upon plain ground, he might wrinch any member, or sway his *back*, or break his *leg* either by the stroke or stripe of some other Horse, or otherwise accidentally, or should by misfortune fall down some steep precipice, whereby he may break or dislocate some limb or member: All these disasters we usually do call Accidental, and all such things of this nature.

Hippi-

Hippiatrus. Which be the Elements which do give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living Creatures?

Hippoferus. They are four in number, that is to say, *Fire, Air, Water and Earth*; whose natures if you shall please, I will discuss elsewhere.

Hippiatrus. No I pray let us have them both now and elsewhere, their natures, conditions, and qualities.

Hippoferus. The nature of *Fire* is to be hot and dry, *Air* to be hot and moist, *Water* to be cold and moist, and *Earth* to be cold and dry.

Hippiatrus. Do you know the twelve Signs of the Zodiack, and how they do govern the body of man, and of all Creatures?

Hippoferus. Yes, I do know them all perfectly; and thus are they called *Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces*: These do all govern the twelve moneths of the year, and are placed above the Zodiack.

Hippiatrus. Do you know the names of the Planets, and their numbers?

Hippoferus. That I do very well, and they be seven in number; to wit, *Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury* and *Luna*.

Hippiatrus. What parts do the twelve Signs before mentioned govern?

Hippoferus. *Aries* governs the *Head*, *Taurus* the *Neck*, *Gemini* the *Shoulders and Armes*, *Cancer* the *Stomach and Breast*, *Leo* the *Heart*, *Virgo* the *Bellie and Guts*, *Libra* the *Reines and Buttocks*, *Scorpio* the *Privie parts*, *Sagittarius* the *Thighes*, *Capricornus* the *Knees*, *Aquarius* the *Legs*, and *Pisces* the *Feet*.

Hippiatrus. In what daies is it best for a Horse to be let blood?

Hippoferus. If there be no extraordinary cause, as in case of desperate sickness, or so; then *Jan.* the third, and the fifteen. *February* the fourth and ninth. *March* the seventeen and eighteen. *April* the tenth and sixteen. *Maie* the first and thirteen. *June* fifteen and twenty. But for *Julie* and *August*, by reason that the *Canicular daies* be then predominant, blood-letting is not so good, but only in urgent case of necessity. In *September* the eleventh and twenty eighth. *October* the eight and twenty three. *November* the fifth and sixteenth. *December* the fourteen and twenty sixth. And these days do we hold to be the very best, unless dangerous

or sudden sickness do cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessity, no days are to be regarded or observed: For

*Qui retinente vita, & non sit mortis imago:
Si semper fuerit vivens, morietur & infra.*

Hippiatrus. *What medicine would you apply to a Horse, who may have any of the four Maladies?*

Hippoferus. I would give him of the four Cordial Waters, which I would make, of Bugloss, Savin, Succorie, Aqua-vitæ, Endive, and the like.

Hippiatrus. *How would you make a comfortable drink?*

Hippoferus. I would make it of certain Cordials, to wit; of Sugar, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Aniseeds; all these in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all these infused in a clean earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drink.

Hippiatrus. *Whereof would you make an operative drink?*

Hippoferus. I would take white Wine, Salet Oyl, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke or Duck-powder, Honey, Cordial powder; and of all these things would I put such a quantity as I should think requisite, and according to the strength and corpulency of the Horse.

Hippiatrus. *Whereof would you make a laxative Clyster?*

Hippoferus. Into a laxative Clyster I will put either of Pellitory, Melelote or Cammomile (but Pellitory is the best) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Salet Oyl, Honey, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hippiatrus. *What be the natures of your principal Drugs?*

Hippoferus. Agarick purgeth the Brain, Aloes the Breast and body, Rubarb purgeth the evil water, and it openeth the Liver and helpeth obstructions, and opilations, Aristolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the Breast, Liver and Lungs, and Baccalaury or Bayberries do mortifie the peccant Humors, which do ingender in the Breast or Entrailles near about the heart; and Saffron (if it be discreetly given) doth marvellously comfort and enlighten the heart.

C H A P. II.

Of the Causes of Sickness in General; and the causes of Health and long Life.

Hippiat. **N**OW that we have proceeded thus far, in a discussion of the Office of the Ferrier, Let us approach yet nearer to intreat of the Cures, and that we may go on Peditentim, and Gradatim; Let us first discuss the causes of maladies; and therefore I demand of you, What are the true causes of the sickness of the Horse?

Hippoferus. Sir, that man which hath a desire to become an Expert Ferrier, must apply himself to understand the true nature of two things, viz. of Generation and of Corruption; in which I could never find the least discord in the Primary nature of Horses, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the four Elements. But I will proceed in Anatomizing unto you the verity hereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better understand my meaning.

Hippophilus. But friend *Hippoferus*, in my judgment, you begin to assume too high a pitch for ordinary Ferriers, who are in a manner all or the greater number unlettered persons; and therefore will never be able to understand what Generation and Corruption meaneth, for these are terms taken from the Grounds of Philosophy, and therefore above their Genius or Sphere.

Hippoferus. Sir, there be many things necessary to be duly known, and as diligently to be observed in him, that desireth to be a perfect and able Ferrier; which whosoever shall be defective in, he may well be an Empirical Horse-Leach, but skilful Ferrier or Marshal he shall never be. And for that you please to say, that I sore too high, because I began my discourse with the terms of Generation and Corruption: If you had not interrupted me, I should have explicated myself so clearly, as that a very reasonable judgment might easily have apprehended me: for I hold it not a thing fitting to puzzle mens Brains, either with Chimera's, which they are not able to understand, or with over-long, and tedious discourses, of things meerly impertinent:

pertinent : But if you shall be pleased to hear me with patience, I will touch upon this subject, to wit : What are the causes of Sicknes in general, as also of Health and long life ; and that *Laconicabrevitate*, and so leave the rest to your judgement and practice ; especially, considering what other Authors (my Masters) have so learnedly, and no less sufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to say, what I said before) with the causes of sickness and death of Horses in general, in the true knowledge whereof, consisteth their preservation ; I do hold it a thing most needful that we do perfectly know that thing which we do call *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Physicians* and *Philosophers* have so much discussed both in their Schools and Writings. And now the body of the Horse (like also to that of man) is compounded of the four *Elements*, *viz.* *Fire*, *Air*, *Water* and *Earth* ; The natures of these four *Elements* are different : for *Fire* is hot and dry, but it participates most of Heat. *Air* is hot and moist, but chiefly moist : *Water* is moist and cold, but most cold ; *Earth* is cold and dry, but most dry. *Fire* and *Air* are both light *Elements* ; and *Water* and *Earth* both heavy. Four Humours also there are, which be as it were four Children to these four *Elements* : and these are ; *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler* and *Melancholey*. These four *Humours* are attendant upon the four former *Elements*, without which a natural body cannot be made : for *Blood* naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moist, but taketh most from heat, and therefore is subordinate to *Air*. *Flegm* is cold and moist, but the principal quality thereof is coldness, and therefore hath reference to *water*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his cheifest nature is heat, and therefore is governed by the Element of *Fire*. *Melancholey* is cold and dry, but his cheifest condition is driness, and therefore subjects it self to the Element of *Earth*. Now the fountain of the blood is the Liver, which dispersing it self by the help of the *veins* into all the parts of the body, nourisheth and preserveth the same. *Flegm* preoccupateth the *Brain* being a cold and spongy substance, and the seat of the *sensible soul*. *Choler* inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleasing harmony with the blood. *Melancholey* resideth in the spleen, which is the receptacle and discharge of the excrements of the Liver.

Of the 4
Elements
Fire, Air,
Water, &
Earth.

Of the 4
Humors.
Blood,
Flegm,
Choler,
and Melancholey.

Liver. From whence we may collect, that it hath its proper use and end: as for demonstration, blood principally nourisheth the *body*, Flegm occasioneth motion of the *joints* and *members*, Choier exciteth and provoketh the *body* to avoid its *excrements*; and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the *body* to an appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers do with one unanimous assent agree in this, that in every *natural body* there are four principal *instrumental members*, from which all the parts of an *organical body* are said to be framed, and these are the *brain*, the *heart*, the *liver*, and the *stones* or *gignitors*; and each one of these do perform its true function to all the particular members of the *body*: for the *sinews* do receive their sustentation from the *brain*, and these are called *animal spirits*; the *arteries* from the *heart*, which are *vital spirits*, the *veins*, from the *liver*, which are *natural parts*, and the *seed vessels* from the *Stones* or *Gignitors*, as the place of *generation*.

The instrumental members, The brain, the heart, the liver, and the stones or gignitors.

Now for as much as I have shewed you the four *Elements* with their true natures, the four *Humours* with their qualities, and the four *instrumental members* with their true conditions: It now remaineth that we intreat briefly of the four *natural faculties*, which is in every *body*, together with their true attributes:

The first *faculty* is to *eat*, the second to *retain*, the third to *concoct*, and the fourth to *expel*. And to answer to these four faculties, you must understand that there are residing in the *body*, the aforementioned *Humours*, that is to say, Blood, Flegm, Choler, and Melancholy, whereof *nature* maketh use of the service of but one of these only to work upon, which is an *evacuation*, which we do justly call *Whcy* or *Whcyish blood*, whose engendering is wrought in the *Liver*, and so conveyeth it self into the *veins*, at what time the four humours do take from the *body* that form and substance it ought to assume: and of this very *liquor* doth *nature* serve it self, to resolve the *meat*, and so to operate, that the same may pass through the straight *Cavities*, *Conduits*, *Pores*, and *Passages*, carrying nourishment to all the parts of the *body*. You must therefore understand that the *Veins* are the receptacles for the *Blood* which is mixed with the *vital spirits*, so as the said *Veins* have their source or origin from the *Liver*; whereby their office is to exhaust from the *Liver* unto the *Veins* the said *Whcyish* substance, and to inject part thereof

The four natural faculties, To eat, to retain, to concoct, and to expel.

through

through the passages into the *Bladder*, and from thence again forth of the body: by which means the body is freed from offence, and from sustaining damage: whereof two of the *Veins* conduct part of the said whey from the *Liver* unto the *Cods*, and so to the *seed Vessels*, where it remaineth with some small quantity of the purest *blood*, by which means the operation of the *Stones* (whose quality are hot and dry) do thereby effect a most perfect *Seed*. Which two *veins* nature (who is the most excellent Artift, and *que nihil habet vitii*) hath planted one in the *veins* on the right side, which endeth in the right *Cod*, and another semblable in the left; both which take their issue from either of the *Cods* accordingly; besides, nature hath bestowed upon the right *Cod*, much heat and driness, so hath she given also in the left, as great a quantity of cold and moisture, the right *Cod* by means of its heat engendring the Male, and the left by reason of its cold engendring the Female; and so likewise is it as well of the Female, as of the Male of every creature. But now to come to the *Heart*, which is formed with the *Liver* and *Brain*, and maintained with the purest *Blood*, which is so excessively hot, as whilst the creature liveth, if you put but your finger into its hollow part, it is impossible to continue it there long without burning or scalding the same: from whence it must necessarily ensue, that the *Liver* being the fountain of all the *blood*, must of necessity have great and abundance of pure *blood*, wherewith to support and maintain the structure of the whole body; and the vital spirit of any creature is none other thing than a *corporeal fume* or *vapour*, (to speak properly) very pure and subtile; begun in the *heart* by the operation of the natural heat, spread by the *arteries* and *veins*, to refresh and comfort the whole body: which agitative or *subtile spirit* proceeding from the *heart* and *vital spirits*, being a continual motion, by reason that motion and agitation is the true life thereof; which continually remaineth in all living creatures. But the *heart*, which may be truly and rightly stiled the *fountain of life* and *heat*, nature hath assigned it its proper place, which is to be situate in the Center, that is the middle part of the body: From whence proceedeth life and heat into each organ of the body, by which means they are preserved and enabled to perform their natural and proper function. And as touching the *Cods*, if the *liver* be not well stored, nay full of pure and perfect

blood,

blood, neither is the creature able to concoct and digest its meat, nor can the *cods* be hot: So as if there be in those parts a defect of heat, the *seed* of the beast cannot be perfectly concocted; by which means the Horse becometh frigid and impotent, and without any power at all of *Procreation*. And this is as much as need be said of this subject: Wherein if I have any way erred, or not delivered my self so clearly, whereby to be understood as I desire, the blame must light upon the great desire I promised to brevity: Howsoever I have endeavoured what in me lieth, to dilate and explicate my self at full.

Now I will begin to shew you what means we have to preserve Horses from all inward Diseases; which consisteth of four ways, *viz.* by *Purging*, *Sweating*, *Phlebotomie* or *Blood-letting*, and *Vomit*. As touching the first which is *Purging*, it is twofold, to wit, outward and inward. This *outward purging* is by cleansing the outward parts, which must be done immediately at what time you take up your Horse from grass, which would be about Saint *Bartholomews* day; for then the heart of grass doth begin to decline, and therefore after that day, the grass he then feedeth upon, breedeth no good but bad and corrupt blood, and so consequently sundry sorts of maladies and infirmities in his body; besides, the air beginneth then to grow sharp, which is also very dangerous, yea, and most contagious for him: and if you suffer him to run after that time, his hair will grow long and rough, so as he will not have for that Winter any slick or glittering coat. Of this outward cleansing or purging your Horse, you shall find taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect 9* and the manner how and when it would be done, *viz.* in a warm day in the Sun, at what time every part and member of him would be soaped, washed, dried, and cleansed from all manner of *sweat*, *scurf*, *dust*, *dirt*, and *filth*, yea and that all his whole Body over, especially his Mane, Tail, and Cods, who being thus cleansed and made dry again, and his yard drawn, cleansed and anointed with tried Hogs grease, let his Ears, his Mane, (just so far as the top of the head-stall will cover, and no more) and under the Chaul, be handsonly trimmed; then pull away by the roots all the smelling hairs about and under his mouth and nose, and the long *stubborn hairs* under and about his *Eies*; which done, cut away about a

Cleansing
and purg-
ing, Or
outward
Purging.

handful of the lower part of his Tail even and decently; then cause the Ferrrier to shoe him up, but let him be careful to pare him neatly, and to open the Heels and Frush. Then cloath him up warm, and stopped with small wisps: this done, anoint all his hoofs, with the ointment (having first washed them clean, and made them dry again) prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 11. Sect. 9.* Then let his feet be picked clean, and stop them with Ox-dung.

Cleansing
and purg-
ing in-
wardly-

Now as touching his inward purging, this ought to be done evermore before you put him to any labour or exercise: And first let him be raked, by causing some one who hath a small hand and arm, to anoint them first with a little sweet Butter, or Oil de Bay; but some do use Soap, which I do hold too sharp, and so putting his hand into his *Fundament*, let him bring forth all his dung, and while he is in so doing, let him try to feel for Bots or Worms, which may stick fast unto the great *Gut*, and the place where the dung lieth; which if he find, let him pluck them away gently, and by degrees, and so bring them all out; this done, give him the Clyster mentioned in *lib. 2. chap. 6. Sect. 8. Clyst. &c. 4.* and so soon as the Horse hath received it Clyster-wise, then presently clap his tail close to his Tewel; and so cause him to keep it so long as you can: and this would be done, three or four days, before the Full or Change of the Moon: The next day after, give him his first drink, inserted *lib. 2. chap. 16. Sect. 14. purg. 4.* the next day following, give him his second drink, shewed you in *lib. 2. chap. 16. Sect. 14. purg. 5.* and so follow such directions shewed you in those Rules.

Drink 1.

Drink 2.

Let blood

Sweat.

Vomit.

The next day following you have thus given him his two drinks, let him *blood*; if you shall find the *blood* to be very bad, take the more from him, if reasonable good, take the less; but if very good, then draw your cord, and so do but give the *Veins* vent, and no more, then afterwards keep him with warm mashes, as is taught you else-where. The next day after *blood-letting*, *sweat* him like as is prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 18. Sect. 28. S.* And if you do discover any cold in him by any symptoms, then give him the vomit prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 20. Sect. 1. V.* And to prevent any obstructions in the *Liver* or *Lungs*, or his *Heart* any way oppressed, or otherwise to pre-
serve

serve the *blood* pure, and from corrupting; all which inconveniences may be a ready means to bring your Horse to his end; give him in his Provender such Powders and other Simples which you shall find in sundry places of this Treatise; for this will refine his blood, and preserve his *Liver* from infection, and keep him in perfect health.

Powders
to put in-
to his Pro-
vender.

Thus far Sir, I have declared unto you what I understand of the Cause of Sicknes in general. It remaineth now for me to inculcate what are the causes of health and long life, which to be brief are twelve in number, *Viz*, The first is nature, good digestion, and good Nutriment; the second is moderation in feeding and diet; the third is moderate labour; the fourth is, moderate use of sleeping and waking; the fifth is, moderate spending upon Mares: the sixth is, moderate journies; the seventh is wholesome air; the eighth is, not to be exercised too soon after grass, the ninth is, to be kept from raw and green meats: the tenth is, not to be suffered to eat or drink being hot: the eleventh is, not to be either washed or walked at the end of his days journies: the twelfth is, to give him with his Provender such powders and simples, as are prescribed you in all those Chapters which are by me mentioned.

12 Causes
of health
and long
life.

Hippiatrus. *You have spoken well Hippoferus, but I would have you shew me, how long life is acquired by these causes, which as yet you have not done, for you have but only delivered them in general heads and terms: wherefore I would gladly know what you can say of them in particular.*

Hippoferus. I will Sir, these twelve causes of long life do come to a Horse, either inwardly or outwardly, which howsoever they must be holpen either by Art, by Industry, or else by judgment and discretion.

Wherefore you must know that whatsoever is natural must necessarily proceed from good temperature, and proportionate mixture of the four qualities of the body, so as the just and adequate proportions of temperate mixture, are the true causes of long life, by reason that all mixtures of superfluities are against these three things, *viz*. Nature, good digestion, and sound Nutriment. For heat and nutriment are their well proportioned, when neither the moisture with its too great quantity is predominant, whereby it devoureth the heat; nor when o-

f.
What
things do
hinder
nature,
digestion
and nu-
triment.

vermurch

vermuch heat too suddenly consumeth and destroyeth the moisture; howbeit there must be a necessity that the heat must have a kind of regality and dominion over the moisture, otherwise it will never be able to nourish the body as it ought.

2. The second cause of long life, is the moderation of their natural appetite of *eating*, it being available either in excess to kill and destroy, or in moderation to save: whereby the Horse shall daily repair the decay of his humidity, by supply of moderate nourishment, and never overwhelm or suppress his heat with too great abundance of moisture, nor mix his *Humidum Radicale* with too much superfluous impurities; for extremes are evermore perillous and ill, as well in excess as in defect: For as too much eating (be the meat never so good and wholesome) hindereth good digestion, and engendreth Crudities, together with an evil habit of the stomach; so likewise too spare a diet doth as much weaken the decay nature, by reason that the heat which thereby will arise in the stomach, will first over-charge, and afterwards conquer the Radical moisture; both which are friends to sickness and death.

3. The third cause of long life is moderate labour, a matter very much effectual to digestion, and therefore to long life, dilating, and spreading nutriment into every member of the body: for over-much rest breedeth in the body super-abundance of bad humours, which cooleth the body, for want of which moderate exercise, it is as it were cast into a sleep, and in a manner through lumpishness besotted and benumbed: from whence doth spring another mischief equivalent to the former, to wit, a collection of excremental superfluities, occasioned through laziness, and idleness, by reason that the Horse, for want of moderate exercise, is not able to digest his received nutriment; by which means many maladies are engendred in his body proceeding from corruption in the blood, crudities in the stomach, and the like; because he hath in his body (as a man may properly say) a very sink or standing-pool of unnatural humours. And therefore I give all men this caveat, viz. to be very careful they do not put their Horses to over-much labour and travel, until such time as they have well digested their meat; for that by their immoderate exercise, they over-clog their stomachs, and so they cannot have a true concoction

coction, their stomachs being full and their bodies cloyed and overmuch stuffed with raw and cruded humors; which through violent exercise are dispersed, first into all the Veins, (corrupting the blood) and from thence into all the parts of the body, which ingendreth so many noisome infirmities within the body, and so many loathsome forances without the body, as will not easily be cured: and therefore it doth greatly behoove a man, that his Horse (if he love him, and desire to keep him long) his exercise be neither too intemperate, nor too little, but ordered with judgment and discretion.

The fourth cause of long life is moderate use of sleeping and waking, for these are the maintenance of health and long life, if they be had with moderation, and both are very noxious otherwise beyond measure. For inordinate watching is a main enemy to health; for it wasteth and consumeth the vital spirits, and it decayeth the *Humidum Radicale*, causeth maceration and sterility, it is an impediment to the operation of the *Brain* and sense, it begetteth siccity in the *Brain*, and aridity in the *Marrow*, and worketh the evil effects in the *Liver* and *Lungs*. On the other side, immoderate sleep hindreth health, quengeth the natural heat, and consumeth the moisture in the *Body*: for sleep is but a vapour and ascending from the stomach to the *Brain*, which stupifieth the *Brain* for a season, and during that time it maketh the *Body* senseless; and the sooner it being provoked by over-much feeding, stuffing, and filling of the belly, and therefore it greatly standeth a man upon that he have a vigilant care to his Horse his sleep, that it be moderately taken, for as I said but now, as too much sleep is noxious, so also too little is as prejudicial.

4-
Moderate
sleep.

What
manner
of thing
sleep is.

The fifth cause of health and long life, is that great care be had in keeping your Horse from excess in spending himself upon Mares, for that is Deaths Harbinger, by reason it doth after a most violent manner; consume the spirits, debilitateth the *stomach*, drieth up the *brain* and *marrow*; and this is the reason why a Gelding (if he be kept free from Surfeits) is longer lived than the Stoned Horse: So likewise the reason why a Mule, being a mixed creature, (howbeit a Monster in nature) is longer lived than either of them; for that his justing (howsoever without fruit) in that kind if but once only in the whole course

Moderate
tion in
spending
upon
Mares.

of.

of his life; and therefore I could wish, that one Horse be not suffered to cover above three Mares at the most throughout the whole year, and that from the years of his coming to six, until he hath attained twelve, and no longer; for when a Horse hath once seen twelve years of his age, nature will then begin to decay, whereby he shall not be able to beget Colts which can prove so good and serviceable, as those he begat in his young years. For besides (hard and toilsome labour) this act of coity with Mares doth more weaken and dull him; for you cannot be ignorant of the old Proverb, which saith; *Omne animal post Coitum triste.*

Moderate
journey-
ing.

The sixth cause of long life is, moderate riding in long journeys, for by intemperate driving his heat from the inward into the outward parts of the body, is the cause that the fire of *Choler* will be enkindled, which will be so vehement as that it must needs prove an infinite horrour unto nature, so inflaming the *blood*, that if the Horse at the same instant be not very empty and clean in his *body*, the *blood* and *humours* being mixed together, will be through the violence thereof, dispersed into all and every part and member of the *body*, and then a sudden cold taken upon it (which rarely faileth) doth instantly putrifie and corrupt the *blood*, and congealeth it to the unavoidable peril of the life of the Horse; especially if after this intemperate riding, he be either suffered to drink, or ridden into the water, as many of your surly and lazy *Grooms* are accustomed to do. My counsel therefore is, that when you have any long journey in hand, let his travel be moderate, inhibit walking, washing, or giving him cold water, but so soon as you shall dismount him, let his *Keeper* have him into the Stable well littered, and thoroughly rubbed through all the parts of his body till he be thorow dry, let him be cloathed and stopped up warm, and at a reasonable time let him have white water.

7.
Who'se-
some Air.

The seventh cause of health and long life, is wholesome air and soil, clean keeping, painful and good dressing, the Stable kept neat, sweet, and warm, his food old, sweet, clean, and dry, well sifted and shaken, and freed from dust and filth; his litter sweet and dry, and all wet and old litter removed from under his feet and manger, and let all evil favours be removed from about the Stable.

The

The eighth cause of health and long life is, not to suffer your Horse to be travelled or exercised too soon after you have taken him from grass, until such time as he be thoroughly purged and cleansed from his superfluous and bad humors, which he gat by being at grass in time of his rest, and full feeding, which certainly are not a few; but hereof I have sufficiently spoken before in this very Chapter, and therefore I pass it over.

8.
Not to travel too soon after grass.

The ninth cause of health and long life, is, not to suffer him to eat any raw, or green meat whilst he shall be kept in the Stable, for that such diet doth beget many bad humours oppugnant to nature; as Feavers, Surfets, Yellowes, Stavers, Anticors, Morfounding, and the like; all which will debilitate Nature, and endanger the breeding of many desperate diseases; to the peril as well of the Horses life, as health, if extraordinary care be not had (by way of prevention) in very good time, by the diligence of an *Expert Ferrier*.

9.
Not to eat raw or green meat.

The tenth cause of health and long life, is, by keeping your Horse from meat and drink whilst he is hot; for that doth weaken the heart and spirits, it is an enemy to the Appetite and digestion, engendreth Oppilations and Obstructions, corrupteth and putrieth the blood, breedeth Feavers, and many other maladies, as is very often the occasion of suddain death.

10.
Not to eat whilst he is hot.

The eleventh cause of health and long life is, to be very precise, that you do not permit your Horse to be walked or washed after labour or travel, if in his travel he hath been heated, but presently after you dismount him, let him be led into the Stable, well littered, warm clothed, painfully rubbed and dried; but hereof I have spoken sufficiently in the sixth cause, and elsewhere.

11.
Not to be walked or washed.

The twelfth and last cause of health and long life is to use sometimes to put and mix with his Provender certain powders, viz. the Powder of Anniseeds and of Licoris, or of Fenugreek, Turmerick, Bay-berries or Brimstone, white Lilly roots small chopped, Euulacampane roots, if green and newly gathered, otherwise dried and beaten to fine powder, or the roots of *Polypodium* of the Oke or its powder, Savin, Marsh-Mallows, Rue, Hyllop, Hore-hound, or Colts foot: these either small chopped if you give them green, or else dried and given in powder, which Simples will keep him sound and in perfect health,

12.
To mix certain Powders with his Provender.

for their virtues are to purifie the *blood*, prevent Obstructions, open and resolve the *Liver*, cool the *blood*, and preserve the whole structure of the *body* in excellent health.

Thus have I (as succinctly as I have been able) declared the reasons of sickness in general, together with the true cause of health and long life, the contrarieties whereof will engender, in your Horse, infirmities and death: for the sensitive Bodies as well of all other creatures, as of Horses, are often (upon the least cause given) disgusted and brought out of joint and temper, by reason of the assidual warfare of the never-ceasing jarring Elements, that it not a little importeth a Masters care to look very narrowly into the state of his Body. For put case that time and experience do approve the contrariety of the before-named inherent qualities of Heat, Cold, Dryness, and Moisture, the formal causes of all intrinsecal diseases, the continuance and unperceivable lingring in them, together with the true cause of their sudden and untimely death: Yet is there means as easily to be found, as well for the prevention of all ensuing sickness (if we will but apply our care and diligence) before it approacheth, as for the able curing of them when they are come, and palpably perceived; according to the opinion of famous *Galen*, who saith: *He that preventeth the cause of sickness, preventeth the sickness it self: for take away the cause and the effect followeth not.*

Hippophilus. You have spoken well *Hipposerus* upon this subject; but yet your last Article is not without difficulty, in that you do advise to administer certain powders, and other Simples unto a Horse in his Provender, which should conserve him in health, and prevent all inward diseases in him. I cannot certainly but approve very much hereof; in that they be most sovereign in such cases you speak of: but the manner of administering them, is the thing I much stand upon, knowing right well that these Simples (or the greater part of them) are of strong and offensive scents and smells, and others are as far disgustful and unpleasant to his taste, whereby he may very easily be induced by disliking those Powders and Simples, to loath and utterly forsake his Provender.

Hipposerus. Sir, you object well, nevertheless, give me leave to tell you, that in cases of this nature, Use (we say) makes per-

perfectness: True it is, that Horses will have an aversion from these kind of Drugs and Simples, but what then? Have you no fear, for rather than he will not eat his Provender at all, hunger will in time bring him to it, yea as well those Powders, as his Provender: provided you do not offend him, by putting in too great a quantity at once, but by degrees, and that by a little at a time, till custom hath made him perfect; and most certain it is, that some Horses are so coy, dainty, and choice feeders; as that you can hardly provoke them to eat any Provender at all; whereas others there be who are so great feeders, as that they will make no bones to devour what meat soever you shall lay before them; for it is very homely viands, which a good stomach will refuse: nevertheless if you shall find that your Horse cannot be brought to take these things with his Provender, you may then sometimes administer of these Powders and other Simples, with good Ale or Beer, giving it him as you give drinks, and it will suffice: howbeit it will do him more good to be given in his Provender.

Hippiatrus. *What is the best thing to be given to a Horse to preserve the Liver from infecting, and to refine the blood?*

Hippoferus. I have known many things administered in this case, but the very best is, to take the root of *Polipodium* of the Oke, to wash it, and to make it very clea; then cut or chop it very small, then take Liver wort, one handful, small chopped also, and so much Rhubarb as the weight of a Tester, either cut very small, or grated: give him this in his Provender three or four mornings together fasting, and give him no meat in three hours after, and let his drink be white water for that day, and give him this monthly, and once in half a year make tryal of his blood to see how pure or foul it is, and administer accordingly.

Liver to
preserve.

Hippophilus. *I pray you Hippoferus, what is the true nature of Rhubarb? Whether is it purgative, or binding?*

Hippoferus. Truly Sir, Rhubarb hath two contrary natures: for if you either scrape, grate, or cut it; then is it a loosener, for it dissolveth and openeth the *Liver*, and expelleth the obstructions thereof; it expulseth all bad humours in and about the *heart*, *liver*, and *spleen*, it cleanseth the *body*, and sendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all such

things as may annoy or offend the *intrails* : But if you shall pound or beat Rhubarb in a Morter, or otherwise, the spirit thereof being a subtile *body*, will *Transfire* and fly away, whereby the operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

Hippophilus. Let this suffice for the present, I have detained you too long from your particular affairs : it now grows late, and therefore I will take leave till our next meeting, which (God willing) shall be to morrow at the same hour, at what time I shall not fail you ; for that I desire a final end of this business : wherefore for this present I will take leave, recommending you both to God.

C H A P. III.

Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Ferrier, before he doth adventure to administer.

Hippoph. **H**itherto *Hippiatrus* we have proceeded orderly, and your servant *Hippoferus* hath discoursed very accurately and pithily : Nevertheless some things there be which yet he hath not put home enough, whereby I have not received that full satisfaction I desire.

Hippiatrus. Sir, Sithence we are met here again to discuss such things whereof you desire to inform your self ; my will is to have you fully and substantially satisfied (if it may be) in every point, which might concern this our Subject ; wherefore I intreat you to propose your doubts, and look in what *Hippoferus* may fail, my self shall endeavour to supply to the utmost of our best skill.

Hippophilus. Sir, I thank you, but withal, one favour I must beg of you, and that is, for that my memory may peradventure, fail me (it being none of the best) if as things occur to my thoughts, I should ask any question that might happen to be out of season and order, yet you will not take it ill that I should interrupt him, or you in your discourses.

Hippiatrus. No truly Sir, will I not, and therefore beg to make your demand, and *Hippoferus* shall give you answer.

Hippophilus. I thank you, then thus: As touching the composition of the *body* of the Horse, more I grant might have been spoken in words, but not more to purpose; for a man to run into divisions and subdivisions, were but to beget confusion in the unlearned Reader, (such are your ordinary Smiths for the most part, for whose instruction I do principally undergo these pains) and to send him away worse satisfied in his judgment, than before. Whereas a plain and succinct method doth more edifie and instruct him than the other can do. I therefore demand of you *Hippoferus*, that forasmuch as you have spoken well of the four Elements; to wit Fire, Air, Water, and Earth, yet have you not demonstrated their natures, or where they are placed. For true it is, my self, and all men do perfectly know, that these four Elements are not these four material and visible Elements which we daily behold and make use of, as things most useful for us towards the sustentation of our livelihood: being creatures without which we cannot live: but I would gladly have you shew what their true natures be, being things incorporate, and therefore concealed from our eyes: I would also know in what parts they do reign, and have their identity or being.

Hippoferus. Sir, as touching the natures of these four Elements, I have sufficiently made appear unto you in *Capitulo precedenti; pane in initio*, but as touching the second part of your demand, I say, that these four Elements which be in nature so dissonant and distinct one from the other, as that nothing can be more, no white can be more opposite to black; nevertheless that you may know these Elements, I thus aver. The Fire is highest, being near neighbour, or adjoining to the Moon, and therefore naturally hot: Air is placed next unto it, and therefore naturally light. The Water is annexed unto the Air, & therefore naturally moist. And the Earth is situate next to the Water, but lowest, and out of that reason, naturally heavy. As touching their vertues all the learned do hold that fire by means of its heat, exciteth matter to generation, and occasioneth warmth in every living body, and it doth ripen things raw and undigested, in such excellent and subtile wise, as that the Air, which is of a more gross nature, may the better enter into

The Nature of the 4 Elements.

I.
Fire.

the

the *body*, making a commixture with the Fire, whereby also it moderateth the heat of the Fire, the coldness of the Water, and the driness of the Earth, so as distemper may the less oppress the *Body*. The Air by reason of its moistness maketh the matter apt to receive its natural shape, and through the instinct of the Fire its natural heat, causing the mixt *Bodies* as well subtile as penetrable, as well light and moving, whereby they be neither too gross nor too heavy, and withal the Air cooleth and abateth the extremity of the burning heat of the *Heart, Liver, &c.* As touching the third Element, which is

2. Air. Water, its nature is, that through the coldness thereof it congealeth, conglutinateth, and bindeth in mixt *Bodies* both the parts and members together, to wit, *Sinews, Bones, and Flesh*; so as the Water by means of its coldness doth temper and aswage the violent heat of the Fire, and the condensity of the Air, collecting those things together which otherwise they would have dissevered. And as touching the Element of Earth,

3. Water. Earth. its nature is by means of its driness and Siccity, in mixt *Bodies*, so to harden and fasten them together, as that having once assumed their shapes, it causeth them to retain and keep them, which otherwise by the force of the other Elements would be so lax and loose, as not to be able to hold together, wherein I could produce many familiar instances, which for brevities sake I am enforced to omit. But the opinion of the best *Physicians* is, that when any natural *Body* dieth, the substance thereof returneth back again to those Elements from whence it came. Thus you may plainly see, that fire is naturally hot, and therefore separateth: Air moist, and therefore giveth Shape: Water cold, and therefore bindeth; and Earth dry, and therefore naturally hardneth, and keepeth its impression: Wherefore in any Malady in a *Horse*, observe but this one Rule, *viz.* that when at any time an Inflammation shall arise in the *Body*, be you confident it proceeds of Fire, and therefore you must administer (if you will perform a right Cure) things contrary to that Element; to wit, what may be agreeable to Air and Water, whereby to moisten, cool, and allay the rage of the heat. If it be *Flux* of *Blood*, or the like, proceeding from the abundance of moisture; which takes its origin from the Element of Air, then must you apply Medicines

cines which may connive with the Earth, whose driness may harden such moisture. If it proceed of *Cold Rheumes*; or the like, whereby the infirmity hath its source from the Element of Water, you must then administer Medicines cohering with the Element of Fire, and Air, which may be able through its heat and moisture to expel all cold and gross humours. And lastly, if the grief be Maingeness, or the like, which cometh from the Earth, which be dry and arid infectious diseases, then must your applications be had from the Element of Fire, whose nature is to dissolve all siccative humours: wherefore (I say again) that heat being too predominant is asswaged by the means of moistness and coldness; too great moistness by heat and driness, over-much coldness by heat and driness, and too great a proportion of driness by heat alone.

Hippophilus. *But then tell me, I pray you, be there no other Elements, or beginnings in living Bodies, more than these four before named?*

Hippoferus. No Sir, not any other which have their beginnings: but there are two other which the Learned do term proper *Elements*: viz. the Ingendring of *Seed*, and *Menstrual Blood*; but these (I say) do assume their essence from the other four Elements, whereby they become a *Body*, which otherwise they could not, and therefore are subordinate to them, and they take their place after them.

Hippophilus. *Having spoken sufficiently of the natures and qualities of these four Elements: What say you to the Humours?*

Hippoferus. I say that the Humours are also four in number, which Physicians do stile the first *qualities*, according, as I have formerly intimated: and these four are *Blood, Phlegm, Cholera, and Melancholy*: *Blood* being sweet in taste, *Phlegm*, neither sweet, bitter, nor sowl, and therefore of no taste, or if of any, (like to that of good Oyl) rather sweet than otherwise: *Cholera* is bitter in taste, and *Melancholy* is sowl in taste: So as by these tastes you may distinguish them; and these Humours have reference or near affinity unto the four Elements; for like as I have before agnized, *Blood* is of the nature of the *Air*; *Phlegm* of the *Water*; *Cholera* of the *Fire*; and *Melancholy* of the *Earth*; and these Humours have their particular abode and residence in the *body*, absolute and peculiar to themselves; as *Blood* hath

The four
first Qua-
lities.

his

his abiding in and about the *Heart*, *Phlegm* in the *Brain*, *Choler* in the *Liver*, and *Melancholy* in the *Spleen*, whereby we may the better come to know what Complexion reigneth in every *Horse*, as also how he is naturally qualified and disposed; for the *Horse* that is of a *Sanguine Complexion* is commonly a Bright Bay, who is of disposition jovial, wanton, or merry, agile, and of motion temperate, neither too fiery, nor too dull or Melancholy; Your *Milk white* is of *Complexion Phlegmatique*, whose property commonly is to be blunt, heavy and slow; Your *Bright-Sorrel* hath commonly reference to *Choler*; and he is naturally for the most part fiery, hot, and ever free-mettled, but yet of no great strength: Your *Mouse-Dun* and such like rusty and soot-colours are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, and they be ordinary, cowardly faint-hearted, subject to starting, slothful, restive, stubborn, disobedient, revengeful, &c. but if these *Complexions* be rightly symbolized, and do all meet in one and the same *Horse*, according to each ones proper nature, they do perform their functions as they ought in a perfect harmony, whereby the *Horse* remaineth sound and healthy; but if there be discord or disagreement in the Elements and Humours, there must be the like in the *Complexions*, and then doth the poor *Horse* suffer for it to the danger both of Life and Health.

Hippophilus. *I ever understood that there are certain Spirits which do remain in the Body of every Horse: do you know them* Hippoferus.

Hippoferus. Yes, I do; and they be said to be two in number, viz. The *Spirit Animal*, and the *Spirit Vital*; the *Spirit Animal* hath its residence in the *Brain*, by which means it giveth motion, feeling, and power to the *Horse*, through the aid of the *Sinews*; and the *Spirit Vital* makes abode in the *Heart*, which is the only cause of the excessive heat thereof, which disperseth the *Blood* into every part and member of the *Body*. For the *Heart* and the *Brain* are in equality absolutely different, the *Heart* being most violently hot, (as I have before shewed) and the *Brain* is as extremely cold: and so hereof needs not any more be spoken in this place.

Hippophilus, *But may not a man conjecture to what infirmities or diseases Horses may probably be subject by their Complexion?*

Hippoferus.

Hippoferus. Yes Sir, very easily, yea and that with so great advantage and profit to the *Cure*, if the *Ferrier* be expert and skilful in the making and applying of his Medicines, as that nothing can be more. For example, the *Horse* that is of colour either *Bright-bay*, or *Dark-bay*, with a pleasant and cheerful countenance, or if he be a white *Flee bitten*, *white Lyard*, or *Black* with a *white-star*, or race down the face, or white-foot; if he be of either of these colours, we hold him to be of a *Sanguine complexion*, and in *Horses* of this *Complexion* the Element of Air is most predominant, and they be commonly of nature affable, well-metled, active, and of good strength; but the *Maladies* whereunto they are most usually incident are *Leprosies*, *Glanders*, *Consumption*, and the like, yet these *Horses* are frequently of so able Constitutions, as that they have vigour enough to endure good and strong Medicines: provided these Medicines be not too hot, but cooling. The *Horse* which is *Milk-white*, *Yellow*, *Dun*, *Sanded*, or *Pie-bald*; these take more from the Element of Water than from any of the other three and these we say are of a *Flegmatick Complexion*; and they are naturally slow, dull, heavy, and nesh or wash of their flesh; and they be most inclined to *Poces*, *Rhumes*, pains in the head, *Stavers*, *Yellows*, and the like, and these *Horses* can undergo good strong Medicines, if there be cause to administer such; provided these Medicines be not made of Ingredients, that be over-cold.

The disease known by the complexion.

Of the Sanguine complexion.

Of the Flegmatick complexion.

The *Horse* whose colour is *Mouffe-Dun*, *Chest-nut*, *Brown*, or of a foot-colour, or *Iron-Grey*; these are commonly of a *Melancholey Complexion*, participating more of the Earth than of the other Elements, by which means they are of nature dull, heavy, dogged, restif, faint-hearted, &c. and therefore most inclined to *Inflamation* in the *Spleen*, *Siccity*, and *Aridity* in the *Liver*, to the *Dropfie*, *Frenzy*, and the like; these *Horses* are better able to endure stronger Medicines than any of the former; provided those Medicines be not siccatrizing or drying, but such as are both cold and moist. The *Horse* whose colour is cole-Black, without any white at all, a deep Iron Grey, a *Bright-Sorrel*, or the like, such coloured *Horses* we say be of a *Choleric Complexion*, and they partake more of the Element of *Fire*, than of any other of the three former, for that they

Of the Melancholy complexion.

Of the
choleric
complexion.

are by nature fiery hot, too free, and hare-brained, and therefore cannot be very strong of constitution; wherefore the *Ferrier* must be very careful he do not administer any strong medicine to such a Horse at any time, for so he may soon destroy him.

Hippophilus. *But yet Hippocrates, I would be glad to know of what Complexion that Horse is, in whom all the four Complexions do jointly meet; as namely in that Horse, that is either of a Brown-Bay, or a Dapple-Bay, Dapple-Grey, a Black full of Silver hairs, a Black-Rone, a Red-Rone, or the like.*

Of the
four complexions
meeting
in one
horse,
which is
the best
and most
perfect.

Hippocrates. Sir, as I cannot give you more *Elements* than these four before named, so I am not able to give you more than four *Complexions*; but yet that one *Horse* may participate of them all, is a thing possible enough, and this is the very best *Complexion* of all other; yea and the most perfect: For *Horses* in whom the four *Complexions* do meet, cannot but be the best and most able of all other, yea, and the best for *shape*, for *colour*, and for *mettle*, the soundest and most healthy; for howsoever they may accidentally fall into infirmities, nevertheless they are not naturally inclinable to any; and therefore when a *Ferrier* shall at any time have occasion to administer unto them, he must be very circumspect the *Physick* be punctually administered according to the nature of the disease, and he must examine both the cause and time of his first languishing; as whether it be a sickness newly taken, or long before; whether it proceeded of a Surfeit, hard riding, Evil-diet? &c. by which means he may administer his *Physick* (whether Pills, Portions, or Clysters) the more securely: For medicines given upon a first sickness, and before the Horse be far spent and weakened through the distemper of the malady, may be compounded the stronger, and will work to more effect; but after a long sickness, when as the *spirits* both *vital* and *animal* are enfeebled, the *Elements* are in open rebellion each one against the other, and the humours in a confused distemper; then (I say) must the *Physical* medicine be so tempered and ordered, so as that nature must be assisted, but no way further perplexed or troubled; whereby the evil humours must be sent away, the *body* cleansed and acquitted of the causes of its distemper, and then it will not be long before the poor *Creature* may recover strength

strength and sanity, and so repair daily the decay of his former state of health.

Hippophilus. *How do you hold the causes of sickness?*

Hippoferus. If you mean the causes of sickness simply, you must understand, that all Maladies and Sickness of what nature soever they be, are *effects* and evil *dispositions* (as Learned Physicians do call them) unnatural, which do proceed, and are, as it were, the Precursors which do most violently hale and pull sickness after them; and thus in a word do they define the causes of sickness, and not otherwise.

Hippophilus. *How many sorts of causes be there?*

Hippoferus. Only two degrees, *viz.* *Intrinsic* and *Extrinsic*: the *Intrinsic* are those which are ingendred within the *body*, and therefore cannot be made visible to the eye, but are made known by their symptoms: The second are *Extrinsic*, and therefore are more easily discovered and known by their outward objects, wherefore they need no further discourse.

Hippophilus. *How do you define sickness as it is in its own nature?*

Hippoferus. *Aegritudo*, or *Infirmitas*, is none other thing than that which is contrary to nature. For all intrinsic infirmities most commonly possess and seize upon the whole *body*; and those are most frequently Feavers, Pestilence, Convulsions, &c. Other infirmities again do attach, but only certain members or parts of the *body*, as Colds which do perplex the *head*, Surfeits which do annoy the stomach, and Splents, Spavens, Pearls, and Haws in the eyes, and the like extrinsic forances: but more sorts of infirmities and maladies I never knew, every several of which may most easily and palpably be discovered as well by their inward as outward signs.

Hippophilus. *What is your opinion as touching the administering of Drinks, Potions, and Clysters to a sick Horse, to wit, whether it be better to apply them very warm, or but indifferently?*

Hippoferus. Sir, even in this very point is a special heed and care fit to be had and taken; for by giving Medicines or Clysters too warm, a Ferrier may easily undo all, and utterly destroy the *Horse* he would labour to cure; yea with as great facility, as if he gave him in the place of a wholsom *Cordial*, a formal *possen*: for you must understand, that a *Horse*, of all o-

ther living *Creatures*, can worſe indure to receive inwardly hot things, by reaſon that he is inwardly ſo extreemly hot by nature; and therefore whatſoever thing is to be adminiſtred to him, ought not to be more than bloudwarm at moſt, by any means, for that nothing can be more noxious to him than the endangering the ſcalding of his *Stomach* and *Entrails*: beſides let his drinks and inward medicines be given him in the moſt leiſurely manner you are able, for fear of ſuffocating him; neither ſuffer any man (as I have ſeen many uſe to do) to pinch his *Gullet* or *Wind-Pipe*, whereby he is provoked to cough moſt violently, for it is a thing moſt dangerous both to his wind, and cauſeth oft-times fleſhy ſtuff like to the *Garget* to grow in his throat. Now for the adminiſtring of Pills, Balls, and ſuch like medicines, little advice is required, if they be not made too great; only if you take forth his *Tongue* firſt, and then put them up into his *mouth*, you cannot do amiſs, but of this method no man can be ignorant.

Hippophilus. *What time is beſt wherein to adminiſter your medicines to a ſick Horſe?*

The time when to adminiſter.

Hippoſerus. Evermore in a morning faſting, unleſs upon urgent occaſion (as in caſe of ſudden and dangerous ſickneſs, which may happen to fall out upon a ſudden accident) and the longer he be kept faſting from meat and drink, as well before he taketh his Phyſick, as after, it will be the better; for by that means his medicine will work the more kindly in his *Body*? for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking at leaſt three hours before and after.

Hippophilus. *Is it requiſite he be exerciſed after the taking of his Phyſical medicines?*

What exerciſe is moſt meet with Phyſick.

Hippoſerus. Sir a little moderate exerciſe is very neceſſary, whereby his Phyſick may work the better, and the ſooner, as to trot him upon ſo eaſie pace as you can cauſe him to take, otherwiſe to walk him up and down out of the wind in the warm Sun, by the ſpace of a quarter of an hour; but then ſo ſoon as he cometh into the Stable, let his Stall be littered before-hand well, then preſently cloath him up, and ſtop him warm, and keep the air from him, neither let his Keeper go from him in three or four hours, but let him rivet his eyes upon him continually, obſerving well his poſtures and as occaſion.

caſion may require, let him be at hand to help and ſupply the *Hoſe* with all things neceſſary.

Hippophilus. *May a man attain to any knowledge of the health, Of Excrements or indispoſition of the Hoſe by obſerving his Ordure or Excrements?*

Hippoſerus. Yes may he Sir, and that very much; inſomuch as I would adviſe all careful Ferriers who have a deſire to attain reputation by their Art, that before they do adminiſter any inward medicine, whether purgations, or Cordials; that they be careful firſt (if poſſible) to ſee his *Ordure*: for I do find for the moſt part the *Ordure* is correſpondent to the food the *Hoſe* eateth, eſpecially for the colour; for if he run at graſs, or be ſoyled in the Stable, then will his *dung* be evermore green, howbeit of a more bright, and ſometimes again of a more dark colour, and it will be rather ſoluble than hard; but the indifferent colour, and freer from hardneſs is ever beſt, and doth make appearance of the more ſanity and health of the *beaſt*, as alſo that he is thereby the leſs ſubject to coſtivenes, and therefore in better ſtate of *body*. But if his *Ordure* be very bright and laxative, it is an infallible ſign that he hath eaten ſomething that is againſt nature; as a Feather, or ſome naughty Worm, ſome Spider, or the like unwholſom thing, otherwiſe he ſcowreth of ſome inward cold which hath formerly lurked in his *ſtomach* or *body*: But if his *dung* at graſs or ſoil be very hard and coſtive, which he putteth forth with round and hard trattles, then is it a great ſign that he is very hot in his *body* and inward parts, which may endanger the Stavers, or elſe doth ſhew that he hath a ſurfeit, which he got (before his putting forth) through intemperate riding, waſhing, raw, or evil food, or the like, whereby the *Hoſe* is in danger to become morfounded, to have the Yellows, or Jaundiſe, or a Feaver, which will otherwiſe hardly appear in him in its effects until his coming into the Stable, at what time due order muſt be taken for ſpeedy prevention. But if your *Hoſe* do feed upon Straw, then will the colour of his *dung* be yellow and ſomewhat hard, long, and well compact, all which be tokens of a healthy and ſound *body*; but if it be reddiſh, and exceeding dry, it is a ſign of enſuing ſickneſs, by means of a great drought in the *body*, and ſo alſo if it be thin; but if it be blackiſh, and

doth

doth not smell strong, then is it a sign that the *Horse* is in danger of death. But if your *Horse* do feed upon Hay and Oats, and that he be found in body, then will his excrements be brown, yellow, moist, and well compact, but if the brownness be converteth into reddishness, you may be then well assured that he hath some distemperature in his *body*; but when it converted into blackness, then if prevention be not speedily had, death ensueth; and as touching the smell, that falleth out according to the quantity of the provender you give him, for the more Provender, the stronger will be the smell of his *Ordure*. and Pease and Beans will cause his *Ordure* to smell stronger than Oats, and Bread more than any Grain or Pulse; and the more Bread and Provender you give him, the more perfect and sound shall you keep him in his *body*. But if his *dung* be brown and slimy, and shine withal, then be you assured he hath much greafe which lieth in his body, which Physick must fetch away from him, for then also is his *blood* putrified, corrupted, or inflamed. But if you do find by his *Excrements* that he voideth undigested stuff, which you may know by the whole corns of Oats, Wheat, and other Grain he sendeth forth in his *dung*, then perswade your self, that your *Horse* hath lately taken a formal surfeit, which may right easily bring him to his end, if a discreet course be not speedily taken: In a word, if his *dung* be black, and hath little or no smell, then make you no question but that he is in danger of death, which will fullsoon after follow if the greater care be not taken to hinder and prevent the same.

Hippophilus. *Have you made the like observations of the Urine or Water of the Horse?*

Hippoferus. Yes indeed have I, whereby I have not a little profited my self, and attained unto great experience, inso-much as I dare boldly aver, that that Ferrier shall never come to be an expert Artist, who shall not be very well versed therein, nor be able to administer his Medicines aright, who shall not be very observant of the *Horses Urine*: For if he shall find his water to be either pale, whitish, or yellow, not much unlike to the colour of Whey, or fat Amber, or if it be not very clear, but smelleth somewhat strong; let the *Ferrier* then be confident the *Horse* is not sick, but sound and healthy, and in perfect

perfect state of *body* ; but if his *Urine* be not clear and white, and of the colour of *Rock-water*, and withal slimy, then hath he a taint in his *Kidnies*, *Lungs*, and *Back*, or else he inclineth to the *Stone*, or else he hath some stoppage in the *Kidnies*. But if his *Water* be high coloured, like to the colour of strong *Beer*, then is it a token the *blood* of the *Horse* is enflamed, and that he is subject to a *Fever*, or to some strong *Surfeit* ; but if it be red, and of the colour almost of *blood*, then is the *blood* more enflamed, which came of over-hard *Riding*, which may prove very dangerous to his life. But if it be of a pale greenish colour, thick, and viscous, then certainly his *Back* is grown weak, and he is in danger of a *Consumption* of his *Steed* ; But if it be high coloured and nebulous or mixed with small *Clouds*, with a kind of blackness therein, then this doth demonstrate ensuing sickness and death, if it be not carefully prevented. But if the *Nebulosity* be dispersed into several parts, and not combined as it were into one *Mass* or *Body* ; this then argueth, that the malice of the disease beginneth to depart, whereby the *Ferrrier* may have great hope of the health of the *Horse* : And thus farr I have by diligent observation found to be most certain, whereby I have brought many a desperate Malady to its wished Cure, which otherwise I could not so easily have effected.

C H A P. IV.

The manner of handling the particular Cures.

Hippiatrus. SIR, I doubt not but that we have proceeded far enough into this subject, for I cannot see what can be spoken more ; let us now come to the particular Cures, handling each one in its proper place.

Hippophilus. With all my heart ; but I pray let me desire you, that we may not onlie handle the Cures themselves, but the several Diseases to which a Horse is or may be subject ; together with the
causes

causes of such diseases, the signs how to know them, and the means and manner how to cure them.

Hippiatrus. All shall be done to your mind Sir: Wherefore I pray proceed.

Hippoferus. I will: Nevertheless I hold the best and clearest way will be to handle the Cures by way of *Alphabet*; whereby, whosoever doth desire at any time to inform himself of any Cure, he may the more readily turn thereunto, without looking over the *Index* or *Table*.

Hippiatrus. I think not that to be amiss.

SECT. I. A.

Hippoph. **T**hen thus: Tell me Hippoferus, do you know the Receipt which is called *Acopum*? Do you also know its Nature? Whether it is a Medicine to be taken inwardly, or an Unguent to be applied outwardly?

Two things to be observed in every Cure

Hippoferus. Sir, to make answer to two things in one, I say; first, it is impossible for any man to become a perfect *Ferrier*, who shall not first know, unto what diseases a *Horse* is inclinable: Secondly, what be the causes of every disease in particular: Thirdly, how, and by what ways and means these diseases do accrew: Fourthly, the signs how to know and distinguish them: And lastly the means and manner how to cure them. Secondly, as touching this your demand of *Acopum*, and its true Nature; I answer, that I do know it well, to be a most sovereign thing in some causes; for I have occasion to make use thereof very often: It is both a medicine to be taken inwardly, and an Ointment to be applied outwardly. Master *Blundevile* was the first that ever brought the knowledge and use thereof into our Kingdom, who had it from the *Italians* when he lived in *Naples*, as himself told me, where it is very much used; and he also affirmed that it was formerly in much use and high esteem among the ancient *Grecian Ferriers*, who gave it the name of *Acopum*. Master *Markham* hath also in his *Master-piece* the same Receipt, but he would make it his own, for he giveth it no name, but stileth it in his nineteenth Chapter of his *Cures Physical* thus: *A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular diench, and a singular Ointment*: And in reciting the Ingredients,

dients, he maketh the quantities but the fourth part of what Master *Blundevile* setteth down, which is in effect one and the same thing; and he relateth likewise the same Virtues thereof, which Master *Blundevile* doth; only Master *Markham* saith, that four or five Spoonfuls hereof must be given with a pint of Sack or Malmsey; as also that the *limbs of the Horse* being bathed therewith, it is good against weariness and tiredness; and lastly, he saith, that being given in Wine, it cureth all kind of inward maladies; all which particulars, Master *Blundevile* nameth not.

Hippophilus. *What is the reason that Master Markham doth set down but a quarter of the Ingredients in the making of this famous Receipt?*

Hippoferus. His reason is good, Sir, and I will approve of his judgment therein: for if any man should make so great a quantity together as Master *Blundevile* doth set down in his Receipt, it would not be spent whilst it were good, but only by such a *Ferrier* as hath daily use thereof, and such an one will be hardly found; for the newer and oftener such like *Receipts* are made, the better they be, and yield more profit when they be administered.

Hippophilus. *Is this Receipt hot or cold in operation?*

Hippoferus. It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good in cases of Surfeits, Tiredness, and of Convulsions, and the like, wherein consisteth its chiefest vertue, being administered outwardly; but being administered inwardly, it is not altogether so hot, for then the ancient *Ferriers* would not have prescribed to have it taken with Sack or Muskadine, both which are very hot; for it helpeth all Feavers for the most part; but yet I would not have it administered inwardly in so great a proportion as Master *Markham* adviseth, for he (as I said before) alloweth four or five Spoonfuls to a pint of Sack or Muskadine; unless it be to be given in very cold Causes, for the Wine it self is very hot. But both my Master and my self do commonly administer two Spoonfuls at the most at a time, in a pint of white Wine, or with a quart of good Ale or Beer, which we hold to be much better and safer, and we have found it evermore to work to our hearts desire; inasmuch as we have both wrought admirable Cures therewith, I do assure you.

Hippophilus. *I pray deliver me this Receipt, just as Master Markham hath it.*

Hippoferus. I shall Sir, most willingly; but then you must understand that the quantities will be more intricate to weigh forth, whereby to make it the more punctually.

Euforbi-
uni.

Take *Euforbi-uni* half an ounce, *Castoreum* one ounce, *Adraces* half a quarter of a pound, *Bdellium* half an ounce and half a quarter, Pepper one ounce, Fox greafe half an ounce, *Opopanax* one ounce, *Laserpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* half a quarter of a pound, Pigeons dung as much, *Galbanum* half an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce and a quarter, *Spuma nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Pyrethrum*, and Bay-berries of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum* two ounces, seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound. Seed of *Agnus Castus* one ounce, Parsly seed half an ounce, dried Roots of *Ireos* or *Flour de luce* one ounce and a quarter, Hysop and *Carpo Balsamum* of each a quarter of a pound, Oil of *Flour de luce* a quarter of a pound and half a quarter, of Oil de Bay as much, Oil of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum* three quarters of a pound and half a quarter, the oldest Oil Olive a pound and a half, *Pitch* a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt of every of these that will be molten severally by themselves, and then mingle them with the residue of the ingredients being first beaten to fine powder, and after they have boiled a little on the fire, take it off, and strain it into a clean gally-pot, and so keep it for your use; and when you are to administer of it to your Horse, let it be given as before is shewed: and if by long keeping, it wax hard, then soften it with the Oil of Cypris, so that it may be good and thick, * * *.

Acopum
its Vir-
tues.

Hippophilus. *What are the Virtues of this Receipt, called Acopum?*

Hippoferus. Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham* do tell you, to wit, it helpeth Convulsions in the *sinews* and *muscles*, it draweth forth all noisom humors, and disburdeneth the head of all grief, being put up with a long Goose-feather anointed in it into the *nostrils* of the *Horse*; it healeth (I say) all manner of Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness, and Stringhalts, Colds and Rhumes; it dissolveth the *Liver* being troubled with oppilati-

ons and obstructions; it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the *Body*; it banisheth all weariness and tiredness, if his *Limbs* be bathed with this medicine: And lastly it cureth all sorts of inward Diseases, if it be administr'd by way of Drench to a Horse in Wine, strong Beer, or good Ale.

SECT. 2. A.

Hippoph. **D**O you know another receipt, which is called Arman? *Hippoferus*. Yea Sir, it is a Confection in great request in *France* among the Ferriers there, and now we have it here in *England*; and it is a most sovereign medicine to be given to a sick Horse, and it is to be administr'd inwardly.

Hippophilus. What be the principal virtues of the Arman?

Hippoferus. It provoketh a good appetite to meat, and causeth good digestion; it taketh away all annoyances which do either clog or otherwise trouble the *stomach*; it cooleth the inward heat in the *body*; it helpeth all Agues and Feavers; it is most excellent against Surfeits, it is an infallible remedy for the Quinsie or Squinancy in the *throat* coming of cold taken; and very good against the Tranchaisons or gripings in the *belly* or *guts*, proceeding of *wind*, and such like inward infirmities.

Hippoph. How do you make this confection?

Hippof. Take Honey of Roses a pound and half, the Crums of the whitest Manchet made into fine powder, *quantum sufficiet*, then take Nutmegs, cordial powder, and Cinnamon, of each an ounce and half; mix all these being made first into fine powder, then put it into a clean Glass or Gally-pot, and moisten it with Rose vinegar, that it may be of a thick substance like unto pap, all your Ingredients being very well incorporate together, and so keep it to your use. And when you have occasion to administer of this *Arman*, take some of it upon the end of a Buls pizel, and put it into his mouth and let him champ thereon; but if you give it to a Horse that hath a Quinsie, let him gulp down two horns full, as also to a Horse that hath a Feaver, and is much distempered therewith, and it will give him health in two or three times taking, and give him also an appetite to his meat. But then you must remember that he take this in a morning fasting, and let him fast three or four

hours after, and his drink must be for some time either sweet Mashs or white water, and a spare diet, till he be somewhat recovered.

Hippophilus. *I pray, what is that thing you call cordial Powder, and whereof is it made?*

Hippoferns. *Cordial Powder* hath not its name for nought, for its nature jumps right with its *Epitheton*: this we have also from the *French*, who use to give it to their sick Horses which are far spent and enfeebled with a Consumption in the *flesh, liver, &c.* for it is a most restaurative *Cordial*, comforting the *vital parts*, and *spirits animal*, and restoreth it to *Sanity*: and thus it is made.

Cordial
Powder.

Take Cinnamon and Sugar, of each four ounces, and of fine Bolearmoniack two ounces: let all these be made into very fine Powder, and mix them well together: keep this Powder from air made up close till you have occasion to make use thereof. I do use of this Powder in very many Receipts, as you shall hereafter understand.

Hippophilus. *Have you any other sorts of Cordials besides this?*

Hippoferns. Yes Sir, I have another Powder which the *French* do call *Duke*, or *Duch-Powder*, which little differeth from the former *cordial Powder*, only it wanteth the Bolearmoniack. We have also another *Cordial*, which is an *Electuary*, and is known by the name of *Electuarium Theriacum*, by reason it hath much Treacle in it; and we do compound this *Electuary* thus.

Take Sirrup of Violets, Sirrup of Lemons, Sirrup of Roses, of each half an ounce, adding thereunto of your best *London Treacle* one ounce, mingle them well together, and it is a most sovereign *Cordial* to be administr'd unto Horses which are dangerously sick and weak.

Hippophilus. *Why do you rather chuse London Treacle before Venice Treacle, Treacle of Genoa, or our common Treacle?*

Hippof. This *London Treacle* I do select for all medicines for Horses, rather than any other Treacle whatsoever by reason it worketh the best with them of any other, for *Venice Treacle* and *Genoa*, are too hot; and your common Treacle is nothing all worth, it being made only of the dross and excrements of *Molasses*, which is none other thing than the dross of the refin-
ing

ing of Sugar : for I have made trial of them all ; but this *London Treacle* I do find to be most agreeable to the nature of Horses: Wherefore both my self and my master do use none other, unless in some particular causes, wherein we administer sometimes the Treacle of *Venice*.

Hippophilus. *What mean you by your white Water ?*

Hippoferus. *White Water* is none other thing than water made ^{white} hot in a clean Kettle, and when it is hot enough, I use to put ^{Water.} into it a quantity of *Wheat-bran*, and sometimes *Barly-meal*, which I commonly prescribe to sick Horses in *Physick*, instead of *Mashes*, for that when *Mashes* are either not to be had, or that they are not necessary for my purpose (as in some cases they be not) or to prevent giving of cold water ; I make use of this *white water*, which must evermore be given blood warm ; according as our ensuing discourse shall declare.

Hippophilus. *But now let us return to this confection you call your Arman : What other Virtues hath it more than what you have already delivered ?*

Hippoferus. Truly Sir, I have shewed you before in a manner all its Virtues ; and to recite them again, I say, it is most sovereign for Horses that have taken a cold, or have Inflammations or Pustils, under their *Chaul*, or thereby are troubled with the Quinsie, or Squinansie : These maladies this *confection* will help, if it be given good and thick with a horn ; for having the Quinsie in the *throat*, if in giving this *Arman*, it provoketh him not to cough, then take some of the *Confection* upon the end of a *Bulls-Pizel*, and put it a pretty way down his throat ; by which means he straining to cough, may break the impostumation in his throat, whereby the Horse may be in less danger of his life ; and causing the matterative stuff to vent out, the Horse will be in short time perfectly cured.

Hippophilus. *Are there any other kinds of Arman besides this ?*

Hippoferus. Onely one more Sir, which also the *French* have ^{Arman,} brought amongst us, which is not altogether so operative as ^{2.} the former : and this it is, *viz.* Take Honey one pound, and warm it a little upon the fire, then take half a pint of Vinegar, and a little Wheat flower, and one peny-worth of Pepper in fine powder, mix all these, and administer it blood-warm, as aforesaid.

Hippophilus. *With what manner of Vinegar do you usually make up your medicines?*

Vinegar. Hippoferus. When we speak in general terms of *Vinegar* to be put into any medicines to be given, either for inward or outward diseases; we always intend it must be the strongest and best *White-Wine-Vinegar*; but if it be of any other kind of *Vinegar* or *Vcrjuice*, we then do give it in the *Receipt* its proper name.

Hippophilus. *As touching honey wherewith you make up your medicines, what manner of honey must it be?*

Honey. Hippoferus. That should be made of *life-honey*, only, and of none other, unless *common-honey* or *course-honey*, be in the *Receipt* particularly named, as it many times is.

Hippophilus. *Let us now go on to somewhat else: What hold you good for the head-ach in a horse?*

SECT. 3. A.

Hippoferus. **W**E administer according to the nature of the Disease, for that the pains in the *head* are several and distinct diseases, and therefore have several cures.

Hippophilus. *Which be those several maladies, and how may a man know and distinguish them each from other?*

Ach in the Head. Hippoferus. A judicious and cautelous observation is it, whereby we do know and distinguish all sorts of maladies: for the Horse, being a *dumb creature* without reason and speech, is not able (like as a *man* can) to tell you where his pain lieth, and therefore it must be the eye and judgment of the Ferrier, to be able to observe his true *symptoms* whereby he may go right to accomplish the *Cure*; otherwise he must of necessity fail. Wherefore as the diseases of the *head* are of several natures, every of which do beget his pain, even so are the medicines which we apply as different. Now these pains in the *head* do proceed from the *brain*, or from the *panicles*, by which means they do properly breed Megrims, the Night-Mare, Glanders, Rheumes, Cathars, Apoplexies, Convulsions, Palsies, Frenzies, the Takings, Sleeping-evil, Madness, and the like: all which commonly do proceed from the substance of the *brain*, or from the *panicles*; for that from the *Cells* and *Ventricles* through which the

the *spirits animal* do give feeling and moving to all the parts and members of the *body*, the diseases before mentioned do engender.

Hippophilus. *From what grounds hath this head-ach its source or Organ?*

Hippoferus. The grounds and causes are many Sir; some being inward, and some outward, as by means of some *choleric humour* which may be predominant, by which means it doth oft-times breed in the *pan cles* or else of some heat taken through violent labour, and sometimes by some blow given him in the *Poul* or other place of the *head*; and some do hold it cometh of some evil favour, which I also do allow of; sometimes it cometh of *Crudities* and *raw digestions* from the *Stomach*, by reason there is so great a sympathy betwixt the *Stomach* and the *Brain*, whereby they do continually participate as well of their good dispositions in health, as of their damages in the least of their infirmities and sufferings.

Hippophilus. *But many there be who do hold stiffly that a Horse hath no Brains at all, but only a kind of windy liquid substance, not unlike unto a kind of jelly.*

Hippoferus. That opinion is most erroneous, for a Horse hath a most perfect *brain*, like as hath any other living *Creature*, albeit indeed not in so great a proportion as other *Animals* have. For natural reason doth dictate that if a Horse had not his *brain*, it were impossible for him to have semblable diseases in the *head* which both *Man* and all other living things have, who are (I say) likewise subject to such *Maladies*; which could not proceed from any other causes but only from those before premised. Neither were it possible for a Horse to endure so great labour and toil, or to undergo, so great and so many ways, such extream violences as daily he doth, if nature hath not endowed him with his organical parts correspondent to his strength, ableness, and activity of body: neither could he have any memory at all, but appear a *Lump of flesh and bones* without motion. But not to verberate the Air; I affirm that a horse hath his *brains* in as compleat measure, albeit (as I have but now touched) not in so great a quantity as other *Beasts* have; but in as ample, solid and sufficient manner, as any other living *Creature*; together with the *skin*, which Artists do call *Panicles*, which doth adhere to the *bones* conducted by the

the *Cells* or *conducts* by which the *Vital Spirits* do give some feeling, sense and motion to the *body*, from whence proceed, the causes of diseases and sickness. And for your better satisfaction if you please I may be present when at any time your *Huntsman* is to cut up a Horse for your *hounds*, I will let you see most plainly both the *Brain* and the *Panicles*.

Hippophilus. *How shall a man come to know when a horse hath any pain in his head?*

Hippoferus. The symptoms are most evident, if you eye him well: for his eyes will swell and become watry, and oft-times Matterative; he will hang down his *head*, as if he were sleepy; he will prick his *ears* upright, forsake his meat, and his sight will be dim.

Hippophilus. *What Cure have you for the Head-achs?*

Hippoferus. Some use to perfume his *head* with the stalks of Garlick and Frankincense, two or three several times, which will bring much liquid stuff forth of his *Nose*, which indeed is very good, and I do practise it sometimes as occasion is offered; but then withal after I have perfumed him, I use to let him *bloud* in the *Palate vein*, and in both the *Weeping veins*. And when I do not perfume him, I take the longest feather of a Goose, and moisten it well in Oil de Bay, which I put up into his *Nostrils*; and this doth both open and purge his *head* abundantly, and then keeping his *Poul* warm, together with moderate diet, for three or four days after, I then take *bloud* from the *Neck-vein*; and give him all the time of his Cure either good *Mashes* or *white-water*, and undoubtedly he will do well. But sometimes if I find his *head-ach* cometh of cold taken wherein he may be inclining to an Ague or Feaver, I then besides drawing *blood*, do both apply *Acopum* to his *Nose*, like as I said for Oil de Bay, and also give him thereof to drink, as I have formerly prescribed. If he be Feaverish; take a pint of Muscadine, the yolkes of five new-laid Eggs, and a head of Garlick picked, pilled and bruised, Pepper, Cinnamon and Nutmegs, so much as well I can take up upon a Tester or six-peny peice: these all made into very fine powder; give him to drink blood-warm three days together, and let him fast six hours after. * * *

SECT. 4. A.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make *Ægyptiacum* ?
Hippoferus. We have two sorts of them ; the first we do call *Black Ægyptiacum* ; the second *Red*, both *Corrosives* ; for their natures be to corrode and eat away all manner of dead, proud, rotten, and naughty flesh out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do also cleanse and prepare a Sore, make it apt to be healed with carnifying, or healing Salves.

The first is thus made.

Take coarse English Honey two pound, Verdegrease, Diers Galls, and Green Coperas, of each four ounces : Let all these be made into powder and mixed together, and so put into an earthen pot, and set upon the fire, keeping it with continual stirring ; but so soon as it beginneth to boil, take it from the fire, and let it cool : for by suffering it long to boil, it will become red, which will not be so good. This black *Ægyptiacum*, besides what I have said before of its vertues, is also very good to dissolve the *hooves* of the Horse, if they be too dry or hard : so as it will cause the corruption, if any be in the *foot*, to ascend above at the *Cronet* where the hair is, and also to restore and repair the *hoof* of the Horse when the *sole* is taken out : and in this nature you must use this Unguent, but only at the third dressing after you have taken out the *sole*. * * *

The second Ægyptiacum is made thus.

Take coarse Honey two pounds, Verdegrease four ounces, green-Coperas two ounces beat the Verdegrease and the Coperas very small to powder, then put it into an earthen pot, and put unto it a little Vinegar, and so boil it very well till it become red, and keep it for your use. * * *

Another

SECT. 5. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your best Cure for a Horse that is Accloyed ?

N

Hippoferus.

Accloy.

Hipposferus. Sir, this Malady so called by the *French*; is the same we call prick't with a *Nail* in the Shoing, and it is as easily cured, if the *Ferrier* be skilful, and that it be also taken in time. And thus we work, *viz.* First, take out the sole, and cut the *hoof* round about the place pricked, that no corruption be remaining behind, fill it up again with hurds steeped in whites of Eggs; dress him thus three daies together, then heal the sore up with salt made into fine powder mingled with Vinegar, or else with Diers Galls, or with Myrtle, or Lentiles, and anoint the outside of the *hoof* with black *Ægyptiacum*. * * *

Another.

Take a little cotten or bumbast, and steep it in brown Sugar-Candy molten, and apply it with a hot Iron to the place. And if the foot be bruised with the shoe, or that the female horn be hurt or bruised, then cleanse and prepare the place first, and then apply unto it a quick or live Spider with a hot Iron, and so tack on the shoe, and let him not come into any wet till he be fully cured. * * *

Another.

Take Sallet Oil, Turpentine, and Rosin-pitch, all molten together, put it very hot into the hole where he is pricked, and so stop the hole with Hurds. * * *

SECT. 6. A.

Hippophilus. **W** *hat Receipts have you for all inward Diseases?*

Hipposferus. The *Spaniards* have one Medicine with which they Cure all Diseases; and albeit I say they do cure all diseases, with this one *Receipt*; yet my meaning is, that look whatsoever the infirmity be, they administer none other thing but that one, whether it cure or kill; and this they call a *Cataplasm*, of which they make no small account, which they give as Pills.

All Diseases a Cataplasm.

Take Wheat-Meal twelve pound, Anniseeds four ounces in fine powder, Brimstone in powder three ounces, Fenugreek in powder three ounces & *sem.* Comin in powder three ounces, Honey two pound, good Sallet Oil one pound & *sem.* of good Sack

Sack as much, or so much as will suffice to make it into a *Cataplasm* or *Paste*. This *Cataplasm* (say the *Spaniards*) or Medicine, is all of it to be put into a stone-pot well nealed, and so boiled until it be thick, so as when it is cold it may be made up into Pills or Balls; whilst it is in boiling it must be kept with continual stirring, otherwise it will burn-to; and being thus made into Pills, give him of them every morning fasting, for four or five days together; or longer if you shall see cause; for that (say they) it is most sovereign against many Maladies. It killeth all sorts of Worms within the *Body* of the Horse: it also helpeth the Diseases of the *Lungs*, and inward parts, and it is generally good for any inward cause; and an excellent local plaister to be applyed outwardly. It is the *Spaniards* principal Physick for their *Fennets* and *Barbaries*. I have made trial thereof sundry times, and I do find it to be most useful in all cold causes; and truly it is most Cordial, for it doth bring a lean and poor Horse unto flesh and good state in a little time. * * *

A second *Receipt* I also have, which cureth all inward Diseases, which I had of a *Rural Smith*, who was cried up for a famous *Ferrier* all the Countrey about: So I, having heard so great a report of his skill, addressed my self unto him, and when I had conferred with him, putting him hard to it in the matter of his Art; he at last ingenuously confessed unto me that he had but this one only drink, which gat him all his knowledge and Credit, which with much pressure I wrested from him, under condition that I should never make him known, wherein I have precisely kept my word. And the Cure and Drink is this: *Viz.* Take Wheat-Meal six pound, or as much as will bring the Ingredients into a stiff Paste, Anniseeds two ounces, Cummin two ounces, wild or bastard Saffron one dram and half, white Wine four Pints, Fenugreek one ounce and two drams: Brimstone one ounce and half, good Sallet Oil one pint and two ounces, English Honey one pound and half: powder and searce what is to be powdered and searced, then compound them together, and make it into one body into a stiff paste, and so keep it in a clean Gally-pot close covered for your use. And when you have occasion to use it, make a Pill or Ball thereof, of the bigness of a mans fist; and so save and dissolve it into two

All Diseases
are a
Cataplasm

Gallons of fair water, till it be all molten into the water: Let your Horse drink hereof so long as you please both morning and evening, and let him have none other water to drink; to the end he may be the better compelled to drink of the Water, which in the end he will do, and like it very well, *.*.*

Of this *Cataplasm* I have made often use, and I do find it to be a sovereign *Receipt* for many infirmities; it also preventeth much inward sickness; it raiseth and battleth a Horse much better than either Grass or Provender; and it giveth him Life, Spirit, and Stomach, and keepeth him in perfect health.

Our ordinary Countrey Smiths have yet another Drink, which they administer upon all inward causes; and truly it doth oft-times hit right, especially in cold causes; viz.

All Diseases.

3.

Take *Fenewgreek*, *Turmerick*, *Grains*, *Anniseeds*, *Licoris*, *Long-Pepper*, *Cummin*, of each half an ounce, and of Saffron one dram; and of Herbs, take *Celendine*, *Rue*, *Pelamontine*, *Hysop*, *Thyme* and *Rosemary*, of each, like much, but yet no more than will make of them all but half a handful: First chop small these Herbs, and put them into a quart of good Ale, and when they have boiled a while, put in your *Spices* finely powdered, and then boil them again with a small fire; then take it from the fire, and strain it, and put to the liquor the quantity of an Egg of sweet butter, and half an ounce of *London Treacle*; give this to your Horse bloud warm, and ride him moderately after, and then set him up warm and well littered, letting him fast four hours after, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash or White Water. This very good against Fevers, Colds, and the Yellows, *.*.*

SECT. 7. A.

Hippoph. **I** Met not long since with a disease called *St. Antonies Fire*, I pray is there such a Disease?

Hippoferus. Yes Sir, there is such a disease, but it so seldom comes to a Horse, as that few Ferriers have had occasion to cure the same: by reason very few know it: and therefore marvel not in that they cannot cure the same. *Saint Antonies Fire* is that burneth in the flesh most extremly, and hath in it
fo

so great malice as that look what you do apply to the place (unless you hit the Cure right) it will do it no good, but more harm, much after the nature of a *No'i me Tangere*, or wild fire. This Disease is also called by some the *Shingles* in a Horse, and like as the Disease it self is very rare and seldom known in a Horse, so also is the Cure as uncouth and strange. For my part I will not profess my self to be any whit more skilful than indeed I am: This indeed I never yet observed to be in any Horse: I only have heard some Ferriers talk thereof; but yet I never heard but of one man, who was ever truly able to make a Cure thereof; and this was a Knight of very good worship who taught it me, he averring confidently unto me, how that he had cured three several Horses of this very malady. I asked him whence this disease proceedeth, and what are the symptoms whereby to know the same? he answered me that he could never rightly come to be mathematically assured how it breedeth, or occurreth to the Horse, but by guess only, and that himself thought it came from some *choleric blood* passing to his head into the *brain* and *panicles*, which causeth the Horse to become stark mad, as to be deprived of his Memory, in not knowing his *Keeper*, or any other body else; yea his fury is so great, as to resist stripes, to slight and contemn correction, be it never so severe; he will endeavour what in him lyeth to perpetrate what mischief he is able, by biting, striking, and endangering whom or whatsoever thing cometh into his way; and when he cannot have his mind of living creatures, whereupon to wreak his malice, then will he do it partly upon dead creatures, by biting and gnawing his Manger and Rack-staves, and by striking the Posts and Barrs with his *heels*, and partly upon himself, by beating his head against the wall and ground; he will also forsake both his meat and sleep, or natural rest, until he dyeth, if he be not in time cured, which is thus.

Take first help enough, and cast him, which done, take a *Worm* which groweth in a *Fullers Teazell*, and put this *Worm* alive, and without any hurt into a *quill*, then slit the *skin* of the *fore-head* of the *Horse* under the *foretop*, and open the same round about with your *cornet*, making a concavity an inch round every way and better, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*; which done,

S. Antho-
nies Fire.

done, blow the said Worm out of the *quill* into the place which you made hollow as aforesaid; but take heed you do not kill the Worm in stitching up the *skin* again, because that the Worm may not get forth; and after twenty days the Worm will dye, and in that time the Horse will be thoroughly cured. This cure was taught me by the aforesaid Noble *Knight*, with which he affirmed to me, that he had cured three or four Horses.

S E C T. 8. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you to an Anticor?

Hippoferus. Sir, I say it is a Disease whereunto Horses are oft-times enclined and it cometh sundry ways, to wit, sometimes with too much feeding without exercise, sometimes of too hard and immoderate riding, or other labour; both which ways the *blood* of the creature becometh corrupted and inflamed, which maketh its residence in and above the heart, which if it should not have a way to make its vent, it would quickly kill him, by which means many good Horses dye suddainly, and the cause unknown. This Disease is apparent to the *eye* by a swelling, which will arise in the middle of the *breast*, just against the *heart*, from whence it taketh its name which if it be not soon prevented, will ascend to the *throat*, and then it is certain death. It cometh likewise by Surfeits taken by heats and colds, sometimes also by Feavers, which are malignant, and sometimes again by feeding upon unwholsom meats. The signs to know this Disease before the swelling do appear are these, he will be sick, and groan many times when he is layed, he will hang down his head, and forsake his meat; and then if he should desire to eat, what meat he loveth best, whether Hay, Grass, Provender, or Bread, lay it upon the Ground before him, and if he hath a mind to eat thereof, albeit he make proffer to bring his *snout* towards it, yet he shall not be able to reach it, but will sooner famish; when you do perceive the swelling to appear, first draw blood from both the *Plate-veins*, but if you cannot find them, then let him bleed on both sides of the *neck* to a good proportion; which done, you may give him the drink of *Diapent*, with Beer or Ale, putting

ting thereinto one ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and half an ounce of *London Treacle*, which will drive the sickness and grief from his *heart*; which done, anoint the swelling with this Oyntment.

Take Hogs greafe, Boars greafe, and Basilicon, of each three ounces, incorporate all these well into one body, and anoint ^{Anticor.} and rub the swelling therewith every day till it come to a softness, and then open it, and let forth all the corrupted matter; then wash the Sore with your Coperas water mentioned in *Lib. 2. chap. 10. Sect. 4.* and then put in your green Oyntment prescribed you in *capite ibidem*, and it will be soon whole.

Thus have I cured many Horses of this Disease, and I never failed, if the Horse had not been swelled too high towards the *throat* or *neck* before I took him in hand. * * * But Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams* cure for an *Anticor*, is thus.

First they let him *blood* in the *Plate-veins*, and then they give him this drink. Take a quart of *Malmesey*, and put thereto half a quartern of Sugar, and of *Cinnamon* two ounces, and so give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm in the stable, especially his *breast*, that no wind do offend him; and for his drink, let it be warm *Mashes*, and such meat as he will eat. And if the swelling do appear, then beside letting him *blood*, they do strike the swelling in divers places with their flegm, that the corruption may go forth, and anoint the place with warm Hogs greafe, and that will cause it to wear away, or else grow to a head if it be kept warm. Thus Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams* cure is in effect the very same. Master *Markham* also prescribeth *Malmesey* and *Diapente*, which is used also by others, and it is very good; and he also saith that some do administer *Doctor Stephens Water*, which he affirmeth he hath seen to have wrought in this kind strange effects. For my part I submit, for that these *Receipts* seem very probable; howsoever I never did experiment any but that only which I first inserted, which I had of a famous Ferrier in *France*, and therefore I finding mine to be infallible made trial of none other.

SECT. 9. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat is that you do call an Upper Attaint?
Hippoferus. It is none other thing but a swelling of the Master or Back-sinew, of the fore-leg above the Pastern-joint, and most commonly cometh by an over reach; that is, when the Horse in running either down a hill, or upon deeps, or upon or over-thwart high furrows of plowed Lands, or upon other evil or uneven Grounds, do strike the toe of his hinder foot against the great sinew of the fore-leg. This I say, we term an Upper Attaint.

Upper
Attaint.

Hippophilus. How may a man come to know assuredly that the grief lieth in that sinew?

Hippoferus. Your eye and hand (Sir) will shew it you very palpably; for the sinew will swell, and burn, and be sore, and the Horse will halt therewith.

Hippophilus, What Cure have you for it?

Hippoferus. We use to the place a charge restraining which must be siccativ.

Hippophilus. I should rather think that by applying, suppleing, or mollifying Oils or Unguents, you might cure it sooner and much better.

Hippoferus. Herein Sir, under your favour you are much mistaken: for all things that are suppleing are most noxious unto these kind of Maladies; by reason that all Oils and Unguents will cause the sinew to swell much more than otherwise; and therefore we do apply siccativ and drying things. Some use Cauterizings, which indeed will cure, and set the Horse upright again, but therein are two inconveniences; to wit: First, albeit it taketh away his pain, so as he desisteth from halting, yet will the place be ever after swelled, which will be a continual eye-sore, during his life: Secondly, the marks and stroaks where the Iron went will be ever after seen, making the hair of a different colour: both which are great blemishes to the Horse.

Hippoph. Wherein then consisteth your best Cure in this Case?

Hippoferus. I always use for a sorance of this nature to apply this ensuing Charge.

Take

Take Cantharides two ounces, Mastick four pennyworth, Venice Turpentine two pennyworth, Euforbium four drams, Black Rosin six ounces, Aqua-fortis two drams: beat the Cantharides and Euforbium into fine powder: then first melt the Mastick and Black Rosin, then put in your Turpentine, which so soon as it is molten, put in your Cantharides and Euforbium, and let all boil together, keeping them stirring, and have a special care it boil not over: and when you have taken it from the Fire, put in your Aqua-fortis, and so stir them well together, and put it into a glass or gally pot, and so keep it for your use. And when you have occasion to use the same, first wash and bathe the grieved place well, then with your Splatter spread it upon the place being made warm, and clap floss upon it of the same colour, and give him rest, and he will do well. But he must have time, and after a week that he hath been thus charged, let him be put forth to grass if it be not in Winter, or the Winter or cold weather approaching. * * *

Attraint
upper or
back si-
new pain.

Another.

Take the whites of two new layed Eggs, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, and the best and strongest white Wine Vinegar, incorporate these very well together with the powder of Sanguis Draconis, and having shaven away the hair as aforesaid, spread it good and thick upon the grieved place, adding still more every 3 days, for 15 days together; and then put him forth to grass, and let him run a whole March, and after so long as you shall think to be sufficient, and he will be found again. * * *. This I have also made tryal of, and I have found it to be right good.

A *French Marshal* taught me a medicine for an *Attraint* or *Overreach*, whereof I did never make use; howbeit he protested unto me he thought it one of the best cures that he could ever know; and I my self saw him dress a *Horse* therewith, but how the *Horse* became cured, I had not time to know, by reason I departed from *Orleans* before the Cure was performed. And the cure was this. Take one or two handfuls of Saxafrage, and all the Sewet of a Loin of Mutton, and a pint of white Wine; chop the Herb, and mince the Sewet very small, and so boil all these together, which being thus well boiled, take a sufficient quantity of *Horse-dung*, newly made by a *Horse* that goeth to grass, and putting it to the other Ingredients, work

it to a Salve, and apply it *plaster-wise* to the place good hot, renewing it twice every day for so long time as you shall think to be convenient.

Now Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* do both agree in the Cure of an *Attaint*, which is thus: First, wash and bath the place with warm Water, and shave the hair so far as the swelling goeth: then scarifie the sore place with the point of a Razor, that the blood may issue forth: Then take *Cantharides* and *Euforbium* of each half an ounce, powdred, and mingle them together with a quartern of Sope, and with a shy spread some of the Ointment over all the sore, suffering him to rest in the place where you dressed him for one half hour after; and then you may take him into the Stable, there letting him stand without Litter, and so tyed that he may not touch the sore with his *Mouth*, and then the next day use him in the same manner again; then the third day anoint the place with fresh Butter continuing so to do by the space of nine days, and at nine days end, make him his bath.

Take Mallows three handfuls, a Rose-Cake, and Sage of each a handful; boil them together in a sufficient quantity of fair water; and when the Mallows are become soft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet Oil, and then being somewhat warm; wash and bath the sore place therewith every day once till it be whole. This medicine I confess I never tryed, but I think it very good. Master *Blundevile* hath only this, but Master *Markham* hath sundry others; some of which, I will relate, to the end, the *Ferrier* may make his choice.

Another.

Take *Dialthea*, *Agrippa*, and Oil, and mixing these together, lay it to the swelling.

Another.

Take also *Frankincense*, *Rosin*, *Tarr*, *Euforbium*, *Turpentine*, *Fenugreek*, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Sewet one ounce, of Oil one ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of *Myrrh*; mix and melt all these together. and *plaster-wise* lay it to the place till it be whole.

Another.

Take also *Sanguis Draconis* three quarters of an ounce, *Bole Armoniack*

Armoniack one ounce, Oil as much, Mastick three ounces, Sewet as much, and as much Swines greasè; melt and mix all these together, and lay it to the swelling, and it will take it away.

Another Cure I found in an Old Manuscript, with which I have cured many *Horses*, which have been much swelled which is this: *Viz.*

Take *Turpentine* of *Venice* one ounce, and *Aquavita* three spoonfuls: beat them together in a Bladder, or some other convenient Vessel, until they come to a perfect salve, then anoint the sore very well therewith, and heat it in with a hot Brick, or a hot Iron; and thus doing four or five times, it will set him upright. * * *. This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

SECT. 10. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat is that you call a Neather Attaint?
Hippoferus. It is also an Over-reach sometimes, and sometimes again it cometh by a Wrench, sometimes by a Strain, sometimes by treading upon a sharp stone or stub, and sometimes it cometh by a blow, and it is called properly a *Neather Attaint*, by reason it being commonly upon the fore-leg, like as is the other; it is nevertheless placed lower than the other is; for whereas the other is above the *Fetlock Joint*, this is under it, for it is commonly upon the *Heel* or *Frash*, or is it oft times visible to the eye, howsoever it may be felt, as well by the heat and glowing which will be upon the *Heel*, as also by the softness, for there will be a *Bladder* or blister of viscous corrupt matter like to Jelly, which will grow in the place; and besides it will make the *Horse* to complain, and it will be also somewhat swelled. I have cured sundry *Horses* which have had this malady, and they have done well again. The Cure is thus.

Attaint
Neather.

Take a piece of filleting, and bind it above the *Pastern-joint*, a little good and hard, which will cause the blister or swelling the better to appear more visible to the eye; make Incision with your Incision Knife, and crush out all the corrupt Jelly, and congealed matter. Then heal it up by washing the fore

with Coperas water, declared in *Lib. 2. Chap. 10. Sect. 4.* and after anoint it with the green Ointment mentioned in *cap. & Sect. ibid.* and so in short time it will be whole and found again, * * *. This is a very hard Cure for your ordinary Country *Sm ths* to take in hand to perform, if they be not well acquainted with the nature of this Malady. Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham*, have both this manner of Cure, only they differ from me in the healing Salve.

S E C T. 12. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat Cure have you for the Avives?

Avives.

Hippoferus. This term *Avives* we have also gotten from the *French*, which our *Ferriers* do call the *Vives*. It is a Disease which grows under the *Ears*, and *secundum vulgus*, it is called the *Fives* or *Vives*, from the *Ears* it creepeth down towards the *Throat*, which when they begin to enflame will swell, and not only pain the *Horse* very much, but also prove mortal, by stopping his *Wind* they will kill him outright, if it be not in time cured; and I my self have seen and known *Horses* dye of this malady. It proceedeth most commonly of Rankness of *Blood*; in the Cure, care must be taken that you do not touch the Grains or Kernels with your fingers. The *Avives* or *Vives* are certain flat Kernels, much like Bunches of Grapes which grow in a cluster, close knotted together in the place; the most certain cure is to cut the *Skin* longest ways; and to lay the Kernels or Grains open, and then with an Instrument made like to a pair of Pliers to pinch forth the Grains, then to apply unto the place either a Linnen Cloath, or a few hurds steeped well in whites of Eggs well beaten, and so bound on, and renewing it daily, it will cure it; but you must heal up the *skin* with the Green Ointment before spoken of in *cap. & Sect. ibid.* * * *. But the common cure is to draw down the sore with a hot Iron just in the midst, so far as the swelling goeth; and then under the root of the *Ear*, draw two other stroaks of the fashion of an Arrows head, then open the *skin*, and with a small pair of Pliers, pull out the Kernels, and so cut them off; but have a care of the *Veins*; that done, fill the place with Bay-salt made into fine powder, and after heal up the sore with the

the aforesaid Ointment. * * *. This have I also practised, and performed the Cure, but with greater difficulty than the former, by reason of the Fire which I put to the place : and therefore I do hold my former Cure the better, safer, and speedier. * * *.

Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham* do say, that the *Italians* use to take a sponge well dipped in strong Wine Vinegar, and bound to the sore, renewing it twice a day till the Kernels do rot ; then they open the neathermost part of the softness, and so let the corruption forth, and then fill the hole with salt finely brayed ; and the next day they wash away the filth with warm water, and the next day after they anoint the Sore, with Honey and Fitch-flower mingled together, till it be whole. This Cure I never made trial of, but it seemeth to me to be a very good and probable Cure. Another for the *Avives*.

Take Tar, tryed Hogs greafe, Bay salt, and Frankincense powdered, of each so much as will suffice ; melt these on the fire altogether, then with a clout fastened to the end of a stick, boilling hot, scald the places four or five mornings one after another until the enflamed places do become soft and ripe. Then with your incision knife, slit the skin, and let forth the corruption : then to heal up the sorances, take tryed Hogs greafe and Verdigrease made up into fine powder, melt them upon a gentle fire, but suffer it not to boil more than a waum or two at the most, then take it off, and put to it of ordinary Turpentine, as much as will suffice, and so stir all together until it be cold. And herewith anoint the sorances daily till they be whole * * *. This is very good.

Master *Markham* in his *Master-piece*, hath a cure for the *Avives*, which he entitleth ; *A most rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such like violent exercise.* But as yet I did never experiment the same. The Cure is this.

Take a penny-worth of Pepper, beaten to fine powder, Swines greafe a spoonful, the juice of Rue a handful, and of Vinegar two spoonfuls, mix all well together, and convey it equally into both the ears of the Horse, and so tie or stick them up ; then shake his ears that the medicine may sink downwards :
which

which done, you shall let him *blood* in the *neck-vein*, and in the *temple-vein*. And this (saith he) *is an infallible Cure*.

S E C T. 12. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat Disease is that which we do call the Arraistes? *Hippoferus*. Arraistes, is also a French Epitheton, which is a disease we do commonly call the Rat-tayles, ingendring in the *heels* of a Horse, not much unlike to the Scratches, but that it is much more venomous and malignant. It cometh of too much rest, and the *Keepers* want of care in the not rubbing and dressing him, as also by reason that the Horse standeth continually in the Stable, his fore-feet being higher than his hinder-feet: for by reason of his great rest and pampering, the *blood* corrupting in his *body*, falls down into his *hinder-legs* and breedeth this disease, which now we do call the Arraistes or Rat-tails. The best cure for this Malady is, first, to let the Horse be ridden till he be warm, whereby the veins will swell, and the better appear. Let him *blood* in the *fetlock-veins* on both sides, making him to bleed well; and the next day after, wash the sores with warm water, and then clip away all the *hair* from about the sores, then anoint the grieved places with this Ointment, *viz.*

Arraistes
or Rat-
tails.

Take green Coperas, and Verdigrease, of each two ounces; beat your Coperas and Verdigrease very small, and so work them with your honey, to a perfect Unguent, and herewith anoint the sores daily till they be whole. * * *. And thus we do conclude this Chapter.

C H A P. V.

S E C T. 1. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your best way to break and heal the back of a Horse that is swoln? *Hippoferus*. We have many ways to cure a malady of this nature: If the place be swelled, and yet not ripe

ripe enough to be opened, then apply that remedy which you shall find taught you hereafter, to resolve or ripen the same; and when it is ripe, put your Incision-Knife unto it, or a hot Iron, and so open it in the lowest part, so as the putrefaction may the more easily pass away; then every morning inject this *Lotion* with a Syringe, which is thus to be made, *v.z.*

Take Honey-suckle leaves, Plantine, Ribwort, Yarrow, ^{Back} Burfa-Pastoris, Knot-grass, and Cumphry, of each half a handful, boil these in a quantity of running water, till a moiety be consumed, then strain the Herbs from the water, casting away the Herbs, and then set the water upon the fire again, and so soon as it beginneth to boil again, put into the said water honey of Roses one ounce, Allum and Alkanet, of each two drams; stir all these well together, and let it boil till these latter ingredients be well dissolved, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold, put it into a clean glass, keeping it close stopped for your use. Use this water every day five or six days together, and it will cure any forance in the *back*, or other part of the *body*, provided that to *skin* the sore, you apply a rag made wet in the same water. * * *. Another receipt I have, wherewith I have cured many galled backs, and other forances: which is as followeth.

Take water and salt, and boil them well together, and first wash the sore place therewith. Then take Pepper made into very fine powder, and strew it upon the sore, and it will heal it in very short time. * * *. A third I have much more sovereign than the two former, which cureth not only all galled *backs*, but any other wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin and common pitch, of each six ounces, Mastick and Incense, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolearmoniack, of each 3 ounces, melt, dissolve, & incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and as they do begin to cool, make them up in roles, and when you would use this salve, Spread it upon a cloath or leather, somewhat thin; but if you be to use it without either cloath or leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you use to do Plaister-wise; and whilest it is warm, clap *stocks* of the same colour upon it. This *Emplastrum* as it cureth any swelling, gall, wound, sore or hurt; so it ripeneth, breaketh, and heal-

eth.

eth all imposturation, boils, and pustils. It is also a most excellent *defensive plaister* for the staying, and drying up of all evil humours, and also very sovereign for asswaging of swellings. *:*.*

Another Receipt I have taught me by a worthy *Knight*, But I never made use thereof.

Take the leaves of *Asmart*, and wash them, and lay them all over the place; and albeit you ride him every day, yet will he heal very fast. But if he do remain in the *Stable* without exercise, if you put the water of the leaves upon the place, it will heal him speedily.

Another Receipt I have which was taught me by a *French Marshall*, howbeit I made no trial thereof, but he commended it to be *Tresborne*; which is this, *viz.* Take three parts of sheeps dung, and one part of *Wheat* or *Rye-flower*, and dry the flower, and then knead them together, and bake it a little, and apply it blood warm to the place.

SECT. 2. B.

Hippoph. **I**S there a Disease in a Horse called the Barbes?

Barbes.

Hippeferus. Yea Sir, there is such a disease, and it groweth in the *mouth* under the *tongue* naturally, for every Horse hath them, nevertheless there is no harm in them, until they do become inflamed, and then they will swell with corrupt blood, proceeding from naughty *humors*, and become raw, and so trouble and pain the Horse, so as he cannot feed without much grief: for it cometh by means of evil *humours*, and inflamed *blood*. I never heard of more Cures than two for this malady, which is to take hold of his *Tongue*, and on either side under it of the *Jaw*, you shall see two Teats or Paps, clip them away close, and then wash the place with a little water and salt, and they are cured. The other Cure.

Take a pair of Sizers and clip them away from under the *Tongue*, and let them bleed, then prick him in the *Palate* of the *Mouth* with your *Fleam*, that he may bleed the better, then wash the places with white *Wine Vinegar*, *Bolcarmoniack*, and *Bay Salt*, of each as much as will suffice, and for three or four

four days after, let him see that no Hay-dust stick upon the places so clipped, and he will soon be well again.

SECT. 3. B.

Hippophilus. **V** *What good Receipt have you to dissolve and dry up all ill humours in the Body?*

Bath for
humors
to dry
them up.

Hippoferus. The best thing that I could ever know, is a certain Bath which I make, wherewith I bathe him, and I do find it to be right good, which I make thus, *viz.* Take Sage and Rosemary, of each a handful, and of the Barke of the Root Beech, three pound, and of the Brakes of young Elms, Oakes and Ashe, of each a handful, of Nep, Pennyroyal, and of Chestnuts, the Rinds being taken away, of each a handful, three or four white Onions clean pilled and cut into small pieces or slices, red Wine three pottles, strong white Wine Vinegar two pottles; boil all these together, and cause your Horse to be walked a quarter of an hour before, a good pace, that he may be only warm, then let him be presently bathed with this Bath good and hot, and then set him up warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mash, or white water; bath him thus three days together, and feed him with such meat as is sweet and wholesom, and let him not be ridden into any water in eight or ten days after, and this shall dissolve and dry up all his bad *Humours*. *.*. This I learned of an *Italian Rider* in *Bruxels*, whom I saw practise it very often whilst I was there, and rode with him. And since I have my self administred it to many good Horses here in *England*, with which I have done very much good.

Hippophilus. *Now that we speak of Baths, I would gladly know what are their Vertues.*

Hippoferus. Baths have been much more in use in former times than now they are; howbeit I and my Master do use them often, and we do find great profit by them: For they are fomentations, which be the most comfortable things of any to the *Joynts* and *Limbs* of a Horse. Baths dissolve all ill humors, and give heat and warmth unto all the *Members* that are benumbed with cold, or for want of *Blood*; it comforteth and strengtheneth them, and it giveth very great ease to the pain-

ed *Sinews*. Besides, it affwageth swellings in or about any outward parts of the *body*; for *legs* swelling, stiff, or benumbed, or for any other joynt pained or grieved, or for any *string-halt*, *cramp*, or *convulsion*. I commonly use a *bath*, which doth in short time cure all such like maladies. And my *bathe* is this.

Bath for
stiff Legs.
1.
Take Muskadine and Sallet Oil, of each a pint, Bay-leaves and Rosemary, of each two handfuls, let them boil half an hour, and when you are to bathe your Horse therewith, rub and chafe the grieved place with a whisp or hair cloath a pretty while, then put the foot into some broad bowl or pail, whereby to preserve the Liquor and Herbs, and lave and bathe him thus a quarter of an hour; which ended, bind upon the the place a piece of Sheeps or Lambs skin, with the woolly side to the *leg*, and let him stand so four and twenty hours; apply this five or six times, and it will be a perfect cure. * * *

Another *Bath* I have, which is most sovereign to cure all gourdy, and gouty, and swoln *legs*, which cometh either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like, wherewith I have cured very many Horses. And thus it is made.

Bath.
2.
Take the Grounds of a Beer Barrel with the Barm, Smallage, Featherfew, Winter-favoury, Cumfrey, Mallows, Rue, Setwel, Pennyroyal, Wormwood, Arch angel, of each a good handful, and of the leaves and Berries of Missetow three or four good handfuls, Sheeps Tallow one pound, tryed Hogs-grease half a pound, three or four handfuls of Rye or Wheat-Bran; boil all these together until all the Herbs and Missetow become soft; but be sure you have liquor enough; and a little before you take it from the fire, put into it some Hay: With this bathe his Legs; first one, then the other, putting still that Leg which you are to bathe into a broad Bowl or Pail, as is afore shewed; and when you have bathed that *Leg* sufficiently, then take off the Hay in the Bath, and making a Thumb-band thereof, rowl it about the *Leg* above the uppermost or middle *Joynt*, and put off the Herbs betwixt his *Leg* and the Thumb-band: and so use the other *Leg* or *Legs* which are swelled and need bathing: Which done, powre of the liquor remaining upon the Thumb-bands: and thus let him be bathed herewith every day once, for so many days together as you shall

shall think requisite, and it will bring down the swelling quite, and make him sound. * * *

Another Bath I have no less excellent, wherewith I have Bath. done many rare cures, *viz.*

Take Smalage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps Sewet, of each like much, to a good quantity: Chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone Mortar; than boil them with mans Urine, and bathe the grieved parts herewith warm, doing as before with Bowl or Pail: then with Thumb-bands of soft Hay made first wet in cold water, rope up the member, as well above as below the grief. Use this as oft as you shall see cause, but if the grief happen in Travel, then by bathing him thus over night, and roping him up, he will be able to travel again the next morning without complaining. * * * This I do assure you is a most excellent Bath, and it cureth any Lameness which cometh either by stroke, strain, or other Accident.

One other Bath I have, whereof I never made use, taught Bath. me by a *Gentleman*, who was well versed in *Horse-Lecch craft.* 4. And his Receipt is this: *viz.*

Take Savin, and the Bark and Leaves of the Baytree, Pellytory, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, of each three ounces, boil these in a Gallon of white Wine, until half be consumed: herewith bathe your *Horse* as before is shewed, and whether the grief be visible or not, use it; and you will find it an approved medicine. After this manner hath the *Gentleman* delivered me this Receipt, which he protested to me to be most sovereign: which I can neither commend nor dispraise, by reason I never yet had experience thereof. And thus much of *Baths*, now let us pass to other matters.

S E C T. 4. B.

Hippoph. **I** Pray you Hipposerus, can you shew me what is good to cause a *Horse* in the Stable to Belly well?

Hipposerus. That can I Sir, for many *Horses* by being kept long in the Stable (especially young *Horses*) will seldom have good bellies; for their bellies will shrink up towards their *Flanks*, and they become as gaunt as *Running Horses* use to be, when they are dieted for a Course; which doth betoken great Co-

itiveness in them, which proceedeth of much unnatural heat in the *body*; and such *Horses* never thrive or like well, for they be naturally tender, and wash, or flew of their flesh: and therefore such a *Horse* I could wish you not to keep, but to put away as soon as may be. For if he come once to hard labour, you cannot possibly keep him sound, but be often sick and unhealthy. The best Cure which I have was taught me by a *French Marshal*, who told me that every *Horse* hath about his *Cods* two small strings, which extend from his *Cods* to the bottom of his *belly*, to wit, of each side one; which said strings you must break with your finger, a thing very easie to be done by those that have practised it; and when you have broken them, you must anoint that place every day with fresh Butter and *Unguentum Populcon* mixed together; this done, in short time he will come to *Belly* well.

Belly
pant.

This I never my self tryed, but he that taught it me did much practise it, and he brake many of those strings of sundry *Horses* in my sight.

SECT. 5. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat means have you to help the pain in the *Belly* of a *Horse*?

Hippoferus. This disease is that we call the *Colick*, which the *Italians* do call *Colon*, from whence our *English Ferriers* derive the word *Colick*: the *French* call it *Tranchaisons*, which is a pain or griping in the *Belly*, coming sometimes of cold and wind, and sometimes of gross *humours*, which lie in the small *Guts*; sometimes by reason of abundance of Billious or sharp *Humors*; & sometimes by inflammations in the *Body* caused by feeding upon raw and bad meats, which occasion *Crudities*. But of this we shall have occasion to speak more in its proper place of the *Colick*: Only thus much, that whereas pains and Gripings in the *Belly* do proceed oft-times from the *Liver*, and the working of the *Spleen*, which is most ventosous. But I think it not amiss, to give you one receipt wherewith to cure any Gripings or pains which may at any time proceed either from the *Liver*, *Spleen*, or *Milt*. Neither have you any signs whereby to know this disease, but only the same for the *Colick*. And the Cure is this.

Belly
pain.

Take.

Take Hyssop, Cowslips, Liverwort, Lungwort, of each like much, so as all when they be together, they do not exceed half a handful. Then take Gentiana, Aristolochia Rotunda, Fenugreek, Enula Campana dried, long-Pepper, of each half a spoonful, and one spoonful of Honey: chop the herbs small, and make the other simples into fine powder, and boil them in a quart of Ale or Muscadine, which is much better, and give it him blood warm, and ride him an hour after, then set him up warm, and four or five hours after give him boiled barley, and for three or four daies let his drink be either Masnes or white water. * * With this I have done many good Cures.

S E C T. 6. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to heal the Tongue of a Horse, which is hurt with the Bit or Haulter?

Hippoferus. If the Tongue of your Horse be hurt or cut with his Bit or Haulter, or by any other accident or mishap, the best way to cure and heal it, is: Bit wher-
with the
tongue is
hurt.

Take Mel Rosarum, and anoint it therewith, with a Linnen Rag fastened to the end of a stick, let the Sore be so anointed three or four times a day, and let him always after dressing stand upon the Trench one hour, and in short time it will be whole. With this I have cured many Horses, some of which have had their Tongues cut more than half through. * * Another Cure I have which a *French-man* taught me, which is as followeth.

Take red Honey, the marrow of powder'd Pork, quick Lime and Pepper, all made into fine powder, of each like much; boil all these together, still stirring it till it come to an Oyntment, with which anoint the sore twice every day till it be whole. With this receipt I have cured sundry good Horses, and I do know it to be very good. * * *

SECT. 7. B.

Hippoph. **H**ow may a man stanch the bleeding at the Nose, or when a Vein is cut, or a wound given, whereby a Horse is in danger to bleed to death?

Bleeding
to stanch. *Hippoferus.* We have many ways wherewith to stanch Bleeding, as well at the Nose as elsewhere. As thus, take the tender tops of Hyfop, and stamp them to mass, and put them up into his Nose or lay and bind it to the wound or vein cut or broken, and he will be suddainly stanch. * * *

Another.

Take *Bursa-Pastoris* bruised, and apply it to the place, and this is very good.

Another.

Take the powder of the stone called *Emachile*, and blow it up into the Nose, or lay it to the Vein or Wound, and the blood will be stanch.

Another.

Take his own blood, dry it, and make it into fine powder, and apply it as is aforesaid, its very good. * * *

Another.

Take the tops of the angriest and youngest red Nettles, and stamp them very well, and laid to the place, will stanch bleeding. * * *

Another.

Take Hogs dung, and apply it as aforesaid, its very good. * * *

Take also Bumbast cotten, Woollen Cloth, Silk, Felt, all these burned; or the Herb called Clowns-all-heal, will do the like. * * * All of these I have often tryed, and do find them right good.

SECT. 8. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good against Blindness?

Blindness

Hippoferus. Blindness may come many ways, and therefore if it be that which cometh of films or thickness in the Eyes, which of all other kinds of this nature is easiest to be-cured; I will remit them to their proper places. But for
films

films only I will give you one or two Receipts. But first it were fit you should understand how this Disease cometh to a Horse. If he be subject to have a thicknes or white films in his eyes; it cometh most commonly of a *rhume* which passeth into his eyes from his *head*, which you may soon perceive by his continual weeping, and sending forth watery moisture, which will run from his eyes upon his *face*; which when you shall observe, let then his *Keeper* sundry times every day wash and bathe his eyes with cold water newly drawn from the Well; and this will prevent his *films*, and cure that *flux* or *rhume*; but if the *films* do come before you observe that he had any such *rhume* or running at the eyes: Then

Take mans dung, and put it into a Firepan, and so burn it until it come to be a cole, then beat it to fine powder, and put that into a Goose quill, and blow it into his eyes twice a day; and this will clear his eyes again. * * *

Take also the tops of the angriest young red Nettles, a handful, and stamp them very well, then put it into a fine Linnen cloth, and then dip it into Beer a little, and so strain forth the juice; which done, put a few grains of salt, bay or white to it, and when it is dissolved drop of this liquor into the grieved eye, one drop; and do thus morning and evening, and it will take away not only a *film*, and other such like thicknes which may hinder his *sight*, but it will also take away a Pearl. These two receipts I have often practised, and I have found them very good. * * *

Hippophilus. *I have heard some say that they can make a Horse suddenly blind, and yet after restore him to his perfect sight again; but I think they do boast and crack of more than they be able to do, how think you Hipposerus?*

Hipposerus. Why truly Sir, this is easily done, and I will briefly discover unto you the secret, which is thus.

Take Saffron, and dry it, and make the same into very fine powder as much as will suffice, and put of this powder into a quill, and so blow it into his eyes, and when it hath remained there by the space of half a quarter of an hour, wipe this powder from his eyes so clean, as that it may not be discerned, and this will make him stone blind. But if you be desirous to have him to reassume his sight again, then

Take

Take Garlick, and chew in your mouth, and then whilst it is still in your mouth, breathe into his eyes, and in five or six times thus doing, he will again see very perfectly. * * But this latter must be administred within eight days after the Saffron was blown into his eyes, otherwise his sight will never be recovered. * * *

SECT. 9. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good against the biting of a mad Dog?

Biting of
a mad
Dog.

Hipposerus. I have only three Cures for it, whereof I never had occasion to make tryal; howbeit they were all recommended unto me for special good: The first is: Take the tender tops of Rue Box leaves, and Primrose Roots, of each a handful, pound them together in a mortar, and put them into a quart of new milk, with London Treacle one ounce, and so give it him blood warm. This proportion will serve very well for two Horses.

Another.

Take Hobgoblin, Perewinkle, and Box leaves, of each one handful, first mince them small, and then stamp them very small in a stone mortar, and with Milk or Beer administer it, both at the Change and Full of the Moon. A third Cure I also have; which is this.

Take the Herb which groweth in dry and barren Hills, called *The star of the Earth*; you must give it three days together; the first time you must gather three of these Herbs with all the whole Roots, and wash them clean, and wipe them clean, then pound them well, losing no part of them; which done, give it your Horse in Milk, Beer, Ale, or white Wine; but be careful the Horse take all the Herbs and Roots; but if you will, you may make up these Herbs and Roots in fresh or sweet Butter, which will do as well; the second day give your Horse five of these Herbs and Roots, like as you gave him them the day before; and the third day give him seven. Do this punctually as I have here prescribed you, and be well assured your Horse will be perfectly cured: For albeit I my self have never tryed this medicine, yet I do know the Party of whom I had this Cure, hath cured much Cattle of all sorts therewith;

for

for it cureth all sorts of living Creatures which shall be bitten by a *mad Dog*: I my self can say thus much of this Receipt, that I knew it cure a whole *Kennel* of *Hounds* of a Gentlemans, one *Beagle* excepted, which they did not suspect to be bitten, so he fell mad and died, but all the residue escaped, and did very well. Another time a *Gentlemans* son of my acquaintance was unfortunately bitten by a mad Dog who was cured by the party who taught me this Receipt, and this young *Gentleman* (for he was then but a Boy of ten Years old) was so far spent with the rancor of the Disease, before this man took him in hand, as that his *head* began to be addle, and he to talk very idly; yet he cured him, so as he lived and did well, and is at this hour living, he being now come to mans state and a very handsome and proper man; whose Parents whilst they lived, I very well knew, and with whom I was very intimately acquainted. * * *

S E C T. 10. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for a Spaven?

Hippoferus. We have two sorts of *Spavens*:

The one we call a Through wet, Blood or Bog Spaven, the other a dry or Bone Spaven; the first of these two is easily cured; the second may be cured, but such a cure is not for every Ferricr to take upon him to compass: For that it is a Cure of very great difficulty, and of no less danger. To speak therefore first of the *Blood Spaven*, it is a Disease which groweth upon the *hough* with a swelling which is full of *blood*, which Blood Spaven. though it be greatest upon the inside, yet the swelling appeareth also upon the outside, being fed and nourished by the great *Vein*, which runneth along the inside of the *thigh*, and so cometh along the inside of the *hough*, and so down the *leg* to the *pastern*, and so from the *pastern* to the bottom of the *foot*. This malady cometh by means that the *blood* is corrupted through hard riding, especially when the Horse is very young. Now the *blood* being through overmuch heating too much stirred, it begetteth a flexible *humour*, which being marvellous thin, falleth to running downwards towards its Center, but it is stopped in its passage in the *hough*, where it resideth, and by that

Q

• means

means swelleth, and fo becometh a Disease, which peftring that place; makes the *joint* stiff, whereby he becometh stark lame, not being able to go, but with great difficulty and pain. The sign is most eafe, being most apparent to the *eye*. The best way to cure it, is first, to shave away the hair on both sides the swelling, so far forth as the swelling goeth; then take up the *thigh Vein*, and let it *bleed* well; which done tie the *Vein* above the *Orifice*, and let the *Vein* bleed from below what it will; whereby the blood which was assembled about the spaven place, which caused the former swelling, is by this means sent away; then with your Fleam or Incision Knife, make two Incisions in the lower part of the *swelling*, and after prick 2 or 3 holes in each side of the *hough* where the Spaven is, that the medicine may take the better effect, and when the *blood* and *water* hath vented away so much, as it will do, bind round about it, plaisterwise the whites of Eggs and Bolearmoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linnen cloth, and make it fast about the *hough*, so keep on the Plaister, The next day take it off, and wash and bathe the forance with this *Bath*, *viz.* Take Mallows and the tops of Nettles, and boil them in water till they be soft, and therewith *bathe* him. Then take Mallow-Roots, Brancha Urina, Oil, Wax, and white Wine, so much as will suffice, and boil them, bind this warm to the forance round about the *hough*, and sew a cloath about it, and so let it remain three days more; and every morning stroke it downward with both your hands gently, to the end the *bloody humour* may issue forth. The fourth day *bathe* and wash it very clean with the former *Bath*. That done, Take Carana, and stone. Pitch, of each one ounce, and of Brimstone a quarter of an ounce made into very fine powder; melt these together on the fire, and when it is almost ready to be taken off, put into it of Venice Turpentine half an ounce, and make a plaister thereof, spreading it upon leather, and apply it to the place warm, round about the *hough*, and so let it remain until it do fall away of its own accord; or if it do come off sooner than you might think fitting; then make another of the like ingredients, and apply it as before. * * * This is the best cure that I could ever know for this malady, with which

Bath for
a Blood-
Spaven.

which I have cured many *Blood Spavens*. * * * Another for a blood Spaven.

When the swelling doth appear upon the inward part of the *hough*, take up the thigh vein, and let it bleed from the nearer part of the leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give fire to the Spaven both long ways and cross ways, and then apply a restraining charge to the place, and thus it will be cured. This I never tryed, but positively speaking, I hold it to be a very good Cure.

SECT. II. B.

Hippoph. **W**ow do you cure the dry Bone-Spaven?

Hippocrates. This ^{malady} is not easily cured but with great difficulty and danger: it is a great

hard crust, yea as hard as a *bone* if it be let run, sticking or indeed growing to the *bone*, much closer than the bark of an Oak to the body, and it is upon the inside of the *hough* under the *joint* near to the great *vein*, of which I spake of before in the Cure of the *blood-Spaven*; by which means the Horse that hath such a *Spaven* cannot chuse but halt. This *bone-Spaven* Bone-Spaven cometh two ways; the first through hard riding, or other kind of intemperate labour, whereby the *blood* dissolving, falleth down and maketh its residence in the *hough*, which doth in short time become dry and hard as any *bone*, from whence the forance taketh its denomination. Secondly, the Horse may have this malady by inheritance or kind either from the Sire or Dam, as I have before specified in the second Chapter of the first Book, where I do intreat of *Breeding*.

The Sign to know it, is evident enough; viz. by your *Eye* and *hand*, for it is both visible and palpable enough, and as easie to be seen and felt as the *Leg* it self. The best way to cure it is, first by the taking up the *thigh Vein*, which caused it, and fed and nourished it, and let him bleed well, and so put him into the stable, and do no more to him for that day; the next day shave away the hair from off the *Spaven*, and rub it hard with a *Rowling-pin* (having first anointed the place with *Petroleum*, and chafed it well with your hand) or some other found and smooth stick, morning and evening for four days to-

gether, and at the fourth days end, slit down the skin with your Incision knife, the full length of the *Spaven*; but be very careful you do not touch the great *Artery* or *Vein*, both which do lie very near; for if you do never so little hurt the great *Artery*, you utterly maim the Horse past all recovery; having thus done, lay to the place the Herb called *Flamula* bruised, and bind it on that it fall not off, for two days more: Then for three days after take *Cantharides* and *Euforbium*, and incorporate them well together, (being before beaten into fine powder) with black Sope, and Bay Salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dress it every morning; this will lay the *Bone* and *Crust* bare. After take *Fearn* roots, *Hounds* tongue, and *Bores-grease*; incorporate all these together, and lay it to the place until you perceive the *Crust* to be loose, and to be wasted; assay now and then to loosen the same with your *Cornet* or other Instrument, and if you can with convenience take it off quite, do so: Which done, heal up the *Wound* with your *Green Ointment* prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. Sect. 4.* You may also apply to the *Sorance* after the aforesaid *Corrosives*, a *Plaster* of strong *Aegyptiacum*, till it hath fretted off the flesh upon the *Crust* so bare as possibly may be, and so you may the better attempt the taking away of the said *Crust*, or by rubbing it with a *Rowling* pin, or a *Hasel* stick anointed with *Petroleum* till the *Crust* be converted into a matraitive substance, or other thinner kind of corruption, which may very easily be drawn away. And thus have I cured the *Bone Spaven* several times: Which Disease I cannot easily commend to be cured by any, but those who have before hand seen some other skilful *Ferrier* do it before him, and the Method he useth in the working, by reason that the Cure is so extreamly difficile, and over dangerous. * * *. But when at any time you do perceive a swelling begin to be in the *Spaven* place of your *Horse*, whereby you may suspect it may prove a *Spaven*; for prevention whereof

Take natural *Balsam*, and having first shaven away the hair, anoint the place with the said *Balsam*, for two or three days: and after you shall repress the *Humours* with this Charge.

Take *Oil* of *Roses* three ounces, *Bole-Armoniack* one ounce, *wheat-flower* half an ounce, and the white of one *Egg*; make all

all these into one body, and every day (having first anointed it with) Balsam lay on the said Charge. * * *.

For a *Benc* or *Dry-Spaven* or *Curb*: First, take up the vein that feedeth it (whether *Spaven* or *Curb*) as well below as above then give it fire, then charge the place with Pitch made hot, and clap Flax upon it, then four days after, you must dulcify the sorance with the Oil *Pampilion*, and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the scar shall be fallen away, you must apply unto it a kind of stuff which is called *Blauco* or white, made I think of *Jessoe*, and so continue it until it be whole. * * *. This is very good.

Hippophilus. *But let us look back again to the Eyes: What say you to Blood-shotten Eyes?*

SECT. 12. B.

Hippof. I Say Sir, that *Blood-shotten Eyes* may easily be holpen if a right Cure be taken, and the *Ferrier* perite; for as touching *Eyes*, they are a tender *Member*, soonest hurt and offended of any part about the body of any living creature; and therefore there ought the greater care to be taken in the cure thereof: and take this by the way for a point of good counsel, and for a good Rule. that in administering to the *Eyes*, you be very careful that your Medicine be not too old, but often made and renewed; for by using old made Medicines, either their Virtues do pass away, whereby the *Member* dressed receives no good; or else, by being too old, the Medicines may most easily putrify and corrupt, and so by that means do much more harm than good to the *Member* you hoped to cure; inasmuch as if you be not very cautelous in making and compounding your *Receipts* for the *Eyes* aright, you may most easily endeavouring to cure one *Eye*, not fail in putting out both. All Diseases in the *Eyes* come only of two Causes, viz. First, either inward, or outward: Secondly, by means of some Blow, Stripe, Prick, Cut, Bruise, or some such like accident. The inward causes do either proceed from evil *Humours*, which do make their resort to the *Eyes*, or else by the means of some cold taken, which breaketh forth at the *Eyes*, into some great *Flux*, or else by means of some hot, sharp, or salt *Humours* which

which do make their resort to the *Eyes*; all which do and will endanger *Blood-shotten*, weeping, or watery *Eyes*; and these do proceed from inward causes. Now these Maladies which have their source from the outward causes, are (as I have before mentioned) either by a Blow, Scrape, Prick, Bruise, or the like, which will cause pain and anguish, and such like inconveniences, whereby the *Member* being discompered through heat, burning, glowing, &c. will weep and send forth much moisture, which will produce not only *Blood-shotten* and *Weeping Eyes*; but also (if Art and Care be not adu'd in time convenient) Dimness of Sight; Films, Pearls, Pin and Web, Dragons, Serpentine, and such numberless Soraces, yea and direct *Blindness* it self, without special providence and care used by way of prevention. Wherefore for Maladies of this Nature, I will prescribe you a few Receipts, which shall be very good and approved. First therefore, whereas the common cure in practise among our ordinary *Ferriers* and *Smiters* is, to draw *blood* as well from the *Temple-veins*, as from the *Neck-veins*; my Counsel is, (which experience is taught me by my *Master* here, and it hath not a little profited and pleased me) to be very cautelous how you draw *blood* from weak and enfeebled *Eyes*, as *Blood-shotten* and *Rhumatique Eyes* must be; (unless in cases of extream necessity) for by so doing, I have known *Horses* in like cases which before they had *blood* taken from them were able to see a little, but after *blood letting* they have become so blind as a *Beetle*; nor were they ever able (no Art wanting) to see more: so as they after became very notable strong, and able *Mill-horses*. First therefore I aver, that instead of opening a *Vein*, I counsel you to lay unto the *Temple-veins* a Charge, whereby to stay and hinder that flux of noxious *humours* which were the cause of this Malady; and let this Charge be made thus. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, of each like much; melt all these together, and either apply it upon a plaister made of Leather cut round, or of Velvet, of that colour, or as near to the colour of the *Horse*, as may be, or else lay it good and warm to the *Temple-veins*, with a cloath fastned to a stick and before it be cold, clap Flocks of the same colour to the place, and let it so remain on, till of it self it fall away. Then dress the grieved *Eyes* with these ensuing things.

Blood-
shotten
Eyes, a
charge.

Take

Take the white of a new layed Egg, Hony, Celendine, and red French, of each so much as will suffice: stamp them all well together, and so bind it unto the griev'd Eye. * * *. But if you do find, that the sight waxeth thick; and that you observe dimness of sight in him, through his weeping: Take the *Lapis Ca'aminaris*, and put it into the fire making it red hot, which infuse or quench in a pint of White-Wine; which done let the stone be made red hot, and quenched in the same Wine the second time, and so in like manner the third time; and after the third quenching, when it is through cold, dry it; and beat it into fine powder, and put the powder thereof into a glass Vial, and put thereto your white wine wherein your stone was quenched; and after it hath stood and infused one whole night at the least; put one drop of the clearest of the Wine into the Eye of the Horse, and so into the other eye also twice a day, till you have stay'd the Rhume and quite cleared his Eyes.

Another.

: Take the Juice of Celendine, Red-Fennel, Vervine, and Rue, of each a like quantity, viz. one Branch or Sprig of either; stamp them together, and strain it through a clean fine linnen rag into a little clear running water; then put into it as much grated Ginger, and Bay-salt finely powdred, of each so much as will lie upon a two penny piece, putting all these into a glass Vial, let it stand to settle, and when you do see it as clear as it will be, drop a drop of this water into either eye morning and evening blood warm, &c. * * *.

Another

Take also Ale-hoof (which is indeed your true ground Ivy) and stamp it well in a stone mortar, (and if it be too dry, put thereinto a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled; then strain it into a glass, and anoint, wash, bathe, and taint (if need be) the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure the eyes perfectly. * * *. The residue of Receipts I reserve to their due places.

SECT. 13. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat Cure have you for a blood-running itch?
Hippoferus. This forance cometh to a Horse commonly by means of some extream heat given him in the *body* through overviolent exercise, whereby the *blood* is inflamed, some whereof getteth betwixt the *skin* and the *flesh*, which running to and fro, being salt and billious, it there doth itch and smart, provoking the Horse many times to rub and scrub, and bite himself: Which disease if it be let run long, will come to be an *Elephantick leprose*, or at least a terrible mainge: by which means he will soon infect all the Horses which are in the Stable where he standeth, for it is a contagious malady and loathsome. The best way to cure this *itch* before it proceed further, is, Take Chamber-ly newly made, two quarts, Bay-salt a handful, unslaked Lime a handful, Eaulacampana root dried, and finely powdred, a handful, but if not dried, then green, cut into thin slices, Hens dung a handful: boil all these together a while; then with a stick with a clout fastned to it, wash the Horse all over so hot as he may well suffer the same: use this three or four mornings together, and it will cure him, keeping him to a spare diet, and giving him white water. * * *

Blood-
running-
itch.

SECT. 14. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to prevent Blowing and Purfiveness in a Horse?

Hippoferus. You must first understand Sir, the true nature of this grief, as also how he came by it, whereby you may the more easily know how to cure the same; for that there be sundry ways and means whereby a Horse may come to be breathless and short of wind, and every one of them may be a several disease, and so require a distinct remedy. But if you mean a shortness of wind only, then know that many Horses are naturally thick-winded, as being *cock-thropled*, narrow *Chawled*, &c. Also shortness of wind may come unto him accidentally, as when being *fat* and over-laden with *flesh*, or by being too rank

rank of *blood*, or by too much glut and foulness in the *body*, then is he subject to shortness of breath and puriveness; so as upon any motion or exercise he will sweat, pant, blow, and heave at the *flanks*: and this cometh upon him by immoderate riding, eating, drinking, and rest. And such like exercise causeth the *panch* of the Horse (if he be put to any sudden motion or exercise) to be so hard and strutted out, as that he must so strain his *lungs*, (*the bellows of the body*) as to cause a dislocation in them, by means whereof they cannot execute their office or function as they ought; and if care and remedy be not speedily had, he will in short time be past all recovery; and then he is brought to that disease which the vulgar do call *broken-winded*: wherefore to prevent it, administer unto him this ensuing Cure.

Blowing
and Pur-
iveness.

Let all the hay he eateth, (nor let him eat all he desireth, for such Horses are commonly great feeders) be sprinkled and moistened with water, (which will assuage his excess of drinking, and very much cool his *blood*, which cannot but be inflamed. Then give him every morning, for four or five days together, two Eggs steeped twenty four hours in the strongest white wine vinegar you can get: give him (I say) these two Eggs, and then the vinegar after, then ride him softly an hour after, which done, set him up warm, and three hours after, give him hay sprinkled with water, and at night when you do give him his Oats, wet them in Beer or good Ale, and let his drink be white water. *.*. Do this ten days, so that about the beginning of *May*, and about *Michael'mus*, he may be in breath; and so keep him to spare diet, but with discretion. *.*. This medicine will both purge him, and scowr from him much slegm and filth, as well at *nose* as *mouth*, and he will be both sounder and in better health a long time after; provided he be also kept to moderate exercise. And if after you have thus drenched and dieted him, you do not perceive his blowing and lifting at the *ribs* and *flanks* to cease, then be you confident your Horse is past all cure, only still moisten his meat as before is inculcated, and he will hold out the longer. *.*. Another Receipt I have for the same malady, which if he be not past all cure, will do him much good, which is this, *viz.*

Take Wheat-meal, the powder of Lungwort, *alias* Mullet,
Gentiana,

R

Gentian, Annifeeds, Cummin feeds, of each three drams, make them into fine powder, and make pafte with them with honey, and fresh butter, of each like quantity, fo much as will fuffice, and put to it the yolks of two new laid eggs ; make this pafte into pills, and every morning fafting give him three or four of thefe Pills rolled up in the Powder of Enulacampana, and the Powder of Licoris, of each like much. Thefe Pills preferve the Wind of the Horfe marvelloufly, and keep him always in breath, and therefore good they be often uled. * * *

Of thefe two Receipts I have had great experience, and a third I was taught, whereof I had not oft made tryal, yet with that little experience I have had of it, I do find it to be right good, being as followeth.

Take the Excrements of a fucking Child, and put unto it a pint of white Wine ; let it boil till the one half be confumed, and fo give it him blood-warm. This will caufe him to forfake his blowing for fifteen days ; fo as when he beginneth again to blow, give him the fame medicine again, and fo keep him with this from time to time, fo oft as you fhall have caufe, and by this means you fhall have his wind good. * * *

But then you muft beware you put not into the Wine too large a proportion of the Excrements, for it will make him to be very fick, and peradventure endanger him, for howfoever when at any time you do adminifter it, it will make him very fick. Remember alfo to fprinkle his meat, and to give him white water.

SECT. 15. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your opinion of Bots, Trunchions, and Worms, their feveral foits, and how do you kill them ?

Hippoferus. The general Opinion is, that there are but two forts of thefe kind of creeping Creatures, to wit *Bots* and *Worms*, for they hold that *Trunchions* and *Bots* are both one and the fame thing, but they are much miftaken ; for *Bots* are of a different fhape and colour from *Trunchions*, and of different natures ; for *Bots* do breed and refide in the great gut adjoining to the fundament, but *Trunchions* do breed and make their abode

bode in the maw only, and if they be suffered to remain any time within the *body* of the Horse, they will make their way through the aforesaid great *gut*, and the *trunchions* through the maw, both which *Vermine* do bring death to the Horse. Now I do aver, that there is a third sort, which have none other denomination than plain *Wormes*, unless you will add the word *maw-worms*, and so stile them *maw-wormes*, which name indeed is most proper to them, by reason that they select for their resting place the *maw* only, from which they never depart, where they do eat small holes through the *maw*, by means whereof the Horse dieth.

Three
sorts of
Vermis
which do
engender
in the bo-
dy of the
Horse.

The *Bots* are a kind of little worms with great heads and small tails, they breed and live as I said before in the *great gut* adjoining to the *fundament*, and they may be taken away most easily by putting in your hand, and by picking them from the *gut* to which they are fastened.

1.
Bots.

Trunchions are in shape short and thick, and of a pretty bigness, and they have black and hard heads, but they must be sent away by medicine.

2.
Trunchi-
ons.

Maw-worms, are long, red, and slender, much like unto earth worms, most of them of the length of a mans finger, and some are longer, these must also be taken away by medicine. All these three sorts do ingender in the *Body* of the Horse, by means of evil, raw, and flegmatique meats, which have turned to bad digestion, whereby putrified matter hath bred in the *maw*, and from thence these three sorts of evil creatures have engendred. You may very easily know when your Horse is troubled with them; for he will sweat with pain, stamp with his *forefeet*, and strike at his *belly* with his *hinder-feet*; he will also turn his head towards his *belly* to look upon it, and forsake his meat, he will also groan, tumble, and wallow; he will also rub his tail, as if it were troubled with the itch. Now how to kill these Worms is very difficile, for fear of endangering the life of your Horse; only medicines must be given which must cause them to distast the maw, and to feed upon such drinks being sweet, whereby he may void them with his *dung*. I will here give you many Receipts, some of which I have very much experimented; and the first is this, *viz.*

3.
Worms.

R. 2

Take

Take of Egrimony one handful, chop and stamp it small, and put into it a quart of new milk, with brimstone made into very fine powder half an ounce; give this to your Horse fasting blood-warm, and keep him upon the trench fasting three hours at the least, and at night give him white water. * * *

Another.

Take the guts of a well grown Chicken (all but the Gizard) and rowl it up warm in the powder of Brimstone and bay-salt, and put it down his *throat*, and trot him up and down half an hour, doing as before. * * *

Another.

Take new milk, and the powder of brimstone, this doth the like. * * *

Another.

Take Saven, and Wormwood chopped and stamped small, put to it a pint a Muskadine, and give it him warm. * * *. Take also a quart of *brine* newly made, and give it him to drink. * * *

Another.

Take as much *Precipitate, alias Red Mercury calcined*, as will lye upon a two penny piece of silver, and convey it into a piece of sweet butter the bigness of an egg, in manner of a pill: give him this in a morning fasting, the Horse having stood all night in his *Mussel* at the empty *Rack*, unless extremity do compel you, for in such a case you may administer it at any other time. When you are to give it him, take forth his *tongue*, and make him swallow the whole pill, then ride him a while up and down, and after set him up warm, causing him to fast three hours after; and with this medicine you may kill all manner of *Bots, Trunchions, and Worms*, of what kind soever; yet at the giving, you must be wondrous circumspect and careful; for this *Precipitate* is a very strong poyson, wherefore you must be very observant of your proportion, wherein you ought not to exceed, except with good caution. Again, if you mix your *Precipitate* before-hand with a little sweet butter, the quantity of a Hasel-nut, and then afterwards lap it up in the greater lump of butter, it may be received by the Horse to his less danger, and it will besides very much allay its evil quality.

quality. But this I leave to your own discretion, assuring you that there is hardly any thing comparable to this, for this Disease. * * *. This Receipt I have administred unto three Horses only, whereof the first and last I cured, but the second died under my hands ; but I do assure you not for any want of care. * * *.

Another.

Take Sublimatum so much as can be taken upon a two-peny piece of silver, and made up in butter, it will kill the Bots in a Horse, if it be administred as was the former Receipt. This I did never try.

Another.

Take a quart of good Ale, of Rue and Saven, of each a quarter of a pound, of Stone-Crop half a pound ; bray all these in a mortar, and put them to the Ale, and boyl it well ; then strain it, and give it him blood-warm, and he will void them.

Another.

Take of new milk a quart, and a peny weight of brimstone in fine powder, and twenty of the long hairs of his tail, cut them very short, and put it altogether into the milk, and give it him to drink, and then throw a handful of bay-salt into his mouth, and he is cured. * * *.

Another.

Take a quart of strong Wort, and give it him to drink blood-warm, and let him fast eight hours after.

Another.

Take the first day a quart of new milk, and put to it half a pint of honey, and give it him warm ; this will cause them to give over gnawing and feeding upon the maw for a season, by reason they will drink and suck the milk and honey for a time ; the next day, give him his drink.

Take a quart of sweet Wort or of your strongest Ale especially if it be new, then take a quarter of a pound of Fern roots, of Saven half a pound, of Stone-Crop half a pound ; stamp them altogether, and put to it of Brimstone and of foot, of each two spoonfuls, both well powdred, and let all these be well steeped in Wort or Ale two hours, then strain it, and give him of this two good hornfuls, then bridle him, and let him

him stand upon the trench six hours, but this will not kill them: The third day give him these purging pills. Take of Lard one pound, let it be laid in water two hours, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof only, beat it well in a stone mortar, and put thereto of Anniseeds, Licoris, and Fenugreek, all made into fine powder, of each half an ounce, Aloe powdered, two drams, and of Agarick one ounce; make all these well mixed into one body, and divide them equally into six Pills or balls, then the Horse having fasted over night, give him in the morning three of these Pills anointed first with honey, then cloath him up, and litter him well, and keep the Stable warm, and at night give him a sweet mash, and for three days after, let him have none other drink than white water. These balls will so purge the bad humors that breed and nourish these *Vermine*, that the Horse will be perfectly clean and free from them, of what kind soever they are; and you shall find them to come away in his *dung*, and the most of them to be living; for no medicine (but those two only of *Precipitate* and *Sublimate* before remembred, in which is so great peril) can kill them. * * *. This Receipt before any other I have made most use of, and I find it to be the very best, and most infallible of them all; and this will hardly leave one *Bot*, *Trunchion*, or *Worm* in all his *Body*: I forbear to report unto you, what quantity of these *Vermine* a *Horse* hath voided at a time, for I love not to relate *Wonders*. Another Receipt I will deliver you, howbeit not equivalent to the former, which is this, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of green Broom, and of Saven, of each half a handful, chop them very small, and work them up into Pills with fresh or sweet butter; and having kept the *Horse* over-night fasting, give to him three of these Pills in the morning early, then set him upon the Trench, and let him fast two hours after, but give him no water till night, and that white water. * * *. This also have I experienced, and have found it to be very good, for it hath caused the *Horse* to void many of these bad *Cattle*. I will conclude with this: *viz.*

Take a quart of milk warm from the Cow, and put to it Honey half a pint, and give it him the first day; the next day take Rue and Rosemary, of each half a handful, stamp them well together, then let it infuse, together with the powder

of Brimstone, and Scot so much as will suffice, four hours in Wort or Ale a quart, then strain it, and give it him blood warm; then let him be walked or gently ridden an hour or two, and so set him up warm, and give him Hay an hour before you give him any drink, which let be white water, and you must not give him Hay in four or six hours after you have given him his foresaid drink; and you must withal remember, that in all medicines as well for this kind of Malady, as for any other, his drink must be either a sweet Mash, or else white water. * * *. This also is a very good Receipt, and I have had good experience of it, and it hath evermore wrought well. * * *.

S E C T. 16. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat help have you for a Brittle Hoof?

Hippoferus. This cometh two ways; to wit, by nature, or by accident: it cometh naturally when the *Stallion* who begat him, or the *Mare* which did Fole him, was subject to the same infirmity; and therefore I do advise all men to forbear Breeding with such a *Stallion* or *Mare*, for all their *Colts* will be in danger to partake thereof. If it come accidentally, then must it fall out to come either by some Surfet that fell down into the *Feet*, which caused a siccidity in the *Hoofs*, or else in that he had been formerly Foundred or heat in the *Feet*, and not well cured. I need not shew the signs whereby to know his Malady, being it is most apparent. As touching the Cure, I will give you but only one Receipt for the present; by reason I shall have occasion to handle it more largely when we come to intreat of the *Hoofs*: and the Cure is this: *viz.*

Brittle
Hoof.

Take a Rape, or a Drawing-Iron, and with either of these make the Coffin of the *Hoof* fine and thin, in all such places as you shall see cause, and pare the *Soles* very thin also, then apply to the *Feet*, as well *Soles* as *Coffins* this ensuing Charge. Take Rye bran, or for default thereof, Wheat bran, *Oxen* or *Cows* dung, of these so much as will suffice, then take Sheeps Suet, and Hogs greafe tried, Tarr and Turpentine of each half a pound, mince the Sheeps Suet very small, and melt it on the fire, then put to your Hogs greafe, and when these be molten; put in your Ox or Cow dung, stirring them well together, then

then by degrees put in your Bran, continually stirring them, and lastly your Tar and Turpentine; and when you have kneaded all these so well together, as that they are become one body, and like to paste; take them from the fire, and so keep them for your use, and being only warm, stop his *Soles* therewith, but tack on his *Shoes* first: but for his *Coffins* make Bags of course cloath, and first covering all his *Coffins* good and thick, fasten those bags over his *hoofs* to his *Pasterns*, but take heed they be not too hard tied, yet so as they may stay on; dress him thus every day once for 15 or 20 days together, and let him not in all that time touch any water with his *Feet*, and his *hoofs* will become firm and tough again. After, if you turn him forth into moist ground, it will be the better, if the season will permit it. You must during the time of his Cure give him continually white Water. * * *. This Cure I have often tryed, and it is very good. * * *.

S E C T. 17. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat do you hold good to be applyed to the Heels and Feet of a Horse, that is bruised and beaten with travel?

Hippoferus. Sir, I will give you only one Receipt for this Cure, which I have often used, and it is so truly a good one, as that its equal can hardly be found. And thus it is:

Bruised
heels and
feet.

Take of the tender tops of the most angry, and stinging Nettles you can get, one handful, stamp them very well in a Mortar, and when they be thoroughly beaten, put unto them of Turpentine and tried Hogs grease, so much as will suffice, to bring it to a formal Unguent: Apply this to the *Feet* and *Heels* of your *Horse*, in bags or clouts, and let this be done the very next morning after you come where you may rest him: renew this every day once, and in short time he may be found and well again. * * *.

S E C T. 18. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to allay burning with Shot, Gunpowder, or Wild-fire?

Hippoferus.

Hippesferus. For this malady I use evermore to take varnish, and to put it into fair water, and to beat the water and varnish very well together, then I pour away the water from the varnish, and so with a feather I anoint the place burned, and in few times dressing, it will kill the fire; which done, I heal the sorance with carnifying and healing salves. * * *. This is very good.

Burning
with flax.

But I will now give you two or three other Unguents, which are most precious against all sorts of burnings, which are these.

Take Hogs greale, as much as will suffice, set it upon the fire, and let it boyl well, and as the skin ariseth, take it away with a feather, or such like thing, until no more will arise; that done, and that it hath boyled enough, then put it forth into an earthen vessel, and set it forth in the open air four or five nights, after which time you must wash it in a great quantity of clear running or fountain water, to the end it may be free from salt or other filth, and wash it so long in sundry waters in some great bowl, until it come to be very white; then melt only this oyntment, and so keep it for your use, where-with anoint the place grieved, and in short time it will cure them. * * *. This I had of a famous *French Marshal*, and I have often used it, and I have ever found it to be most sovereign for all sorts of burnings. But if Hogs greafe may not be had, then take the fat of Bacon, and wash it well, and it is marvellous good. * * *.

Another.

Take fresh butter, and the whites of Eggs, of each as much as will suffice, beat them well together, till you bring them to a formal Unguent, and anoint the places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the fire and cure them foundly. * * *. This is all special good.

Another.

Take a stone of quick lime which must be weil burned, (that which is best burned, will be lightest) dissolve it in fair water, and when the water is settled, so as all the Lime remaineth in the bottom, strain the clearest of the water thorow a fine clean linnen cloath, then put unto this water either the Oyl of Hemp-seed, or of the Oyl of Olive, of like quantity with the water; and so beating them well together, you shall have

an excellent Unguent most precious for all sorts of burnings. And the nature of these three Unguents be to leave no scars. Wherefore we apply them for most sovereign remedies, as well for man as beast in cases of this nature. * * *. This also I have often tried, and I have found them all to be most singular.

S E C T. 19. B.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you take away Bunches, Knots, Warts, and Wens from a Horse?

Funches, Knots, &c *Hippoferus*. These kinds of sores do come to a Horse, by means of much rankness of bad blood, which is ingendred of peccant humours, which humors do proceed of naughty meat. They are so apparent to the eye, that any man may point at them with his finger. The way to free your Horse of them, is first: Take up such Veins as you may know to feed them; then shave away the hair from about the places, and for four days together, lay *Agyptiacum* to them; at four days end, wash and bathe the places with strong Wine vinegar made hot; then take Wine vinegar one pint, green Coperas, and Diers Galls, of each four ounces, Cantharides two ounces, bay-salt one handful, make these into fine powder, and let them boyl on the fire with the Vinegar a little, and so wash the sores therewith scalding hot, and every third day continue thus to do till you perceive them to dry up. Let the scurf fall away of its own accord at leisure; if any more shall happen to grow forth afterwards, apply the same medicine again, albeit it was formerly cured by the same thing: yet I have not seen any Horse to fall into the same malady again, and during the time you have him in cure, let him not come in any water, but keep him in the Stable warm. * * *. Another Cure is this: First (as before) shave away the hair, and take up the veins which feed those sores, then six days after, let him bleed in the heels to draw away the humors downwards: then wash and bathe him well with hot vinegar; which done, take a quart of Oyl of Nuts, and Verdigrease powdred two ounces, and a quarter of a pint of Ink; mix all these well together, and apply it cold to the places, rubbing and bathing them well therewith, and if the Knots and Warts do not begin to dry up

up at the first dressing, then must you begin again every fourth day, until such time as they be thoroughly cured. *x*. Another, Take course honey one pound, Verdigrease in powder three ounces, mix these well together with the finest wheat flower, and so bring it to an oyntment, and after you have cleansed the sores as before is shewed you, apply this oyntment to the place with a rowler: if there be any Warts among the Knots, cut them away clean before you do apply the said oyntment, and thus doing ten or twelve days every other day, he will be perfectly cured. *x*. Another. Shave away the *hair*, and take up the *veins* as aforesaid, then wash and bathe the place well, then take mutton sewet, mallows, and brimstone, make a decoction hereof, and when you have very well bathed the sores with the said decoction, take the substance thereof and putting it between two linnen cloaths, make it fast to the place over night, and in the morning take it away, which done, apply unto the place this Unguent, *viz.*

Take Vinegar and Mutton Sewet, the gum of the Pine tree, new Wax, and Rosin of each like much: melt all these together, (but put in your Gum last) and so anoint the sores with a feather twice every day till they be whole. Of this Cure I never made tryal, but it seemeth to be a good one. You must not forget in every of these Cures to take up such *veins* which in your judgement you may find to feed those sores, and to shave way the *hair* from above them clean. Now with this other Cure, I will conclude. Wash and bathe the places with the decoction last before mentioned, and lay the substance to the sores. Take then new Wax, Turpentine, and Gum Arabick, of each like much: melt them to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the sores; during which time, let him come into no water, and the Poultes of Mallows, &c. must be every night applied till he be whole.

Another.

Take (and to conclude) blew slate and Brimstone, of each four ounces, Verdigrease one ounce, made into fine powder, then take fresh butter four pound, melt it in a small Kettle or Posnet; and so soon as the butter is molten, put into it all the former ingredients, and so let them boil well; and when you have brought it to a perfect Unguent, take it off, and keep

it for your use. And when you would use it, warm thereof upon a chafing dish and coals, and anoint your Horse therewith upon the sorance, and that but once, and it will suffice. But you must let him *blood* the day before you anoint him in the *neck vein*. And at the end of eight days, take a quantity of cold Lee, and three ounces of black Sope, and wash the sorance therewith. The quantity of oyntment will serve but only for two Horses. Of this Receipt I never had occasion to make trial; but it was taught me by a famous *Marshal of France*, who commended it unto me for an extraordinary good Receipt; and truly it seems to me so to be.

C H A P. VI.

S E C T. I. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to be applied to a Horse, that hath cast himself in his Halter?

Hippoferus. This commonly cometh to a Horse which being tied down to the Manger, his ear or Foul itching, with his hinder foot scratcheth the place that itcheth, so as when he taketh away his Foot, the Halter catcheth into the *Pastern Joynt*; which he feeling, falleth to striving, whereby he casteth himself down, and by means of the hardness of the Cord, he is gauled even to the very bone, and many times if he be not opportunely rescued, the Halter doth strangle him, and he is found stark dead. But if the Horse do escape with life, he will be nevertheless terrible gauled, which will soon rankle and swell, unless cure be presently administred. The sign whereby to know it, is apparent enough. I will give you only two Receipts for this sorance, whereof the first shall be this, *viz.*

Cast in a
Halter.

Take the leaf of the herb called Saublucus, stamp it and strain it, and take only the juyce thereof, and apply the said juyce to the sorance by washing it therewith, after take a linnen cloath, white and clean, and make it into three or four folds, steeping the cloath in the said juyce, and bind it on the place grieved, but in Winter when the said leaf is not to be had,

you.

you must take the second rind thereof, and do therewith as before ; but then note, that before you wash and apply the said juyce to the wound, you must first wash the sorance with warm water, and then apply the said juyce, and he shall be perfectly cured in short time. This I never yet experienced by reason I could never yet meet with the Herb. This second I have often tried and I have found it to be infallible, *viz.* Make a Rowl of fat Wool, and steep the same in Vinegar and Sheeps suet so much as will suffice, boiled together till it cometh to be very thick, and let the Rowl be full as long, or rather somewhat longer than the place gauled : apply this to the sorance Plaister-wise, and bind upon it a clean linnen cloath, changing it twice a day, and in short time it will be whole. This is right good. * * *

S E C T. 2. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat Cure have you for a Canker ?

Hippoferus. This is a very loathsome sorance, which if it be suffered to run long will so fester, and corrupt the place where it happeneth that it will violently eat, even to the very *bone* : if it fall upon the *Tongue*, it will eat the very root in sunder ; if in the *Nose*, it will eat the very *Gristle* through ; You may easily know this sorance, for that the places will be very raw, and bleed often, and many times he shall perceive a white scurff to grow upon the place grieved. For it is a most *Cankerous Ulcer*, which oftimes is ingendred of a fretting humour. It cometh two ways, that is, either of naughty, and corrupt *blood* procured by means of unwholesom meat, or by some *Bilious Humour* which came to the *Horse* by an extream cold not long before taken, which will cause his breath to stink loathsomly. I will deliver unto you sundry Cures for this sorance, which my self have experimented, and have found them to be very good.

Take white Wine half a pint, Roch Alom the quantity of a Wall-nut, Bay salt half a spoonful, *English* Honey one spoonful, Red Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Honey-Suckle Leaves, Yarrow, Plantine, Bramble Leaves, of each like much, but of every one

a little: boil all these in the white Wine so much as will suffice, till a quarter be consumed, and then first inject of this Water into the forance, or else if the *Canker* be in the *Mouth*, wash the place with a clout fastned to a sticks end, and so dress him therewith twice a day or oftner if you shall see cause, till it be whole.

Another.

Take green coperas, and Alom, of each one pound, white Coperas four drams, boil these in a bottle of running water until almost the one moiety be consumed, then take it from the fire, and put into it of Honey half a pound, then holding up his *Head* with a Drenching Staff (but yet not too high) with a Pewter or Elder Syringe or Squirt, inject it into his *Nose* (if the *Canker* be there) blood-warm, which done, give presently his *head* liberty, whereby he may snuffle and blow forth the corruption, and fail not to inject him thus three or four times one after the other at every dressing; and do thus Morning and Evening till it be whole, which will not be long. *.*. But if it be only a sore Mouth, and that it come to be a *Canker*, then

Take of the strongest white Wine Vinegar, and make it thick with powder Alom, and so wash the forance therewith two or three days together, for this will kill and destroy the *Ulcer*, then heal up the forance thus: *Viz.*

Take of fair Water a quart, Alom, and Honey, of each four ounces, Maudeline leaves, red Sage, and Columbine leaves, of each a handful; boil all these in the Water till half be consumed, and every day twice, that is, Morning and Evening, wash his *Mouth* therewith blood-warm, and it will heal him. *.*.

Another.

First make this strong Alom water, *viz.* Take Alom half a pound, Honey half a pint, red Sage, and Wood-bind-leaves, of each a handful: boyl all these in fair water, till half be consumed, with this water and herbs wash and rub the sores till they become red and raw, then take white Wine Vinegar half a pint, Alom powdered two ounces, Ginger powdred half an ounce, and of Life-Honey half a pint, mix all these well together, and therewith anoint the Sore Morning and Evening, and it will cure him. *.*.

All

All these Receipts I have made tryal of, and have found them to be right good. *Another.*

Take the juyce of the root *Aphodil* seven ounces, Quicklime, and Arsnick of each two ounces, beat and incorporate all these together, and put them into a new pot close stopped, and let it boil till it come to ashes; these ashes you may apply to the Sorance twice a day, but the fore must be first washed with strong Vinegar, as before is taught.

SECT. 3. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow cure you that Horse who hath cast his Hoof? *Hippoferns.* This is a troublefom Sorance, yet with care it may be cured: it cometh either by means of some Foundering, or by an Accloy, Prick, Stub, Gravelling, Quitterbone, or other hurt within the *Foot*, which breaking out above round about the *Cronet*, and in time the *hoof* breaking it falleth from the *foot*. I need relate no Signs whereby to know the same, The Cure is this.

Take *Aqua fortis* the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape, or Drawing Iron, file or draw away the old *hoof* somewhat near, then touch the *hoof* so prepared with your *Aqua- Casting the Hoof.*
fortis, three or four several dressings, and no more: this done, anoint the *foot* with the Unguent we do commonly make for *Horses feet: viz.* Take Hogs greafe three pound, Pach greafe two pound, Venice Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pound: melt and mix all these upon the fire, and herewith chafe, rub, and anoint the *Coffin* of the *hoof* up to the very top; and this will bring a new *hoof*. * * *

Take also Turpentine half a pound, Tar half a pint, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pint: melt all these except the Turpentine together till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and stir it till it be cold; but before hand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick sole, made fit for his *hoof*, but wide enough, that it may be tied about his *Pastern*, and dress his *hoof* with this medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it. and so put on the said Buskin, and fasten it to the *Pastern joynt*, or a little above, but so as the Buskin may no way

way offend or trouble the foot, renewing your medicine every day once till he be whole * * *.

This Receipt is also most sovereign for a Horse that is *hoof-bound*: and as the new *hoof* beginneth to come, it behooveth you carefully to observe where it groweth harder or thicker in one place more than another, or crumbleth, or goeth out of order or fashion any where about the *hoof*; which when you shall perceivè, file the place with your Rape, and so keep the *hoof* in good fashion, by which means there will come a very perfect *hoof* again: which being put him out to graze into some moist Pasture or Meadow, for that is the only way to cause the *hoof* to become tough.

Hippophilus. *What is the reason that in all your medicines in which you use Turpentine, you put that in last, and not when you put in your other ingredients?*

Hippoferus. Sir, I shall give you in a word a sufficient reason for this demand; to wit, if the ingredients which I do put into any medicine be to be molten upon the fire, as Gums, Pitch, Tar, Rosin, and the like; if I should put in my Turpentine together at once with the Residue before it could be sufficiently molten or boiled, the Turpentine (being a drug so subtile) would consume it self into *vapour*, and by that means leave the medicine unperfect, and that is the cause why I do put in my Turpentine evermore a little before I take it from the fire.

SECT. 4. C.

Hippoph. **I** *N* what causes do you Cauterize, and what be its virtues?

Hippoferus. *Cauterization* or giving of fire is of two natures, viz. *Actual*, and *Potential*: your *Cautery Actual* is made by hot burning instruments, with which you sear and burn those places which be requisite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure otherwise well cured, but by giving of the fire: as in case of great impostumation, stanching of *blood* in wounds, or in searing of *veins*, *sinews*, or the like; or else in case of dismembring, if other means be not at hand, whereby to stay the flux of *blood* without danger of bleeding to death, and so likewise in very many
cases

cases of this nature; wherein I do advise all men that are not very perfect in giving the fire, that they do not practise upon Horses of price, but first upon Jades, and low-prized Horses, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand, and to understand themselves in this Art the better: as when they are to use the lighter, and when the heavier hand; as also that they do make their circles round, and their lines streight and even, and not crooked or waving. For this actual fire is a thing most necessary for them that do truly know and understand the true use and virtue thereof, and therefore it ought to be very carefully, judiciously and moderately applyed, and never but upon good and very considerate grounds; which in so doing, you shall find it to be a most sovereign remedy to hinder and stay all manner of corruption whereunto any member may be inclined, provided that in the handling of your Instrument, you touch not *Muscles, Arteries, Sinews, Ligaments, Chords*, or the like; for so you may utterly lame where you would set upright, and destroy where you would cure, excepting only in cases needful. For by applying this *actual fire*, you shall joyn and conglutinate parts and *members* severed, dry up superfluous moisture, and sink *members* swelled: you shall besides bring forth all evil and putrefactious matter congealed and gathered into Knots, as Wens, Biles, Pustils, Exulcerations, and the like: you shall also assuage old griefs, and make perfect all such parts of the *body* as be any way corrupted: neither shall you need fear the increase of any evil *humours*, by reason that the *skin* being severed by means of the hot Iron, it doth ripen and digest all manner of putrefaction and matrative stuff, whereby it venteth and passeth away much more easily, healing and qualifying all grief and pain, causing the *member* which before was subject to festring and to gangrene, become the sounder, and by much the stronger; so as nothing of disadvantage will be remaining, but the *scar* only where the Iron passed, and the worst that can be made thereof, will be but a little *eye-sore*. But then you must have a very great regard unto your instruments that they be made according to the nature and quality of the place and *member* which is to be seared; for one fashion will not serve in all causes: for as the places which

are to be *cauterized*, are commonly different in ſhape and proportion, ſo alſo ought the ſhapes and faſhions of your Inſtruments to be made accordingly. You are alſo to have a ſpecial care to the heating of your Inſtruments, which ought to be done with a right good judgment ; for as they muſt not be too cold, ſo ought they not to be too hot, for by that means you may eaſily inflame the *cauterized* places too much. Again in giving the fire great care muſt be had to the bearing of the hand, for therein conſiſteth very great cunning ; and as I have before admoniſhed you to be careful that you touch not any *ſinew* or *ligament*, ſo no fire is to be given to the diſlocation or fraction of any bone. And as touching the *metal* whereof your inſtruments are to be made : ſome prefer *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Brass* or *Copper* before *Steel* or *Iron* : but I will not controul any mans knowledge, confeſſing mine own to be the leaſt ; only thus much I may aver of that little I have (through Gods permiſſion) that having made trial of them all, yet I have ever in all my practice found *Iron* and *Steel* to be the very beſt and moſt certain to work with, of all the other *metals* ; and my reaſon is becauſe *Steel* or *Iron* will retain its once received heat longer than any other *metal*, whereby I cannot be ſo much deceived in my work ; for *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Brass*, as they be ſooner made hot than *Iron* or *Steel*, ſo are they as ſoon cold : now *Steel* and *Iron* Metals are much more ſubſtantial and harder of nature than the other *metals* be ; and therefore as they are ſomewhat longer before they be hot, ſo they retain their heat much longer, which during the time of their agitation, works more ſurely : again, a man cannot tell when thoſe other metals are hot enough, as alſo when they be too hot, if you put never ſo little water to them whereby to allay their overmuch heat ; they ſuddenly turn and become ſo cold as not to be able to make them work at all ; the contrary whereof you ſhall find to be in the nature of *Iron* and *Steel*. And let this ſuffice for

Cautery *cautery actual*. Now I will in a word handle *cautery Potential* ;
potential which as the *cautery actual* burneth the *ſleſh* by the hot inſtrument ; even ſo doth *cautery Potential* burn the *ſleſh* by medicine, of which there are three ſorts or degrees, namely by *corroſive*,
 I.
Corroſive by *cauſtick*, or by *putrefaction* : *Corroſive* is when that is applyed to the wound wherein is dead or proud *ſleſh* to corrode or eat it.

it away, by which means the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaſters, Waters, or Unguents which do carniſie, and make good fleſh; by which means the wound which before was foul, is now become clean, healed up, and made ſound: and theſe corroding things are commonly Precipitates, Sublimatum, Arſnick, Reſalgar, Leads white and red, Verdigreäſe, Alome, Coperas white and green, Vitriol, Sanderacha Chryſocollo, Origanum, Mercury, Aconitum, Capitellum, Roman Vitriol, Shaving of Oxe or Harts horn, red Coral, Sponge of the Sea ſomewhat burned, Unguentum Apoſtolorum, Unguentum Ægiptiacum, Unguentum Caraccum, Magiſtra, Salniter, Cantharides, Apium, Aqua-ſortis, Siclamine, Melanacardinum, and many more, which I am enforced to leave out partly for want of memory, and partly for want of time; all which do burn, eat, and corrode the *ſleſh*, putting the poor *beaſt* to nuckle pain. A *Cauſtick* is a greater burner, for that being once put to the *ſkin*, Cauſtick. will in ſhort time make a wound where none was before; for therewith we do uſe to make iſſues, and where it is ſet to the *ſleſh* or *ſkin*, it maketh its way in, whereby we may in ſhorter ſpace adminiſter our *Emplaſtrum*; for *Cauſticks* are ſtronger and more violent than either *Putrefactives* or *Corroſives*; for whereas *Corroſives* do work only upon *ſkin* broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, ſpungy, and naughty *ſleſh*: and *Putrefactives* do ripen, mollifie, and prepare the wound for the *Cauſtick*; ſo *Cauſticks* do break *ſkin* and *ſleſh* and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worſe than any of the two former. Now your *Putrefactives* are ſuch medicines as we do commonly apply to ſwellings, which we do make for the moſt part Putrefactive. of medicines compounded; as Polteſſes, roſted Sorrel, white Lilly roots, and the like: for ſuch things are drawers and ripeners, cauſing ſwellings which be hard and fleſhy, to become ſoft and putrefactive, and to prepare Sorances for the *Cauſticks*, whoſe nature is to break and open, what before the *Putrefactive* had ripened, which otherwiſe muſt have been done by *Cautery Actual* or by incision. And this I do hold ſufficient to be handled upon this ſubject; howſoever much more, and many other particulars may be delivered, yet in this conſiſteth the ſubſtance of all: for by reaſon I aim at brevity, I refer you to Mr. *Blundeviles Office*, and to Mr. *Markhams Maſter-peice*, who have intreated hereof very accurately.

SECT. 5. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Charge have you to be applyed to the Feet, wherewith to stop them, when the Horse is either Surbated or in danger of Foundring?

Charge
for Sur-
bating.

Hippoferus. This cometh commonly to young *Horses*, which are sorely ridden before their *Hoofs* and *Feet* be hardened, as also sometimes when *Horses* upon hard riding and long travel are ill shod; this doth not only cause them to be *Surbated*, but also hazardeth their *Foundring*; which so soon as you do perceive, the first thing you do, is to cause his *Feet* to be clean pickt, that no Gravel be remaining betwixt the Web of the Shoe and the Sole, then wash the *Feet* with water and salt, and about an hour after let his feet be thoroughly well stopped with the charge prescribed you in Chapter the tenth, *Seet.* the sixteenth of this Book; and he will be well in short time.

SECT. 6. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the best way to Cleanse and Purge a Horse from all filth, at his first taking up from grafs?

Cleanse a
Horse.

Hippoferus. This I have shewed you in the seventh Chapter of this Book; but yet I will once again reiterate it unto you in few words. First therefore, he having been had into the Stable, the next day, if it be a hot Sun-shiny day, let his keeper take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there let him handsomely trim him, (a thing which every *Groom* and *Keeper* knoweth well enough how to do;) then let him take ordinary soft washing Sope, and anoint his *Head* all over therewith, taking a great care that none of the Sope or suds get into his *Eyes* or *Ears*, then wash him with warm water, and so purge and wash all manner of filth from his *Head*, and every part thereof; that done, first wipe all his *Head*, *Ears*, *Eyes*, and *Face*, with a warm linnen cloath; and then wipe and rub him dry with woollen cloathes: then Sope his whole body all over *Cap-pee*, leaving no part thereof free, especially his *Mane* and *Tayle*, then wash him very clean with Buck-lee, with a whip or woollen

woollen cloath, and when you have sufficiently cleansed him, let him be wiped, rubbed, and made dry, as before you have done his *Head*; and when he is throughly dry, let him be led into the Stable and so cloathed up with a clean thin soft cloath, and shod up at your pleasure. And by this kind of *Purging*, trimming, and cleansing of a *Horse*, I have in three or four hours space so altered a *Horse*, as that his owner hath not on the sudden known him.

S E C T. 7. C.

Hippoph. **I** Have known *Horses* troubled with sundry sorts of foul or sore heels, all which carry the name of *Scratches* in general, some whereof have *Clifts* cross, and over-thwart, some *Clifts* with *Cracks*, and some long *Clifts*, &c. what do you say to these *Maladies*?

Hippoferus. I say Sir, that every of these sorts are very foul Sorances, yet soon cured, if the *Ferrier* be so well skilled as to take up the *Veins*, before he apply his Medicines and remedies. The *Maladies* do come by *Surfets* taken by over heats, by washing his *Horse* when he cometh home hot, by naughty meat, or by corrupt blood, the *Peccant humours* falling downwards and settling in those parts where the sorances are, whereby they prove most troublesome to the creature, and no less noisome to the beholders: for the *heels* be very raw, and do run with loathsome water and matter which doth stink very offensively. The signes need no description. The Cure is, first to take up the *Thigh veins*: whereby to stop and hinder the falling down of these bad *humours* which do feed them; then clip or shave away the *hair* close from about the sores, then wash the places with broken Beer and Butter warm, and dry them again: which done, apply this Plaster to the place grieved.

Clifts and
Cracks in
the heels.

Take *Sheeps sewet*, or *Deers sewet*, which is much better, and being molten upon the fire, let it cool till you may hold your finger therein; then put to it so much *Rie-bran*, or for want thereof *Wheat-bran*, as will bring it to a salve, lay it to the place plaister-wise upon *Hurds* or *Tow*, and bind a clean linnen cloath over the plaister to keep it on, and so let it remain four or five days without meddling with it, by which time
the

the Sores will be throughly purged, and the Scurff will easily come off; then take old Bores greafe well rotted, and melt it upon the fire, and when it is so cold as was the Sheeps, or Deers fewet, put to it the yolks of Eggs so much as will suffice, and a little Verdegrease in fine powder: incorporate all these well together, bringing them to an Unguent, with which anoint the sores every day once, until they be throughly and perfectly whole. * * *

Another.

Take Oyl de-Bay four ounces, Verdigrease, and Litharge of Gold, both in fine powder, of each two drams, make all these into an Unguent, and anoint the sores therewith morning and evening till they be whole. In every of these Cures, let your Horse come into no water. * * *

Another.

Take Soot, five ounces, Verdigrease in fine powder, three ounces, Orpin one ounce, beat all these together into fine powder, and then add thereto as much common honey as of all the residue; boil all these together well, putting into it as it boileth quick-lime, as much as will suffice, keeping it always stirring till it be well boiled, and is become thick; with this ointment anoint the sores twice every day, until they be sufficiently cured. * * *

Another.

Take hot wood ashes and quick-lime, and with common honey and white wine, make it into one body to a perfect Unguent, and herewith anoint the Sores; and if this malady have not been long upon the Horse, this ointment will certainly cure him; but if he be old and it have run long upon him, then give him the fire, and dress the burning with the ointment prescribed you in the former Cure.

Another.

Take a round Iron, and give the fire towards the extremities or ends of the *chops*, and anoint them every day as before, and assure your self the *clifts*, *chops*, and *rifs* will not increase, but diminish, and so in short time he will be whole and sound. * * * This is special good.

SECT. 8. C.

Hippoph. **I** Would gladly know (Hippoferus) something of Clysters and their true natures.

Hippoferus. As touching Clysters, there be fundry kinds of Purgations, and therefore to the end you may the better understand them and their proper vertues, I will first anatomize unto you the severall degrees of Purgations; and by reason I have been much, and that for a long time versed in this subject, I am not ashamed to discover unto you from whence I had my first grounds and principles; for every man (as the Proverb is) must have a beginning; to wit, he must be a *Scholar*, before he can be a *Master*; for as *Seneca* saith very well, *It is great temerity in any man to take upon him to be a Master, who did never know what it was to have been a Scholar.* My first rudiments therefore I received from Mr. *Blundevile*, and after somewhat I attained unto by the help of Mr. *Markham*, both very well travelled in this Art; the rest I achieved partly in my Travels, and partly from my particular practice and experience. Now Mr. *Markham* followeth Mr. *Blundevile* in many things *verbatim*, in the rest in substance, wherein Mr. *Markham* doth more largely dilate and deliver himself, making thereby oft-times many things more clear and apparent, yet they both assent in what they say; *v. z.* that Purgation is defined by the learned *Physicians* to be the emptying and voiding of superfluous humours, which do cumber, pester, and disturb the body with their peccant condition: affirming that such ill humours do breed much bad nutriment, which the Learned do call *Cacoehymia*, which when it will not be corrected or amended, either by fair means, or by the help of nature, then must it be compelled, forced, and driven away by Purgation, Vomit, Clyster, or Suppository. And whereas Mr. *Blundevile* saith, that Horses are not used to be purged by Vomit as men be; I in conference with him once asked him the reason thereof; he answered me, for that the neck of the Horse was of that length, as not to be able to purge by Vomit, which for the present I took for satisfaction; I then imagining the thing not to be known, until such time as I travelling into remote parts, where I had frequent commerce with

Of Clysters.

Purgation defined.

with

with famous *Marshals* and *Ferriers*, I at length fastned upon one eminent for this faculty, who upon occasion offered, used to administer *Vomit* to Horses, as frequently as he did either *Purgation* or *Clyster*: which thing when I well observed, I demanded if a Horse could *Vomit*, and to what purpose he did administer in that kind; He answered me that a Horse could *Vomit*, and that he oft-times administred for the same end, and thereupon both gave me his Receipt, and did administer in my presence, and made me an *eye-witness* to the working, not in one Horse alone, but in sundry others. But now leaving this to its proper place I come to assoil your demand as touching *Clysters*, their natures and virtues. *Clysters secundum vulgus* are called *Glisters*, but the more learned assumed the name *Clyster*, borrowed from the Latin word *Clyster*, from whence the *French* hath it *Clyster*. Now whereas all other kind of Physick is received in at the *Mouth*, *Clysters* and *Suppositories* are administred *per Anum*, whose nature for the most part are to *purge* the *Guts*, and to cause the Horse to void, (and to throw forth of his *belly* such *humours* as do offend him in matter of his health,) to allay the sharpness of bad *humours*, to cleanse ulcers, to assuage the griefs and pains in the *belly* caused by wind or otherwise, and so likewise in many other cases. Now *Clysters* are not all of one and the same nature, neither are they all *laxatives* (as many do imagine) or do serve to one and the same end: for some must be made to give ease, some are restrigent and do bind, some do loosen and *purge*, some are to cleanse *ulcers*, old and long running sores, and some to prepare the *body* the better to receive its *Physick*, whereby it may the better work, which otherwise cannot be administred without much peril to the life of the sick creature. So that a *Clyster* is (I say) commonly given for a *Preparative* or beginning to *purgation*. And a *Clyster* by cleansing the *guts*, refresheth the *vital parts*, and prepareth the way before. Wherefore I do admonish every *Ferrier*, that when at any time they are to administer *Physick* to a Horse, whether *Purgative* or otherwise, if the Horse be not at the time soluble in *body*, that after *blood-letting* the next day he give a *Clyster*, and then may he be the bolder to administer what he shall think most requisite: lest otherwise by giving medicine, without
further

further preparation, he stir and provoke the *peccant humours*, which by reason they cannot find present way forth, being hindred by oppilations in the *Guts*, through costiveness and ventosity, and other impediments do attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done, but with great hazard to the life of the poor beast.

Hippophilus *But of what Ingredients do you make your Clysters, Hippoferus?*

Hippoferus. We do usually make our *Clysters* of *Decoctions*, of *Drugs*, of *Oils*, and sometime we add *Salt*.

Hippophilus. *What is a Decoction?*

Hippoferus. A decoction is a broth made of certain herbs, as Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and sometimes of white Lilly roots, and other such like things, which we do boil in water to a third part: and sometimes we use, in stead of herbs and water, to take the fat of beef broth, or the broth of a sheeps head, Milk, Whey, and some such kind of liquor.

A decoction
on what
it is.

Hippophilus. *What quantity of Broth or Decoction do you usually put in, whereof to make your Clyster?*

Hippoferus. That we do administer according to the age, strength, greatness, and corpulency of the Horse; for if he be a Horse of a strong and able *body*, of large growth, and stature, fat and lusty, we use to put into his *Clyster* of the *decoction* three pints; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble, or lean, then we do put in a quart of the same at most: of Oil we use to put in half a pint, of salt two or three drams at most, and sometimes we put verjuyce sometimes honey, as we shall find cause: *Drugs* we use; as Sene, Cassia, Agarick, Anniseeds, Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, Sugar Candy, &c.

Hippophilus. *What quantity of Drugs is needful for one Clyster?*

Hippoferus. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one *Clyster* at most, neither must you exceed of butter four ounces, and you must be very careful your *Clyster* be not administered more than blood-warm.

Hippophilus. *What time is fit for a Horse to keep or retain his Clyster?*

Hippoferus. When you give it him, let him be somewhat empty,

empty, but before he do receive it, let him be raked, and then having administred it, let him keep it at least half an hour, to the end it may work in his belly, and so do him the more good, and to cause him the better to keep the same; let his Keeper (so soon as the Horse hath received it) hold his tail close to his tuel, for half an hours space, or more, for the longer he keepeth it, the more effectuat it will be unto him; the best instrument wherein to give it to a Horse, is a Clyster-pipe made of purpose, which ought to be 12 inches in the shank, which must also be put home, and when the *Clyster* is assumed, let the giver draw away the pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Hippophilus. *I pray set me down some good Receipts of Clysters.*

Hippoferus. That shall I, Sir, most willingly: the first *Clyster* that I ever gave, was to a small Nag of a Gentlemans, which being very costive in his body, and refusing his meat, did droop, languish, and pine away; insomuch as the owæer fearing his Horses life, repaired unto me for counsel; when I had well considered the nature of his infirmity, together with its symptoms, I held it most requisite to administer a *Clyster*, which I did; and it was this: *viz.* Take the fat of beef broth one pint and a half, of good *English* honey half a pint, adding thereto of white salt two drams, mix all these well, and so administer it Blood-warm *Clyster-wise*, and so soon as he hath taken it, clap his *tail* close to his *tuel*, by the space of half an hour together at least, and if then it do not work, as I am confident it will, then let one take his back, and ride him up and down a reasonable round trot sometimes, (but not so as to cause him to sweat) for half an hour more, and set him up warm cloathed and littered, and so let him stand upon his trench four or five hours; during which time he will *purge* kindly; then unbit him, and give him sweet hay, and an hour after he hath eaten, give him white water, nor let him drink any cold water in a day or two after. And this you shall find to be the best remedy for this malady. *.*.

This I have administred *sape & sapinu*, and have done great good therewith: for the nature of this *Clyster* is to open and loosen the *Body*, to bring away with it all offensive *Humours*, to remove Obstructions ingendred in the *body* by means of excessive heat; it cleanseth the *Guts*, and slieth away all slimy substance which is residing in the *Guts*.

Hip-

Hippophilus. *Why but Hippoferus I observe a contradiction in you, as touching the quantity of your Decoction; for whereas you did before affirm that you use to put into your Clysters at the most but three pints, and at the least but a quart; you say that you did administer to this Horse, but a pint and half only, which is under quantity of what you did before prescribe?*

Hippoferus. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand that in cases of this nature, *Physick* ought with judgment to be administered, and the reason why I put into the *Clyster* of this broth so little, was, for that the Horse was grown very weak, poor, and low of his *flesh*, and in good years, and was besides a very small *Nag*, fetched out of *Scotland* from the mountains of *Galoway* or *Galwin*; and therefore if I should have made his *Clyster* so strong, and have added so great a quantity of *Decoction* to him, as I might peradventure have put to a *Clyster* for a great, large, fat, healthy, or corpulent *Horse*, I might have repented it; and therefore I made it as I told you: whereby it wrought most kindly, and did him that good which I hoped, and desired: But passing from this now, let us proceed to intreat yet farther of *Clysters*, and of their several kinds.

Another.

Take Pellitory two handfuls, or for want thereof Melilot two handfuls, or if that may not be had, then Camomile two handfuls, but Pellitory is the best if it may be had; boil it to a *Decoction*, and then add to it of Sallet Oil, and of Verjuice of the Crab, of each half a pint, of Honey four ounces, of Cassia two ounces, mix all these well together, and so apply it blood-warm *Clyster-wise*. * * *. This we do call a *Clyster Laxative*, for this will open the *body* and *guts* of the *Horse* very well, it will take from him all noxious and offensive *humours*; it will carry away all spungy matter: it will allay the bilioufness and sharpness of *humours*; it will cleanse old *Ulcers*; it will refresh and comfort the *Vital parts*, &c. But if you do find that by giving too great a quantity, your *Horse* purgeth and scowreth longer and more violently than you would have had him to have done, or for fear it should stir up in him upon the sudden more bad *humours* than you may easily know how to allay, then give him this *Clyster*, *viz.* Take the aforesaid *Decoction* one pint, adding thereto as much of Cows milk, (as it cometh warm

2.
Clyster
Laxative.

3.
Clyster
Refrin-
gent.

warm from her) and put also thereto the yolks of three new layed Eggs, well beaten and well mixed with the said liquor : and so give it your *Horse* blood-warm. This is called a *Clyster Restringent*, for this is only to be applyed to a *Horse* that is very *laxative*, or that doth empty himself too much, which is occasioned oft-times through overmuch debility, and want of strength, or when nature is very much offended : you may apply this so oft as need shall require. * * *

Another.

3.
Clyster
for a fat
Horse.

Take Mallows three handfuls, Marsh Mallow roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet leaves, of each two handfuls, Flax seed three spoonfuls, so many of the cloves of white Lilly roots, as you may easily hold in your hand : boil all these in fair water from a gallon to a wine quart, then strain it, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the liquor three hours standing upon the hot embers ; then put thereto of Sallet Oil half a pint, and being blood warm, administer it *Clyster-wise*, causing him to keep it at least half an hour or longer, if you may : and the best time to give this is three or four days before the Full and change of the Moon ; howsoever it may be given to very good profit (as occasion may proffer it self) at any other time. * * *. This *Clyster* is to be given to a *Ketty* or fat *Horse*, which otherwise cannot be kept clean, for it purgeth *glut* abundantly, and it is also principally to be given to a *Horse* that is newly taken from grass.

Another.

5.
A Clyster
for Melancholy.

Take of Whey a quart, of Anniseeds in fine powder two pennyworth, of the leaves of Mallows one handful, boil these till the Mallows be soft, then strain it, then put to it of sweet Butter four ounces, which when the butter is molten. administer it blood-warm. * * *. This purgeth melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting, it refresheth the *spirits* dulled, and occasioneth good digestion if the *Horse* be kept warm, and well tended. * * *.

Another.

6.
Clyster in
case of
desperate
sickness.

Take of the Oil of Dill, of the Oil of Camomile, of the Oil of Violets, of Cassia, of each half an ounce, and of brown Sugar Candy in powder three ounces, then take of Mallow leaves half a handful : boil the Mallows first to a decoction in fair

fair water, then strain it, and put to the broath all the fore-named ingredients, administer this bloodwarm *Clyster-wise*. This is a most sovereign *Clyster* to be given in case of desperate sickness; it helpeth all Feavers; it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing diseases, most excellent against Surfets either by Provender or otherwise, and it will occasion great strength in short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given. * * *

Another.

Take the pulpe of Colloquintida, half an ounce, (I mean the seeds and skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centaury and of Wormwood, of each half a handul, of Castoreum a quarter of an ounce, boil all these in three quarts of water to a quart; then strain it, and dissolve into the broth of Gerologundinum three ounces, and of white salt three drams, of Sallet Oil half a pint, and blood warm administer it *Clyster-wise*. * * *

7.
Clyster
for the
Pestilence.

This I have often proved, and do find it to be most excellent for the Pestilence, and to help all Feavers.

Another.

Take the decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of fresh Butter four ounces, or of Sallet Oil half a pint, and give it him *Clyster-wise*. * * *. This is the gentlest *Clyster* of any before prescribed; for it is both a *Lenitive*, and a great cooler of the body, and doth infinitely ease pain: It is the best thing that can be given to a Horse that is taken, or against Convulsions or Cramps, and most singular against Costiveness proceeding from any sickness or surlet by Provender, foundring in the body, &c.

8.
Clyster
lenitiva.

Take salt water or new made Brine two pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and so bloud-warm administer it *Clyster-wise*. This I never did experience, howsoever I have been oft perswaded by many able Ferriers, who have averred it to be the most excellent that may be had for the Colick, or any sickness or gripings in the *guts* or *belly*. And let this suffice for *Clysters*: onely by way of advice I counsel you that before you administer any *Clyster*, you first rake him; that you put in the Pipe (being first anointed with sweet Butter or Oil Olive) gently and by degrees, and that you also draw it forth very treatably; that you make him keep it at least

9.
Clyster
for the
Colick.

least half an hour; that you do administer it but bloud-warm at most; that you squeeze and press between your hands the bladder strongly; and lastly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it be either sweet Mash, or else white water.

S E C T. 9. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to be applied to a Horse that is cloyed, prickt, or hath other hurt in the hoof?

Hippoferus. You must first with your Butter, drawing iron, or paring knife, lay the wound bare as may be; then, Take wax, Hogs grease, and Turpentine of each one ounce, Verdigrease two ounces; boil these upon a gentle fire, your wax and Hogs grease being first put in and molten, then put in your Turpentine, and lastly your Verdigrease in fine powder, and being indifferently warm, dip tow or hurds into the ointment, and so lay it to the Sore, then stop and splent it up, and dresse him twice a day, and this will make him whole and sound in short time. * * *. But of this more in its due place.

S E C T. 10. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you to a Horse, whose Cods and Stones are swelled?

Cods swelled
Hippoferus. This infirmity proceedeth from sundry causes, as sometimes by being bitten with a Dog, or with another Horse, or by being stung with some venemous or evil creature: The French do call it *Enflure de Coxillon's*: It cometh also by means of some evil humours and corrupt bloud, which do fall down to the Cods, sometimes after sickness, & sometimes after rankness of bloud & seed, for want of a Mare. If it come of rankness of seed or of bloud, then let him have a Mare and cover her two or three days together, and half an hour after ride him into the water above the Cods or Stones against the stream, and he will do well. * * *. But if this disease come by other causes, then, Take the Lees of Claret Wine, and Cummin-feed, made into fine powder, and a little Wheat or Bean flower; boil these together to an Unguent, and so warm as he may well endure it, anoint the cods therewith,

with, which done, draw forth his *yard*, and wash it, and his *sheath*, also with White-Wine-Vinegar; and or 4 hours after ride him into the water above the *Cods*, and let him also stand in the water some short time, and sometimes ride him against the stream: do this every day till the swelling be asswaged. * * *. This is a very good Cure.

Another.

Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, and white Salt so much as will suffice, boil these in fair water to an Ointment, and anoint the *Cods* therewith warm: and then apply this Ointment.

Take Goats grease, or, for default thereof, Deers sewet, the white of an Egg, and Sallet Oil: boil these over a gentle fire; and herewith anoint the *cods*, but this must be applyed after he hath been ridden into the water and dry again: do this every day once till he be well. * * *. This I have often tried, and have found it to be right good.

Another.

First, anoint and bathe the *Cods* in the juyce of Hemlock, and when it is dried, then

Take Pigeons dung, and new milk, and boil it till it be as thick like to a Poulteffs, and therewith anoint the *Cods* every day once.

Another.

First let him *bloud* in both the *spur* or *flank-veins*; then take Oil of Roses and Vinegar, of each a pint, and of Bole-armoniack in fine powder two ounces: make all these into one body, and being luke-warm anoint the *cods* therewith, and the next day ride him into the water up to the *cods* against the stream; then bring him into the stable, and when he is through dry, anoint him again: thus continuing to do, till he be well. But if the *cods* be swoln by means of any hurt, bite, or stroke, then apply to them this following charge,

Take Bolearmoniack in powder, Vinegar, and the whites of Eggs as much as will suffice, well beaten, and wrought together, and anoint him therewith dayly till it be abated, and if it impostumate, where you find it to be soft, open it either with a hot iron, or with your incision knife, if it break not of it self, and so heal it up with the Ointment taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. sect. 4.* and it will soon be whole. * * *. This is very sovereign.

SECT.

SECT. II. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you to the Colick?

Colick.

Hippocresus. It is, Sir, a disease which cometh of wind, and therefore we generally call it the *wind colick*; the *French* call this disease the *Tranchaisons*; it causeth great gripings, and extream pain in the *belly* of the Horse, so as he will oft-times lie down and tumble, he will also strike at his *belly* with his *hinder feet*, and stamp with his *fore feet*; and the pain will be so great as to caute him to forsake his meat: these signs I have often observed in Horses perplexed with this malady; and albeit I have sundry Receipts for it, and all or the most of them by me tryed and approved good, yet one of Mr. *Blunde-wiles* and Mr. *Markhams*, I hold inferiour to none of mine, for I have often tried it; and this is it:

Take a quart of Muscadine, or of sweet Sack, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each half an ounce, Sugar two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and give it him bloud-warm, then anoint his *flanks* with Oil de Bay; (but I often use to anoint them with the Ointment of Acopum, finding it to be much better) then bridle him up, and trot him out a good round trot, or gallop him softly sometimes the space of an hour until he do dung, but if he will not, then rake him, or else put an Onion pilled and jagged into his *fundament*: then for three or four days, let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, and keep him warm, and he will do well again. * * *

Another.

Keep him fasting over night, and in the morning give him this drink. Take of White-Wine a quart, Fenugreek 4 ounces, Bay-berries, and Pepper, of each 4 ounces, Grains and Ginger of each 1 ounce, Water-creffes 2 handfuls, Sage 1 handful, Sengrene 1 pound, Mints a handful, stamp the herbs, and pound the spices, and put them into the Wine, and let it boil a little, then strain it, and put to it of life Honey two spoonfuls, and so give it him blood-warm. * * *. This I have also found to be very good: notwithstanding if he be a *stoned horse*, the best cure for him is to have a *Mare*, especially if he be so troubled with the *colick*, so as that he cannot piss; besides it helpeth
and

and preventeth sundry sorts of sickness and diseases, and strengtheneth nature. * * *.

Another.

Take of White-Wine one pint, and three or four Cantharides; and make them into very fine powder, and give this to the Horse (well brewed in wine) blood-warm. This I never tryed, for that these flies being a strong *corrosive*, have deterred me, howsoever I have been often invited thereunto by many good *Ferriers*, who have averred unto me, that they have often used it, and have found it to be right good.

Another.

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon of each one ounce; all made into fine powder, and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Muskadine, and let it boil a while; then take it off, and put to it of Honey one Spoonful give it him bloud-warm: which done, cloath him up, and litter him, and so let him stand upon his trench 4 hours; then give him meat, and 1 hour after a sweet Mash, or white water. This was taught me by a *Noble Knight*, who said he had often used it. But if your Horse hath the *colick* and *stone*, then.

Take of White-Wine 1 pint, of Bur-seeds 8 ounces, made into fine powder, of Pasley seed 2 ounces in powder, also of Hyflop, unset Leeks, and Water cresses, of each half a handful, of black Sope half an ounce, stamp all the Herbs in a mortar, and strain them with the Wine, then put to that Liquor, your Bur and Parsley seed, and so give it him bloud warm; this will break the stone, and bring it from him with much ease, and cure his *Colick*. * * *. This I have often administred.

Colick & Stone.

SECT. 12. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat Disease is that which is called the Colt Evil? Colt-evil.

Hippoferm. It is a disease in the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods* of a Horse or *Gelding*, and it cometh to Horses by means of heat and rankness of *seed*; and to a *Gelding*, by weakness and coldness of *seed*; to the *Horse* through too great abundance of *seed*, which causeth a stopping in the *pipe* or *conduct* of the *yard* and to a *Gelding* for want of heat and strength to send it forth,

whereby the *yard* and *sheath* swelleth very much. The best way to cure a Horse is to give him a *Mare*, whereby he sendeth forth his *seed* freely, and two or three hours after swim him, or else ride him up to the *flunks* to and fro a pretty while against the stream. This disease is known by the swelling of the *yard* and *sheath*; I have cured many *Horses* and *Geldings* with this ensuing Receipt. First swim him, but especially against the stream four or five days together, then apply this *Plaster*.

Take Bean meal and mallows of each 1 handful, Hogs greafe half a pound, chop the Mallows small, then put to the Hogs greafe, and so boil it with a pint of White Wine, and when it is boiled, put it into a cloath, and wrap his *coas* therein; and so order it as that it may gather like a purse, and make it fast so, as it may neither fall off, nor hurt him: dress him herewith every day till he be well. * * *. I have had great experience of this Receipt: but if you be desirous to have variety; then look over Mr. *Blundevisle* and Mr. *Markham*, who are well stored.

SECT. 13. C.

Cold.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to be given for a Cold?

Hipposerus. There are so many and so good, as that I am to seek almost how to begin, they be of so many, and sundry sorts of them; for some are for *colds* newly taken, some for old *colds*, some for *colds* that bring the *Glanders*, &c. Wherefore for *colds* newly taken at first, you must understand (Sir) that a cold newly taken (a thing not to be prevented, by reason it oft-times cometh by means and ways unknown) you must observe first, that if your Horse be propense to many bad *humours*, whereof some Horses are more than other, you must first then labour to expel them by purging his *head*, then search betwixt his jaws, and if there you do find any small kernels, then be you assured he hath a new taken *cold*, but if he have great kernels, then was not the cold so lately taken as you might have imagined; also if he do rattle in the *head*, it is a sign his *cold* is newly taken, or if he do void any thin matter from his *nose* or *eyes*, or if he hold his head into the manger; or if when he drinketh, the water cometh forth of his *Nostrils*, or that he cougheth oft, and sometimes perhaps cheweth mat-
trative

trative stuff betwixt his teeth, &c. These and many others be certain signs of a Pofe, Catarre, and newly taken cold, wherein is no danger if it be taken in time, otherwise it will come to a worse matter; I will now give you sundry good receipts, most of which I have often tried and found to be right good. First, I hold moderate exercise, and seasonable airing to be marvellous good, without further applying of medicines; but if you find that he is much stopped in the *head*, then

Take a small quantity of fresh or sweet Butter, and of Brimstone made into fine powder; work them together till they be one entire *body*, and of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long Goose wing feathers, and anoint them herewith to the very quills on either side, which done, rowl them into more of the powder of Brimstone, and so put them up into either *nostril* one, and at the butt end of the quills put a strong packthread, which must be fastned over his *nose*, like to the headstall of a Bridle: and then leap his back, and ride moderately up and down an hour or longer, and this will provoke him to snort and snuffle forth of his *nose* and *head* much of the congealed filth which is in his head, then tie him to the Rack for an hour after and this will purge his *head* very clean: then draw forth the Feathers and he will do well, keeping him warm, and giving him Mashs or white water every day for four or five dayes after. This Receipt was taught me for more than thirty years since by a famous *Marshal of France*, which since I found in Mr. *Markhams Muster-piece*, but I hold it one of the best things can be prescribed for this malady. * * *. Another very short, but as good.

Take of thyme 1 handful, boil it in a quart of strong Ale, till it come to a pint, then strain it, add thereunto of ordinary Treacle two spoonfuls, and give it him blood warm. * * *.

Another.

An excellent drink to be given to a Horse for a new taken cold, provided he be young, that is, not above five years old.

Take of *French Barley* half a pound, put it into a posnet, and put thereto of fair water one quart, and set it upon the fire, and let it boil a little, then take it off and drain the water from the Barly, and cast away the water, then add the second time the like quantity of water, and boil it as much as you did the first

time, and then drain it from the water, and cast away the water again, then add once again the like quantity of a quart of water, as you did twice before, and boil that also so long a time as you did the two former waters, drain this also from the Barly, but cast it not away, but keep it, and then add to the water of Anniseeds and Licoris, of each half an ounce, make them into very fine powder, and searce them, and put the said powder into the boiled water, and add to it of white Sugar candy four ounces, then set it upon the fire in a clean skillet, and so boil it up until a third part be consumed, then take it off and strain it, and give it your Horse blood warm; drench him thus three mornings together, and it will ripen his cold and cause it to come away. This is very good.

Another.

Take of White Wine-Vinegar the best and strongest, five spoonfuls, and put to it of Oil de Bay 1 spoonful, warm it upon the fire, stirring it well; this must be made and given in the morning; but when you do administer it, you must first put your drenching horn into fair water that is good and hot, to keep the Medicine from sticking to the horn, then taking it forth out of the hot water, before the horn can be cold, and whilst it is yet moist with the water, put the one half of your medicine into the same, and so as speedily as may be, convey it into one of his *nostrils*, and after the other moiety into his other *nostril*; this done, ride him for half an hour moderately; then set him up, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him stand upon the trench three or four hours before you give him any meat, and after do as is accustomed to be done to sick Horses in *Physick*, * * *. This I do approve to be equivalent to either of the two former.

Another.

Take water and salt so much as will suffice, brew them well together, it then being made blood warm, give it him, and do after as is usual. * * *. This for a new taken cold I have often used, and I do find it to be singular good to be given to a young Horse.

Another.

Take of Oil de-Bay, of Anniseeds, and of Licoris, of each one half penny worth, and of brown sugar candy a penny-worth,

worth, make all these into a fine powder; and being well mixed, sew it up into a fine linnen rag, and so fasten it unto the Bit or Snaffle of the Horse, and so ride a journey, and travel him, and in short space he will be cured, if it be a new taken cold only. * * * This I have also proved, and I do find it good, for it will cure both cold and cough if it be rightly applyed, to wit, with riding and exercise.

Another.

Take of white wine one pint, Sallet Oil a quarter of a pint, Rubarb and Aloes, and Saffron, of each two drams, Nutmeg, Sene, Agarick, Bay-berries, Duke or Dutch powder, and of Cordial powder, of each half an ounce: mix all these together, and then add to it of Honey 4 ounces, warm them well in a Pipkin, and give it him to drink blood warm, but let him stand upon the trench at least 3 hours before, and 3 hours after, neither let him for all that day eat any Oats, but in its stead, let him have Wheat bran, and let his drink be that day either a warm mash, or white water for 4 or 5 days after, and put into his Provender for some time Fenugreek made into gross powder. * * *. This is a most sovereign drink to be given for a cold. But if you do find that his *head* is very much oppressed with a *Pose* or *Catar*, then give him this driak twice a day, viz. Take Fenugreek one ounce, and boil it into a good quantity of water till it burst, then mix with the decoction thereof wheat meal so much as will suffice, and give it him to drink.

Another.

Take a quart of the best Ale, and warm it upon the fire, and put into it so much Tobacco made into fine Powder, as you can take up upon a shilling at twice, and as much dried Rosemary in fine powder as you may take up upon a shilling at once; give him this to drink blood-warm in a morning fasting. This drink is called *Petio, Nectiana*; But I did never make trial thereof, for that I once saw it given by a *Ferrier* to a sick Horse, which so wrought with him, as that with all his *Lenitives* and *Cordials* the *Ferrier* had much labour to save the life of the poor Horse; this potion was so violent, which notwithstanding drove the Horse into a most dangerous *Calentura*. But the next is better.

Take a Hens Egg, and make a hole in the top thereof, no bigger

bigger than that you may get forth the white and yolk, then take Tarr and sweet Butter, of each like much, as much as will suffice, incorporate these well together into one body, and so convey it into the Egg shell, and give it your Horse three or four mornings together, and either journey him gently, or else ride him three or four hours after it; which done, bring him into the Stable and cloath him up warm and litter him well, and let him be well rubbed, and so keep him upon the trench two hours after, and then give him Hay, and an hour after give him either a warm Mash, or white water; and this will help a cold newly taken. *.*. This will not make him sick, for I have often made tryal of it. Another as good as this.

Take the long white moss that groweth upon an old dry Park pale, one handful, chop it small, and put it into a pottle of good Ale or Beer, till one half be consumed; then take it off, and strain and press it hard, and put into the liquor of Anniseeds and Licoris of each half a spoonful, and a piece of sweet Butter, and so give it him three mornings together fasting, and it will cure him. *.*. Another if he hath taken a cold or pose in the *head*.

Take a quart of Muskadine or sweet Sack, Nutmegs, Pepper, Camminseed, Grains, Bay-berries, of each three drams, all made into fine powder: boil these a waume or two, then take it off, and put into it a piece of sweet Butter, and give it your Horse three mornings together blood warm; let him all those three days be kept warm, neither let him drink any cold water, but either a sweet Mash, or white water, yea and that three or four days after, and during these three days, let him fast three hours after the Receipt of his said Medicine. Also three days after, when you perceive the cold to begin to break from him, and to rot, cause him to lleeze, by blowing into either *nostril*, either the powder of Tobacco, or of Pepper, or of Helebore. *.*. Another which will cure a longer taken cold, yea though it be accompanied with a dry cough and shortness of breath, or purfiveness, which I had of Mr. *Markham*, and I have often made trial thereof, and it hath done cures which have been held impossible to have been effected.

Take of the conserve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of sweet Sack, and so

So give it your Horse with a horn in a morning fasting, and ride him gently a little after: and thus do sundry times until you do find the Infirmary to decrease.

Hippophilus. But Hippoſerus, this Conſerve of Elecampane I do ſuppoſe is hard to come by, for ſurely every Country Apothecary hath it not; how then may a man make this Confection you ſo much commend?

Hippoſerus. Sir, this Conſerve I make my ſelf, and I will give you the receipt thereof. You muſt underſtand that there be two kinds thereof, the one is called particularly a *Preſerve*, and the other an *absolute Conſerve*. This firſt is *Simple*, the other *Compound*, both very ſovereign for this Infirmary, but the Conſerve is evermore to be eſteemed the better. I do counſel you never to be without either of them; for they will keep the whole year through, if they be relieved cloſe ſtopped. Wherefore as touching the firſt, which is the *Simple*, you muſt preſerve it like as you do all other green roots, and ſo keep them in a Gally-pot or Glaſs in a good quantity of its own Syrup, till you have occaſion to uſe the ſame; and when you are to uſe it, let it be beaten well in a Mortar together with its Syrup and refined Sugar made firſt into very fine powder. Now your *Compound* or *Conſerve* is thus made: Firſt, let your roots of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the beſt and youngſt Roots can be had, which muſt be kept alſo in a Gally pot or glaſs cloſe ſtopped, in a dry and warm place where they may not give again; and when you would uſe them, take ſo much as will ſuffice, and beat it in a Mortar with the Syrup of Coltſtoot, and the powder of refined Sugar, ſtill working it till you have brought it to be a perfect *Conſerve*, and ſo give it to your Horſe in good ſweet Sack or Muskadine. The firſt of theſe two, which is the *Simple*, is of moſt excellent uſe; for it helpeth any ordinary cold or ſtopping, it comforteth the *Lungs*, enlargeth his *Wind*, purgeth the *Head* from all filthy matter, and diſſolveth many other obſtructions, as well in the *Body* and *Head*. But the *Compound* or *Conſerve* works better effects in the *Body* of the *Horſe*, eſpecially if the malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any taint, in the *Lungs*, *Liver*, or inward parts: This *Conſerve* in time, by frequent uſe thereof will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable: it helpeth the heaving of the *Belly* and *Flanks*, it cauſeth the

Horſe.

Horse to take his *Wind* kindly and temperately, and freeth him of his dry cough, which before did greatly annoy him; but if you have not these *Conserves*, take this other Receipt little inferior to the former for these *Maladies*.

Take of the Syrup of Colts-foot one ounce, of Elecampane roots dried, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each half an ounce, all made into fine powder, brown Sugar candy powdred one ounce, which must be divided into two parts, then take sweet Butter so much as will suffice, and so make this into three Pills good and stiff; which done, tole them into the other moiety of your powdred Sugar candy, and so give them your *Horse* fasting, then ride him gently for half an hour, and after set him up warm, and let him fast three hours after, causing him to be well rubbed: Let him drink no cold water, unless it be with exercise, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and his Oats wet in strong Ale, or else with Beer. * * *. Another very good:

Take the cankerous Moss of an old Pale, or of the limbs of an old Oak two handfuls, chop and shred it small, and boil it in a pottle of new Milk, and with it a root of Elecampane, let these boil together till half be consumed, then strain it, and press the Moss and Root very well, which done, put to it of sweet Butter the quantity of a Duck-egg, and so give it him in a morning fasting blood warm, and ride him moderately an hour after; then set him up, cloath him and litter him warm, and order him as is accustomed with *Horses* in *Physick*: Let him have this drink three mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough, wet or dry, or his Pose if he have it. But if you find your *Horse* to be stopp'd in the *Head*, and that he voideth filth, and stinking matter out from his *Nose*, then shall you every morning administer this fume.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts foot made into powder, of each two drams, then with Venice Turpentine work them into a stiff paste, and make them into small Cakes the bredth of a six pence, and dry them a little, and then put fire into a Chafing-dish with coals, and so put one of these Cakes upon the coals, covered with a Tunnel, and so fume him, and this not only during his *Physick*, but at other times after, and let his drink be either sweet Mash or white water. * * *.

Another.

Another.

If your *Horse* hath a new taken cold, then give him his Caudle, which I have often used, and do find it to be very good.

Take the Yolks of four new laid Eggs, and beat them well together, and dissolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three good Nutmegs with a little Anniseeds and Licorice, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can take up upon a six-pence; put these into the Ale, with a peice of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, and two spoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and of brown Sugar-candy four ounces; warm all these upon the fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, then give it him blood-warm, 4 or 5 mornings together; and this is an infallible cure. * * * Another very good.

Take a pottle of sweet Wort, three heads of Garlick piled, or ordinary Honey half a pound, boil these till one moiety be consumed, and give it your *Horse* three mornings together: Then for three mornings together after give him these Pills. Take Box leaves and Harts-tongue, of each so much as will suffice, stamp them well together, and with sweet Butter make it into Pills; and so every morning give him three of these Pills. * * * But if he hath a cold which breaketh and runneth from him, then must you be careful to keep his *Head* and *Pole* warm, by putting on a double Hood, and every Morning fasting ride him with two long Goose feathers put up into either *Nostril*, well dipped before hand in Oil de-Bay, and with a strong Packthred from the ends of the quills fastned over his *Head* like a Head-stall of a Bridle, so as the feathers may not get forth, and fasten also to his Bit or Snaffle one Root or two of *Polypodium*; having been all night before lain steeped in the Oil of Spike, and every time you ride him anoint the Bit thus before hand prepared with the said Oil, and when he cometh home, put upon his *Pole* his double hood, and rub him against the hair all over, especially his *Neck* and *Pole*, (for friction in this case is most sovereign) then whilst he is yet warm, perfume his *Nose* with Frankincense, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much; do this nine days together, and let his drink be white water: For all Rhumes having had time to work their malice will become dangerous, yea and many times cureless. * * *

Now if your *Horse* have taken an extream cold ; then, Take Cloves, Nutmegs, Ginger, Galls, or the fruit of the Oak and Cardimuns, of each like quantity so much as will suffice, and of Fennel-seeds more than any one of the other Ingredients, make them into fine powder, and searce them, then put two spoonfuls of this powder to a quart of Sack or Muskadine, and strain these into two penyworth of *English* Saffron, and the yolks of two new laid Eggs well beaten together ; give this to your *Horse* blood-warm fasting, and let him have none other drink than white water for three or four days after, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and every day at noon give him the blades of Reed, or the leaves of Sallows to eat out of your hand, for they be very good for him, and cooling for his *body* ; do this divers mornings together, and it will not only cleanse his Cold, but also open his Pipes, and set his wind at liberty. But if your *Horse* have an inward cold, which lyeth lurking in his *Lungs* and *Stomach*, then give him this Medicine.

Take Oil de-Bay and good Tarr, of each the quantity of three Walnuts, half as much Honey, brown-Sugar-candy in fine powder half an ounce, mix these with a quantity of powdered Brimstone so much as will suffice, and sew them into a fine linnen cloth, and tye it to his Bit or Snaffle, and so ride or journey him moderately till all be dissolved into his *body*, then bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warm, and three hours after give him Hay, and after a warm Mash ; use him thus three mornings together and longer, if you shall see cause. * * *. *Another.*

Bran prepared.

Take blood from him, if you have ground for the same, otherwise not ; then instead of giving him Oats, you shall give him bran boiled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost full of water, and when it beginneth to boil, put in your bran, and let it boil a full quarter of an hour at least, then take it off, and let it stand till it be almost cold, and about four or five a clock in the morning, give him this bran so hot as he can eat ; then for his drink, give him the same water, and at night give him Oats and white water, and let him be covered and littered warm ; if it be in Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, for that will take away his stomach, and make him faint, and sweat too much ; and at night

night give him the quantity of what you can put into an Egg-shell among his Oats of this powder following, to which you must keep him for eight days together, or longer, if you shall see cause. You must understand that the boiled Bran, is that which drieth up all his gross and corrupt *humours*, which was the cause of his cold. Now the powder is this: *viz.* Take of Comminseed, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montana (alias Silileos) Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick Brimstone six ounces, make all these into fine powder, and let them be well mixed: this must be given with his Oats, as is before inculcated; but he must first be watred, and then presently let him be well rubbed, *body, neck, pole, legs, breast and belly*, and cloathed and littered warm, and an hour before you give him his Oats, put into his Rack a little sweet wheat straw, and so (I say) let him eat thereof the space of one hour or better, and then give him his Oats mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure; and thus doing, in short time you shall perceive his Cold to be quite gone, and the sooner if he shall be moderately aired an hour after Sun-rising, and an hour before Sun-set, if the Sun do shine. Now if this Cold bring with it a violent Cough, as is often seen, then give him the aforesaid Wheat bran boiled, together with the said powder with his Oats, but then not above three or four days, for that the said powder disperseth the corrupt and gross *humours* that are in the *body*, which do occasion the said cough; and when you do perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keep him notwithstanding to his white water, but an hour before you do water him;

Take a stick of the bigness of your thumb or better, of well nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen clout about it four or five times, first dipped in Oil de-Bay, and put it into his *mouth*, and with some peice of leather thong, or other small cord, fasten it to either end of the stick, and so fasten it over his *ears* like the Headstal of a Bridle, like as Smiths use to do when they burn a Horse for the Lampas, and let him drink with this stick in his mouth; which done, let him stand with it thus in his mouth an hour after at the least, to the end he may lick and suck up the said Oil, and when he is to eat his Oats, put among them this other powder following, *Viz.*

Take Fennel seed four ounces, Fenugreek two ounces, Cardimums one ounce, pound these grossly, otherwise he will blow them away in eating his Oats, and with his Oats put every night of this powder one spoonful, and keep him warm, and so use him as before is prescribed. * * *

Another.

Take Ivy-berries and dry them, and make them into powder, and so give it to your Horse in Ale or Beer.

This I never tryed, and this is only for a Cough. Another for a Cough. Take of salt one pint, of Sallet Oil half a pint, Oil of Anniseeds one ounce, brown Sugar-candy, in powder three ounces, give this with your horn to your Horse three mornings together, and it will rid him of his Cough, and heal any putrefaction in his *Lungs* or any other inward parts whatsoever. This also I never tried, but it was highly commended to me. Another Receipt for a Cough, which I have found to be very good.

Take two new laid Eggs, and open the crowns, and get forth some of the white, and then put into these Eggs so much of the powder of Brimstone as you can take up upon a shilling into either Egg; give him this every morning for some time, or till you see the Cough to go from him.

Another.

Take three new laid Eggs, and put them into a pint pot, then put so much of the best and strongest White Wine Vinegar into the pot as will very well cover the Eggs, and let them lie in the Vinegar twenty four hours at the least, then beat the Vinegar and Eggs together shells and all, and so give it your Horse cold, and then ride or walk him an hour, and against his coming in, have this drink in readiness, and give it him, *Viz.*

Take Hyssop, Anniseeds, Licoris, Grains, Long Pepper, Gentia, Elecampane dryed, of each three drams, make all the Spices into fine powder, and stamp the Hyssop well, and so put all into good Sack one pint, and of good Ale also one pint, and of Honey one spoonful, and so boil it, and give it your Horse blood warm, and set him up, and cloath him, and litter him warm, causing him to fast three hours after it, and give him no cold water, But sweet mashes or white water; and this will cure him, for it is an approved good Receipt. * * * *Another* very good. Take

Take Wheat-Meal, Anniseeds, Licoris, Polipodium of the Oak dried, Elecampane dried; make all these into powder, and mix them well: Take two spoonfuls of this powder, with a head of Garlick pilled and bruized, mix all these well together, and with your Wheat Meal and Honey as much as will suffice, make Pills thereof the bigness of a Walnut, and give your Horse every morning three or four of these Pills, and so soon as he hath taken them, give him two new laid Eggs with their shells. * * *

Another.

Take of life Honey three spoonfuls, of the best and whitest refined loaf Sugar one spoonful and a half, made into fine powder, dried Elecampane Root made also into fine powder, one spoonful, and of Ambergreece two grains, mix all these very well together, and put it into an Egg-shell, and give him hereof at night late, and in the morning fasting, and so let him fast for three hours after; and be the cough never so violent, it will both stay and cure the same * * * This is right good, for I have had very good proof thereof.

Another.

Take Benjamin and Brimstone made into very fine powder, of each half an ounce, give this your Horse with one pint of Muskadine, putting into it two new laid Eggs shells and all, broken and well beaten together, let it be given three mornings together. This was commended unto me for a special good Receipt, but I never did make tryal thereof.

Another.

Take Nettle seeds, Anniseeds, Raifons of the Sun Stoned, Elecampane in fine powder, of each half an ounce, make all the spices and seeds into very fine powder, and cut the Raifons very small, and so boil all these in Muskadine or Sack a quart, with three spoonfuls of life Honey, then strain it, and give it him three mornings together blood-warm. This I never proved.

Another.

Take of Rue one handful, chop or stamp it very small, and put to it a pennyworth of Anniseeds in very fine powder, make it up into Pills with sweet Butter, and so give it your Horse. * * * This I have found to be most sovereign for a Horse

Horse that hath a cold whether newly or formerly taken, either, wet or dry cough; it is also most excellent for a Horse that hath been over-ridden, or any way wronged by labour. Now if his Cough be so violent as that it may endanger his *wind*; then

- Take Calamint, Gentiana, Cominseed, Licoris, Elecampane, of each two drams, make all these into fine powder, and confect them with life Honey and Butter mingled together and molten; and when it is cold, make it up into Pills, then rowl them in the Powder of Anniseeds, and give him of these Pills three or four every morning, for two or three mornings together fasting, and after keep him warm, and let his drink be Mashcs or white water. * * * But if he hath a Cough of the *Lungs*, give him these Pills. Take the Roots of Mallows newly gathered, Elecampane Roots newly also gathered, of each 1 handful, slice them thin, and boil them in fair water with Barly 2 handfuls, till the roots be soft, then strain forth the liquor, and put into it a penny dish of sweet Butter, of life Honey 3 spoonfuls, and as much Bean meal as will make all into a paste: then make it into Pills, and rowl them up in the powder of Anniseeds, and give him 3 or 4 of them every morning fasting for 3 or 4 mornings together, keep him temperately warm, and during the time he taketh these Pills, let his drink be either sweet mashcs or white water, and every day about mid-day, give him boiled Barly or Brewers grains. * * *

Another for a Horse that hath his Wind broken.

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen *alias* Horse-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine powder, and then make them up in Balls or Pills with ordinary honey so much as will suffice: Let these Pills be made of the bignets of an Egg, and give him of them 3 at a time, 14 or 15 days together, or longer if you shall see cause, and let him not drink any cold water during the time, and for a while after the giving of his Pills; and let his exercise be very moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and his Oats wet with good Ale or Beer, and in short time he will be well and sound again. * * *. This is a most approved good Receipt, with which I have done Cures held impossible to have been effected.

Another.

Another.

Take Comin half an ounce, Anniseeds, and Licoris, of each two ounces, dried roots of Elecampane three ounces, make them into fine powder, and boil them in a pottle of Ale or Beer to a quart, then strain it, and give the liquor to your Horse in a morning fasting blood warm, and ride him moderately upon it two or three hours, then set him up warm, and use him *ut supra*. This I never tryed, but he that gave it me did highly commend the same unto me. Thus have I given you many Receipts for a cold, and such diseases which are thereof dependent, whereof many are to my knowledge right good, and by my self experimented, with which I have done cures which have been held very strange, and beyond expectation.

Hippophilus. Truly Hipposerus, as touching these Maladies, something there is in them, wherein I do earnestly desire to be yet better informed; and first I would gladly know what be the diversities of the diseases which do proceed from Colds; and how we may come to know one malady from another.

Hipposerus. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand, that from a cold taken do issue many infirmities, if the said cold be not speedily prevented; as namely, first Coughs, as well wet as dry, Catars, Murs, Rhumes, Pofe, Ratlings in the head, Kernels, and inflammations under the *Chaul*, with Bunches, Knots, Pustils, &c. It causeth also Hidebound, Feavers, Head-aches, Frenzy, Sleeping evil, weeping Eyes, Canker in the Nose, Strangles, Quinsie, to have Gourded or swollen legs: It will cause the *hair* to stare, it will in time cause the mourning of the *Chine* (if there be such a disease) shortness of breath; purisiveness, phthisick, broken wind, (also if there be such a disease) Frelised, broken, and rotten lungs, glanders incurable, if it be not in time prevented, grief and pain in the *breast*, Anticor; it will also cause the evil habit of the *stomach*, dropsie, loathing of meat, foundring both in the *Body* and *feet*, tyredness, putrifaction, and inflammations in the *blood*, it will also cause many diseases and inflammations in the *liver*, together with the siccity and aridity thereof, obstructions, oppilations, costiveness and stoppings both in the *body* and *pores*, a consumption in the *liver*, the overflowing of
the

the *gall*, the unnatural working of the *spleen*, the *Yellows*, *Stavers*, the *Colick* and *gripings*, *belly bound*, *lax* and *bloody flux*. All these and many more diseases and maladies do depend upon this one only infirmity we call the *cold*, and hence appears how needful a thing it is for a man who is the true lover of his *Horse*, to be careful what in him lyeth both to keep his *Horse* from cold taking, as also to know how to cure the same so soon as it shall appear, in performance whereof no small diligence and art is required.

SECT. 14. C.

Hippoph. YOU make question whether or not there be such a disease which is so commonly called the *Mourning of the Chine*: why is there not such a disease?

Hippoferus. No truly, there is no such disease, for that which is called the *mourning of the Chine*, is none other thing than a plain and rank *Glaunders*, which very few of our English *Ferriers* do know how to cure, which hath its first source and origen from a cold which being let run long, cometh to be a *Glaunders*, which in time doth waste the *liver* of the *Horse*, whereby he dyeth; for if for your better understanding you shall be pleased to open *Horses* which do die of this disease, you shall evermore find the *Chine* and *pith* of the *Horse* to be found and whole, but the *liver* perished, and his lungs putrified, by reason whereof the *Horse* long before his death casteth forth of his *nose* much corrupt and stinking matter and filth; wherefore this malady cannot in reason be stiled the *mourning of the Chine*, but meerly the *Glaunders*; and for remedy thereof you shall have sundry excellent Receipts when we shall come to handle this disease; and therefore till then I forbear to speak any more thereof.

Hippophilus. You question also another disease called a broken wind, why this is so general a malady, as that no man but giveth it that name: what do you call it?

Hippoferus. Sir, as touching this infirmity, I say there is no such, for you must understand that this disease so vulgarly called a broken wind, is truly a shortness of breath, or attaint or defect in the wind, Puriveness, the Asthma or Pthi-sick,

sick, as Artists do call it. Three causes there be of this infirmity, two whereof proceed from a cold formerly taken, and the third from another cause, as shall presently be demonstrated. The first is an exulceration of the *lungs*, which doth begin from a cold; the second by clinging or growing together of the *lights*, whose origin came also of cold; and the third is a dislocation of the *lungs*, and this last cometh by means of some violent or sudden act or motion of the body, or by some fall whereby the *lungs* were become dislocated, displaced, or turned in the *body* of the *Horse*, every of which do occasion *shortness of breath* by reason the *lungs* have not power sufficient (being the bellows of the body) to open, shut and ply at pleasure; and this is the cause why the *Horse* heaveth at the *ribs* and *flanks*, fetcheth his breath short and hot at the *nose*, wheefeth, and oft times reeleth when he is put to little that doth restrain his *wind*, and therefore so long as he is kept in the *Stable* at dry and hard meats, he heaveth more than when he is at grass, for if you do wash his Provender in Ale or Beer, and sprinkle his Hay with water, you shall perceive him to heave the less: but when he runneth at grass, he heaveth so little, as hardly to be seen, and the reason is, for that the *Horse* having naturally a very moist body, the cold which he hath taken doth so condense and make thick those *humours* which before were thin, which do (whilst they were *tenues*) pass most easily through the pores, but now they are become thick, viscous, and slimy, stopping the pores in such sort as hardly to be able to *breathe*, but with greet labour and no less pain, which doth provoke him to heave and lift, by reason that the *lungs*, *pores*, and *pipes* are so stopped and opprest, as not to be able to perform their function and natural office, for which nature hath created them, and besides those stoppings do constrain him to cough and labour so extremly, as to endanger oft times the breaking of a *vein*, from whence ensue many more inconveniences than this one: nevertheless you may have means to help his *wind*, but to recover him perfect and sound again, I dare not absolutely promise you, and if you be solicitous to understand more of this subject, to save both your own labour and mine, if you will be pleased to peruse Master *Blunde-vile*, and Master *Markham*, they are able to give you ample satisfaction.

SECT. 15. C.

Hippoph **W** *What means have you to help a Consumption?*
Hippoferus. We have two kinds of Consump-
 tions, the first is called the dry malady, the other the Con-
 sumption of the *flesh*: as touching the first, which commonly
 cometh at the first of a cold, taken, then it exulcerateth the
lungs, which in the beginning sendeth forth thin matter from
 the *nose*, but after, when it is grown more tough and viscous,
 it runneth no more, but causeth a maceration and leanness
 through the whole *body*, whereby he droopeth and pineth a-
 way, and albeit he eateth and drinketh, yet it is without ap-
 petite, his meat doing him but little good. The signs to know
 it are these: his *belly* will be gaunt, and he will be Hidebound,
 his *flesh* will consume almost to *Skin* and *bones*, if you strike him
 on the *belly* it will sound hollow, his hair will stare, neither
 will he cast it in due season, when other Horfes which be found
 will do, he will cough hollow and faintly: the Horfe that is
 troubled with this disease, well may he be kept for some time
 alive, but long he cannot be, for the malady is incurable, if it
 be too long let run: and therefore I leave him to Dogs and
 Crows in his languishing plight. The other *Consumption* is that
 of the *flesh*, which also beginneth of a cold formerly taken,
 which for want of remedy in time, occasioneth a general
 dislike and maceration throughout the whole body: it cometh
 from immoderate labour or travel by violent heat and cold
 taken upon it: it cometh also by riding him into the water after
 a greater heat given, and then set up presently negligently; as
 once it happened to a young *Nag* of good mettle and spirit, and
 of very great hope, the owner of which *Nag* delivered him to an
Ambler to pace, who whilest he had him in agitation, hearing
 Hounds abroad made into them, and rode him hard all day to the
 death of the Hare; then coming home hot and all in a sweat,
 near to the *Ambler's* house was a River with a Water-Mil, where
 he set him up to the skirts of the Saddle, and then brought him
 into the Stable where was neither cloth, litter, or any other thing
 to keep him warm, or wherewith to rub him, at which time he
 took so desperate a cold as never after to be cured: for in short
 time

Dry ma-
lady.

time after, he brought him to the *Gentleman* that did own him, when upon his coming home the *Nag* drooped, forsook his meat, and became very sick; the *Gentleman* desired me to endeavour the best I might for his recovery, for that he loved the *Nag* well. I ignorant of the cause of his Malady, went as I thought according to Art, I took *blood* from sundry *veins*, I gave him a *Suppository*, and after certain *Clysters*, which I assured me were most needful for him: all that I did administer wrought very kindly and well, but yet nothing could provoke in him an appetite, or be the means of any amendment, I then assayed him with frictions, and Cordials, but all was cast away: airing or ought else would not prevail; then I perswaded the *Gentleman* to turn him to grass, it being in the middle of *May*, and a very seasonable time, for I found him to be inwardly sound, he ran at grass about a moneth, but still grew weaker, and every day more meager than other, and at length he grew to be so much infeebled by continual languishing as that being down, he was not able to rise, but with help, in fine, shortly after the *Nag* dyed; then for my better experience I would needs have him opened, which being done; a sounder *body* in a Horse could not be seen, but I discovered the cause of the disease and death of this *Nag* in his *skin*, for it being taken from him you might most evidently see the *Fat* which did lie next unto his *belly*, *brisket*, *ribs*, and *sides*, to be so caked and hard, as that it not being dissolved, the *Nag* could never after enjoy himself, which caused him to waste and dwindle of his *flesh*, and languishing die; which so soon as I espied, I presently told the *Gentleman*, the owner of the *Nag*, that the *Ambler* had given him that Infirmary (the *Nag* being then very fat) and after in his heat put him into the *water*, which the owner examining found to be most true, as well from the report of honest neighbours who lived adjacent to the *Ambler*, as (after some small pressure from the ingenuous confession of the very *Ambler* himself. And this I think fit to bring you for an instance, to the end you may be the more careful in avoiding the like inconvenience, and be the better able to judge of a Malady of this nature. But now as touching the best cure for a *Consumption* of the *flesh* (albeit there be many) yet I can recommend but only this one, which both Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* have recorded, which is this, *viz.*

Take a Sheeps head with the wool on, cleave it, wash it very clean, and boil it in a gallon of fair water, until the flesh come from the bones, then strain the liquor from the flesh, and put it into the broath of refined loaf-Sugar half a pound, of Cinamon, conserve of Roses, conserve of Barberries, conserve of Cherries, of each three ounces: and give your horse of this broath a quart, every morning fasting blood warm; use this till four or more Sheeps heads be spent, and after every of these drinks let him be walked abroad, (if the weather be warm and not windy) otherwise walk him in some barn, or warm place, and let him fast two or three hours after, and let him not drink any cold water in fifteen days after at the least; but let his drink be either sweet Mashcs, or white water, and for his Diet let that be what himself best liketh, and that given by little at once and often; and by this means he may recover both *flesh* and strength again in reasonable time. * * * Nevertheless when he hath gotten *flesh*, depart with him so soon as may be, lest upon any hard travel he happen to relapse, as is most probable he may. With this Receipt I have recovered three Horses, whereof one was a Horse of a high price.

Hippophilus. *But tell me I pray you, were it amiss (for this disease) to take blood from him before you drench him?*

Hipposerus. Yea, that it were Sir very much amiss, for so to do, were certain death; for in cases of *Consumptions* you must take no blood at all, but rather labour to cherish the blood he hath; for his debility and feebleness will be such, as that he consuming so much in his *flesh*, you must rather endeavour to procure his strength than any way to hinder the same, which the loss of *blood* may most easily do. Neither must you be too basie in administering unto him *Purges*, but *Cordials*, as *Diapente*, *Diateffaron*, *Duke powder*, *Cordial powder*, and such like restoratives, also by giving him good meat, as good strengthening bread and heartning, well made, and of purpose for him, if he will eat bread, sometimes boiled Barley, and Oats, also boiled beans, and such like hearty meat, as will restore him, and to give him sometimes about mid day a quart of strong Ale, or Beer, is very good, and will greatly comfort him. And thus keeping him warm, feeding him, and ordeting him well, you may in time recover him again. * * * And this is the best counsel I can give you for this infirmity.

SECT.

SECT. 16. C.

Hippoph. **N**ow what say you to a Convulsion; How do you cure that?

Hippoferus. A Cramp and Convulsion is one and the same Malady, which is a violent contracting or drawing together of *Sinews* and *Veins*, and *Muscles*, as well through the whole *body*, as in any one member of the same; yet doth it not always apprehend or sieze the whole *body*, but takes one member or other, as sometimes it layeth hold upon the *Eye*, sometimes upon the *Tongue*, the *Jaws*, *Lips*, *Legs*, &c. which albeit it cometh by several means, yet principally it comes either through cold in the *body*, or else for want of *blood*, or lastly by overmuch *purging*. The signs to know this disease are most easie; for that *Horse* that is therewith troubled, will have that member (for the time the fit is upon it) so stiff that a man with the utmost of his strength is not able to stir the same, by reason that the *Sinews* and *Muscles* will be so much contracted as not possibly to bring the limb to its pristine state, but only by rubbing and chafing the limb or member with warm cloaths; and after the fit is over, it were very requisite to sweat him in the Stable in his cloaths, for two or three hours together; and if the malady be in the lower parts, as in the *Legs*, then let the member which is taken be wisped up with thumb bands of Hay made wet first, and after when the member is thus wisped, to cast thereon cold water, and after this his sweating, let his whole *body* (but especially the member taken) be anointed with the ointment of *Acopum* before mentioned in the second Book Chap 14. Sect. 1. A. and to give him some of it inwardly with sweet Sack, or Muscadine: and thus have I recovered sundry *Horses* perplexed with this disease, giving him two or three drinks after of *Diapente*, and then to keep him warm, and to continue him for some time with sweet mashes, or white water; but when you come to give him cold water again, let it be with exercise and airings after Sun rising, and before Sun set, the Sun shining, and when there is no wind, or other cold nipping weather. But if you have not of this *Acopum* in a readines, then apply this bath or Ointment to the grieved place or member, viz.

Convulsi-
on.

Take

Take Pimpernel a good armful, Primrose leaves, Camomile, Crowfoot, Mallows, Fennel, Rosemary, of each six handfuls, and fine upland Hay, cut and made about Midsummer, when the strength and heart of grass is at the best, a good quantity, put all these into a Lead or Cauldron, and fill up the Cauldron with fair water, and so let it steep eight and forty hours, then boil it until the herbs be soft, and *bathe* the grieved *member* therewith four days together, morning and evening, warmed; which done, apply some of these herbs to the places or limbs grieved, and keep them on with a thumb-band of Hay, wet in the said decoction, and every day about noon anoint the said visited *member* with Petroleum, and Nerval, and Oil of Spike mixed together, and keep him warm, give him good meat and mashes or white water, not only during the time of his cure, but a good time after, and let his airings be temperate, and his exercise moderate, and take heed of washing him after labour, for that probably was the cause of his *Convulsion*. * * *

Another.

Take strong white Wine vinegar, and Patch-grease, *alias* Peece-grease, of each like much, melt them upon a gentle fire, then with wheat flour make it into a Poultefs, and apply it to the grieved *member* good and warm, renewing it morning and evening, but before you do administer this charge (by holding a bar of iron, or a chafing dish of coals near) let him be anointed with Petroleum, Nerval, and Patch grease, and Oil of Spike, of each like much very well, and after bind on the charge all over the grieved place, dress him thus morning and evening, and give him moderate exercise and airings, and let him have mashes and white water to drink, and keep him warm. This is very good. * * *

Another.

First rake him, then give him the Clyster prescribed in Book 2. chap. 11. Sect. 8. Clyster 4. then let two men (on either side of the horse one) rub him well with soft cloaths all his *sides* and *limbs* over, especially the diseased *limb*, then cloth him up warm, and let him stand upon the trench four or five hours, to the end the Clyster may work the more kindly, give him meat and white water, and so feed him for that

that da But I must tell you that so soon as you have given him this Clyster, and before his friction give him this drink whereby to cleanse his *body*, viz.

Take of white Wine one pint, Aloes half an ounce; Agarrick half an ounce, all beaten very small, and infused in the Wine, putting thereto of the purest clarified Hogs grease one spoonful, or for want thereof (and which is much better) of sweet Butter six ounces, and give him this blood warm. The next day prepare in a readines this Unguent.

Take of strong Ale two quarts, and of black Sope two pound, boil them together till they look black like Tarr, and herewith anoint, rub, and chafe him all over that the Unguent may sink in: that done, cloath him up, and stuff him warm that he may sweat well, but stuff *head*, *neck*, and *breast* well, let him sweat thus two hours, then cool him by degrees, taking now a little from him, then a little, till he be brought to a good temper again, then keep him so, and about one of the clock at afternoon, give him a warm mash or white water, and then some Hay, and an hour after that Provender. Let not this drink be given him above once during his whole Cure, but his *Clysters*, *Sweats* and *Frictions*, till he be well; yet the *Clysters* not every day neither, and let his drink be white water, wherein Mallows have been boyled, unless sometimes you give him where with to comfort him a sweet Mash: but if he will not drink his white water boyled with Mallows, then let him have it without, and let his food be that which is sweet and very good. This did I never try, but two several *Ferriers* who lived more than 100 miles distant the one from the other gave me this Receipt *Verbatim*, without scarce altering one word, and they both protested unto me they have cured sundry *Horses* which have been sorely perplexed with this Disease.

Hippophilus. *What mean you by moderate and temperate airing of a Horse?*

Hipposerus. I do mean by moderate airing, that he be not Airing forth in airing too long, and by temperate airing, that a sick *Horse* if there be cause why he should be aired, it be not done too late in the Evening, nor too early in the Morning; for that such kind of airings will take too much from the Horse that

is feeble or sick: but in such cases, let him be walked to his airings in a warm Evening, an hour before Sun set at least, and in a Morning an hour after the Sun is up, especially if the wind be not too high, or blow too cold, and that the Sun shine warm: For by airing before Sun-rising, and after Sun set (like as is to be used with running and hunting *Horses*) will make a fat strong *Horse* both poor and lean, as not to have a Crow of *flesh* on his back, as the Proverb is, and so feeble as not to be able to arise being laied, and therefore give not such kind of airings to a *Horse* that is infirm; but those which I do term the temperate airings, will greatly comfort the spirits of your *Horse*, give him a very good appetite to his meat, and encrease his *flesh* and good liking; whereas the late airings will be (as I said before) very noxious to sick, diseased, or lean *Horses*.

SECT. 17. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you help a *Horse* that groweth costive or belly-bound?

Hippofertus. The nature of this disease is such as that the *Horse* that is therewith troubled, cannot discharge himself, but with great pain and trouble, his ordure coming from him both very dry and hard. *Horses* that are kept too much to hard, dry, and hot meats, are most incident to this Malady; sometimes it cometh by eating too much Provender, especially Beans, Pease, Tares, or Wheat, which albeit these Grains be more hearty than any other, yet they siccate and dry up the moisture, because they beget more heat and costiveness in the body, than other Grains do, yea and *wind* too, and bad *humours* causing obstructions; and sometimes this costiveness cometh to a *Horse* by reason he hath been kept to too spare a diet, as is usually seen in *Horses* in diet; for this hot and dry food doth suck up (like to a sponge) the *flegmatick* moisture of the body, giving way thereby that *choler* is become the more predominant, so that the meat he eateth cannot be so well digested. This is a Disease very perilous, and the origine of many maladies; and it is easily known by its symptoms. And you may cure him after this manner, *viz.*

Take

Take the decoction of Mallows one quart, Sallet Oil half a pint, or fresh Butter half a pound, *Benedicta laxativa*, one ounce, give him this blood warm clyster-wise, and then clap his tail to his tuel, and so cause him to keep it half an hour at least, being walked up and down, then set him up warm, and it will work, whereby he will empty himself: and in due time give him a sweet Mash, and after Hay, and so keep him to mashes or white water two or three days; but withal fail not to rake him before you administer your Clyster. *** This is a most excellent Receipt which you shall find in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 7. Clyster i. C.* *** There be many other good *Suppositories* and *Clysters*, which I have already and will hereafter set you down, which be very soveraign for this malady.

SECT. 18. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat disease is that we call the Crowne-scab? *Hipposferus*. This sorance is a scab or crust which groweth upon the coronet or top of the hoof, next unto the hair; it is a filthy stinking and cancerous disease, and not only troublesome, but painful to the beast, and it cometh commonly in the winter, whilst the Horse is in the Stable, like as doth the Scratches; and it is ingendred first by reason the Horse from a Colt, till he came to be handled, was for the most part kept in moist, wet, and cold grounds; for no Horses are inclinable unto this disease, but those that are bred up in such like grounds, The signs to know this malady is, that the hair will stare about the coronet, and become thin and brisly. The way to cure the same is,

First to wash and bathe the place well so far as the Scab or Sorance goeth, which is commonly round about the coronet, then shave or clip away the hair close, then

Take Turpentine, tried Hogs grease, and Honey, of each like much, a little of the powder of Bolearmoniak, the yolks of two Eggs, with as much wheat flower as will thicken it by working it to a salve, and apply this plaster-wise, with a linnen cloth to the sorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole: but let him not come into any wet during his cure. *** This is a very good one.

Another.

Take old chamber-ly, and set it upon the fire, and as the scum ariseth, take it off, then put to it of white salt as much as will suffice, and as the scum ariseth the second time, take it away; with this liquor wash and bathe the sorance three or four times a day till it be whole. *** Another very good, which I have often used.

Take soft Sope, tryed Hogs greafe, of each half a pound, Bolearmoniack, in fine powder so much as will suffice. Turpentine four ounces, make all these into one body, and so plaster-wise apply it to the place, binding it on with a clout that it come not off, renewing it dayly till it do leave running, then wash and bathe it in Vineger warmed, till the sorance be cleandried up. ***

SECT. 19. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you take away a Curb?

Hippoferus. This is a swelling a little beneath the *Elbow* of the *Hough* upon the great *Sinew* behind, and above the top of the *horne*, which caused the Horse to halt, especially when he beginneth to be hot, for by rest it paineth him the less: it cometh either by a strain, or by carrying some heavy burthen, or else he taketh it hereditarily from his *Sire* or *Dam*. The signs to know it is, by the long swelling in the place before mentioned. The cure is,

Carb. First, shave away the hair, then with an Inle or Filletting bind the *Hough* streight, above the joint, then with a small stick beat, rub, and chafe the *Curb*, like as you use to do in the cure of the *Splent*, then with a Fleam, or Knife peirce the skin through in two or three places, and so with your *Thumb* thrust forth, and crush out the corrupt blood, and after convey so deep as you can get into every hole the bigness of two barley corns of *Arsmuck*, and so having bound up the place, let it so remain by the space of four and twenty hours, then open the place, and anoint it every day once with molten Butter, till it be whole. ***

Another.

Another.

Take Wine Lees one pint, a porringer full of wheat flower, of Comin in fine powder half an ounce, mix all these well together, and being made warm upon the fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it every day once, by the space of three or four days together: and when you do perceive the swelling to be almost gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applyed warm, to the end, the charge may stick on the better, and then presently clap on Flocks, and let it so rest till of it self it fall away: and let him come in no wet or water by the space of twelve or fourteen days after, and he will be perfectly cured. * * *

Another.

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it near to the place till it become warm, then with your Fleam prick six or seven holes through the *Skin*, and anoint the Torance with Nerval, then take of Salt a Spoonful, and of Verdegrease a penny weight in fine powder, with the white of an Egg, let these be well incorporated together, then take a little Flax or Hurds, and wet it in this medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in short time it will be perfectly cured. * * * All these Receipts I have used, and I have found them to be right good.

C H A P. VII.

SECT. I. D.

Hippoph. **W**ell now that we have made an end of this Chapter, let us proceed to another: Tell me I pray you, how may a Dangerous Sicknes come to a Horse?

Hippoferus. Sir, that which you call *Dangerous Sicknes*, is of Divers natures, proceeding from sundry causes, having every one its distinct symptoms, and therefore do require several remedies; wherefore that you may the better know how and when

when any ſickneſs cometh, obſerve I pray but theſe four principles following, and you ſhall never err. *viz.*

1. Firſt, that all ſickneſs cometh either by heats in over violent exerciſe, as when the Horſe (*v. g.*) hath his greaſe molten, the *heart* overcharged, the *vital blood* forced from the inward parts, and the large *Pores* and *Orifices* of the *heart* ſo obſtruded and ſtopped, that the *Spirits* cannot return back to their proper places, ſo as the *Organs* of the *body* cannot rejoyce, but by this means the *body* muſt of neceſſity languish, founder, and mortifie.
2. Secondly, dangerous ſickneſs cometh alſo by colds, as by diſcreet, or negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exerciſe; and then it is the *head* perplexed, the *eyes* dulled, and pained, the roots of the *tongue* inflamed and ſwell'd the *lungs* with rhumes tickled and offended, occaſioning ſtrong, and laborious coughing, and the *Noſtrils* often diſtilling and pouring forth filthy and corrupt matter.
3. Thirdly, dangerous ſickneſs cometh alſo by ſurfeit of food, either by eating too much, or too little of what is good, or alſo of that which is not wholeſome; ſo as the firſt killeth, or at leaſt debilitateth the *Stomach*, oppreſſeth the *Heart*, and ſendeth up theſe evil fumes into the *Head*, by which are ingendred the *Stavers*, *Frenzies*, and other mortal diſeaſes; the ſecond putrifies the blood, and converts all its nutriment into corruption, from whence proceeds the *Yellows*, *Farcin*, *Feavers*, *Mainges*, and other ſuch like peſtilent leprous and loathſome diſeaſes, which ſuffocating the *heart*, and clogging the *Stomach*, dilates and ſpreads it ſelf univerſally over the whole *body*, leaving no *member* free, and confoundeth every *faculty*, and *member* thereof.
4. Fourthly and laſtly, dangerous ſickneſs comes alſo by *accident*, as when a *Horſe* (*v. g.*) receiveth ſome deep or perilous wound or hurt, either in his *body*, or elſewhere in ſome *vital* or dangerous part, by means whereof nature is ſo far offended, as that incontinently a general ſickneſs ſeizeth upon the *Horſe*, which (not in opportune time prevented) death ſuddenly enſueth; and theſe infirmities are called by the more expert *Ferriers*, *Accidental Feavers*: for if you be pleaſed to obſerve well, you ſhall find the *Horſe* ſometimes trembling, ſometimes ſweating, some-

sometimes cold, sometimes burning, but never in good temper. And thus much brietly of these four points or grounds, which be the occasion of most *dangerous sicknesses Accidental.*

Hippophilus. *What means hath a man to know the signs, whereby to distinguish these several sicknesses the one from the other?*

Hippoferus. Very easily Sir, for if sickness do proceed from the first of these four principles, to wit, from heats, then are the signs these, *viz.* The heaviness of his countenance, swellings of his Limbs, especially of his hinder legs, scowring and looseness of his body, in the beginning of sickness short, and hot breath, a loathing and forsaking of meat, &c.

If from the second, *viz.* cold, then the signs are, a dejected countenance, dulness or sleepiness of the eyes, Pus-trils or hard Knots under the *Chaule*, yea and many times inflamed Kernels and swellings so high as to the very roots of the ears, a rotten or moist inward hollow cough, he many times chewing betwixt his teeth, some loose, filthy, and flegmatick matter, immediately after his coughing, which in some case is not an evil sign, by reason that thereby the cold rotteth and goeth away; whereas on the contrary side for a *Horse* to cough clear and dry, doth demonstrate a dry cough, which hath long time lurked in his *body*, sorely festering and tormenting him inwardly, which is very difficile to cure, but at length discovers it self by reason of the *creatures* languishing and general falling away of his *flesh*; for his *belly* will be shrunk up, and when he drinketh much of the same, water will issue forth of his *nose*, his *eyes* will be either watry, or matrative, and run continually through pain which he hath in his *head*, procured by means of his cold, and his *hair* will be rough, and stairing &c.

From the third, to wit, from surfet by meat, either natural or unnatural; the signs be these, a dulness of the *head*, *eyes*, and *countenance*, yea, and that in such a violent manner, so as the *Horse* will be hardly able to lift up his *head* from the manger, a dull and dead *eye*, and sunk into his *head*, his *ears* prickt his upright, and the tops of them cold, as also his upper *lips* and *sheath*, his pace reeling and staggering, and (if the disease be far gone) he will be of a frantick and mad comportment, as by biting and gnawing the Rack and Manger, or whomsoever shall

1.

2.

Dangerous sickness how to know.

3.

shall come within his reach, and sometimes by biting of himself, and by beating his *head* against the wall and floor, and other such frantick postures and passions: but if the malady be not yet gotten into the *brain*, or do not occupy that place; but that it hath settled it self more intrinsically in the *body* or *heart*, then you shall perceive by the whites of the *eyes*, the *lips* and *tongue*, this Disease to be the plain Yellows, and if the disease be far gone, then will the Yellows be dispersed all over the whole *skin* and the *Horse* sweat in the morning when first you come to him, as if he had been sorely ridden, or had an *Hectick Fever*, and have a desire rather to be lying than to stand, and when he standeth, it will be with his *fore-legs* straddling the one from the other, and he will also have a looseness or scowring, especially if the *Horse* hath taken his surfeit by eating too many Oats, or other Provender, and by drinking suddenly after, which you shall the better know, because the *Horse* will in his *Ordure* void some of his Oats or other Grain whole, as not being digested, by reason that the cold water so suddenly taken, upon his over hasty eating (not being all chewed) will cool his *stomach*, and make him to swell; besides the *Horse* will have a general loathing and forsaking of his meat, which is likewise the common symptom of every kind of surfeit, and almost every degree of sickness.

4. The fourth and last ground or principle is, that if his infirmity and sickness do proceed from *accidental* means, then are the signs, a perplexed and troubled *body*, sometimes sweating at the roots of his *ears*, in the *flanks*, and behind the *shoulders*, against the *heart*, sometimes he will be taken with a trembling all his body over, and sometimes with a glowing and burning in his *vital parts*, as in the *temples* of his *head*, against his *heart*, on the inside of his *fore-legs*, next to the *body*, and on the inside of the *hinder-legs*, also his mouth will be dry and hot, his *tongue* will be subject to be inflamed and furred; *in fine*, he will have a loathing and aversion from meat: but only that he must eat, and a great drought and thirst, and a great longing to drink cold water, and when he hath drunk what him liketh, yet will he nevertheless desire to keep his mouth continually in the Water. Many other signs there be, whereby a man who is any thing at all skilful and cautelous, may by observing

disco-

discover when his *Horse* falleth into any infirmity and sickness, as when you do perceive that his countenance or postures do alter from their usual customs, then be you well assured, your *Horse* doth alter and decay in his health, Also you must observe his feeding, and how he doth eat, a. whether with a good appetite, or with a weak stomach, the first being good, the second unkindly and unhealthy, as also how he doth discharge or empty himself, and how his *Urine* and the colour of his *dung* or *ordure* do alter; which if his *dung* or *excrements* be pale, and full of grains, then is it good, but if blackish and dusky (according as I have before in its due place handled) then b. you confident, he hath much heat and driness in his body, by which means probably ensueth great and dangerous sickness: very many other signs of sickness there are, as the not casting or shedding of his hair, in its due and proper season, *hide bound*, costiveness, laxativeness, the clinging up of his *belly* to the *flanks*, continual dislike, drowsiness, dulness, and heaviness, when he hath wanted due ordering and feeding, &c. All which symptoms are so well known to every man, as that they need not be handled further in this place.

Hippophilus. *But now Hippoferus, since you have thus far discovered, what are the causes and signs of dangerous sickness, I would gladly you would shew me how I may either prevent sickness before it cometh, or cure the same at first appearance.*

Hippoferus. Sir, in this case two things are principally and diligently to be considered. The first is to prevent sickness before it shall approach, whereby it shall not offend at all, and the second is, to take it at the first appearance, and so to prevent and hinder it, whereby to prevent the danger thereof. As touching the first, the best way will be three or four days before you put forth your *Horse* to grass, to take blood from him, and the next day to give him the drink of *Diapente*, half an ounce, and a pint and half of sweet Sack, which you shall find mentioned in *lib. 2. sect sequent*, and so by degrees to abate his cloaths if he have had any, and it is also very good that when you do take blood from him, you do receive it in a *basin* or *bowl*, and therewith anoint his *back*, *loins*, *fillets*, *breast*, and all such like places about him with the same blood; for it is most wholesome, and doth comfort the body very much, cleanseth

i.

Dangerous sickness how to prevent.

the

the *skin*, and begetteth a general rejoycing throughout all the *vital parts* of the *Horse*. But if you have no intent to put him forth to grafs, and yet would prevent inward sickness, then fail not (when you have best means) to give him rest, take no *blood* from him at all, (unless you may justly suspect his *blood* not to be very good) but give him only a drink of *Diapente* or *Diateffaron*, for either of these are the greatest and best refiners and purifiers of the *blood* of any thing can be administr'd, and do cause the *Horse* to avoid all yellow *choleerick matter*, and all evil indigested *humours*, which may any way putrifie, inflame, or corrupt the *blood*. And observe moreover, that in administring of these drinks, if Sack or Muskadine be not at hand to be had, that then in the place of a pint and a half of either of these (which is the proportion I limit to a *Horse* of a strong, able, and corpulent *body*, but to a small or weak *Horse* one pint) you do take of good Ale or Beer, one quart, and the same quantity of *Diapente* or *Diateffaron* formerly prescribed; and if the Ale or Beer be made warm upon the fire, it will be the better. And thus much as touching the first point, to wit, the prevention of sickness before it come; that it may not offend your *Horse* at all. Now I come to the second point, *viz.*

2.
Dange-
rous sick-
ness how
to cure.

To take sickness at its first appearance, whereby to send it packing before it hath taken deep root in the *body* of the *Horse*, so that it shall never come to danger of life or limb, then thus in few words. You must be very cautelous and vigilant in observing your *Horse* well, and prye into him so narrowly, as to discover the least symptom of sickness, that may be able to peep out its head, which so soon as you shall descric, then presently (if need shall require) let him blood; and there several mornings together give him the drink of *Diapente*, and let him be kept warm, well rubbed, and have Mashes or white water during that time, and some days after, which will be a very good means for him to remain in perfect health, strength, and good estate of *body*; But if this *Diapente* or *Diateffaron* be not to be had on a sudden, then

Take Celendine half a handful, as well the roots as the leaves, well washed and picked, Wormwood and Rue of each half a handful, boil all these in strong Ale or Beer from a pottle to a quart, and then strain it well, and put into the liquor of
sweet

sweet Butter half a pound, and of ordinary Treacle two spoonfuls, and so give it him blood warm. *** and this is most effectual to the ends before recited.

SECT. 2. D.

Hippoph. **Y**ou speak very much of Diapente, giving it very great commendations. I pray how do you make the same.

Hippoferus. The Receipt of *Diapente* doth merit more *Encormiums* than I am able to give it, for that it is so precious and so-vereign a Powder for *Horses*, and it is compounded of five several simples, if it be rightly made. It is (I say) the most so-vereign thing which can be given to a *Horse* by way of drench, whereby to cure him of very many inward diseases. It is good against all infectious maladies, as Feavers of what nature soever, all sorts of Pestilences, or contagious colds, Coughs, wet or dry, Glanders, Surfeits, inflammations in the *blood*, or *liver*, Frenzies, Yellows; it purifieth, refineth, and purgeth the *blood* from all infection and corruption, it easeth the overflowing of the *gall*, and the working of the *spleen*; in a word, it cureth whatsoever diseases the *body* of the *Horse* may be inwardly inclined unto; and it is thus made, *viz.*

Take Aristolochia Rotunda, Gentiana, Baccalani, Myrrha Diapente. Eboraci, of each like much, let these be first pounded severally, and finely searced, and after weighed, so as the quantities may be just and even, not any one less, or more than another, and after so well mixed as may be possibly, and so put into a Gaily pot pressed as hard as may be done, and after so close stopped, as that no air can get into it; and thus you must make it and reserve it for your use. This must be administred to a Horse in Muskadine, if you drench him for a cold or Glaunders; If for other maladies, then in sweet Sack, and the quantity must be a pint and a half: but if the Sack or Muskadine be not to be had, then give it in strong Ale or Beer; and the quantity of this powder of *Diapente* must be two or three spoonfuls, unless to a small, sick, or feeble Horse, then the less quantity according as in your own judgment and reason, you shall

shall think to be moſt requiſite. *.* And thus is this ſo excellent powder of *Diapente* made, and ſuch are its vertues.

S E C T. 3. D.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make alſo your *Diateſſaron*?

Hippoſerus. This *confection* I have heard ſome call *Horſe Mithridate*, and ſome *Horſe-Treacle*, by reaſon of the inward virtue thereof, whereby to expel all poiſons and contagious annoyances, and to drive them and all manner of ſickneſs from the heart. And thus it is made, viz.

Diateſſaron.

Take firſt of the powder of *Diapente* two ounces, and put it into a clean ſtone Morter, that is not over-great, and put thereto of life or clarified Honey the like quantity, let the mortar be made hot againſt the fire before you do put in your powder or Honey, and then with a peſtil of wood work it, till it come to a very *Treacle*, which when you ſhall find to be ſufficiently oompounded, then take it forth, and put it into a clean gally pot or glaſs, and ſo keep it very cloſe ſtopped for your uſe, and when you have occaſion to make uſe of it.

Take of this *Confection* half an ounce, and diſſolve it in Muſcadine or ſweet Sack a pint and a half, and ſo give it your Horſeblood-warm, and as occaſion is proferred, add to it of *London treacle* one ounce, *.* This *Diateſſaron* is a *Confection* ſo ſovereign, being as I ſaid before, an *Antidote* againſt all infectious Diſeaſes, it is a preſent cure for all ſorts of feavers, or any other deſperate or dangerous ſickneſs, taking firſt *blood* from the *Horſe* if there be cauſe.

S E C T. 4. D.

Hippoph. **I**s there nothing good beſides theſe in caſe of deſperate and dangerous ſickneſs, ſuppoſing that neither *Diapente* nor *Diateſſaron* can be had?

Hippoſerus. Yea Sir, if neither of theſe may be gotten, and that you are fearful of the life of your *Horſe*, then do I counſel you thus.

Take

Take of the best Tar two Ounces, of Honey one ounce, black Sape two drams, and bay-salt a handfull, incorporate all these well together, then take two egg-shells, the crowns only being broken so as you may get forth the meat, and fill them up again with this medicine, and put them down his throat, and walk or gently ride him up and down a quarter of an hour or more warm cloathed; that done, set him up warm, and litter him well, and let his drink be either Mashcs or white water for four or five days after, but let him fast three hours after his medicine, and let his Hay and Provender be sweet and good. * * * This I have often experimented.

Desperate and dangerous sickness.

SECT. 5. D.

Hippoph. **I** Should think Hipposerus that for change, Bread were good to be given sometimes to a Horse: I pray what is your opinion thereof?

Hipposerus If you mean such ordinary Horse bread, which our common Bakers used to make for Horses (which is now long since out of date and use) I say it cannot be good for a Horse, by reason it was ill made, and the Materials whereof it was compounded, nourish very little, nay it hurteth a Horse much more than it can do him good, for it breedeth evil humours, and worse blood in his body, it being made of bran and chisel for the most part with a little course Rye-meal, to make it stick together, and so made up and kneaded with cold water, and after the outside of the Loaves or Roulcs are rowled in ground or rather bruised pease, which can in no case be good or wholesome. But if you have a desire to give your Horse bread, whereby he may the better endure labour, either in his travel or long journeys, or in Tilting, Hunting, or otherwise, then if you please to give him this bread, which I do here prescribe you, it will give him strength of body, be very much helpful to his wind, keep him from fainting in his labour and exercise, be it never so soar.

Take Wheat meal, Oat meal, and Beans all ground very small, of each one peck, Anniseeds four ounces, Gentiana, and Fenugreek, of each one ounce, Licoris two ounces, let all these be finely powdered, and searced, and add the whites and

Horse-bread. 1.

yolks of twenty new laid Eggs, well beaten together, and put to the other ingredients, and so much strong Ale as will knead it up, then make your Loaves like to Horse bread, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned; let not this bread be given to your Horse too new, and when you are to give it to him, let it be five or six mornings together without any Proxender: and thus you shall have him well *winded*, lusty, strong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retain his mettle to the last. Also when he is to be used or employed.

2. Take a thin linnen cloath, and put therein of white Sugarcandy one ounce, and as much powder of Anniseeds, sew up this to the Bit or Snaffle in a fine linnen cloath, when you are to take his back, first dipped in White or Claret wine, and so let him be exercised, or travelled with this in his *mouth*; this giveth moisture to his mouth and stomach, it expelleth inward heat and faintness from his *body* and *heart*, and causeth him to forget his labour and travel, for it doth revive his *vital spirits*. * * * Another kind of bread I will give you not much unlike the former, but somewhat better, and a greater cooler.

Take Wheat meal one peck, Rye meal, Beans and Oat meal, both ground very small, of each half a peck, Anniseeds, Licorice, of each one ounce, and white Sugarcandy four ounces, all in fine powder, the yolks and whites of twenty Eggs well beaten, and so much white-Wine as will knead it into a paste, make this into great loaves, bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this bread, but chip away the outside. * * *

Hippophilus *What is the reason you chuse of these grains, meal rather than flower, wherewith you make your bread?*

Hippoferus. Sir, I prefer Meal far before Flower, by reason Flower is much more hot and binding, and therefore the courser the bread is, the better it is for the Horse, and the more wholesome; and the reason why I do put Rye into my latter bread is, because Rye is a loosener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

SECT. 6. D.

Hippob. **W**hat is good to dissolve and melt the Tumours and hard swellings in the Legs, or other parts and members of the Horse?

Hippoferus. Tumours and swellings sometimes come by heats gotten with over hard riding, whereby the creature being overmuch heated, the grea^e falleth down, and setting in the Legs and other parts, doth grow dry and hard, this breedeth Splents, Spavens, Curbs, Ring-bones, and the like sorances, which in truth are none other things than the proper Tumours; besides it doth occasion other Knots and Swellings, which are to be cured after this manner, *viz.*

Take the roots of Mallows, or of Holliocks of each two ounces, of Linseed, and of Fenugreek, of each six ounces, of the fat or grea^e of Hens or Capons, or for want thereof, of Neats foot Oil, a wine quart, of Wax six ounces; steep the roots and seeds being bruised in a pottle of white-Wine, when it is scalding hot, for three days and three nights, and the fourth day boil them in the same liquor, and add thereto when you begin to set it upon the fire, your grea^e and wax, putting also thereunto of Rosin three ounces, then let all these boil together a good while, and at the taking it from the fire put thereto of Venice Turpentine two ounces, and so stir them together: and thus it is made fitting for your use, which being well reserved, will dissolve all hard swellings and Tumours, the Sorances being dayly anointed therewith. *** This I have by much practice found to be very good.

Dissolve
Tumours

Another.

Take white Lilly Roots, Hemlock, Mallows, Bears-foot, Scabeous, Cuccoe-pints, of each one handful, chop them small, and infuse them for twelves days together in white-Wine, and Sallet Oil, of each one pint, then take wax four ounces, and Bean flowr twelve spoonfuls, and so boil it, and after strain it, and bring it to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the Tumours and swelled parts, which being done, apply this plaster to the places.

Another.

Another.

Take Darnel and red Docks, of each two handfuls, bruise them, and then boil them in Wine and Sallet-Oil, of each one pint, and Bean flower four Spoonfuls, and put thereto of Affes, or Oxes dung, so much as will suffice, when it is boiled to a Poultefs, apply it *Plaster-wise* and use this every day once till it be well. *.* This is also very good.

Another.

Take Linfeed and pound it in a Morter, and of Fenugreek in powder, of each four ounces, Pitch and Rosin of each three ounces, Damask Rose leaves dried two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* six ounces, boil all these together, and when you are ready to take it from the fire, add thereto of Turpentine two ounces, Honey six ounces, and Sallet Oil so much as will suffice; and thus applying this Salve *Plaster-wise* to the place, it will mollifie any hard substance. *.* This I have often tryed, and have found it to be very good.

S E C T. 7. D.

Hippoph. **B**Ut Hipposerus, is there any cure for a sick Horse, whose infirmity is so desperate, and he so far spent, as to be generally judged to be almost at the point of death?

Hipposerus. Truly Sir, both my Master and my self have done such cures upon *Horses*, which have been so desperately sick as you speak of; insomuch as the beholders have pronounced sentence of death upon them, and the Owners would have been well content to have been satisfied, and well appayed with their skins and shooes: and I will shew you what our cure is.

First, open the neck vein, and let him bleed well, then two hours after his bleeding,

Desperate sickness.

Take of *Diateffaron* half an ounce, and give it him blood warm in Muskadine a pint, or Sack for want thereof, or else if they be not on the sudden to be gotten, then take good Ale or Beer, with the said quantity of *Diateffaron*, then having given it, walk him half an hour (if he be able) in the warm Sun, or if there be not Sun-shine, then in some warm Stable, or Barn, then set him up warm cloathed and littered, and let him be rubbed all over, as *Head, Pole, Neck, and Legs*, and especially

cially twixt the *Ears*, for that greatly easeth the pain in the *Head*, by reason it dissolveth and disperfeth the *humours*; at noon unbridle him, and offer him a little sweet Hay sprinkled with water, which if he shall refuse to eat, (as 'tis likely he will) then offer him so much bread as the quantity of a penny loaf, and let him eat it all if he will; but if he do refuse to eat thereof also, then give him one gallon of the strongest Alewort you can get of the first runnings so soon as it is *Mashed*, but let it not be over hot, and before barm be put unto it, give him this I say blood warm; but if that cannot be gotten, then provide him in a readines against the same hour, a sweet Mash, which when he hath taken, fume his head with *Olibanum*, *Storax*, and *Benjamin*, and then let him be rubbed again as before, and see him warm kept as is usual for sick *Horses* in *Physick*; and thus do for three days together in all points (*blood letting* excepted) for that must be once only (unless extraordinary cause do require the same) and assure your self your *Horse* will mend daily, and recover his health and strength in short time, and at three days end give him no more *Mashes*, but in their stead let him have white water only: If by means of this sickness he hath any *Pustils* or *Inflammations* risen under his *chaul*, then clip away the *hair*, and apply such things thereunto, as may ripen them, and bring them to a head; and after break them with *Shoomakers wax*, or other such like good things, and so let them run and heal at pleasure: Also if you do find your *Horse* to be costive by means of his sickness, as commonly *Horses* will be after *Physick*, then first rake him, and finding his dung to be hot, dry, and hard, give him the *Suppository* of a *Candle*, shewed you in *cap. 18, Sect. 27. Suppos. 1.* of this second Book. And this is the best *Suppository* can be given him in a case of this nature. * * * But if contrariwise you find him to have a strong and violent lax, or scowring upon him, whereby he purgeth over-much, and so continueth, then be you assured, that he hath something in his body where-with nature is offended, which you must labour to remove, and for remedy thereof.

Take of new milk one quart, and put to it of *Bean flower* two spoonfuls, and as much of the powder of *Bolearmoniack* searched, boil these until the milk thicken, and so blood-warm
give

give it your *Horse*, and in a morning or two fasting with a horn, and it will stay his looseness. * * * But if this do not, then shall you.

Take of red Wine one pint, or Tinto the like quantity, and put into it of *Bursa Pastoris* one handful, and of Tanners Bark in fine powder half a handful, the outside being first taken away, then boil it till the herb do begin to be soft, then strain it, and put thereto of Cinamon powder two spoonfuls, and so give it him blood warm one or two mornings, and this will infallibly stay his flux: and if you cannot get *Diapente*, or *Diateffaron*, then give him this drink.

Take of *Dragon-water* one pint, *London Treacle* one ounce, warm it till the Treacle be dissolved, and so give it him blood warm; give him this drink three mornings together; and for his drink otherwise, let him have sweet Mashs three mornings only, and after till he be well recovered, let him have no cold water by any means, but only white water, and through Gods assistance he will be soon restored to his former health. * * * These things I have often practised to good purpose.

SECT. 8. D.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is to be done to a Horse that droopeth, pinneth, or languisheth?*

Hippoferus. This Disease cometh by cold taken, or by some unnatural surfeit, by reason of over hard riding, or by being washed after an extream heat; the signs to know it is, he will feed, but with no appetite; neither will the meat he eateth digest well with him; for, give him Oats, and you shall find many of them come forth whole in his *ordure*, besides, he will be lank in the *belly* and *flanks*, and his *flesh* will fall away. The cure for such a malady, is first to

Drooping Take blood from him as well as in the *neck* as *spur veins* for that the *blood* is most corrupt and naught; the next rake him, and administer unto him the *Clyster* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6.* and *Sect. 7. Clyst. 3. C.* the next day after he hath taken his *Clyster*, give him this drink.

Take of new milk warmed as much as will suffice, the yolks of three new laid Eggs, of Pepper made into very fine powder a half

a half penny worth, of Anniseeds, Myrrha, Bay berries, Tur-marick powdered also, of each half a dram, of ordinary Treacle one penny worth and a little Saffron powdered, pound all the simples that are to be pounded, every one by it self, and mix them well with the relidue, and infuse them in the milk a whole night, and the next morning give it to the *Horse* blood warm, and after order him as you are accustomed to do to sick *Horses* in *Physick*; but let him have this drink five mornings together, and keep him to Mashes or white water, and if during that time you do not find his appetite to come unto him better than before, then let him rest four days, and at four days end give him this drink, *viz*.

Take Bay berries, Juniper berries, Aristoloch root, Ivory, Myrrha, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searce them, and let them be well mixed, boil of this powder two spoonfuls in strong Ale one quart, or Muscadine or Sack one pint, which is much better, adding thereto, when you take it from the fire, so much Pepper finely beaten, as will lie on a six pence, and so much grated Ginger as will lie upon a shilling, and so blood warm administer it to your *Horse*; then so soon as he hath taken this drink, trot him gently a mile or two upon fair ground, and then set him up warm, and cause him to sweat in the Stable an hour, but not too violent, and after cool him discreetly, and by degrees; and give him this drink and sweats three times, to wit, every other day, and after the taking of these three drinks: Take of burnt Sack one pint, and put to it of Arement two good lumps made first into fine powder, and give it your *Horse* two mornings, that is to say, having given it once, let him rest, and then give it him for the second drink four days after. * * * And thus have I cured sundry *Horses* of this infirmity.

S E C T. 9. D.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat cure have you for a Dropsie?*

Hipposerus. This disease hath an apparent ground more than conjectural; for it never cometh to be known by any symptoms, but only when the *Horse* falleth into dislike, and loseth the true and perfect colour of his hair and skin, and

when he loseth his *spirit, mettle, strength, cheerfulness,* and *stomach*: and therefore we see it cometh principally for want of good nourishment and digesture, which passeth into melancholy, it proceeding either from the *spleen*, or from the *liver*, or both, the *blood* being corrupted, and converted into a thin and watry substance, and sometimes it cometh of over much rest, for want of moderate exercise, which I do judge to be the more probable. Some *Ferriers* do affirm that there be three kinds of this disease, but I could never observe more than one only, which hath its origin either of *melancholy, blood, water,* or *wind*, but chiefly of water, by reason that the *belly* and *legs* of a *Horse* will swell, and that a *watry humour* runs betwixt the *skin* and the *flesh*; and if you lay your finger hard upon the swoln places, when you shall take it away, there will be in the place a pit for a small time after. The signs to know it are, that he will be swelled both *body* and *legs*, he will be also short breathed, lose his *stomach*, have in his *body* a continual drought, but yet when he cometh to drink, he will not drink much, but pudder long with his *Nose* in the water, he will be as if he had a general consumption over all his *body*, and in time he will pine and fall away to the very *bones*, and his *flanks* and *buttocks* will be dry, and his *hair* will shed and pill off with every rubbing, &c. The cure is, first let him *blood*, to take away the cold thin waterish, or wheyish *blood*; that better may come in its place, then cover him warm, and give him a sweat in the Stable; but if he will not be brought to sweat in the Stable (as many times it so falleth out) then exercise him abroad till he sweat, and bring him into the Stable again, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him be well rubbed, and give him Sallow leaves, or the leaves of the Elm tree green, Rie-blades, Sedge, or grals, to keep his *body* open, and when you do give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with water; then give him this drink:

Dropfic.

Take of Ale one gallon, set it upon the fire, and scum off the froth, as it riseth, then put into it of Wormwood, and of Rue the tender tops and leaves without stalks, carefully picked, of each a handful, and so boil the Ale to a quart, then take it off, and strain it well, and dissolve into it of the best *London* Treacle three ounces, and put also into it of long Pepper
and

and Grains both made into fine Powder, of each one ounce, then brew all these well together till it be but blood-warm, and so give it him to drink; then bathe and anoint the Legs that be swelled with Train-Oil twice a day, till the swelling go away; and give him Mashcs or white water, and feed him with such meat as he will best eat, changing his diet dayly, and give it him by little at once; and after some small time thus spent with him, if the weather be seasonable, turn him to grass, and he shall do well and become sound again. * * * This is all the Droisie I do know, howsoever many *Ferriers* do talk much of another kind which they do call the *Feltrick*, which is not truly a Droisie, but a disease distinct from the droisie, unto which young *Horses* are inclinable, that from *Foles* and *Colts* are bred in Fens, Moors, Marshes, moist and wet Grounds, and Commons, by means whereof they will swell exceedingly under the belly, and so soon as they do come to be handled and backed, whereby they may be provoked to sweat, they will presently have inflammations under the *Chaule*, run at *nose*, fall into an incurable Glanders, and in a word become inwardly rotten: the cure is,

- First with your fleam strike him in sundry places under the belly where the swelling is most rank, and so let the corrupt blood and filth issue forth, by the space of an hour or two, then wipe the places clean and dry, and then

1 Take of Buck-lie made very strong with chamber-lie and the Ashes of Ashen wood, and dissolve into the Lie of Unguentum Populeon, and Dialthea, of each one ounce, or as much as will suffice, according to the Lie you have; and being made good and hot, wash, bathe, and anoint the swelling therewith morning and evening till the swelling be quite gone, and after every dressing trot him up and down by the space of a quarter of an hour, which will be a very good means to cause the *humour* to dissolve, and so to depart the sooner and the better; and for two or three days give him fasting a quart of good Ale, and of *Diapente* two spoonfuls, which must be immediately before his trotting forth, after his dressing, and so set him up warm, and give him white water. * * * And thus have I cured many *Horses* of the *Feltrick*:"

SECT. 10. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to take dead flesh out of a sore?

Hipposerus. We use sundry sorts of corrosives wherewith to cleanse foul wounds, and to eat any dead, proud, and naughty flesh out of sores, to the end they may heal and carnifie the better and more kindly: but yet omitting all sorts of powders and other corrosives to corrode and eat away dead flesh, I will teach you a most precious Unguent, which will take off any dead, proud, spungy, or bad flesh, in the foot, or any other part of the body, be the wound never so deep or ulcerated, and it will not only take away all proud, dead, and naughty flesh, but it will also cleanse, and heal up the same very soundly in short space: And this Unguent is thus made and compounded.

dead
flesh.

Take of common Honey two ounces, Roach-alum, Verdigrase, and Vineger, of each one ounce, sublimat two drams; let all be made into fine powder, and boil it a few waumes, keeping it still stirring, and then take it from the fire, and keep it in a gally pot, stopped for your use. Apply this Unguent upon lint or fine hurds, to the Sorance once a day, and it cureth speedily, and soundly; but then observe that every day before you dress the sore, you cleanse, wash, and inject into the wound the water taught you in the next Sect. which I will shew you for a Puncture or deep wound. *** And this is an approved cure, and beyond all peradventure.

SECT. 11. D.

Hippoph. **W**ell shew me then, what is good for a Puncture or deep wound?

Hipposerus. If it be in the foot, or any other part of the body, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Imposthumation unbroken, scald it first with the medicine of red Tar, Hogs grease, Bay salt, and green Copporas described in lib. 2. chap. 16. Sect. 10. for the Poll-evil, then wash the wound with this water.

Take red Sage, Plantane, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble leaves, Rose-

Rosemary, Hyssop, and Honey-suckle leaves, of each one half ^{Deep} handful, boil them in white Wine one point, and as much of ^{wounds.} Smiths, or coletrough water, then add thereunto in the boiling, of common Honey one spoonful, and as much Alum as a Walnut, and a bright black piece of Sea-cole, the bigness of an Egg unbroken, then let this boil till the one moiety be consumed, then strain it hard, and wash the sorance therewith, and if the wound be deep, inject of this water with a syringe or squirt every day, when you dress him: and by this doing you shall cleanse the wound, take away all dead and bad flesh, and heal up the wound, both soundly and speedily. * * * This is a most approved Receipt.

S E C T. 12. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to be applyed to a desperate Strain?

Hipposernus. If it be so desperate an old Strain as that it be held incurable if it lieth in the *Shoulder* or other hidden and fleshy part of the body, or that the *Horse* have a *Fistula*, *Poll-evil*, or other inflammation, or swelling, then use but this one medicine, and it will cure the same, *viz.*

Take a large earthen vessel, or crock, of one, two, or three ^{Despe-} gallons more, and fill it almost to the top with *Asmart* and ^{rate} *Brooklime*, of each like much, and mix them well, then fill it ^{strains.} up to the top with old chamber-lie as can be gotten, so that all the herbs be quite covered and more, then stop it close with a board or some such like thing, and so keep it for your use, for it never can be too old; now when you have occasion to use this Medicine for any grief aforesaid, then take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto as well of the liquor, as of the herbs so much as shall suffice for your present use, and boil it well upon the fire. Then if it be for a strain in the *Shoulder*, you shall take an old boot, and cut off the foot, so as you may draw it over the *Horse foot* and bring it up above the *knee*, almost to the *Elbow* of the *Shoulder*, keeping the neather part of the boot as close and straight to the leg as may be, but the upper part which is to cover the *shoulder*, must be wide and spacious; then into this boot thrust all this mixture, so hot as the

the horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the *shoulder*, especially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boot, so fasten it to the *Mane*, and about his *Neck*, as that it may not by any means slip down, but keep constant and firm; and thus you must apply this Medicine to the place, till the grief depart; this is the most violent of all medicines, and fit for no creature but a horse to endure, yet in short time it will bring forth whatsoever evil matter lieth in the *joynts*: and if you have occasion to apply this to a *Fistula*, *Pell exil*, or any *Impostumation*, or swelling, then may you spare the boot, and only lay on the medicine in manner of a *Fultis*, and it will be sufficient. ** This is a very approved Receipt.

SECT. 13. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat means have you to dissolve Grease or Glut in a fat or ketty horse, after a strong ach or violent exercise?

Hippasenus. For a thing of this nature, I have seen this scowring administred, *viz.*

Dissolve
grease.

Take of sweet Sack one quart, and set it upon the fire, either in a Bason, or open Skillet, and when it is scalding hot, put into it of Rosin one ounce, made into very fine powder, then by degrees, a little after a little, convey it into the Sack, continually stirring it as you put it in, for fear of clotting, and when the Sack and it is very well incorporate, take it from the fire, and put into it of Sallet Oil half a pint, and so stir them well together, and as it cooleth, put also into it of brown Sugar-candy made into fine powder one ounce, and when it is only blood-warm, give it to your horse, so soon as he cometh from his exercise, and then being set up, let him be well rubbed, and cloathed warm, and well littered, and let him fast three hours after it, and let the Groom remain continually with him during these three hours, till you do give him meat, yea and an hour after, neither let your horse all that time stand still long, nor sleep, but be kept stirring, and moving, for that the medicine will by that means work the more kindly, and when you shall give this to your horse, you shall be you sure that neither the same day, nor the next day, give him

him new cold waters, but either a sweet mash or white water. This lowering of blood did not take effect, till by a riding to a strong, lusty, able hand, he was so violently had in agitation for a hunting match, but it was not so violently, as it made him so extremely sick, and more than twenty four hours after the taking thereof, that I never durst be so hardy, as to put the same in use: nevertheless the Creature did very well recover again, and won his match.

S E C T. 14. D.

Hippoph. **H**ow may a man come to know what are the diseases of the Liver?

Hippofertus. Assuredly Sir, the diseases of the Liver are many, but yet the true and certain grounds, how to discover them is beyond every Ferriers skill to compass; nevertheless, that there be many, and those several and distinct infirmities in the Liver, no man needs make doubt: for if the Liver be either too hot, or too drie, too moist, or too cold, it may easily be diseased, which must needs occur to the Horse, either by intemperate riding or labour, or by evil food, or by means of evil and corrupt humours, which do gather to the place, or by the overflowing of the Gall, or when Cholera is predominate, it being chiefly ingendred through heat, like as cold begetteth *Flegm*, which causeth the sickness and indisposition of the Liver, together with its pain and anguish, whence proceed inflammations, and Impostumations, stoppings, obstructions, knobs, yea, and very pernicious Ulcers, every of which do cause the general Consumption and disease thereof. If the disease of the Liver do proceed from any hot cause, it is more easie to be discovered, then if it came from any cold cause, for that it doth discover it self by these apparent signs, *viz.* He will be lean and fall away of his flesh, he will loath his meat, and that which he eateth doth him little or no good, for want of ready digestion, his ordure will be very offensive, his thirst great, and he will be very much subject to a looseness: whereas on the other side, if the Disease ariseth from any cold cause, you cannot discern it by any of these signs, for that he will be in very good liking and state of body, eat his meat with
a good

a good appetite, his excrements will have no evil favour when he dischargeth himself, he will drink orderly and temperately, neither will he be loose or costive; wherefore if it come of any cold cause, we must then endeavour to find out its symptoms. Now if a *horse* be diseased in his *Liver*, the infirmity must (I say) proceed from an Inflammation and impostumation, or from an Ulcer. If it come from a cold cause, it cannot be an inflammation, nor impostumation, for that these two do both come from a hot cause as all the learned do know full well, and therefore of necessity it must be an Ulcer, which proceedeth from a cold cause, and the signs to know it are, continual coldness of his *body*; his *hair* will stare, and he will be subject to great feebleness, faintness and debility of *body*, and the reason is for that the ulcerated matter doth diffuse throughout the whole *body* its evil vapours, which corrupteth and very much offendeth the heart in such wise, whereby to occasion and hasten the death of the poor Beast; it in time the malady be not discovered, and skillfully and by Art cured: I have treated sufficiently upon this subject, to wit, of the nature of this infirmity, and the signs how to know the same. And therefore I think it time we do go to the cure.

Disease of
the Liver.

So soon as you have discovered this disease, first let him *blood* on both sides the *neck*, the first day, and the next day let him *blood* in both the *spur-veins*, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Take Hyssop, Cows-lips-leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, *alias* Molin or Molet leaves, Harts-tongue, of each a handful; then take Gentiana, Aristolochia rotunda, Fenugreek, Enulacampana dried, and long Pepper, of each like much; so as when they be pounded and searced, you may have of each a spoonful; chop the herbs, and then mingle them with this powder, and put to it of life Honey one spoonful; then boil all these ingredients in a quart of strong Ale, until a moiety be consumed, and strain it well, and so give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm, and having made him fast three or four hours after this drink, give him Barly boiled; but if he shall refuse to eat thereof, by the reason the drink hath made him dry and thirsty, then give him a warm Mash, and after the next day Barly again; but let him not have this drink, but the day after he hath been let *blood* in the *spur-veins*, give him this drink three times, but let

let him alwaies rest three daies betwixt every drench, and give him white water for fifteen daies after his last drink, and let him every day be well rubbed, and this will cure him.

*** I have often made trial of this cure, and I have found it to be very good, and it is also singular for the *lungs*; but if you do suspect the *Liver* to be wasted, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Take of strong wort, either of Ale or Beer, and give it him to drink in a morning, having fasted all night from meat and drink; and three hours after he hath drunk his Wort, give him Oats baked in the Oven, and do thus for three or four days together, or longer, as you shall see cause, and he will be found again. *** But if you suspect his *liver* not to be very sound, then

Take a good root or two of Polypodium of the Oak, made very clean, and of Liverwort *alias* Mullet one handful, cut them very small, then take of Rubarb scraped or grated into fine powder, six peny weight, and three or four days in a moneth give it him in his provender early in the morning two or three hours before he drinketh, and let his drink be white water during his cure, and once in six months make trial of his *blood* by opening a *vein*, whether it be pure or corrupt, so as you take it from him accordingly, that is, the greater quantity if the same be bad, and the less if it be good, and administer help as cause shall require it. *** This is also a most sovereign Receipt.

SECT. 15. D.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have formerly delivered me many good Receipts for colds, but yet would I gladly have something which should be good for a Horse that runneth at the Nose.

Hippoferus. Very well Sir, I will therefore give you that which shall be very good, and which I have often proved. First then if you shall find your horse to have taken a cold, and therewith he runneth at the nose, whereby he may be in danger of a Glanders, let him bleed at the neck-vein well, then

Take of Assafetida, the quantity of a hazle nut, and dissolve it in a saucer full of white Wine vinegar, then take Lint or fine Hurds, and dip it into the medicine, and so stop it into the

Cold, or
running
at the
Nose.
ears

ears of the *horfe*, and with a needle and thred fitch up his *ears*, fo as the medicine get not forth the next day, take the dry mofs which groweth upon an old pale of a Park, or other pale, or upon the limbs of an old Oak, one handful or better, chop it fmall, and boil it in a pottle of new milk, together with a green root of Elecampane cut into thin and fmall flices, and fo let it boil till half the milk be confumed, then ftrain it, and prefs it throughly, and before it be cold, put into the milk a good piece of fweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle fo much as will fuffice, and fo give it him blood warm. * * * This is alfo good for the *head-ach*, Frenzy, Stavers, Pofe, Cold, Cough wet or dry, fhortnefs of breath, rotten *lungs*, Glanders, mourning of the Chine, Lax, loofenefs, Bloody-flux, or the like difeafes.

SECT. 16. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat may a man apply to a Horfe to caufe him to draw up his Yard?

Draw his
yard.

Hippoferus. This is a Difefe which cometh of weaknefs in the *back* or *kidneys*? either through over riding, or fome leap or ftrain, or by means of a cold; and fometimes it cometh by a terrible ftripe given him upon the *loins* againft the *kidnies*, or upon the *yard* it felf, or by wearinefs or tirednefs; the fign to know it, is by the unfeemly hanging of the *member*, and the cure is thus:

First wash and bathe all the *yard* and *sheath* with white Wine made warm, and after that anoint it with Oil of Rofes, and life honey mingled together, and fo put up the *yard* into the *sheath*, and with a foft boulfter of Canvas, keep it from falling down, and drefs him thus every day once till he be well, and let his *back* and *fillets* be kept warm, and anointed with Acopum, or if you have not Acopum, then apply this charge unto his *back* and *fillets*.

Take Bolearmoniack, the whites of Eggs, Wheat meal, Sanguis Draconis, Venice Turpentine, and ftrong white Wine vinegar, of each of thefe as much as will fuffice, mix them well, and charge his *back* therewith his *sheath* and his *stones*, and he fhall be well.

Another.

Another.

Take the Ashes of Ashen wood, the whitest, finest, and best burned, and searce them, one pound, of red-clay dried, and made into fine powder, half a pound, Bolearmoniack half an ounce powdered; boil all these in as much Verjuice of the Crab, as will make it liquid like pap, and with it, anoint his Yard, Sheath and Stones, morning and evening, and he shall be presently cured. *** This is special good.

SECT. 17. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to draw a thorn, stub, iron, splinter, nail, or what else out of the flesh of the Horse?

Hippoferus. If the stub, thorn, or whatsoever else it be, that is gotten into the flesh be so deep that you cannot come to it to pluck it forth with your fingers or pliers, then lay to the place a good quantity of black sope, and so let it lie all night, and in the morning it will make it so appear, as you may come to take hold of it with your instrument; but if it be gotten into the flesh so deep, as that the sope cannot do it, then must you open the flesh by the way of incision, so deep till you may come to take hold thereof with your instrument, and so pluck it forth, which done, heal up the wound with the Ointment taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. Sect. 4. G.* and so close it up, but be certain that you do heal it from the bottom, lest it break out again. *** This is the most certain way for this cure that I do know. Draw a thorn.

SECT. 18. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat good drink is to be given, whereby to preserve the Lungs?

Hippoferus. If you have no great occasion to fear horses lungs, your then you may administer to him in his Provender only such Powders as you shall find prescribed you already *lib. 2. cap. 2. Sect. 43.* but if you have just cause to suspect that his lungs may be rotten, fretized, or broken, then to heal or make them sound again, or at least to give him great ease, for you may know it by these signs, *viz. his flanks will beat when he cougheth,*

which he will often do, but principally when you give him riding or exercise, and the slower they beat, the older and more dangerous the disease is; he will also draw his *wind* short, he will groan oft, but most in lying down, and rising up, and be very fearful and loth to cough. The cure is,

Take Tartar made of white Wine Lees, which you may have of the *Apothecaries*, or if you please you may make it your self. (For it is none other thing than the thickest of the Lees of white Wine well dried and made into powder.) Take (I say) of this one ounce and a half, of hyslop and of Colts-foot, of each half a handful, of Hore-hound one handful, of Elecampane in fine powder, Anniseeds, and Licoris, of each one ounce, of brown Sugar-candy four ounces, boil all these together in good Ale one quart, and when it is half boiled, put into it of Hyslop water, and of Colts-foot water, both twice distilled, to take off their crudities, of each one pint, and so boil all again together, and then strain it, and give it your *Horse* blood warm.

*_*_* If your *Horse* hath been exercised, being foul, or having been in diet; then he hath been over-much used to Clysters, Drinks, Rakings, Purgations, Sweats, Vomits, and the like; give him this drink then, and you shall find it to be most sovereign for him, and the cleaner he is within, the better is its operation, and will work more kindly in his *body*; and at what times you are to Tilt, Hunt, Travel, or exercise him, give him but one pint of this drink in the morning fasting before his going forth, for it will so help his *breath*, whereby (through moderate exercise) he will be much the better able to go through with his work, than otherwise he could have done. *_*_* And this drink I have often proved, Also if you do find him to be either diseased, or sick in his *lungs*, or that they be any way fretized, then give him this drink.

Take of tried Hogs greasé two ounces, and of *Diapente* three spoonfuls, put these into a quart of water, wherein Barly hath been boiled till it burst, and warm it in the fire till the Hogs greasé be dissolved, and so blood warm give it your sick *Horse*, and three hours after give him of the Barly warm to eat, and either sweet mashes or white water to drink. *_*_* This was taught me by an *Italian Rider* in *Paris*, and I have often made use thereof, and have found it to be special good, howbeit for
the

the time it will cause him to be very sick, but have no fear, for it is right good for this malady.

Another.

Take Muskadine or sweet Sack one pint, life Honey three spoonfuls, Myrrh, Saffron, Cassia, and Cinamon, of each like much, make all these into fine powder, and mix two spoonfuls of this powder with your Muskadine and Honey, and give it him warm with a Horn, give him this drink fifteen daies together, continuing to give him Mashcs, and white water, and this is a most certain Cure. * * * But if you do find that his Lungs be rotten and impostumated, then

Take of the Juice of Purslain half a pint, and mix therewith of the Oil of Roses so much as will suffice, and put thereto a little *Tragantum* steeped before in Goats, Ewes, or Cows milk, and give him thereof to drink seven Mornings together: but this drink will but only ripen and break the Impostume, which you shall know to be done, by his exceeding stinking breath, then shall you give him in fine powder Cassia three ounces, and seven Raisins of the Sun stoned, boil these in Muskadine one pint, and blood warm give it him, and it will heal up his *lungs* again. * * * This is very good.

S E C T. 19. D.

Hippoph. **I**S there nothing to be given to a Horse wherewith to prevent diseases all the whole year?

Hippoferus. As touching the prevention of all diseases, I have spoken before, I think sufficiently, but yet I will teach you one thing, (for that you are desirous to learn, and learning is no burthen) which may be worth your notice, for I will keep no secret from you; sithence it is my Masters pleasure, I should dilate the utmost of my skill and Art.

First, therefore the spring of the year coming on, a time when new blood beginneth to come, and that ere long gras will be able to take heart, whereby the better to give nutriment to a horse; the first day of *April* open a vein in the *Neck*, to see the better how the blood is: if good, take the less, if bad, then the more: then from that day until the first of *May*, give him this which I shall prescribe you, and let him have it every

every day without fail, morning and evening during the whole month of *April*, from the first day to the last, which is before his turning out to grafs, or foyling, which should be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same also all the whole month of *October* (like as you must do in *April*) after you have taken him from grafs, about *Bartholomew-tide*,) and do as you before have been taught in all points. That which I prescribe is this.

Diseases
to pre-
vent.

Take a Bushel of old Rie, sweet and clean, well purged, or sifted from dust, stones, lome, feathers, cobwebs, or any such like filth, and put it into a clean iron pot, dry, and without water, I mean such an iron pot, in which usually flesh meat is boiled, for such a like vessel is best for this our purpose, it taketh least harm, and is much more wholesome than Brass, Copper, or any other metal: set this pot thus dry, and without water over the fire, and put into it your Bushel of Rie (for a less quantity you cannot well have) and as it beginneth to wax hot, keep the Rie with continual stirring, even from the bottom, without any intermission, until you have so parched the Rie that it becometh black and hard, which to be so, will ask good heat, and no less labour to stir it up and down in the pot, when you do find that the Rie is sufficiently parched, which you shall know by its blackness, dryness, and hardness, take it from the fire, and put it into some other clear and dry vessel, which so soon as it is cold, let the vessel be kept close stopped, and so kept for your use. Now when you are to use of this Rie, take two or three good handfuls of it, and let it be beaten to fine powder and given to your Horse mingled with his Provender, at every watering, morning and evening, or other times when you usually give him Oats; do this these two entire months of *April* and *October*, for that all men do hold, that in these two months the *blood* turneth and altereth, as we alter his diet from hard and dry meat, to grafs; and so likewise from grafs to dry meat; for this Rie thus parched and ordered, doth refine the *blood*, cool the *Liver*, and purgeth the *Spleen*, so as the whole structure of the *Body* is thereby the better eased and freed from all such bad and unnatural *humours*, which would otherwise make the *body* inclinable to sundry *Maladies* and *Diseases*, which this Rie preventeth; and therefore

if

if you be willing to keep your *Horse* sound, and free from Diseases, order him in these two moneths according as I have prescribed you, and you shall be secure. *** This I have oft made use of, and it is good.

SECT. 20. D.

Hippoph. **H**ave you any comfortable Drink to administer to an Horse that is very sick?

Hippoferus. I have heretofore shewed you divers, but yet I will give you one more.

Take of good white Wine one pint, of white Sugar-Candy, and of Cinamon, of each one ounce, of Cloves half an ounce, Saffron threedrams, of Sugar refined three ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take Mithridate two ounces, Honey of Roses four ounces, mix all these well together, and put it to the Wine, and make it blood warm over the fire, and so give it him, and now and then as he standeth upon the trench, let him chew upon the end of a Bulls pizel, some *Arman*, let him be cloathed and littered warm, and remain fasting upon the trench three hours, and after give him a sweet Mash or white water, and after order him as is usual for a sick Horse. *** This is one of the best preservative drinks that I know, and I have had great proof thereof.

Drink
comfor-
table.

SECT. 21. D.

Hippophilus.

What remedy have you for a dislocated joynt.

Hippoferus. Let it be first put into its right place, then in the binding up apply this plaster.

Take Wheats Bran, and Hogs greafe, of each as much as will suffice, make them into one body, and make thereof a plaster of Hurds, and so apply it to the place, and after bind and swathe it up, and the joynt and Member will be well again, having rest.

Disloca-
ted Joint,

SECT.

SECT. 22. D.

Hippophilus.

W *Hat disease is that is called Tranchaifons?*

Hippoferus. This term we have from the *French*, which is only a pain or griping in the *belly*, caused partly of wind, and partly of cold, and estfoons of both, and our English term is, the *Colick*, which is a most grievous pain, ingendring many infirmities, as I have before declared in its due place: notwithstanding because you have given me the *French* term, I will give you two or three *French* Receipts for the same disease, albeit I never did experiment any of them, yet I do hold them to be good.

Disease of
Tranchai-
fons or
the Co-
lick.

Take of Arquequamis one ounce, make it into juice, and put to it of white Wine one pint, and so give it to the *Horse*, which done, anoint his *privy members* with this Unguent, Take of Garlick unpilled, as much as will suffice, and stamp it well and mix with it of Sallet Oil as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods*, and it will both give him ease, and cause him to stale suddenly, by which means he will amend.

Another.

Take Cinque-foil half a handful or Pentaphyllon, beat and stamp it well, and moisten it with warm water, and so give it him to drink.

Another.

Take of the powder of Siliris Montana, D'quare, and of Cumin of each an-ounce, and put them into white wine one pint, and so give it him, then so soon as he hath taken this drink, trot him out for half an hour, a good round trot, especially up the hill, and after bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warm.

Another.

Another.

Take of Fenugreek, and of Cumin of each one ounce, make them into fine powder, and with white Wine a pint, give it him blood-warm, and trot him out as before.

S E C T. 23. D.

Hippophilus.

H *Ave you no way to dry sores?*
Hippoferus. Yea Sir, and I will give you some Receipts for that purpose. Take egg shels, and burn them almost black: take also the upper leather of old shooes, and burn them to a cole; take also a Charcole, quick-lime, and green Copperas, burned in a well nealed earthen pot, until it be red: take of each of these a like quantity; and beat them together to fine powder, and strew this powder upon the sore or galled place, and every time you dress the sore herewith, wash it well with strong Vinegar or Chamber-lie warmed. * * * But if it be an old ulcer, or cankerous sore, then take Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, Green Copperas, Brimstone, of each like much, Myrrh double as much as any of the former ingredients, beat all these by themselves to fine powder, and mix them well, then take of this powder and burn it upon a chafing-dish of coles, but be careful it flame not, then as the smoak or fume thereof ariseth, take of fine lint a good handful or two, and hold it over the said smoak or steam, so as it may receive all the said steam into the said lint; then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the lint into a box, pot, or glass, and be sure to stop it up so close, as that not the least air can possibly come into it (for the least air will deprive the lint of its virtue) and so keep it for your use; and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first wash the sore with new made chamber-lie warm, either as it cometh from the man, or else warmed upon the fire, then dry the sore again, and lastly lay some of this lint to the sore, and so make it up, and do this twice every day, and you shall find it to be a speedy and perfect cure. * * * But if you would dry up the scratches in the heels of your horse.

Dry up
Sores.

Lint
where-
with to
heal ul-
cers or
old sores.

Take then chamber-lic which is old made, or stale, and rock or roch Alum as much as will suffice, boil them together, and reserve it thus well boiled in a glais, or other clean vessel well stopp'd, then take of green Nettles the strongest, most angry, and keen, two handuls, and lay them thin upon some plate, or other broad thing, and so dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after household bread is drawn, then make it into powder very fine; this done, take of Pepper, and make it also into very fine powder, being finely searced, so as it may be of like quantity with the powder of Nettles, and so mix them well together, then keep this powder in a dry glais, close stopp'd, and when you may have occasion to use this powder, first wash the sore with the said liquor of Alum and Chamber-lic made blood warm, and so having purged, cleansed, and dryed the sorance well with a clean linnen cloath, strew and lay on your powder, and thus do after travel or exercise every day once during the time of his rest, and this will cure him throughly. * * * This cure I have often practised.

SECT. 24. D.

Hippophilus.

What disease is that which is called the Arraistes, and how it is cured?

Arraistes
or Rats
tails.

Hippoferus. This is also a *French Epitheton* which we call the Ratts tails being a kind of scratches, of this Disease I have spoken before in the Letter *A.* and therefore I will now leave entreating further thereof.

C H A P. VIII.

SECT. I. E.

Hippophilus.

WHat is to be given to a Horse that hath eaten a Taint? *Hippoferus*. A Taint is a kind of red worm, which many *Ferriers* will say can do a *Horse* no harm, but they are much mistaken, for I have known *Horses* to die with eating it; but if he have eaten a Taint, the signs will be, that he will be sick, and forsake his meat, and he will swell in all his *body*, also his *eyes* will so swell that you would think they would fall out of his *head*, he will draw in and out his *breath* very short, and his *tongue* and mouth will be very dry and hot, and peradventure blistered, but he will be easily cured, for so soon as you shall perceive him to forsake his meat, and that he doth begin to swell, then be you confident that he hath eaten some unwholsome thing, for this inconvenience seldom cometh to any *Horse*, but at grass only. The cure is,

Take of the Urine of man as it cometh warm from him, one pint, of bay salt one handful, stir these well together, and give it him with a horn, and after walk him up and down half an hour, and he is cured. *** This I have sundry times tried, and it is a certain cure. Eat a Taint.

SECT. 2. E.

Hippophilus.

WHat cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Feather? *Hippoferus*. This may be gotten as well in the Stable, as abroad at grass; in the stable through the negligence of the *Keeper* or *Groom*, in not dusting, shaking, or picking, and searching his Hay and Provender well, and by not looking narrowly, that no Feathers be among his Hay, Oats, or Provender, when he giveth him his meat, either in the Rack or Manger, he may also get a Feather at grass, as he

feedeth in a Meadow, or Pasture, where Swans, Geese, Ducks, Turkeys or other Poultry or Fowls do lye and feed: they in the Summer season, mowting, and mewing their Feathers, whereby the *Horse*, grazing and feeding in those places, may easily and unawares eat a Feather, which being taken into the *Wesand*, will stick fast there, which will so suffocate him, as that it will provoke him to cough so vehemently, as if his Heart would break, for it will stick so fast in his *Throat* or *Wesand*, as that he can neither swallow it down into his *Body*, nor cast it up at his *Mouth*. The cure is,

Put the chord of your Drenching Staff into his *teeth*, and hold his head upon high, then take of Verjuice or the crab one pint, and two new laid Eggs, and beat them together, shels and all, with the Verjuice, and so give it him with a Horn, and so soon as he hath swallowed the same give him a few small branches of favin, and this will carry away the feather into his *stomach*.
 *** This I have very oftentimes done, and made him well again.

SECT. 3. E.

Hippophilus.

BUt then what Cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Spider, which I take to be much more perilous to the life of the Horse?

Hipposernus. The signs to know this is like to that of the *Taint*, but only that he will smell much more, and this may befall him rather in Winter than in Summer: for which give him this drink.

Take Urine of a man newly made one quart, of Rue, Betony, Scabious, Pimpernel, Dragons, of each a like much, but in such a quantity, as in the whole, all will amount but only to one handful, chop these herbs together small, and let them boil together in the Urine a little, adding thereto of Bay salt, and Sallet-oyl of each one spoonful, and so give it him blood warm. *** Now if it be in Winter.

Take

Take of Urine one quart, Acrement one lamp, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Mithridate, of each one dram, English Saffron one scruple, Sallet-oyl one spoonful, Bezoarstone three grains, let these be set on the fire and give him blood warm, if it be in summer, turn him to grass, and if need be rake him, and then convey into his *Tuel* a ball of fresh Batter. But if it be in winter, let him be also raked, and give him of the blades of green Ric to a good quantity, and for his Provender, let it be for two or three meals, of scalded bran and Hempseed, and let his drink for three or four daies be white water. * * * These are all approved medicines.

S E C T. 4. E.

Hippophilus.

What is good for a blow on the Eye, whereby as well to save the Eye, as to asswage the swelling thereof?

Hippoferus. This needs no study as well to find out the means how it cometh, as the signs to know it, for both are apparent enough, there only remaineth to treat of the Cure

Shave off the hair from off and about the place swelled; having first well bathed it in warm water, then

Take the tenderest tops of Wormwood, Pellitory, and Branca-Ursina, of each half a handful, chop the herbs very small, and then beat them to an Ointment with old Boars greafe so much as will suffice, then put to it of live Honey and Wheat flour, of each one Spoonful, and of Linseed Oyl three Spoonfuls, boil these over the fire very well, keeping it with continual stirring, and when it is sufficiently well boiled, strain it into a Gally pot, and keep it stopped, and as occasion is offered, anoint the place swelled herewith. * * *

Eye a
stroak.

SECT. 5. E.

Hippophilus.

What remedy is to be had for the Eye that is charged with a Film, Pin and Web, or with Dragons, &c.

Hippoferus. These diseases in the Eye do come sometimes by means of some pain in the head, which causeth a Rheume to fall into the Eyes, and sometimes by means of Rheums themselves, which causing the Eyes to water, do ingender these diseases, and sometimes again it is occasioned by means of a fripe, or Hay-dust, or some hame which may be gotten into the Eye. I need not deliver you the signs whereby to know them, they are visible to the sight. The cure therefore is thus.

EyeFilm, Pin and Web, Dragons. Take Camfire of Sal-*Armoniacum*, or for want of either of these, white Sugar-Candy: any of these three being made into very fine powder, and blown into the Eye three times a day, are most sovereign to cure these diseases in the eyes of a Horse, but Sal-*Armoniacum* is the very best of them all. * * * But if a Film or Pearl, without a pin and Web do grow in the Eye, then take up both the two weeping veins first, which are under the Eyes; and then give a *Cauterize* to either place, viz. to open the skin all along to the very Eyes, and put into each of them, a quill cut in the middle, then oftentimes cleanse them, and comfort the places *Cauterized* or rowled with *Unguentum Populeum*, and wash the Eyes every day three times with eye-bright water, mingled with the juice of Smallage, and about fifteen days after, take away the quills, and after wash the eyes with cold Fountain water. Another. But if it be a Pin and Web, then

Pin and Web, Take Cuttle-bone, Tartar, Salt Gem, of each like much, make them all into pure fine powder, and with a quill blow of this fine powder well mixed, into his eye two or three times a day or oftner. * * * This have I tryed and found to be special good. But if it be a Pearl that the Horse hath in his Eye; then

Pearl or Film. Take the angriest tops of red Nettles, and stamp them well; and

and put them into a fine clean linnen Rag, then dip the Nettles as they be in the Rag, into Beer, but yet very slightly, and so wring forth the juice of the said Nettles, into some clean thing, which done; put to it a little Salt so much as will suffice, made first into fine powder, and when the Salt is dissolved, convey one drop of the Medicinæ into the grieved Eye, morning and Evening, and this will take away the Pearl, and the Eye will become as clear as the other. * * * This I have often tryed, and found it to do rare cures in this kind. Now for a Pin and Web, any of these ensuing will cure it.

Take the sword of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and dry it, and make it in powder, and blow thereof into the grieved Eye. * * * This is good.

Another.

Take the juice of ground-Ivy, *alias* Ale-hoof, Celendine, live honey, and womans milk, of each of these so much as will suffice, mix all these well, and put it into the eye of the Horse. * * *

Another.

Take the powder of the bottom of a brass pot, the outermost black being first taken off, and the next powder let be blown into the eye of the Horse, and it will help him.

Another.

Take the powder of burnt Alum, or of a black flint, or the powder of Ginger, either of these made into fine powder, and blown into the eye of the Horse, will help a Pin and Web.

Another.

Take Salt Arment, and make it into very fine powder, and put thereto of live honey and fresh butter, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these well together, and so convey
of

Haw.

of this medicine into the *eye* of the *horse*, and this will cure a Pin and Web. * * * But if there be a *Haw* in the *eye*, this every *Smith* can take away; nevertheless whereas all other *Ferriers*, that ever I saw work upon this disease, do use to take it away from the outside of the *eye*, I do take it away from that part which lieth next of all to the *eye*, and I do find my way to be much better, and a safer way, as well whereby to preserve the *sight* of the *eye*, as also the *wash*, and so soon as I have cut out the *haw*, I do use to wash the *eye* with white Wine, and the juice of Celandine mingled together, of each a like much; for this healeth the sorance, and keepeth the *eye* from rankling. Now I have oft times seen the *French Marishals* take up the *wash* of the *eye* with a Spanish needle, threded with a double brown thred, and to pluck forth the *haw* so far as he well can, then with a pair of lizers to clip off the *haw* so close as he can: But I cannot commend this manner of curing the *haw*, for by that means he cutteth away the *wash* of the *eye*, which indeed is the beauty of the *eye*, whereby the *horse* becometh *blear-eyed*, which is in him a very great eye-fore, he being thereby very much disfigured. * * *

Eye a
Canker.

Take Ale-hoof (which indeed is your true ground Ivy) and stamp it well in a mortar, and if it be very dry, then moisten it with a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye bright distilled, as much as will suffice, and so strain it into a clean glass, and therewith wash, bathe, anoint, and taint the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure it. * * * This is very good to cure a Canker, a Pin and Web, *blood shotten eyes*, or any such grief in and about the *eyes*; and I have often made use of this medicine. Another much better.

Take of stone Copperas (a thing known to few, and therefore very hard to get) but in the stead thereof you may use ordinary white Copperas, make it into fine powder as much as will suffice, (for I must leave the quantity to your own discretion) and put it into a small Pipkin, and put thereto so much very fair, clear, running, or Well-water, as will fill up the Pipkin to the very top, then set the Pipkin upon a few coals, and cause the water to boil, but so treatibly, as it may but only simmer, and as the scum doth arise, take it away with a feather, continuing so to do, till the scum do leave to arise any more, and
when

when you have sufficiently well boiled it, take it off, and let it stand till it be through cold, then pour away the clear from the bottom, which must be cast away, and the clear kept in a glass Vial, very close stopped and bound up for your use; which being thus carefully kept, the water will remain in its perfection long, yea a whole year together or longer. This water cureth almost all diseases in the *eyes*, as Films, Pearls, weeping eyes, Pin and Web, Dragons, Cataracts, dimness of sight, Blindness, Rheumatick, watry, stroak, blow or stripe of, or in the *eye*, and so consequently in many other cases of the like nature. * * * And of this water I have had great experience.

Another.

Take Sal-Armoniack, Lapis Tutia prepared, Sagira, called in Latine *Panicum Indicum*, and of Ginger, of each half an ounce, and of white Sugar-candy two ounces, powder all these, and searse them, and being well mixed, put this powder into a clean and dry box, very close stopped, and so keep it that no air come to it for your use, and when you have occasion to use of this powder, take a little thereof, and mix with it of the juice of ground-Ivy, *Alias* Ale hoof, as much as will suffice; and so twice a day convey thereof into his *eye* with a feather, till it be throughly whole. * * * This is a principal good receipt, I will give you another special good Receipt which will cure all manner of soar eyes.

Take the leaves and roots of Vervine, ordinary hony, and Roman Vitriol, of each like much; beat, bruise, and mix these together, and put it into a stillatory glass, and distil it by Balnea-Maria, with a gentle fire, and the water you take into your Receptacle, put into a Vial-glass, and keep it very close stopped, that no air get into it, and when you are to use of the same water, pour of it a little into a silver spoon, and mix with it of the fat of a Hen or Capon a small quantity, and therewith anoint the sore *eye* twice a day, and it will cure the same perfectly. * * * I will give you another Receipt which will take the film from off the *eye* albeit there be a very great and thick skin grown.

Take the gall of a Hare, and live honey, of each like much, put them together into a spoon, and hold the spoon over the fire, till the medicine be blood warm, and with a feather convey part

of this medicine into the *eye* of the *Horse*, and thus dress him morning and evening, and in short time it will take it quite away, so as the *eye* will become as bright and clear again as ever it was before. * * * This Receipt I do hold no whit inferiour to any of the former, for I have often made use thereof. But if your *Horse* have gotten a stripe in the *eye*, then let him *blood* in the *neck*, and in the *weeping vein*, on the same side where the stripe is, then

Eye a
charge.

Take white Rose water, and the white of a new laid egg, beat them very well together, then wash and bathe the *eye* well therewith, and lay round about it with your splatter this charge restraining. Take Mastick, Bolearmoniack, Sanguis Draconis, the white of a new laid egg, and white wine vineger of the strongest, beat first the hard simples to a very fine powder, and then searse them, and they must be beaten severally, then mix them altogether with the white of the egg, and the vineger so well wrought, as that the medicine come to a thick Ointment, and with this charge the forance round about the *eye*, and this will keep off the *humour*, and when that you find that the *eye* doth begin to amend, then wash and bathe the *eye* twice or thrice a day, or oftner, with cold Fountain or Well water, so fresh as it is taken or drawn out of the Well or Fountain, and if after you shall perceive that there doth grow a *film* or *skin* over the *eye*, then take it away by blowing or putting the powder of Camphire, or Sal *Armoniacum*, or white Sugar-Candy in fine powder, according as I have before prescribed you. * * * This is a most soveraign Receipt: Also if your *Horse* in his *eye* have gotten a stripe. Take of fresh butter wherein never came salt, the quantity of a Walnut, and put it into his *ear* on that side, where the stripe is, and it will help him.

Another.

Take Lentels or gray pease, and champ or chew them in your *mouth*, and then whilst they be in your *mouth*, blow and breathe into your *horses eye*, but not any of the Pease by any means; do this every day often, and a little after wash the fore *eye* with cold fountain water, till it be whole. * * * But yet I will teach you another Receipt which will take off a Pin and Web, Film, thickness, or any other foulness which may be in the *eye* whatsoever, whereof I have had great experience, and have done many rare cures in this kind, *viz.*

Take

Take the shels of seven or eight eggs, cleanse them from all manner of inward slime, and dry them well within, then lay those shels between two new Tiles, or old, so they be made very clean and free from Morter, and then lay them in the glowing embers, and cover them all over, and on every side with burning hot embers, and so let them lie a good space, until the moist substance be quite taken from them, then take them up and beat the shels to very fine powder, and searse the powder, then with a Goose-quill blow off this powder into your *Horses eye*; do this twice every day, and it is a certain cure. *** But if you do find the *eye* to be fed with any *Rheumatick humour*, or that it be inflamed, or that it hath gotten a bruise, stripe, or the like, then

Take of the purest and whitest refined loaf Sugar, one spoonful and an half, let it be made into fine powder, and searsed, or else of the best white Sugar-Candy (which is much better) the like quantity, let it be finely powdred and searsed, and mix it with so much May or sweet Butter (wherein never came Salt) as a Walnut, and add also to it so much of the former powder of Egg-shels as of Sugar-Candy, make these into one body, and bring it to a salve, and put thereof into the *horses eye*, morning, evening, and noon, and this will make the eye to be clear, sound, and whole again. *** This Unguent doth purge, cleanse, cool, and comfort the *eye* of the *horse*, and helpeth greatly his *sight*; make use of this, for it is very good. But if the *eyes* be inflamed, which you may easily know by the red strakes which will be in them, then

Take Thuris Masculi, the Marrow of a Lamb, Saffron, Cattlebone, of each one ounce, of the Oil of Roses one ounce, and the whites of ten new laid Eggs, beat and incorporate all these very well together, and then with a feather put some of this medicine into his *eyes* once every day. *** This receipt is very good, for I have had great trial thereof.

Another.

Take of white Starch made of Wheat, Frankincense, live-honey, of each as much as will suffice, make all these into one body, and with a feather apply it to the grieved *eye*.

Another.

If the inflammation be great, let him *blood* in both the *temple-veins*,

veins, and in the *weeping veins*, and then wash his *eyes* with *womans milk*, and *life honey* mingled together. * * *

Another for a *wart* or *spongy excretion* growing near to the *eye* of the *horse*, which commonly doth proceed from a condensed *flegm* that descendeth to the *eye*, which in time will cause the *eye* either to consume or to grow little, if it be not prevented, which must be done thus.

Eye a
wart.

Take *Roch Alum* and burn it, and then add unto it so much *white Copperas* unburnt, grind them together to very fine powder, then lay a little of this powder just upon the top of the *wart*, but take heed none get into the *eye*, for it is a strong corrosive, and will corrode; let the *Wart* be thus dressed once every day, and in a short time it will consume and eat it quite away never to come more. * * * But as touching *Lunatick eyes*, this word *Lunatick* is derived from the *Latine* word *Luna*, which signifieth the *Moon*, and the reason why this disease takes its denomination from thence, is, for that at certain times of the *Moon*, he will see well, and at other times a little, but then at other times no whit at all; and therefore this disease is called *lunatick*, and this kind of blindness we do hold to be the very worst of all other, but when he doth see, you may know it by the colour of his *eyes*, for then they will be dim and yellowish; but when he seeth nothing, then will they look fiery and red. This disease cometh sometimes naturally, taking it hereditarily, either from the *Stallion* his *Sire*, or from the *Mare* his *Dam*, by whom he was begotten, and soled: it cometh also sometimes by means of evil *humours* which descending from the *head* make their residence in and about the *eyes*, and these naughty *humours* are occasioned by the means of intemperate riding, drawing, or other laborious exercise, in which the poor *creature* hath been put to do more than nature was able to perform; wherefore by one of these waies the malady cometh; the cure is thus;

Lunatick
Eyes.

Take *Pitch*, *Rosin*, and *Mastick* of each like much, melt them together, and having beforehand provided in a readiness two round *Plasters* of *Leather*, the breadth of a 20 shilling piece of *Gold*, lay and spread the medicine hot upon these two *plasters*; and so hot as the *horse* can suffer them, apply them to his *temples*; causing them to stick fast to the *skin*, and let them there remain until they shall fall off of themselves, then rowel him on the
face

face just under his *eyes* with a very small *French Rowel* the breadth of a three-pence at the most, and let it be turned every day once, the space of 12 or 15 daies, then take forth the *Rowel*, and heal up the Orifice with the green ointment prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. sect. 4. G.* and this will undoubtedly very much help his sight. * * *

Another.

Shave away the *hair* the breadth of a shilling on either side of the *head* upon the *temple-veins*, and after apply to the place this charge.

Take *Taca-Mahaca*, and lay it upon those places which were shaven, and clap upon them flocks of the same colour, then make incision, and put in two *French Rowels*, as is shewed in the cure going before to bring down the peccant *humours*, and let the *eyes* be washed twice every day with the medicine before taught you, made of ground-Ivy, Honey, Celendine and womans milk, * * * This is very good for this disease, and this I can boldly commend unto you to be a very good medicine, for I have often used it. Now as touching *fore eyes* which must be cured by medicine, you must understand that the *eye* is the most delicate part of any one *member* in all the whole *body*, it is the *Torch* or *Candle* which doth give light to the whole *body*, it is the guide which doth usher the *body*, and to carry it from danger, so as it shall not at any time either stumble upon rocks or blocks, or fall into any precipice; wherefore great regard ought to be had how you do at any time tamper or meddle with this so choice a *member*, lest instead of endeavouring to cure one *fore eye*, you put out both, a thing often seen and known, and therefore the medicine which you apply to the *eyes* ought evermore to be new made, yea in a manner every day, for that when once they begin to grow stale, they become sharp and asper, perplexing the poor beast, much more than otherwise; neither are they so wholesome, nor so powerful, whereby to perform their office for which they were made and compounded. If you have a *horse* which is but weak of sight, the less *blood* you take from him, the better it will be for the continuance of his sight; for by taking much *blood* from a *horse* weakly sighted, will on a sudden cause him to become *stone blind*, like as by experience I have often known and observed. But now to conclude this Paragraph, because I have not yet handled one part appertaining

to

to a *fore eye*, viz. for an *eye* which by an *unlucky stroke* or *stripe* is broken and beaten out of the head of the *horse*. I will give you one only Receipt, which can never be parallel'd: to wit,

Take Alum, and first burn it in a fire pan, and after when it is burned so, put it upon the hot coles, and let it burn there till all the moisture be quite consumed, and it becometh as light as a feather, as white as snow, and so brittle as that it will break with every touch, unless it be very carefully handled, when it is so brittle as that it will run to Ashes with every small pressure, and that the tast of Alum remaineth little in the said Alum, then it is sufficiently burned; then take of this powder, as much as will suffice, and mix it with live-honey, and stir them well together, as that you do bring it to an Unguent, put of this every day morning and evening into his *eye* with a feather, and so hold your hand upon the eye a pretty while, that the medicine cannot suddenly get forth, and by thus doing in few daies it will be throughly cured, though the eye be utterly lost.

SECT. 6. E.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to take away a bony excretion, or a fleshy?

Hippoferus. This malady of a *bony excretion* cometh most commonly by the means of *causticks*, and burning *corrosives*, which be laid to wounds that are neer to the *bone*, as when the wound is either in the *leg*, or about the *pasterns*, for that the *flesh* being extremely burned and mortified by such *causticks* and *corrosives*, it doth cause an *excretion* to grow upon the *bone*, which by the unskilfulness of the *Ferrier* the wound is healed up, but the *excretion* doth remain still upon the *bone*, which becometh an *eyesore*, unless it be afterwards taken off, which occasioneth a new cure, and over and above it enforceth oft times the *Horse* to halt: sometimes again an *excretion* cometh by the *Horse* being galled with a lock or fetters, having been long continued upon the same *foot*, without changing or removing in time convenient. But howsoever it cometh, the cure is,

Excreti-
on.

Take Elecampane root newly gathered, and cleanse it from its earth, and wrap it up in a brown paper, then wet the paper, and so heat it in the hot embers, and so rost it as you would
do

do a Warden; when it is throughly well roasted, that it be like pap, so hot as your *horse* can suffer it (for it must not scald him) after you have with a stick (like as you do a splent) rubbed, knocked, and chafed the *excretion*, bind this roasted root close unto the place, and so let it remain on 24 hours before you remove it, and in two or three times thus dressing it, the *excretion* will rot and consume to nothing, and this will also take away a splent. * * * This is very good.

Another.

Take the oil of Origanum, and every morning and evening, or oftner, take a little upon the brawn of your thumb, and rub the place, and it will therewith in time consume, and quite take it away. * * * And this will also take away a splent.

S E C T. 7. E.

Hippoph. **W**hat will cure an *Impostume* in the ears of a Horse?

Hippocrates. This disease proceeds from sundry causes, as by means of some blow with some staff or other such like thing, which he receiveth about the *ears* or *poll*, or else by means of some hurt he may get by being wrung or galled with a new or hard hempen halter, especially if a knot be neer or upon the place; sometimes it comes also of a cold taken in the *head*, and sometimes again by means of bad and *peccant humours*, which residing in the *head*, do make their passage by the *ears*; it is easily known by its much burning, glowing, and swelling, and by the *horses* unwillingness to be touched and handled about that place; if it be an *impostumation*, then thus it must be cured.

Take Linseed and make it into fine powder, and wheat flower, of each half a pint, ordinary Honey one pint, tried Hogs-grease one pound, mix all these well, and warm them upon a fire, keeping them continually stirring: then take of this Ointment and spread it upon a linnen cloth, or upon a plaster of leather, the breadth of the swelling only, and apply it warm to the place, and renew it once every four and twenty hours, till it either do break or be so ripe as that it may be opened, which must be done downwards, that the corruption may easily issue away, then heal it up with this Salve.

Ears impostumated.

Take ..

Take Mel Rosarum, Sallet-oil, and ordinary Turpentine, of each two ounces, incorporate them well together, and make for the *horse* a biggin, or night-cap to keep on the medicine, taint the fore to the bottom dipped in this ointment, and apply also a plaster of the said stuff upon the fore, renewing it every day till it be whole and sound, *.* But if the Impostumation be broken of its own accord before you do perceive it, then

Take oil of Roses, Venice Turpentine, and common Honey, of each like much, mix them well together, and so making it blood warm upon a few embers or coles, dip some black Wooll in the Medicine, and so stop up that *ear* therewith which is grieved, renewing it once a day till it be whole. *.* But if the *ears* be only inflamed, then stop of this aforesaid medicine into them, and it will both ease him, and take away the inflammation. *.*

Another.

Take of Pepper made into fine powder dust, tried Hogs-grease one spoonful, the juice of Rue one handful, the strongest white Wine vinegar two spoonfuls, beat all these very well together, and if the Swelling, Impostumation: or Inflammation be either in the *Ears, Face, Head, or Throat* of the *Horse*, if you take either black Wooll, fine Lint, Flax, or Hurds, and dip it into this Medicine, and so stop both his *ears* therewith, and then stich them up, that it get not forth, renewing it once in two days, till the swelling be clean gone, your *horse* will be certainly cured. *.* But if the grief be in any other part of the *body*, then with this Unguent you shall anoint the grieved or swollen place once or twice a day till it depart. *.* But if the swelling be neer or about the *Cods* or privy parts, then

First, bathe the place well with cold water, and after being made dry again with a cloth, anoint it with the said Ointment every day once or twice, and you shall find it to be a present cure. *.* This also cureth the *Ulcer* and *Canker* in the *Nose*, and it is a sure Cure for the *Vives*. *.* I have often cured all these maladies with this Receipt.

C H A P. IX.

S E C T. I. F.

Hypophylus.

VV *What Cure have you for the Farcin?*
Hyppof. Of all the Diseases whereunto *Horses* are inclinable, this of the *Farcin* is the most loathsome, most stinking, and the most filthy, wherefore for the same I shall set you down many cures, but first I intend to discourse somewhat of its Nature, and how it comes to a *Horse*: This disease we here in *England* do for the most part call the *Farcy*, and (*Secundum vulgus*) it is called the *Fashions*, for so Master *Markham* doth stile it: But Master *Blundeveile*, the *Italians* and the *French*, do give it the name of *Farcin*, to which denomination I do the rather incline, by reason we take the said name from the *Italians*, and the *French*, for that truly I do find that to be the proper name of the said infirmity, derived from the word *Farcina*, which is a disease most infectious, poysonous, and dangerous, being never so little let alone, or neglected. It is a kind of creeping *Ulcer*, beginning with hard knots; and Pustils, and after dilating and spreading it self into branches (like a *Vine* or *Ivy*) doth not cease from running until such time as it hath visited every part and member of the *Body*, for *Quasi Cancer serpit*, it commonly beginning either in a vein, or near to some *Master-vein*, which feedeth and nourisheth the disease, that is the cause of its diffusion. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *Blood*, which heats and surfeits have occasioned in the *Body*; sometimes by hurts and wounds received, as also by some Cankerous and poysonous thing, as rusty Spurs, Snaffles, Bits, or the like; it is also taken from another *Horse*, which is fallen into the same disease, also by hewing one *Leg* against another, and being smitten with some staff whereon are hard knots, and fundry such like means and ways; it comes also to a horse by surfeits given him, which finding no other way of avoidance, layes hold of this disease, whereby the *Blood*, being overmuch heat, his grease molten, and his taking a sudden cold, which is most frequent after great heats, then growing in the *Body*, and especially in the *Blood*,

such obstructions, corruption, and putrefaction, not having any means to vent it self, or to avoid, or evacuate, but by this way only, by growing into Knots, Pustils, Ulcers, or the like, which be so contagious and infectious, so as if but any other *Horse* do but gnaw or lick with his teeth or tongue, upon the place infected, he will be assuredly within a short time after himself infected also; and when once a *Horse* is stricken or infected with this leprous malady, if he be not presently and skilfully cured, it is as infallible death to him, as if he had either his *throat* cut, or his *braines* beat out with a *Butchers Ax*; wherefore if in this case your *Horse* be visited with this sinistrous disease, I could wish you would carefully observe two things: The first is, that so soon as you do perceivè this malady to appear upon him, that you presently sequester him from his fellows, into some other Stable or stall by himself alone, for fear he might infect them, for that it is catching: And secondly to be very diligent in omitting no time or opportunity, in getting him administred unto for his Cure. The signs of this disease are so plain and familiar, as that it needeth no description. I will pass to the cure. To the end therefore you may go the more securely to work, whereby you may make it an able and perfect cure, especially if you find the Pustils to be malevolent, and greatly inflamed, then the first day let him *Blood* in or near to that *Master-vein*, which doth most feed and nourish the *Farcin*, then so soon as you have well *bloued* him, give him this purge, *viz.*

Take of Aloes, made into fine powder, one ounce, and a quantity of *London Treacle*, so much as will suffice, and of life honey so much as will suffice, mix these well together, and give it him in a morning fasting, and six hours after give him white water, neither needeth this *bloodying* him, or purgation, any way hinder him from being dressed for his disease, for that *blood-letting* doth not only hinder it from running any further for that time, and the Purge sendeth the disease from the *Heart*, to the end it may no way annoy that place. Wherefore for the perfecting of the cure,

Take of Oyl de-Bay two ounces, of Euforbium made into fine powder one ounce, incorporate both these well together, that they may become but one body, then search for the first origen, or spring where the first knots did begin, and so continue searching

searching till you find out the last, clip away the *hair* from off and about all these knots, and anoint them very well with this ointment once every three days: and after you have thus dressed him three times, if you do not find the *Farcins* to be killed, and that the knots do not dry up, then bathe the place three days together with the *stale* or *Urine* of a *Cow* or *Ox*, and with the herb called *Lions foot*, in *Latine* *Leonipodium*, both boiled together, and this will cure him. * * This medicine I never made use of but once only, and it cured the *Horse* unto which I did administer the same. * * Another.

The nine leaves of pot-herb called *Beets* of the smallest but foundest leaves, and nine grains of *Bay-salt*, beat these very well together to a *salve*, and in a morning before *Sun* rising put this medicine into both his *Ears* by equal portions, and put into them after it a little *wooll*, to keep in the medicine, and so stitch up his *Ears*, and let him stand so with meat and white water 24. hours at the least, then take forth the *wooll* and stuff, and he is cured. * * With this Receipt I have cured fundry *Horses*. Another. If your *Horse* have a *Farcin* in any of the four quarters of his *Body*, let him *Bleed* well in the *neck-vein* fasting, then

Take of *Arsenick* two ounces, and put it into a piece of new cloth, and bind it up with a piece of new *Pack-thred*, and fasten it unto the *mayne* of the *Horse*, this is to be thus administered, if the *Farcin* be only in the *fore-parts*; but if the disease be as well in the *hinder-parts* as in the *fore-parts*, then hang also the like quantity of *Arsenick* made up in a cloth like as was the former, and hang that also upon his *tail*, and the more you ride, work, or travel, and exercise him, the better it will be for his disease; to qualifie and rid the same; and the more spare his *diet* be, the sooner he is cured, provided you keep him warm in the *Stable*, and for some time you must give him white water: This cure I did never try, but it was taught me by great *Marshall of Paris*, one who had the repute of a very honest man, and a most skilful *Farrier*, who protested unto me, that he had perfectly cured many *Horses* with this receipt. Another.

Take white *Bran* prepared, like as you shall find prescribed you, *lib. 2. cap. 2. sect. 4. F.* how to make fat a *Horse*, and give it him a day before he is to be dressed, and let him eat it so hot as well he may: continue him to this diet three mornings

together, then let him *bleed* well in the *neck-vein*, but give him no Hay that day he *bleedeth*, but sweet Wheat straw only, neither let him either eat or drink in four hours after, and then let his drink be white water. And two days after his *bleeding*, you shall begin to give him again his Wheat-bran prepared as before, which shall continue for six days together, during which time you shall give him every evening with his Oats this powder and these roots following, *Viz.*

Take of Comin, of Linfeed, of Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, of each two ounces, quick brimstone four ounces, let all these be powdred, and mix them well, and give it at one time with his Oats, so much as you may put into an egg-shell, the meat being first taken out; let him be thus used daily by the space of six days. Those days being ended,

Take the root of Salerike, the root of Tassus-Barbatus, the root of Valerion, and the root of Lappaion, of each like much, chop them all very small, as herbs to the pot, which being thus well mixed, give them to the *Horse* without Oats if he will eat them, if not, then otherwise in Pills; and when you give him the roots, do not give him the aforefaid powder, and so continue him with these roots six days together, which six days ended, cause him to be *blooded* again on the other side of the *neck*, but then let him not *bleed* so much as before, and order him as before after the first *bleeding*: nor shall you give him either powder or roots, but let him be still kept warm, and have his ordinary allowance of meat; as well of Hay as of Oats, and then for six days after; every evening after he hath drunk white water, give him one evening of this powder with his Oates, and the next evening of these roots, and if you find not the *Farcin* to dry up to your mind, continue then this powder, and these roots for six days more, and those days being past, give him good Hay and good Oats, and not any longer the powder, or the roots: and thus following these directions punctually, your *Horse* shall be perfectly cured, and be brought into good state and health again, neither shall the relicks of the *Farcin* remain in any part of his body; and if there be any knots remaining, they shall break, purge, cleanse, heal, and dry up, the main cause being taken and purged away. Of this my self had never trial, by reason that many of the ingredients were not easily to be had. Another,

Take

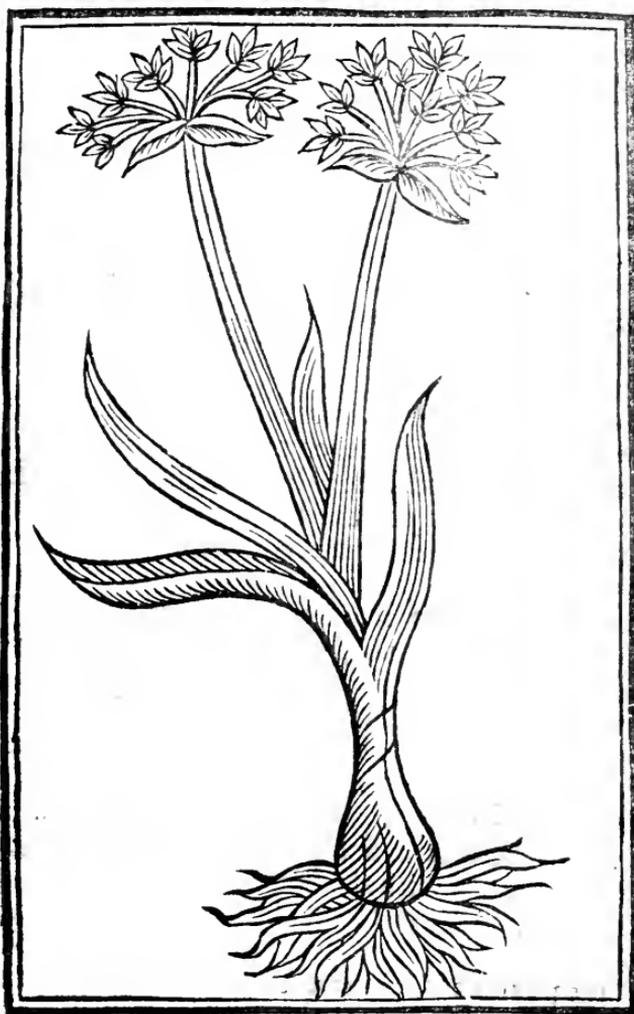
Take black Elebore, and add to the herb some of its juyce, put unto it old Boars-greafe, and boile it until the juyce be quite boiled into it, whereby to bring it to a perfect unguent, with which you shall anoint and rub the knots or bottoms of the *Farcin*; but before you do apply this unguent, let the *hair* be shaven or clipped away from and about the knots. * * * With this receipt I have cured only one *Horse*. Another:

Take five or six handfuls of four leaved Plantane with the roots of Bay salt one handful, and so much Comin as you may well take up, with your thumb and two fingers, beat the Comin to fine powder, and then stamp the Plantane and Salt well together with the Comin, and after they be well incorporate, let it steep and infuse 24. hours, then strain and wring it hard, and give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* in a morning fasting, but you must take *Blood* from him the day before, and he must stand upon the *Trench* six hours before you give him the said drink, and you must also put into his *ears* the juyce of Rue, and then stich up his *ears*, and so let him remain 24. hours; but if the malady shall continue (which I think it will not do) then must you let him *Blood* again, and give him the aforesaid drink. This I never tried, but he that taught me this, did assure me that there is no kind of *Farcin*, but this receipt will cure. Another.

Take first the herb *Moly*, it groweth in marish grounds, you must take 10, 11, 12, or 13. of the roots (or according to the strength, greatness or corpulency of your *Horse*) let your roots be in the number, or quantity. Take also of White wine one pint, then take of bay Salt one handful (which was never used) and put it into the White wine, then take of white Wine vinegar half a pint more or less, but first note, you must take the roots of the said *Moly*, and let it be gathered a day before you are to use it; you must only take the roots thereof, (and cast away the residue) for that they are most useful, and after you have so done, take these great roots and wash them clean, so as no filth do remain upon them, then take the said roots and bruise them, and steep them in the Wine with the Salt and Vinegar, in an earthen Pipkin, and stop it close that no air get into it, and let it infuse so a whole night, then about seven or eight of the clock in the morning, strain it, and give it him to drink, and after he hath taken it, cover him up warm, and let him be walked.

Molior
Abuaplan-
tique.

walked four hours; but above all things, you must not give him any Oats in four days after, but instead of Oats give him Wheat-bran prepared, and let his drink be white water; neither must you suffer him to go forth of the Stable in three or four days after at the soonest; and then after that you may ride or work him at your pleasure; neither must this drink be administered warm, but cold. * * * This is a known certain cure among the *Marishals* in *France*, by reason I could never find the herb *Moly* growing in *England*, I could never come to practise the cure here; nevertheless I will give you the description of this said herb *Moly*, and how it groweth, together with its true Effigies:



It groweth (as I said before) in marish and wet grounds, it resembleth the herb called Scolopendion, or Sorrel; only the leaf is bigger and broader, the flower is like to the white Violet, but less, about the bigness of a purple wild Violet, and it is as white as milk, it smelleth strong like Garlick: its root is little and round, which is most soveraign to heal the overtures of the *matriz*, being beaten with the ointment of Ireos, applied as a Peilure.

Pessure or Plaister; *Homer* saith that the god *Mercury* was the first Inventor and finder out of this plant, and the gods for the excellency thereof, named it *Moly*: see *Theophrastus*, *Paracelsus*, and *Dioscorides*.

Albeit that all these receipts be very good for the *Farcin*, yet are not all *Horses* cured with one and the same medicine; and most certain it is, that the most infallible way to cure the *Farcin*, is to give him the *fire*: in the practice not only of this cure, but of many others also, which are to be administr'd inwardly, it is greatly behooffull that the *Farrier* be mindful to observe the strength, age, quality, and ability of the *Horse* to which he is to administer, and accordingly to mix and apply his Ingredients. Another.

First let him bleed on both sides the *neck* and *spurveins*, and let him bleed a good quantity, then take Hemlock, Cinque-foil, or Five-leaved-grass, and Rue; of each like much; stamp them and strain them, and put the juyce thereof into his ears, and stitch them up 24. hours, and it is a certain cure, * * * For with this I have cured sundry *Horses*. Another.

First let him bleed well at the *neck vein*, then take Trifora Magna; and Aloes Platice, of each two ounces, and as much Barly-bran; mix all these, and dissolve it in oil-olive one pint, and put thereto of white Wine one pint, and then divide it into two parts or moities, and so give it two mornings together to your *horse* fasting with a horn, that is to say, either morning the one moiety: this done, take as much black Sope as a Walnut, half as much Arsenick in fine powder, and work them into one body to a salve, then with the point of a knife slit or open all the hard knots or pustils, and so put into every of them the quantity of two Barly-corns of this Salve, which will eat forth the cores, and kill the poysonous *humours*, then where you see the wounds, and places red and fair, heal them up by anointing them with fresh Butter molten and made hot, and then strew upon them the powder of Bolearmonack. * * * This is a most approved good receipt, and by my self often practised. Another.

Take the juice of Rue, and of Aqua-vitæ, of each one spoonful and a half, beat them well together, and by equal portions convey it into both his *ears*, then stitch them up for 24. hours space, and he is infallibly cured. * * * This is an excellent cure, and by me often used. Another.

First wash all the places that be raw or swelled with Chamberly, or white Wine vinegar warmed, then take of Salt one handfull, of white Wine Vinegar one pottle, of Allum dissolved in the Vinegar one ounce, of Verdigrease, and green Copperas, both made into fine powder, of each one pound; melt all these upon the fire, and every day wash the sores, and places swelled therewith warm, twice a day, morning and evening. This I never did experience, but it was commended unto me by a worthy Knight, who averred unto me, that he had cured therewith very many *Horses* of the *Farcin*. He also said that he had cured some with this Receipt following, *viz.*

Take Tar, Tallow, and Horse-dung, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these upon the fire, and anoint him therewith hot. Another,

Take Hempseed one pound, and bruise it well, then take Rue and Salt, of each one handfull, of the leaves of Mallows two handfulls, boyl all these in fair water, two quarts, unto a moyty, then strain it, and give it your *horse* blood-warm, give him of this two mornings, but not two mornings together, but let him stay one morning betwixt, then take a good quantity of Chamberly and Hemlock so much as will suffice, and boil them well, and wash the sores till they be quite whole and dried up, * * This is a very good receipt. Another,

Take the herb with the root called *Digitalis*, in English, *Sopaglove*, alias *Fox-glove*, a good quantity, bind it up into a fine linnen rag, and if the *Farcin* be in the forepart of the *Horse*, hang it upon the *main*, but if in the hinder part, then hang it upon the *tail*, and this will cure him. This I never did experience; But now I will give you for a close, the best and most certain cure for this disease, that I ever yet knew: and with which I have perfected more rare cures of this nature, then of all the residue before inculcated. And thus it is. Another,

Take of Rue, the leaves and tender tops only, without any the least stalks, a good handfull, first chop them small, and then stamp them in a Morter to a very ointment, when they are so well pownded, put thereunto of the purest white tryed Hogs grease one spoonful and so work them together to a perfect salve, or unguent; that done, stop into either *ear* this whole quantity by equal portions, and put a little wooll upon the medicine, to cause them to keep in the better, and so stitch up his *ears*, and

let him remain in the Stable four and twenty hours at the least, and then unstitch his *Ears*, and take forth the wooll, and either put him forth to Grass, or else if he be to be wrought, work him, for the more his labour is, and the more spare his diet is, the sooner he is cured. * * * This I commend- ed to you for the best and most certain cure I could ever meet with; for with this Reciept only, I assure you on my credit, I have cured more then 100 *Horses*, many of which were by other *Ferriers* holden for incurable, and sentenced to be food for *Hounds*. The *French* do also call the disease, *Mall de ver*.

S E C T. 2. F.

Hippoph. **I** Have heard of another kind of *Farcin* called the *Water-Farcin*.

Hippof. Truly Sir, in answer to this, I by observation of this disease do find, that there is but onely one kind, albeit I will not denie, but that some one may be more malignant then another, according to the constitution of the *Horse*, who is visited there- with, by reason that *Choler* may be in that *Horse* more predom- inant then in another *Horse*, of any of the other *Humours*, for then it cometh forth more dry; but if the *Horse* be naturally *Rheumatick*, then may it appear more watry and moist, and so of the residue; but still it is but one and the same infirmity, for more forts I could never find. But touching this watry *Farcin*, as you are pleased to term the same, the *French* giveth this name, *viz. la Louppe* which is in *English* the *Wolfe*, and they gave me the reason why they do so call it, to wit, be- cause it festreth the flesh, eating and corroding therein inward- ly, and it beginneth most commonly in the feet, rather then in any other member of the *Horse*. And for this disease a famous *French Marishal* of *Paris*, gave me this ensuing cure, but I never yet made tryal thereof, *viz.*

First wash the place, and shave away the hair, and search the place well with your finger, and let forth the corruption, but be sure you search it to the very bottom.

Take then *Horse-dung*, or *Goose-dung*, *Wine*, *Salt*, and *Vinegar*, of each so much as will suffice, and make thereof a *Salve*, and so *Plaister-wise* apply it to the sovrance, binding it on, and the third day open it; and dress it up again, as be- fore,

fore, and do this every third day till it be whole; but be sure you do every time you dress him, examine the very bottom. This he assured me to be a very perfect cure.

S E C T. 3. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the disease called the Flanks and how is it cured?

Hippof. This is when a Horse hath gotten a wrench, crick, stroke, or other grief in his Back, which is called of the French Farriers, *Flanks*; the cure is this,

First shave away the Hair from the place grieved, then lay on this charge.

Take Bolearmoniack, Cumfry, *alias* Consolida-Major, Galbanum, Sol Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his own Blood, Burgundy-Pitch, Mastick, Olibanum, of each like much, so much as will suffice; stamp and beat all these together, with Wheat-meal, Vinegar, and the whites of Eggs, so much as will suffice, and so make it into a charge, and therewith charge the place grieved, then clap upon the top all along the *Chine* and *Back* of the Horse, a Sheeps-skin, coming hot from the sheep, and change it every day, and at three or four days end he will be well, but let the charge lie upon the place until such time as it do fall away it self, and keep him warm.

S E C T. 4. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow may a man bring in few days his Horse to be fat, or at least in good liking, supposing him to be found?

Hippof. Sir, over-much riding and exercise will bring the fattest Horse that ever trod upon the Earth to become poor, bare, and lean, and so will too early, and too late airing, bad diet, evil keeping lingring after *Mares*, and spending up-^{Far Horse.} on them, lingring after Grass, and the like: But if your Horse be poor, bare, lean, and feeble, so that his Stomach be good to meat; I will give you a Receipt, which (if you do duely observe my rules, justly as I shall deliver them) you shall get him up into *Flesh* in twelve or fourteen days.

First therefore take *Blook* from him, if you do find it gross,

or Flegmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend; then instead of Oates in the morning, you shall give him Wheat-bran, prepared after this manner. Set over the fire a great Kettle, and fill it almost full with fair water, and so soon as it boileth, put in your Wheat-bran, and so let it boyl a quarter of an hour at the least; then take it off, and let it stand to cool, and about four or five in the morning give him of this Bran so hot as he can eat it, then for his drink give him of the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be kept covered and littered warm, but if it be Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, but temperate, and at night give him with his Oates also the quantity of what you may convey into an Egg-shel of this Powder following, with which you must continue him the space of eight days, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand that this Bran thus prepared, is the onely thing which drieth up his naughty, gross, and corrupt *Humours*, and doth the better prepare the body to assume lust, courage, strength and flesh, together with the help of the Powder, which is this,

Fat a lean
Horse.

Take of Comin, Fœnugreek, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimstone, six ounces, make all these into Powder, of this Powder, give him every night the quantity of an Egg-shel full, with his Oats, as I have before prescribed, but he must be first watered with white water which so soon as he hath drunk let his whole *Body* be rubbed, then cloathed, and littered, which being done, then give him a small sheaf of Wheat-straw, sweet, good, and well threshed into his Rack, and let him eat thereof by the space of an hour; which done, give him Oats mixed with his Powder, which when he hath eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure, remembering to keep him warm, but so as with moderation; and let him be also well rubbed, especially against the Hair, and by this doing you shall soon perceive him to mend exceedingly, but you must put also into his Oates, together with its former Powder of Nettle-seed two handfuls every time, for that is the thing which principally will cause him to Battle: It will also greatly avail his amendment, if he be aired every morning and evening an hour after Sun-rising, and an hour before Sun-set, if the wheather be warm, and the Sun do shine. * * And this I do assure you is the most exquisite course can be taken, whereby to
set

set up a lean *Horse*, and to make a poor *Horse* fat in little time, and with small charge.

S E C T. 5. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat help have you for the falling of the *Fundament*?

Hippof. This malady cometh to a *Horse* sometimes by cold, sometimes through weakness and meer poverty, and sometimes by means of a laxativeness and flux of *Blood*, when straining to expel, the *Horse* is not able, and by that means the *Fundament* cometh out, the cure is,

Take white Salt, made into very fine Powder, strew a little upon the Gut, then take a piece of Lard, and first having boiled Mallow-leaves till they be soft, take of these leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when it is sufficiently beaten, make it up like to a *Suppository*, and apply it to the place every day once, till it be whole. * * * This I have often tried.

Falling of the Fundament.

S E C T. 6. F.

Hippoph. **I** Should be very glad to know what you can say of Feavers?

Hippof. Sir, as touching *Feavers* in *Horses*, I say that they be as subject to them, as man is, as also that these *Feavers* are of several natures, which cannot be denied, which may most easily be distinguished and known, if you please diligently to observe. A *Feaver* cometh many times, either by intemperate riding or travel, or else through bad and unwholsome diet: And all *Feavers* for the most part have their source from these Effects, if you add thereunto evil Air.

S E C T. 7. F.

Hippoph. **W**hy Hypposferus, how do you define a *Feaver*? *Feaver* d^e
Hippof. I define it thus. A *Feaver* is an *fiend*.

unnatural and intemperate heat which beginneth at the Heart, dilateth it self through all the Arteries and Veins of the whole Body of the *Horse*, hindring all his natural motions: Howsoever some *Farriers* are pleased to make them more forts, then I will

will question their *Physical* and learned distinctions, for I could never conclude them but in a few, as *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, *Quartan*, and *Pestilent*, and yet all these be of one nature, albeit some more malignant then others be, onely a *Hectique Feaver* is of a different nature from the former, and so also a *Pestilent Feaver* may be. Now as touching *Feavers* which come in the Spring, Summer, Autumn, or Winter, I cannot see why they should be *Feavers* different in nature from these other, for there are not any of these, but may come to a *Horse* in any of these Seasons.

SECT. 8. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence do Feavers proceed?

Hippof. First, Sir you must understand that *Feavers*, are of two sorts, that is to say, Ordinary and Accidental. The ordinary Feavers are those that come of Surfeits, over-riding, and labour, unwholsome meat, as moist, raw, mouldy, and musty bread, corn, provender and hay, of what nature, sort or condition soever; but your Feavers *Accidental* come of some terrible Stroke or deep wound, bringing therewith insufferable pain, dolour, and grief to the poor beast; again, your *Ordinary* Feavers come oft times by the extream violent scorching of the Sun, but most commonly in the *Canicular* days, as when your *Horse* is abroad at Grass, where is either want of water, or having such as is neither good or wholsome, or else where is want of housing shelter to go into, or shady Trees to be under, and such kind of *Agues* do prove for the most part either *Hectick* or *Pestilent Feavers*, for by that means his *Blood* becometh inflamed, whereby the *Humour* of *Choler* is predominate. Now Sir, if you be pleased to observe strictly and carefully, you shall also find that Feavers do come many times also from a quite contrary cause; as from cold taken upon hard riding, or great labour, and by having at such time cold water given him to drink, or by washing or walking, having sweat much, or by being out too late in the crisp or putting in of the evening, or upon day breaking, especially near or among Fenny, Moorish, or Marish grounds, by reason that naughty vapours do arise from such kind of places. *Feavers* also do accrew to *Horses* when upon hard riding and great toyl, you give your *Horse* cold water drawn out of a Well, which being much colder

colder then either River or Pond water, doth more chill the the Horſe inwardly, whereby he is much more diſtempered, cauſing him to quake, and to ſhake exceedingly after his drink, which occaſioneth crudities, and an evil habit in the Stomach, which doth beget and ingenders an *Ague* or *Feaver*, wherefore after ſweating and great labour, I do adviſe you that whatſoever is given him, be firſt ſet over the fire to take away the chilneſs, whereby your Horſe may take the leſs damage, for that Feavers taken of this nature, do commonly prove peſtilent Feavers, whoſe nature is to infect all his fellows which are in the ſame Stable or Room with him, if he be not either ſpeedily removed from his conſorts, or elſe ſuddenly cured; and the reaſon hereof is moſt evident for that when as a Horſe hath been all the whole day travelled (eſpecially in the Winter) and brought into the Stable all hot and ſweating, when in ſhort time after his *Blood* and *Pores* begin to be ſettled, and to return to his Heart again, and to his Intrals, then if you give him cold water, you may inſtantly perceive him to fall into a formal quivering and ſhaking for a time, which being once paſſed over, you ſhall ſee him moſt palpably aſſume a moſt extreme and violent burning, and peradventure after falls into a moſt deſperate ſweating, whereby is moſt eaſie to be found in him a general diſtemperature throughout his whole Body, together with a formal and dangerous Feaver, wherefore if the Farrier be not more expert, it may ſtick cloſer unto him, and remain longer by him then a buſhel of Oats will do. But a Feaver which doth proceed either from the corruption of the *Blood*; or from the contagion of the *Air*, (according as I have before intimated) that I ſay is moſt frequent, albeit not ſo well known to all *Farriers*, and I am able to affirm thus much of theſe kind of *Feavers* out of mine own long experience, that they are of that extreme violence, and ſo malignant, and their Poiſon of that infinite force, as that if through their own violence they be not able of themſelves to bring the creature viſited therewith to his end; yet will theſe convert their Malice into other mortal maladies and diſeaſes, which will in time prove as noxious, to wit, into the *Yellows*, *Stavers*, *Glanders*, *Dropſie*, *Conſumption*, *Farcin*, &c. unto which a peſtilent Feaver is evermore the precursor: In ſo much as if the Farrier be not very ſkilful and cautelous in obſerving and knowing the true *Symptoms* of theſe

these kind of diseases, he may easily instead of labouring to effect a Cure, through his misprision, mis-carry therein.

S E C T. 9. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat be the true Symptoms or signs whereby to know a Feaver?

Feavers
how to
know.

Hippof. If you do observe him well, you shall perceive him so soon as he beginneth to be *Feavourish*, and when the fit first cometh upon him, to hang or hold down his *Head*, and if at first coming it beginneth with a cold fit, then will he quake and tremble, and when his cold fit is over, then will he glow and burn throughout his whole *Body*, his *Breath* will be very hot, and he will fetch his wind thick, and his *Nostrils* will be very open, and his *Flanks* will beat thick; he will forsake his meat, and reel oft times as he goeth, his *Eyes* will be swelled, they will water, and be matttractive, he will fall away and consume in his *Flesh*, his *Stones* will hang low, he will desire and offer oft to lie down, and yet being laid he will rise suddenly again, he will have great desire to drink, neither will he drink much, and yet you would think that all the water in the Thames would not be sufficient to quench his thirst, for he will covet evermore to keep his mouth in the water, albeit he will drink very little, and his sleep will go from him. And these are the best, most certain, and apparent *Symptoms* that I do know of a Feaver.

S E C T. 10. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat are the best cures for these ordinary Feavers?

Feaver Or-
dinary.

Hippof. If the Feaver be *Quotidian* and daily, then take the yolks of three new laid Eggs, and beat them well with seven spoonfuls of the best *Aqua vitæ*, and put unto it of ordinary Treacle, a spoonfull, and so making it blood warm over a few hot embers, give it him, and then take his back and ride him until he do begin to sweat, and then bring him into the Stable, and cloath, whisp, and litter him warm, so as he may sweat an hour in the Stable, but then cool him by degrees, and let him fast three hours after, but let him *Blood* before you drench him, in the neck and mouth, and give him white water or Masses. This drink would be given him one hour before the fit cometh. * * This is very good. Another, Take

Take white Wine one pint, of Aloes one ounce, made into fine Powder, of Agarick half an ounce, Anniseeds and Licorish, of each one dram in fine Powder, and add thereto of life Honey one spoonful, let all these be made warm upon the fire, and so give him blood warm: Then take his back, and ride him into a good sweat, and set him up, cloath him, litter him, and stop well his body, head, and breast, and let him sweat so two hours, then by degrees cool him, and when he is cold let him be well rubbed and cloathed up again warm, but not to sweat any more, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours after his sweating, then unbit him, and wash his tongue and mouth, with Alum, Vinegar, Sage, and water boiled together, that done, give him a little Wheat-straw to eat, and an hour after a Gallon of sweet, dry, and clean Oats, well dressed and sifted, but lay not all at once before him, but three or four handfuls at a time continuing thus to feed him, till he hath eaten up his whole Gallon, and at night give him a sweet Mash. And the next morning let him bleed at the neck and mouth, the quantity of a quart or less, if the blood be good, but if you do find the blood to be black, thick, hot, inflamed, yellowish, frothy, or otherwise evil coloured, take then from him two quarts, after keep him warm, and let him purge, and for four or five days after, give him either warm Mashs, or white water. * * This I have likewise known to be very good. Another,

First let him bleed in the Neck and Mouth, then,

Take Germander, Sallet-oyl, and life-Honey, of each four ounces, of Gum, Dragagant, dry red Roses, of each one ounce; put these pounded and chopped very small into good Ale a quart, and warm it, and so give it him, then ride him till he sweat, and order him as the former cure. Of this I did never make tryal. Another,

Take of the tops of Time one handful, boyl these in a quart of Beer, until the Time do begin to wax tender and soft, then strain it, and put to it, of brown Sugar-Candy, in Powder two penny-worth, Anniseeds in fine Powder one penny-worth, and two penny-worth of ordinary Treacle, when all these are well dissolved over the fire, give it your *Horse* blood warm, but you must remember that you do let him bleed before you do give him this drink, in the *Neck* and *Mouth*. * * This I have often tryed and found it right good. Another,

Take of strong Ale one quart, and of Worm-wood half a handful, long Pepper, Grains, and the Powder of dried Rue, of each one ounce, London Treacle two ounces, boyl them to a third part, then take it off, and strain it, that done put into it of brown Sugar-Candy in Powder, half an ounce, and so give it him blood warm. * * This at twice giving will certainly cure his Feaver. Another,

Take Stone-Crop, of the juyce thereof four Spoonful, put this juyce into strong Ale one quart, and so give it your Horfe, then let him be walked, (if the wind be not too cold and sharp) an hour, then fet him up, and cover him so as he may sweat an/hour, then cool him by degrees, and let him drink no cold water by any means, and let his Provender be good, old, dry, and well sifted Oats, but against the fit cometh (whether the Feaver be *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan*) let him be kept fasting, for the longer he is fasting, and more empty upon his sick days, the sooner will his Feaver leave him. * * This is a well approved Receipt, and let this suffice for ordinary *Feavers*, provided that when his fits be gone from him, and that he appeareth more lightsome and well, it will be very good and wholesome for him if you cause him to be had abroad, and walked warm covered, and aired in due time, in the warm Sun, and that will greatly comfort him, and revive his Spirits.

S E C T. II. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you now to the Feaver Hectick ?

Hippof. I say Sir, it is a most dangerous and mortal Feaver, and so malignant, as that if a skilful Farrier be not with him in time, it is certain death, and first it beginneth with a Consumption in the flesh, it proceedeth of a hot Humour ingendered first in the Stomach, which too much Physick hath occasioned, and by taking away of too much Blood from him in his youth without necessity ; wherefore it is a thing most perilous to take blood from young Horses upon every slight cause, and not to be over ready with Physick, but only in case of great necessity. The signs to know this Feaver from any other, are to look in his mouth, and to draw forth his Tongue, and you shall find both his Mouth and Tongue raw, and marvellous hot, and having little Appetite

to meat, his flesh will consume and waste, and seem loose, if you strike him with your hand upon the buttocks, the flesh thereof will quiver and quake, and he will be continually subject to quaking and shaking all his whole body over: Besides he will be very much inclined to sweat as he standeth in the Stable. The cure is, First to make this Lotion for his mouth.

Take of running water, or Well water two quarts, and put thereto of Sage, of Yarrow, of Ribwort, of Plantane, of Bramble-leaves, and of Honey-suckle-leaves, of each one handful, with common Honey one spoonful, boyl all these to the Consumption of one moiety, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Walnut of Allum, and two spoonful of Vinegar; when that is dissolved take it off, and drain the water from the herbs, or else slightly strain it, which water you shall keep for your use, and when you would wash his mouth therewith, fasten to a stick a ragg, and so wash his Mouth or Tongue twice or thrice a day, and this will make his Mouth well again; or else if you do wash his Mouth with the Sirrup of Mulberies, it is very wholesome and good. * * after give him this drink,

Take of Aloes one ounce powdred, of Garlick half an ounce, Anniseeds and Licorish of each half an ounce, make first your Aloes, Anniseeds, and Licorish into fine Powder, and after bruise your Garlick a little, putting thereto of Brown Sugar-Candy three ounces, in Powder, and add thereto of white Wine one pint; warm this, and so give it your Horse, then let him be ridden a little, and so set him up warm, and let him be set upon the Trench three hours before, and three hours after, and then either give him sweet Hay or green Corn, or the leaves of Sallowes, and towards night give him this drink every other day, for three mornings, continuing him with Mashs or white Water, and let his Oats be very well sifted, and in short time, he will do well again. * * With this Receipt I have cured fundry Horses, but then forget not to wash his Mouth daily with the aforesaid Lotion. But if in all these several Feavers you do find him either to be costive, and very hot in his body, then you may do well to administer that Clister prescribed you in lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 2. Clister 2. letter C.

S E C T. 12. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you now to a Feaver Pestilent?

Hippof. It is a disease most contagious, for it is so malignant, as that it will infect so many Horses as be in the Stable where he standeth, and it proceedeth from one of these two causes, *viz.* Either from an infectious Air, or from the Corruption of the Blood, inflamed by means of intemperate riding and exercise. The signs are these, the Horse will hang down his Head in the Manger, as if he slept, his Eyes will water much, and inflammations will arise at the roots of the Ears, as if he had the Vives.

Feaver Pe-
stilent.

The best cure I ever knew was this, with which I have cured many Horses, visited with a Pestilent Feaver; first let him bleed well in the Neck-vein, reserving the Blood in a clean Basin, which when it is cold will be very bad, and ill-coloured, then wash his Mouth with the Lotion specified in the precedent Section, Secondly apply to the Temple this Plaister.

Take of Camomile, of Goats-milk, of the juyce of Sage, of Sallet-oyl, of white Wine-vinegar of each four spoonful, of Red-rose-leaves dried one handful, which must be either of a Red-rose-cake, or otherwise Red-rose-leaves dried: Beat them all in a Morter till they become one body, and so thick as that you may spread it Plaister-wise upon a linnen cloath, then strew upon the Plaister two or three Nutmegs made into fine Powder, then make it good and hot, putting the back-side of the Plaister into a Pewter-dish, over a Chafing-dish of Coals, and so administer it warm to the Horse; for his drink let it be such water wherein have been boiled Violet-leaves, Mal-lows, and Sorrel; but if the fit do hold him violently, then

Take of London-Treacle three ounces, and dissolve it in Mus-kadine, one pint, and squeeze into it the juyce of two or three good Lemons, and so administer it with a horn: And this will presently put the fit from him, for the present. The Nature of this Feaver is so malignant, and so contagiously hot, as that it will furr the Mouth-exceedingly, and cause ulcers and sores to breed in the Mouth and Throat: Wherefore you shall do the more carefully, if every day you do look into his Mouth, and if you can perceive it to be furred, and clammy, then fail you

you not to wash his Mouth and Tongue, either with the Sirrup of Mulberries, or the Lotion water taught you in the precedent Section, and if through his great heat you do find your Horses body to be costive, then shall you administer this Clister.

Take of new Milk, and of Sallet-oyl, of each half a pint, and of the decoction of Mallows, and of Violets of each one pint, adding thereto of Sene one ounce, and of Century half an ounce, administer this Clister Blood-warm, and by thus ordering your Horse, you will infallibly cure him of his *Feaver Pestilent*; for I my self have cured many, and I never failed in any one. *.* Provided you do give him during the time of his Physick, continually morning and evening, either sweet Mashes, or white water, and be also dieted and ordered as is sitting for a Horse that is in Physick.

S E C T. 13. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat Disease is that which of some is called the Flying Worm?

Hippof. This malady is the same which the *French Marshals* do call *ver volant*, which we in *England* do call a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, and by reason it runneth up and down the body upon the skin, it is called by the name of the *Flying Worm*. It cometh by a heat in the Blood, whereby is ingendered a bilous, sharp or hot Humour which breedeth to a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, but most commonly it seizeth the Rump of the Horse, running down all along the joynts, till it get into the Tail, where I have known it to remain so long, until such time as it came to be a *Canker*: But yet sometimes again, it will seize some fleshy part of the body of a Horse, and so torment him through its continual itching, as that the Horse will (with frequent rubbing himself against Posts, Pales, Trees, and Walls. &c.) as also with his Teeth (if he can come to the place) bring away the hair, yea the skin and flesh also. And this disease many ignorant Farriers have taken to be nought else but the Louse of a Hog, which to kill or destroy, they only apply a little Sope; but I have often known it to prove another thing, *viz.* a formal *Ring-worm* or *Tetter*. It is easily known by the falling away of the hair, by reason of the Horses continual

continual scrubbing when it is in the fleshy part, but if it get into the joynt betwixt the top of the Rump and the Tail, then you shall know it by a kind of Scab, which you may with your finger feel, and if you scrape or pick it away, then will issue forth by little and little a kind of thin water, which being let long run, will in time run down into his Tail, from joynt to joynt, and there become a *Canker*, as I said before; wherefore to prevent this inconvenience, if the *Tetter* be in the joynt, then,

*Flying
Worm or
Tetter.*

Take of Precipitate two drams, and put it into a small Vial-glass with fair water, much more then will cover the Powder, keeping it close stopped, and with this water wash the place every day once, and it will infallibly cure it. And always so soon as you have dressed the sores with this water, and stopped it up again close, then shake it together, and so let it remain until its next dressing, which ought to be twice a day. But if the *Tetter* or *Ring-worm* be in any fleshy part, it is killed by bathing the sores in the juyce of Southern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each like much stamped together and strained, and so let the place be washed and bathed therewith every day once or twice, till it be whole. * * I have thus cured many *Tettters*.

SECT. 14. F.

Hippoph. **W**Hat is good to keep a Horse that he be not tormented with Flies?

Hippof. These *Flies* are a vermine which are more bold then welcome to a Horse, for what by their buzzing, their biting, and stinging, they do infinitely annoy and afflict the poor beast, causing him many times to falter in his travel, and lose his pace, and most commonly through his nodding and other evil postures and gestures, provoked by these *Flies*, they cause him so to fret, as to lose his rain and comely carriage of his body, whereby he hath been much undervalued; besides in his travel these *Flies* do so cause him to fret and fume, that he both overtoyleth himself in his way, causing him to sweat so much, as that he losing his mettle, hath many times thereby inflamed his Blood, and brought upon himself sickness, together with a distemperature throughout his whole body.

So likewise being at Grass, at what time the Fly is too busie, they do provoke him to run, and to scope about, by which means he being many times very full, it causeth crudities and raw digestions to arise in his Stomach, which breedeth Surfeits, or other maladies; wherefore for prevention thereof,

Take the leaves of Gourdes, Pumpions, or wild, or Garden Cucumbers, stamp them, and strain them, and with the juyce thereof wash your Horſe all over, and the Flies will not come nigh him. * * * Of this I have made often tryal. Another,

Take an Apple of Colliquintida, and slice or shred it into small pieces, and boyl it in Oyl de Bay, and so anoint your Horſe therewith, and the Flies will not approach him. * * * This is also good. Another,

Take Mallows, stamp and strain them, and with the juyce thereof wash your Horſe, and it will keep away the Flies. * * * This is an approved good thing also. Another,

Take Verdegreaſe made into very fine Powder, and boyl it in Vinegar, and wash him therewith, being careful that none get into his Eyes or Ears. * * * This is the best, and will last longest.

S E C T. 15. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to mollifie the Foot of a Horſe?

Hippof. If your Horſe hath been foundred, and that after being cured, his Soles and Hoofs do wax dry and hard, they be either shrunk, or in peril of shrinking, then first take off his shooes, and let him be pared somewhat close, but not too near; which done, with Bee-wax molten anoint the soles with the said molten Wax, with a Goose-feather, and so set on his shooes again, then three days after,

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe and Tarr of each four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each two ounces, melt and mix all these together, and first stop his Feet therewith, and after anoint the Coffin of the Hoofs good and thick with the same Receipt. And this is the best mollifier can be had in a cure of of this nature. * * * I have often used it.

Feet to mollifie.

S E C T. 16. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for the Fig in the Foot of a Horse?

Hippof. This disease is so called by reason of that naughty flesh which groweth upon the frush or heel, which is in likeness and shape of a Fig, from whence this malady and forrance taketh its denomination; and the French also give it the very same Epitheton, viz. *la Figne*, which signifieth a Fig. It cometh by means of some hurt which the Horse hath formerly received in his Foot (which was not well headed) by some nail, stub, thorn, bone, or stone, and oft times by some over-reach, upon the heel or frush. It is apparent to the Eye, and therefore needs no other Remonstrance. The cure is,

Fig in the Foot.

Cut away the Hoof, so as there may be a convenient space betwext the Sole and the Hoof, to the end the Fig may the more easily be cured, then put to the forrance a piece of Spunge which you must bind close upon the Fig, which will eat it off to the very root, then heal up the fore with the green Ointment taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. sect 4. G.* * * * This I have found good. Another,

Cut away the Fig close, either with your Incision-knife, or else burn it off with a hot Iron (which is the better way) and so lay unto it for two days after tryed Hogs-grease to take away the fire.

Take then the tops of the most angry young Nettles you can find, pound them very small, and so lay them upon a linnen cloath, just the bigness of the Fig, then take the Powder of Verdegrease, and strew it upon the chopped Nettles (which must be done before you lay it to the forrance) and so bind it upon the forrance, renewing it every day once, till the Hoof have recovered the fore. * * * This I do know to be a most certain cure, for it never did fail me.

S E C T. 17. F.

Hippoph. **B**ut now what say you to a Fistula? How do you cure that?

Hippof. A *Fistula* is a hollow Ulcer which maketh its way crooked,

crooked, proceeding oft times from naughty and malignant Humours; sometimes it is ingendred from some wound which hath not been well healed; sometimes it cometh by means of a stripe, which having been strongly laid on, that it hath bruised the flesh to the bone, whereby it hath putrified inwardly, and either brake forth of it self, or was opened by the Farrier; and thus it cometh to be a *Fistula*; sometimes it cometh by a wrench, or pinch with a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung by the Tree of a bad Saddle; and sometimes it gendreth of its own accord by the means of peccant and bilous Humours, which hath long lain lurking in the body of the Horse. The signs how to know it are so manifest, as that it needeth not an *Ecce*. The way how to cure it, is to search to the bottom either with a probe of lead, or else with some other thing which will bend and yield which way soever the concavity of the sorrhance leadeth it: And when you have found the bottom thereof, let it be opened down-wards, if it may possibly be done, to the end the Corruption may the better issue from the place; then taint for two or three days with tryed Hogs-grease, thereby to cause the hole to be wider, and then inject this water following:

Take of Sublimate, and of Preceptate, of each so much as will lie upon a three pence, of Allum, and of white Coperas, of each three ounces, burn all these in an Earthen-pot, but first rub the bottom with a little Oyl, that it may not burn there; this done burn them all together, then take of fair clear water, two quarts, boyl this water first by it self, and scum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire, and put in as much of this Powder as will lie upon a shilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you be desirous to make this water of more strength and efficacy, take then fair water, and Coltrough or Smiths water, of each like much, and of white Wine-Vinegar a third part, and with the ashes of Ashen-wood, make lye of them, with the water and Vinegar, and so make your water with this Powder and lye, and the former ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this water with a Syringe into the sorrhance, and in short time it will kill the *Fistula*, and heal it up.

D d d

* * This

. This is a most approved and infallible cure. Another, Take of the best Honey one pint, of Verdegrease one ounce, make it into fine Powder, and so boyl them together upon a soft fire, three quarters of an hour; that done, strain it into a Gally-pot, and so keep it for your use. *.* This is a most precious unguent wherewith to taint a Fistula or Poll-evil, for it goeth down to the bottom, it eateth away all dead and evil flesh, whereby to cause that the carnifying flesh may heal the better. *.* This I have often tryed. I have also another *Ægyptiacum*, which I make thus,

Take Honey one pint, white Wine-vinegar half a pint. Allum three ounces, and Verdegrease finely powdred, one ounce and half, boyl all these together till it be thick; this is a good *Ægyptiacum*. But if you desire to make it yet stronger, then put to these Ingredients of Mercury, Sublimate in fine Powder one ounce, and of Arsenick three scruples powdred also, and so boyl them with the former Ingredients. This last will kill any Fistula or old Ulcer whatsoever being dressed therewith: But the other which is made only of Vinegar, Allum, and Verdegrease, may be applyed to a Fistula in the mouth, without prejudice to the Horse. *.* Of both these I have made often tryal.

S E C T. 18. F.

Hippoph. **H** Ave you not some good water beside, wherewith to wash a Fistula or old sore?

Hippof. I can give you a most excellent water, which is this,

Take white Wine-vinegar four pints, of Camphire and of Mercury Precipitate, of each half an ounce, green Treacle three ounces, red Sage, Yarrow, and Ribwort, of each one handful, of Honey, and of Hogs-grease, of each half a pound, boyl all these together until the one half be consumed, and then strain it, and so wash and cleanse the wound with the Liquor. *.* This is special good. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take of Coaltrough water, four quarts, first boyl it by it self a good while, and scum it so long as any scum doth arise,

arise, then strain it through a fine cloath into a clean pot, and throw away the grounds, which will be black and naught, then wash the Postnet clean wherein it was boyled, and put in your water again. Then take of white Copperas, of Alum and of Verdegrease, of each one pound; beat them all into fine Powder, and put them into the water, and boyl them all together, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, which will soon be done, let it stand to settle a while, then pour the clear into a Glafs, being first cold enough, and so keep it for your use. But the Powder which remaineth in the bottom, you may dry and keep in a box by it self, for it will heal and dry up any sore or Ulcer. This water being injected with a Syringe of Wood or Pewter will cure any *Fistula* whatsoever, if it may come to the bottom thereof. * * Of this water I have had great experience. But you must understand that these several Waters will only kill the cankerous Humour of the *Fistula*, and therefore after the Malice thereof is quelled, you must heal up the forrance with the green Oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. sect. 4. G.* or else with some carnifying Salve or Unguent. Another,

Search the depth thereof with your Probe, as before is taught you, but be certain you find the bottom, then if the bottom be where you may boldly make Incision, do it, and that so wide as that you may thrust in your finger to feel whether any bone or gristle be perished, or whether there be any Spungy, loose, dead, or proud flesh therein, which must first be gotten forth either by Incision, or by corrosive; then take of common Honey four ounces, and of Verdigrease one ounce, made into fine Powder; boyl these together, keeping it always boyling, and stirring it till it look red, then with a taint of Hurds taint it to the bottom, and make it so fast that it get not forth, and renew the taint every day once, till it have done mattering, making the taint every day shorter then other, and sprinkle upon it a little slaked Lime. But if you cannot come to taint it to the bottom of the *Fistula*, then take strong Lye, Honey, Roch Allum, white Mercury, of each as much as will suffice, and boyl them together, and inject it to the very bottom of the *Fistula*,

stula, and it will kill it. *.* But if the *Fistula* be in the *Head*, then,

Take the juyce of Houfeleek, and dip a lock of black Wool into it, and put the same into his *Ears*, and so stich them up, renewing it every day till it be whole. This cure hath been highly recommended unto me, but I never had opportunity to make proof thereof. Another,

Take Roman Vitriol, Roch Allum, and Rose-Water, of each two ounces, boyl all these on a quick fire, till they come to be as hard as a stone, then beat it into fine Powder, and when you dress the sore, make a taint, which being dipped in Unguentum *Ægyptiacum*, rowl it then in this Powder, and so convey the end of your taint down to the very bottom of the *Fistula*. This is the best way also to cure a *Poll-evil*, and this Powder being laid upon an old sore, will both heal and dry it up. *.* This I only made twice proof of, the first time to a *Fistula*, and the second time to *Poll-evil*, both which cures I perfected. But now you would gladly know how to ripen and break a *Fistula*, wherefore

Take Brook-lime, Mallows, Arsmart, of each like much, boyl them in old Chamber-lye, till the herbs be very soft, and apply these herbs to the swelling, neither do you renew it in two or three days, and then it will both ripen and break any *Impostume*. *.* This I have often used, and found very good. And let this suffice for this malady.

SECT. 19. F.

Hippoph. **N**OW let us come to the Feet, How do you cure the Fetlock being hurt?

Hippof. If this forrance cometh by any wound, by the biting of a Dog, or by being cast in a Halter, then the best way to cure the same is,

Take unslaked Lime, and the yolk of an Egg, of each like much, beat them together to a Salve or Unguent, then mix therewith the juyce of one head of Garlick, and a little Soot, and with this anoint the sore till it be almost whole, then to *skin* the same.

Take Sallet-oyl, and oyl of Roses, of each one ounce,
of

of Turpentine three ounces, and of new wax one ounce, melt them all together, and add to it a fourth part of the Powder, Verdegrease, and herewith anointing the sore, in few days it will heal it, and skin it up very soundly. * * * This is a very well approved Receipt. But if your Horse have gotten a sore Foot by means of any channel nail, or bruise, by treading upon a stone, which after rankleth inwardly, or by other accident; then first raise the skin with your Cornet, and lay upon the sorrhance, Wheat-flower and Bores-grease well incorporate together, and dress him therewith twice a day, for two days together, and at the second days end,

Take the Powder of quick lime, Soap, and Tallow, and mix them well together, and for three days or more apply it to the place; dressing it also twice a day, then wash the wound with hot Vinegar, and put upon it Caprinel, till it be whole. This I never tryed. But if the Hoof do weep, or froath by sending forth thine, watry, or froathy Ruff; then open the top thereof with your Cornet, so as the wound may become hollow round about the extremities thereof, so far forth as that you may come to the Master vein, to break it in sunder; which done, let it bleed at pleasure what it will, and when the vein hath stanch'd, fill up the wound with Salt finely Powdred, then take Hurds and steep them in Vinegar, and so stop the wound therewith and bind thereto a cloath to keep the same from falling away, and it will cure it. * * * But if the Sole be Hoof, and in danger to fall away, draw it round 'twixt the Sole and the Hoof with your drawing Iron, and so take out the Sole quite, and then suffer his Foot to bleed well, then apply to it this Plaister.

Take the whites of Eggs, and beat them a little, and so laying them upon Hurds, apply it to the Foot, and bind it on, that it fall not off, and let it remain on so by the space of two days, which ended open it, and wash the Foot with strong Vinegar warmed, and then fill the Sole with the Powder of Salt and Tartar mixed together, and so bind it up with the Hurds steeped in strong Vinegar, and thus dress it till it be whole. These two Receipts were taught me by a famous Farrier of Paris in France, but I never had occasion to make use of it, howbeit I esteem them to be very good. But if
your

your Horfe be foundred in the Feet, and that he hath not been foundred above four days then with this enfuing Receipt you may eafily fet him upright, and make him found again in four days more. The Cure is this,

*Foundring
in the Feet.*

First, let him bleed in the Neck, Breast, and Spur-veins, and take from him of blood two quarts, which you muft receive in a Bafon, or other clean Veffel, with which make this Charge as followeth,

Take the blood, and put into it eight new laid Eggs, shells and all, beat them well with the blood, put to it of Bolearmoniack in fine Powder half a pound, ftrong white Wine-Vinegar one pint, Sanguis Draconis three ounces, in fine Powder, make this up with Wheat-meal good and thick, fo much as will fuffice, with this charge his Back, Reins, Breast, Thighes, Fetlocks, and Soles, and fpread two cloaths Plafter-wife, good and thick and apply them to the Coffin of his Hoofs and bind the forelegs above the Knees good and ftreight, with broad Filletting or Lifts, then ride him two hours upon a hard way, which if it be paved or pitcht is the better, his Feet having been pared reasonable near before hand, and when you do bring him into the Stable, let his Feet be ftopped with this Charge.

Take Rye, or Wheat-bran, Ox or Cow-dung, Sheeps-fuet, Turpentine (which muft be put in laft) let your Sheeps-fuet be of the fat of the Loyn of Mutton, and minced very fmall; melt and heat all thefe upon the fire, and mix them very well in the heating, and then put in your Bran to make it into a ftiff Pafte, all which being through hot, then laft of all put in your Turpentine, and fo incorporate all very well together, with this ftop your Horfe, who being thus three or four days charged and ftopped, ridden and kept warm, and not fuffered to drink cold water, but either Mafhes or White water, he will be found in four or fix days. * * * This is a moft excellent Receipt, for with it I have recovered many foundred Horfes. If it be a dry foundring, efpecially with too long ftanding in the Stable, then firft pare him fomewhat neer, and let him bleed well in the Toe veins, then,

Take Eggs and roft them blew hard, raked up in the hot Embers,

Embers, and together with the Powder of Commin, stop his Feet therewith so hot as they may be taken out of the Embers, and put over the Sole a piece of Leather with splents close, to keep the Eggs that they come not forth.

Take then a great Onion, pill and stamp it, and let it infuse or steep four and twenty hours together before, in the strongest white Wine-Vinegar you can get, so much as will suffice, so that it may be in readiness against you have stopped your Horse, which must be given him to drink with a horn fasting, and after let him be warm covered, littered, let him stand upon the Trench three hours, and after that you may give him meat, and white water. * * * This is a most approved good cure. If your Horse have been long foundred, as a month or better, to make a perfect cure, and to set him up sound again, it is needful the Soles of his Feet be taken out, by which means, new and better will come in their Room, wherefore when you do intend to take them off, have in a readiness these things, viz.

Take the tender tops of Ifope three handfuls, pound them to a mash in a Morter, wherewith to stanch his bleeding, then have also further in a readiness this Receipt.

*Foundred
long.*

Take Snails in the shells, and break the shells so much as will suffice, and take forth the Snails, and reserve them, then take Bay-salt one handful, and of the tender tops of the angriest red Nettles you can find, two or three good handfuls, beat them with your Snails and Salt in a Morter to a very Salve, then take out the Sole, then presently stanch the bleeding with your Ifope, and so soon as the Foot leaveth bleeding, apply to the Foot your other medicine, of Snails, Salt, and Nettles, and so bind up the Foot with cloaths, and so let it remain four and twenty hours, then open it, and heal up the forrance with your green Ointment taught you in lib. 2. chap. 10. sect. 4. and within two days you shall see a new Sole coming. * * * This is right good.

But if he be foundred both in Feet and Body at once, and the same time, as it falleth out oft times, through indiscreet and immoderate riding, by a most violent heat given him, whereby the blood is become inflamed, and his greafe molten: Then first rake him, and give him the Clister prescribed you

*Foundred
in the Feet
and Body.*

in *lib. 2. chap. 11. sect. 8. C. Clifter. 8.* and the next day let him Blood in the Neck-vein to a good quantity, reserving the blood, and keeping it from clotting, by continual stirring till it be cold; reserve I say of this blood half a pint, by it self, to put into his drink and the residue keep wherewith to make a Charge; Now for his drink, let it be thus made,

Take of good Sack one pint, of the blood you saved for his drink half a pint, of *London Treacle*, and of *Diapente*, of each one spoonful, and of mans ordoure, warm as it cometh from him, the quantity of a Walnut, brew and mix all these well together, and give it him to drink blood warm. This drink thus given, Charge him with this Charge.

Take the residue of the blood you kept, and put unto it twelve new laid Eggs with their shells, and beat them together, then put thereunto *Bolcarmoniack in Powder* four ounces, *Vinegar* half a pint, *Sanguis Draconis in Powder* three ounces, and with *Wheat-meal* thicken to a convenient Charge. Charge his Back, Breast, Loins, Legs, and Feet herewith, both above and beneath the Knees, laying it on against the Hair. This done, then

Take unflaked Lime, and Orpiment, of each like much, q. s. and dissolve them in running water, and let it stand two good hours, and after it is thus prepared, take as much *Matrosfetum* as will bring it to a thick substance, which being made good and hot, anoint the Coffins of his Hoofs therewith, especially about the Cronets, and stop also the Soles of his Feet with the same medicine, and if you let him blood in the Toe-veins well, it will be the better, and he will be the sooner, better, and sounder cured. * * This way have I cured two Horses foundred in the Body and Feet, never having applyed it but into those two only; But if your Horse be Hoof-bound, then

Take *Turpentine* and *Sheeps-suet*, of each half a pound, *Wax* a little, as much as will suffice, *Sallet-oyl* half a pint; boyl all these together, but put in your *Turpentine* last, and as these boyl, keep them with continual stirring, and herewith anoint his Hoofs once a day well, or once in two days, and he will do well. * * But if it be but an ordinary heat in the Feet newly taken, then

Take *Wheat-bran* and *Hogs-greafe*, and make them to a
Poultifs,

Poultices, and apply it as well to the Coffins, as the Soles, and he will be well again. These two latter Receipts a worthy Knight taught me, but as yet I never made use, but of the former, which I have found very good.

S E C T. 20. F.

Hippoph. **B**^{Ut} yet, Hipposerus, you have not shewed me how this malady cometh.

Hippof. That was but forgotten, Sir, I will now therefore do it. A foundring in the Feet cometh evermore after great and over violent labour, whereby the whole Body is become distempered, the peccant and malignant Humours stirred, the blood inflamed, and the Grease molten, which falling down into his Feet, there setleth, and in a short time after, to wit, in twenty four hours the poor creature is hardly able to stand, or if he do, it is after a very feeble manner, holding his four Feet together, so as you may easily with your hand throw him to the ground; besides, he will stand trembling, quaking, and shaking, as if he had a shaking Ague, nor would he stand at all, unless he be enforced, for the Soles and Coffins of his Feet will be so sore, his joynts and sinews so stiff and benumbed, that he cannot stand but with very much anguish and pain: Wherefore if he may have his mind, he would always be lying, and his whole Body will be distempered, and so much abound with heat, as rather to desire cold water, rather then meat, which if it be given him, then will he quake and quiver anew, and be in such pangs for the time, as that you would think he would assuredly die. This disease cometh also to a Horse by being watered when he is very fat, and ridden till he do sweat, causing him to take sudden cold therewith: Also after a great heat taken, to be set up without exercise upon the cold Planks, without litter, or to be washed, or walked after great labour: The Horse being very hot and ketty, (for this infirmity falleth most commonly upon fat Horses, but very seldom upon lean) also to water your Horse in shallow places, or waters where the water ascends not higher then his *Pasterms* by which means through the sudden coldness of the water at his Feet, causeth

the molten Greafe descending unto the Feet, to cake and congeal, which is the prime ground of this malady. And this not only my self, but all the most perite Farriers do with an unanimous assent acknowledge. And therefore I do admonish you and every man, who is a Horses friend,

1 First, to be very careful not to exercise his Horse too soon after his taking up from Grass.

2 Secondly, whilst he is very fat, that do not over-travel, over-labour, or over-toyl him.

3 Thirdly, that having travelled hard, and to prevent his foundring, let him be more gently ridden an hour before he cometh to his lodging, to the end he may be cool, and the more free from danger.

4 Fourthly, if one hour before you get to your lodging, you ride him into some River, or other watring place up to the Belly, (but not deeper) then water him by degrees, still betwixt every draught, stirring and removing him a little, it would not be amiss; but then so soon as you be come forth of the water, it were very good you did continue him in the same pace, going neither faster nor slower, (like as I have before inculcated) it will be the better also, and your Horse out of danger of foundring.

5 Fifthly, forbear evermore (especially if your Horse be heated) to water him in any shallow place.

6 Sixthly, beside his being warm set up with litter enough, let him have store of rubbing, as well of his Legs as Body, for it is a most wholesome thing, it dissolveth molten Greafe very much, and it doth dissipate and send away bad Humours.

7 Lastly, picking and stopping of his Feet in time of journeying, and after, is very good and profitable. And thus have I shewed by what means this malady cometh to the Horse, howsoever many other ways there are, which I have touched, by reason they are so vulgarly known to every man, and therefore your self cannot be ignorant of them.

S E C T. 21. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you help the Foundring in the Body?
 Hippof. This cometh oft times by eating too

too much Provender whilst the Horse is yet very hot, suddenly given him after great labour, whereby his meat not being well digested, from whence doth occasion crudities, raw digestion, and the evil habit in and about the Stomach, whereby many ill Humours, are ingendred, which will soon be diffused throughout the whole Body, by which means the very vigour and strength of the Horse becometh to be much decayed, and in a manner quite lost, enfeebling every joynt and member in suchwise, as to lose almost the use of going; and being once laid not able to rise again without help; nor can he either dung or stale, but with mickle pain. Foundring in the Body cometh also sometimes, when by travelling and the Horse very hot, you suffer him then to drink his fill of cold water, and after do not give him exercise enough, which might warm the same in his Belly; wherefore it is most certain that the Grease being molten, and the Blood inflamed, the Humours being stirred and dissolved, will presently resort to its Center, which if they once settle in the Body, it must be in and about the Heart, if not, they then must down lower; to wit, either to the Legs or Feet, and there residing, ingender these and such like maladies, whereof we have entreated; wherefore by eating and drinking out of its due season, begetteth an evil habit of the Stomach, so as if oftentimes present cure be not had, the Horse becometh desperately sick, which sickness will mathematically usher in his death. Now the signs whereby to know when a Horse is Foundred in his Body be these: The Hair will stare, and he will be very chill, he will shiver and shake after cold water, and whilst he is drinking the water some of it will issue out of his Nose, and after two or three days his Legs will swell, especially his hinder Legs, and after a while they will begin to pill, he will begin to have a dry cough at first, but after it will be more moist, and then his Eyes will water, and his Nose run with white Flegmatick stuff, and he will forsake his meat, and his Head will so much pain him, as that he will not be able to hold it out of the Manger, and seem as if he were always sleeping, &c.

S E C T. 22. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence proceedeth this word Foundring?
Hippof. From the French word *Fundus*, which is melting, which word we many times use in our Language, and therefore when through extreme toyl and labour of riding or other exercise, the Grease is dissolved, and falls to running, we say then that the Horses Grease is molten, and that he is foundred; for whereas the French calleth foundring in the body *Morfundu*, it is none other thing with us then plain foundring, or a Surfeit given in the body of a Horse. As for the cure, the best way is, and most agreeable to Art, to purge him, but not in that violent manner, as we use in case of other diseases, but first to rake him, then to administer to him this Clister.

Take of Mallows three handfuls, and boyl them in fair water two quarts to one quart, then strain it and put to it fresh sweet Butter six ounces, and of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and so administer it to him Clister-wise blood-warm; that done, walk him up and down in the warm Sun, or in some warm House, until he do begin to empty himself, then keep him fasting three or four hours, keeping him warm, and to a Stomach for three or four days, but let him have but that one Clister only, and let all his Hay be sprinkled with water, and let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, which when he hath drunk, give him the Malt or Bran to eat, and let his Provender be very little for fourteen days after, especially if his disease came through glut of Provender: Nevertheless the day after his Clister, give him this cordial drink,

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Sugar two ounces, of Life-Honey four ounces, of Cinamon half an ounce, Licorish and Anniseeds, of each one spoonful; all these made into fine Powder, put them into the Muskadine, and warm them on the fire till they be dissolved, and then give it him blood-warm, then walk him in the Sun or warm House an hour, then set him upon the Trench warm cloathed and littered, and so let him stand three hours fasting, unless sometimes you put

a little Armen into his mouth, then give him Hay sprinkled with water, and after an hour a sweet Mash, or white water, and then a few Oates well sifted and dusted, and this by a little at once, remembering to take blood from the Neck-vein, the same morning you give him this drink, and that a little before he taketh it, and prick him also in the mouth, and the next day after this drink, perfume his head with Storax, Benjamin, and Frankinsence, and so order him according as you in your discretion shall think to be most meet, only remember to Air him every day abroad if there be no wind, (for wind is hurtful to him) and thus doing you may recover him, and make him a sound Horse again. * * This is singular good. Another,

First give him this Clister, take the flowers of Melelotc, Anniseeds and Licorish, Linseeds, Sileris Montani, of each half an ounce, Polipodium of the Oak two ounces and half, Agnus Castus one handful, the Herb Mercury, Mallows, Pilitory of the wall, Branca ursina of three handfuls, make a decoction of all these, letting it boyl to a quart, then put to it of red Wax one ounce and a half, of Cassia newly drawn three ounces, of Diafennicon, two ounces of Benedicta, one ounce of Oyl of Nuts, as much as will suffice, and of all these make your Clyster according to Art, which you shall give to your horse so soon as you do suppose or suspect him to droop, and after this Clyster hath done working, give him the drink prescribed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 10. F.* which is very proper and good, provided you do administer it as soon as you do perceive your Horse to be foundred in the body, and withal adding to the drink the juyce of three great Onions well beaten and strained into white Wine, and that he be drest, aired, ridden, and ordered as is fitting and usual for Horses in Physick. * * Of this I have made tryal, and do find it to be good. Another,

Take a head of Garlick, of Pepper, of Ginger, and of Graines, of each two penny worth; make all these into fine Powder, and put them into strong Ale one quart, and so give it him to drink blood-warm: Give him this drink two or three mornings, and order him as is before prescribed. And when you do find that he hath gotten strength, let him blood

blood in the Neck and Spur-veins. * * * This is very good. All cordial drinks are good for this infirmity.

S E C T. 23. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your best cure for a false Quarter?

Hippof. A false Quarter is a very evil for-
rance, it is a rift, crack, or chinck, which is most commonly
upon the inside of the Hoof, yet sometimes (though rarely)
it happeneth upon the out side, it is occasioned sometimes by
evil shooing, by evil paring, and sometimes by graveling, or
a prick with a nail or stub : Nevertheless which way foe-
ver it cometh, it will cause the Horse to halt, and watrish
blood will many times issue out of the rift or chinck ; the
signs are needles to recite, they be so manifest : The only
way to cure this malady and forrance is, first to take off the
shoe, and to cut away so much of the Hoof on that side
where the grief is, as that the shoe being immediately set
on again, the chinck may be wholly uncovered, then open the
chinck to the quick with your drawing iron, and then fill up
the rift with a rowl of hurds being dipped in this Unguent.

*False quar-
ter.*

Take Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps-suet, of each like
much, melt them together, and your rowl of hurds being
dipped therein, stop the rift therewith, renewing it once a
day till it be whole, and thus the rift or chinck being with
this Ointment closed in the top, draw the place betwixt the
hoof and the hair with a hot iron overthwart that place,
which will cause the hoof to grow, and shoot all whole down-
wards, and when your Horse goeth upright and sound a-
gain, let him not be ridden with any other shoe until the
hoof be throughout hardened, neither let him be ridden upon
any hard ground, till his hoof is become very sound and
perfect. * * * Another,

For false Quarter, and to cause the hoof to grow :

First prepare a flat piece of Wood, making it an inch
broad at least, and so slender as that it will bend like a hoop,
which must be also so long, as that it may come well-nigh-
twice about the cronet of the hoof : Then when you are to
bring it about the hoof have in a readines a piece of fillit-
ting,

ting, which must be long enough, which you must cut into two pieces, then having brought the hoop about the coronet with one piece of the fillitting, bind fast the top of the hoop, which fastning must be behind against the heel, and bound very straight and hard, and then the fillitting so bound must be twisted three or four times, and so brought about upon the hoop, and the ends made fast upon the hoop: Then take the other piece of fillitting, and sew it upon the top of the first fillitting, which you bound about the Hoof, and then let it be sewed as well upon one side of the Hoof as the other, so fast sewed on, as that it cannot get off. Now you must understand that before you do binde the foot of the Horse with the wooden hoop and fillitting, you must prepare the forrance of the said false quarter, by drawing the place with your drawing iron, so close and neer, till you come almost to the very quick, and then will issue out a kind of sweaty or dewy moisture, which you shall perceive, then is it time to bind on the hoop and fillitting, according as I have before prescribed you, but yet before you do any thing at all unto the foot or false quarter, have your Salve in a readines which is to be applyed to the chinks of the false quarter, *viz.*

Take of the roots of *Lingua Bovis*, green, and newly gathered, of the roots of *Consolida-Major*, and the root of *Mallowes*, all newly gathered, of each half a pound, these must be washed and scraped very clean, and cut into small pieces; let these roots be boyled in *Aligant* two quarts, until the Wine be boyled quite away, and that the roots become very soft, then pound them very well, and strain them through a fine Searser, and that it may strain the better, reserve a little of the Wine as it boyleth, wherewith to moisten it in the straining.

Take of *Venice Turpentine*, of new *Wax*, and of *Burgundy-Pitch*, of each half a pound, of black *Pitch* four ounces, of the oldest *Oyl Olive* one quart, put these things with the former *Ingredients* into a clean *Kettle* or *Posnet*, but yet after this manner, *viz.*

First the roots, then all the other things by themselves, the one after the other, the *Turpentine* only excepted, which must be put in when all the other *Ingredients* be molten; you:

you must let all these boyl until all the Wine be consumed and the Ingredients be very well incorporate, and then put in the Turpentine, and then when it hath boyled one waum or two, take it from the fire, and keep it^r with continual stirring, till it be cold, and so keep it in some clean Vessel for your use; you must also add unto these things (which I had almost forgotten) of Frankincense four ounces made into fine Powder.

This Salve is to soften and mollifie the hoof, whereby to make it to grow; having thus prepared your Salve, before you bind the hoof with the hoop and fillitting as before is shewed, anoint and rub very well, where the hoop and fillitting is to be placed, with the Salve, and then bind on the hoop with the said fillitting, that done take hurds and rowl it up into a rowl, the full length of the chink of the quarter, and having first anointed the hurds very well with the Salve, lay it upon the chink of the false quarter, and so bind the hoof up with the two long pieces, of the aforesaid fillitting, which were sewed unto the other piece of the aforesaid fillitting, which bound and made fast the hoop: And let him not be dressed but once every three days, untying all, as well the hoop as fillitting; continue him to this kind of dressing, fifteen or twenty days, or otherwise according as your discretion shall think to be requisite.

Now when you shall find that the Salve hath brought up the hoof, and that now you know not how to harden it, and make it solid and found, to make an able cure thereof, apply this insuing Salve, Take of the strongest white Wine Vinegar one quart, Diers-galls, of green Copperas both bruised; of each four ounces; boyl these in the Vinegar to the Consumption of a Moiety, then strain it, and put unto it of old Sallet-oyl one pint, and so boyl it again, until the Vinegar be all consumed, which you shall know by stirring it with a little stick. and drawing the stick forth letting it drop into the fire, and if that which droppeth from the stick into the fire, do not crackle then let it boyl yet longer, for then it is not enough, but when it is sufficiently boyled by dropping in a little of the medicine, it will burn without crackling, then take Lithergy of Gold, and Lithergy of Silver, of each
half

half a pound, make them into very fine Powder and searfe them. Take then the Skillet from the fire, and let the medicine stand till it be almost cold, then mix well the Lithergy and put them in, for if they should be put in whilst the Liquor is hot, they would fly forth of the Skillet again: Then set the Skillet upon the Coals again, and so let it boyl upon a gentle fire, otherwise you shall not be able to keep in the medicine, and so boyl it up, and keeping it continually stirring until it become to be of a deeper and darker gray, and do cleave unto the thing with which it is stirred, and that it doth rope like unto Glew, then add unto it of new Beeswax three ounces, which must be first molten by it self, and then put also into the medicine of Soot made into very fine Powder, and which is made of Wood, and also of white Lead in Powder, of each three ounces, these I say being made into very fine Powder, must be put into the medicine, after it is taken from the fire, and by continual stirring made half cold, and so set it upon the fire again, and kept by continual stirring until it be thoroughly incorporate, and thus it is made; and when it doth begin to be so cold, as that it may be handled, then make it up into Rowls, and so keep it for your use. And when you are to use the Salve, take away the hoop Fillitting and all, and all anoint the Hoof with the Salve, and so bind upon the Hoof a linnen cloath to cause that the medicine may remain on, and let him be anointed therewith, every day once till the Hoof be so hard as that he may be able to travel. * * This receipt I do hold to be the most Sovereign of any that ever was yet known, which was taught me by a French man, who was so careful to give me ample instructions therein, as that he bound on the hoop and Fillittings (which are the most difficult parts of the Cure) in my presence, for he was very desirous to have me fully instructed therein.

S E C T. 24. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat disease is that which is called the Flanks?

Hippof. This disease called the Flanks is different from the former, neither have we no proper name

for it, unless we will name the same the *Plurisie*, for the Epithete, we have from the French, who style the same *Mal-de-Flanks*, it is when your Horse is troubled with overmuch abundance of blood, whereby he either ingendreth a Mainge, or else falleth dangerously sick thereby, who by reason he hath been oft times let blood before, his body now will look for it, whereof he missing, falleth either into very dangerous, or no less loathsome Maladies; the cure is,

*Flanks or
Mal-de-
Flanks.*

First take blood from both sides the Neck, and three days after in both the Spur-veins, in the mouth, and in the Temple-veins; then give him a drink of Diapente and sweet Sack, and he will do well. * * This is very good.

S E C T. 25: F.

Hippoph. **W** *Hat good Charge have you wherewith to stop the Feet?*

Hippof. I think I have sufficiently shewed you already, notwithstanding for the residue, I do remit you to its proper place, when and where I will give you store of good Receipts, and therefore I leave it for the present.

S E C T. 26. F.

Hippoph. **W** *Hat is good to stay a Flux?*

Hippof. This cometh of cold taken, sometimes by reason nature is offended with some Cholerick Humour proceeding from the Liver or Gall, into the Guts. It cometh oft sooner, when a Horse drinketh too much, presently after the eating a great quantity of Provender, for by that means the water coming to the Provender, causeth the Provender to swell, whereby crudities are bred in the Stomach, and so conveyed down to the Guts, which occasioneth his Flux, also it cometh by travelling too soon after Provender, it not being well digested before: And it will come also to a Horse by drinking cold water when he is very hot, and after (the water not being presently warmed in his belly) is the cause of a Lax or Flux. It will also come by eating of a Feather, Hending, Spider, some venemous worm, or other troublesome:

troublesome creature; and therefore my counsel is, not to stop a Flux too hastily unless you do find that your Horse do purge too too violently, and then be you well assured, that nature is not a little offended, for it will bring him in short time to a great weakness, and debility of Body; give him therefore first the Clister Laxative, which you have taught you in *lib. 6. chap. 6. sect. 8. Clister 21. letter C.* and that will carry away from him all that may any way offend him, and a day after give him this drink,

Bean-flower, and Bole-Armoniack Powder, of each three ounces, mix them with Red wine or Tent one quart, give it him blood-warm, and after keep him warm in the Stable, and let him have Hay and Oats, by a little at a time, and that often, and either sweet Mashs or white Water.

* * This is very good. Another,

Take of red Wine one quart, and Bay-salt one handful, and brew them well together, and with a horn give it him, and this will stay his scowring. * * This is also an approved Cure. Another,

Take of Wood-ashes finely feared, and of Bolearmoniack made into very fine Powder, of each like much, put them into the Water that he is to drink, and let him drink thereof morning and evening, and this will stay his Flux. * * But if it be a violent scowring, proceeding from the eating of a Feather, or some other naughty thing, so as this will not stay it, then

Take the Intrals of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizard, and mix with them of Spicknard one ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his scowring, yea if it be a bloody Flux. * * This special good.

SECT. 27. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Receipt have you to mundifie, cleanse, and heal foul and old sores?

Hippof. I had thought Sir, you would not have fallen upon this till it had come to its proper place, when and where we should have the particular matters of Sores by themselves, together with their cures: But sith hence you are pleased to

touch them in this place, I will give you one Receipt which cannot easily be parallel'd.

*Foule and
old Sores
to mundifie.*

Take of green Copperas, and of Salt-Peter, of each half a pound, Bay-salt, and Salt-Gemma, of each three ounces, Arsenick one ounce; put all these finely powdred into a Stillitory-Glass, the Pot or bottom thereof well nealed, and put also thereunto of the strongest white Wine Vinegar one pint, set the Pot on the fire, and put on the head, closing it with Cute of Hermes, and being thus placed in the Furnace, make under it a strong fire, by the space of five or six hours, and with your Receptory take the first water that cometh, for that is the very strongest and best, after an hour the fire will be out of the water, then stop up the Glass very close, and so keep the water for your use. The next water is also good, but not so strong as the first, but reserve it also by it self, as you do the first. And when you are to wash any sore therewith, be very careful that you lay none of this water upon either sinews or veins, for that will burn them in funder; but where Ulcers and fouler old Sores be in fleshy parts, this Water will work wonders if wounds be washed with it, and you careful in the application thereof. * * Of this I have had great experience. Another I have taught me by an expert Marishal of *France*, but by reason of the extreme violence thereof I never durst use it, which is called the Spirit of Tin, which will also mundifie all sorts of old Sores, and the French Marishals do use it much. And this is the Receipt, *viz.*

*Spirit of
Tin.*

Take Mercury one ounce, and put it into an old clean Pewter Porringer, and fill up the Porringer with Plantain water, and with your finger stir the Mercury about the Porringer, till it be quite dissolved, and then the water will become white, then let it stand an hour in the Porringer, then pour forth the water into a clean Glass-vial, and then you shall see in the bottom of your Porringer, the Tin run liquid like unto Quick-silver, or like as if it were melted, for that is your Spirit of Tin, and thus it is made.

S E C T. 28. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is to be administred to a Horse that forsaketh his meat?

Hippof. There be many causes that may make a Horse to forsake his meat, and yet not be sick at all, and also by occasion of sickness that either coming upon him, or else which hath already seized him. And first a Horse may forsake his meat, and forbear to eat for some time, no whit sick, as when he shall linger after Mares, or after Grass being weary of dry meat: Again, he may forbear his meat, and yet not be sick, by means of some accident or inconvenience bred in him, or befalln unto him, as by having the Lambs, Barbs, Giggs, Blisters, Bloody rifts, Tongue hurt, pain in the Teeth, or some such like infirmity in or about his Mouth, these may be causes that may induce him to forbear to eat, and yet the creature not sick, but otherwise healthy and hungry, and fain would feed, but either cannot or dare not. Also a Horse may forsake his meat, being through the inconsiderateness of his keeper cloyed, whereby he doth loath his meat; sometimes through over Airings morning and evening, sometimes again by suffering him to eat being very hot after great sweating, upon immoderate riding and toyl, or after water or washing being very hot. These and many more may be the causes why a Horse may forsake his meat, and yet not be sick. And he may also forsake his meat, by reason of sickness ensuing, as upon Colds, Rhumes, and Catarres newly taken, and beginning to be felt upon him: So also he may forsake his meat, by reason of sickness which hath already seized him, as in case of Glanders, Feavers, Morfounding Consumptions, Dropsie, and the like, whereby it is made most apparent that he feedeth not because he is already sick. As touching the first point, if you do perceive him to forsake his meat, and that you cannot easily find the reason thereof, then the first thing you do, search his Mouth, Lips and Tongue, and if you do find any thing there amiss, let it be presently amended, but if you cannot find any thing amiss, then examine his Keeper, and if you may perceive that

that it came through his default or negligence, either by the cloying him with Provender, or otherwise, according as I have heretofore touched, then give him a few branches of Savin, and let him be aired abroad, keeping him upon the Trench fasting to procure him a Stomach, and then feed him by degrees, and that by little at once, so he will fall to his meat again with good appetite, feed heartily, and do well again. * * * But if you do find that his forsaking of meat cometh by means of any sickness which hath already seized him, then give him this drink, *viz.*

*Forsaking
meat.*

Take of white Wine one quart, Polipodium of the Oak, a red Colewort leaf, Hore-hound, Mints, she-Holly, Juniper-berries, Ginger, Parsly-seeds, Fennel-seeds, of each three ounces, beat them into fine Powder what is to be powdred, and chop and stamp the herbs small, and so put all into the Wine, and boyl them a pretty while, then strain it, and give it your Horse blood-warm, then leap his back, and Trot him softly upon fair ground an hour, but not sweat by any means, then so soon as he cometh into the Stable, cloath and litter him warm, and wash his Mouth with Water and Salt, and set him upon the Trench, and put over his Nostrils a fine linnen Ragg steeped in sower leaven, infused first in the best and strongest white Wine-vinegar, and the juyce of Sorrel, and let him stand so three hours at the least, then un-bit him, and bring him meat, but by little at once, for fear of cloying his weak Stomach, neither let him have any Mash, or cold Water, but white water only, until such time as he hath found him his Stomach again. * * * This I have often made tryal of, and have found it to be right good. Another,

Take Rue and Pepper, of each like much, stamp them together to a thick Salve, then take a good lump thereof, and put it up a good way into his Mouth, and let him champ and chew it a good while, and so soon as you do suffer him to open his Mouth, he will put it out, and fall to feeding heartily. * * * This is not inferiour to the former. Another,

Take the leaves of Briony, and give him them to eat, and it will bring him to a good Stomach suddenly. This was taught me by a very good Farrier, who avowed it to me to be special good, but I never made tryal thereof.

S E C T. 29. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow to cure the running Frush?

Hippof. This is a naughty forrance, which I have heard rural Smiths to call the Frog, by reason that it breedeth in that spongy part of the Heel which they call the Frog. This forrance comes sometimes when the Smith inconsiderably as he pareth that part, doth go to the quick, whereby it bleedeth, which after becometh sore, and cometh to the running Frush, for that the Horse being travelled, whilst it is raw, and so that gravel getting into it, doth cause the place to rankle and impostumate, and it will come in short time to be a running sore, which will so stink, as not well to be endured: Sometimes again it cometh by reason of evil Humours which do fall down into the Legs, and makes its way out at the Frush, it being the softest and tendrest part of all the Foot. And sometimes it cometh by a bruise which the Horse may easily take by treading upon some stone, which inwardly corrupting, putrifieth, and so is ingendred a running Frush. The signs to know it is, the Horse will go lame, either upon hard or durty ways, whereby the gravel doth get in, and fret and pain him at the quick; and you shall perceive that when he resteth, the Frush will weep, sending forth watry stuff from the Frush. The way to cure it is,

Take stale Chamberly, and boyl it with a good quantity of Allum, and keep it in a Glasse close stopped. Then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the strongest and keenest, dry them that they may be made into fine Powder, then look what quantity of this Powder you have, add also unto it the like quantity of Pepper, made also into very fine Powder, and mix them very well together, and keep it either in some dry Bladder, or Box for your use also; and when you have occasion to use this water and Powder for this forrance, first take off the shooe; and open the Frush, so that you may come unto the very bottom, then wash the forrance very clean and well with this water made warm, then put on the shooe again, but first let it be hollowed, that it hurt not the Frush, and

and let the Heels of the shoe be wide enough, then the forrance being thus clean washed and purged from all gravel and mattrative stuff, and the shoe set on as afore said, fill the wound full with this Powder, and stop it with Hurds, and splent it that the Hurds may keep in the Powder, and that nothing get to the fore, and thus wash and renew the Powder to the place grieved every day once, and in a week or little more it will be perfectly sound and whole again, provided you suffer not any dung to come to the grief, and that he tread not in any wet during the time of the Cure, neither should he go forth of the Stable. * * * And thus have I cured many *Horses* of this malady. Another,

Take of Soot and Bay-salt, of each one handful, and pound them very well together, (having opened and washed the forrance, as before is shewed) and put unto your Soot and Salt the whites of three new laid Eggs, and so temper and beat all well together, till you bring it to one entire body, then dip some Hurds therein, and so stop not only the place it self, being opened and made raw, but all the sole besides, and so stop up the Frush, splenting it in such sort whereby the medicine may be kept in, and thus let him be dressed once a day, and ordered as before is premonished, and he soon will be whole and sound. * * * This I have often proved, and cured many forrances of this nature.

S E C T. 30. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to cure a Fret?

Hippof. This disease you call the *Fret*, is only the griping and pain in the Belly, which cometh of sundry causes. The French do call it *Tranchaisons*, which do signifie gripings, it is the plain Collick, caused of wind, sometimes bilious and sharp Humours, which descending from the Stomach, go down into the Guts and there torment him; and sometimes it cometh by reason of Worms, Bots, or Truncheons, which do ingender in the Stomach or Guts of the *Horse*, which do feed and gnaw upon the Panch or Guts, putting him to mickle pain and perplexity. The signs are, he will forsake his meat, lye down oft, and tumble, and when
he

he standeth he will eftsoones strike at his Belly with his hinder Legs, he will also stamp with his fore Feet, and turn his Head towards his Belly, and look upon it, and he will many times sweat at the flanks, and seldom any where else; and if the malady be of wind, then shall you perceive his Belly to swell, especially towards the flanks: The cure is,

Take of good Ale two quarts, of Fœnugeek four ounces, Foot. of Bay-berries seven ounces, of Long Pepper four ounces, of Ginger one ounce, Water-Cressles two handfuls, Sage and Nettles, of each one handful, beat to Powder the Spices, and chop the Herbs small, and boyl them in the Ale till one Moiety be consumed, then strain it, and so give it him blood-warm, and then cover and litter him warm, and let him stand upon the Trench six hours after. But yet as soon as he hath his drink, rope up all his Legs to the Body, not suffering him to lye down, and cover him so as that he may sweat for one hour only, and then cool him by degrees, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes or white water, and he being thus ordered in two or three days he will be well. This I have often used. Another,

Take the Intrals of a great Chicken, casting away the Gizzard, rowl them up in Bay-salt and the Powder of Brimstone, and so give it him down his Throat, then presently let him be gently ridden, or walked, till he doth dung, and at night give him a Mash or white water, and he is cured. This is also very good. But if you have cause to suspect that he hath the Bots then rake him, and in his raking search for Bots, which if you find any sticking upon the great Gut, pluck them all (or so many as you can find) away, whereby you may be confident that the Bots is the cause of his grief, wherefore apply such Remedies and Medicines which I have formerly prescribed you for Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in *lib. 2. chap. 5. sect. 15.* where you shall find such Receipts as will cure him. * * * But if you do perceive this grief of his cometh of wind, then make use of such Receipts which you shall find by me before inculcated for the Collick, in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 11. lit. C.* where be very good Remedies for this malady.

C H A P. X.

S E C T. I. G.

Hippophylus.

What is to be done to cure a galled Back? *Hippof,* There be so many ways which doth occasion it, as that it would be an endless labour to deliver every particular thereof. But because you do mention the galled Back only, I will first speak something thereof. A galled Back cometh commonly either with the Saddle, the Paniel, Pack-Saddle or Male-Pillion, which through evil stopping, or defect of stopping, may very easily gall the *Horse*; so also may the fault be in the Tree, which may be so badly made, so as that let the Sadler be never so sufficient, skilful, or careful, yet shall it both gall and hurt him; so also may the Tree of the Saddle be either broken or crackt, if it at any time happen, be you then confident that it can never be so amended or repaired, but that do what you can it shall hurt the back of the *Horse*, and these be the most frequent and ordinary ways whereby to gall the back of your *Horse*, howbeit, I pass over Male-Pillion, Cloak-bags, Portmantues, Trusses, and the like. The signs to know a galled back are easie, for either the back will be apparently swelled, or the Hair fretted off, the skin either broken or raw, or the back either inflamed or impostumated, every of which is easily to be determined by the Eye; or if his Back be wrung with the Saddle, and yet not come to be visible to the Eye, yet may you come to the knowledge thereof, if taking off the Saddle, stroking your hand all along the Back, you shall perceive him either to shake his Head, or to winch with his Tail, to rouse or shake, to stamp or strike with his Feet, to offer to bite, or the like, whereby you may come to know it, and very easily to find out the place grived. Now if the Back be swelled, and before it be impostumated, so soon as you shall take off the Saddle, and find the same, clap upon the swelling a little of his wet litter, and so set on the Saddle again, and

and let him remain with his Saddle on all night, and in the morning the swelling will be abated, and the place it self becometh whole and sound again. Now if the hair be but galled off, so that it doth not impostumate, anoint the place but with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and in twice dressing the place will be whole; but if the *Back* be so galled, as that it is become raw; then the cure is thus, viz.

Take three parts of Sheeps-dung newly made, and one part of Rye, or Wheat-flower, and dry the flower, and then mix it well with the Sheeps-dung, kneading it as into paste, and making it into the fashion of a Cake, and after brake it a little, and apply the Powder thereof warm unto the place. * * * This will heal him very well. But I may very well spare the labour in reciting any more Receipts for this matter, considering I have sufficiently already handled them in *lib. 2. chap. 5. sect. 1. letter B.*

S E C T. 2. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you to a Galde that cometh by the Shackle?

Hippof. This kind of Gallings being so frequent, as to be known to every one, both the manner how it cometh, and in the signs how to know them, needeth not much discussion, nevertheless I will give you an experiment or two of mine own, and so leave it to its more proper place.

Take new Milk three quarts, Plantane one handful, boyl these together till one part of the Milk be consumed, then take Allam six ounces, and of white Sugar-Candy one ounce, beat them both to fine Powder, and so put it to the Milk, and add also unto it of white Wine Vinegar six spoonfuls, then boyl it a little till there do come upon the top a tough Curd, then strain it, and keep the Whay, casting away the Curd; and with this Whay first made warm, bathe and wash the fore, the hair being first clipped close away; and having thus washed the sorrance, and wiped it dry, then apply your green Oyntment mentioned in the fourth *sect.* of this Chapter; but in case where the Galde is not broken, yet

likely to break, there you shall only apply the medicine taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 16. sect. 10. L.* for the *Poll-evil*. * * This Whay is also good to cure the bloody Rists, Bladders, Canker in the mouth, Barbs, Pappes, and all Feavers and Maladies in the *Mouth*. Another,

Take Life-Honey seven spoonfuls, and Verdegrease half an ounce, and boyl them till the Honey be half consumed, and that it become red, then put it into some clean pot, and anoint the sorraine therewith, made warm twice every day, and when you have thus anointed it, cast upon the place Hurds cut very short, to keep on the Oyntment, and this will in short time heal it up very sound. * * This is most Sovereign for any *Shakle gald*, which cometh either by *Lock*, *Cord*, or *Shakle*; but if your *Horse* be desperately galled in any part of his Body, as by the *Girt*, or otherwise, then

Take of Verjuyce of the Crab two quarts, of green Copperas two penny-worth, and boyl them together to one pint and a half: And wash the sorraine therewith very well, and after fill up the hole (if any be) with the powder of Red Lead, and so let it remain three days untoucht, then wash it as before, and fill it with your red Oyntment again, and thus in two or three times dressing it will heal up, be the *galling* never so dangerous. * * This I have often used.

S E C T. 3. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to be done to a Horse that is Gravelled?

Hippof. This malady cometh when a *Horse* in his travel hath gotten *Gravel* betwixt the *Sole* and the *Hoof* which setleth at the quick, and there fretteth and festreth, you shall soon know it by his halting, and complaining upon the same Foot, which so soon as you do perceive, take up the *Foot* and you shall feel it warmer in that place, then in any other part of the *Foot*, and if you make tryal with your Pinsors you shall perceive him to shrink, and to yield when you nip him against that place: Take off the shooe and with your drawing iron draw the place, till you come unto the quick, pick forth all the *Gravel*, and crush forth the matter and blood clean, then wash

Gravel-
ling.

wash the fore clean with your Copperas water, taught you in the next ensuing *Paragraph*, then pour upon the fore sheeps Tallow, and Bay-salt molten together, of each so much as will suffice, and let it be poured into the wound scalding hot, then stop up the hole with Hurds, and set on the shoe again, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole, but till he be through well do not travel him, neither let his *Foot* come into any wet. * * This is a certain cure. Another,

Search and draw the place as before, and get forth all the *Gravel*, then stop the place with Hogs-grease, and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound scalding hot, and stop it up with Hurds, and tack on the shoe, and keep his *Foot* from wet, and he will soon be whole: This is also very good. Another,

Be you certain that you have gotten forth all the *Gravel* and Corruption, then

Take Virgin-wax one ounce, Rosin, and Deers-suet, of each two ounces, Bores-grease half an ounce, and of Sea-green, *alias* House-leek one head, incorporate all these together in a Morter, then melt them over a gentle fire, and so apply it hot to the sorraine, and stop it up with Hurds and tack on the shoe, and in few dressings it will cure it. * * This is a special good cure.

S E C T. 4. G.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make your green Oyntment, you do so so much commend?

Hippof. Sir, this Unguent which I do so much commend unto you, is the most rare, and Sovereign thing that I ever yet saw or knew, for the cure of any sores, whether old or green, *Ulcers*, *Fistulas*, *Poll-evils*, or what else, for where this Oyntment cometh, no proud or dead *Flesh* will grow; no *Flies* will adventure neer the place where this Oyntment is laid, and for a *Horse* or *Mare Filly* that is cut, gelt, or splad, anoint but the place, and they will neither swell or fester, whereby the creature is the further off from danger, for this Unguent doth not only heal soundly and well, but speedily also; provided you lay nothing upon the wound or sorraine,

rance, where the Oyntment is administred as neither Hurds, Lint, Plaisters, or the like, unless you may have occasion to taint a wound which is extraordinary deep, neither that for any long time, or too often, and besides the seldomer, the wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two days, it will heal the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardness of healing. And together with this Unguent, you may do well to wash the sorraine, with the water I call the Copperas water, which by reason it is always first to be used, I will set it down first, and the green Oyntment shall assume the second place.

Copperas
water.

Take fair water two quarts, and put it into a clean Postnet, and put thereto of green Copperas half a pound, and of Salt one handful, and of ordinary Honey one spoonful, and a branch or two of Rosemary, boyl all these till one half of the water be consumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Doves-Egg of Allum, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold put the water into a Glass, and stop it up close, and keep it for your use; and when you are to dress any sore, first wash it clean with this water, and if the wound be deep, inject it with a Syringe. * * * This water of it self will cure any reasonable sore, or wound (but the green Oyntment being applyed after it is washed) will heal any old Ulcer, or Fistula whatsoever, if they come to the bottom of them, and for green wounds, they have not their fellow; the *Green Oyntment* is thus made,

Green Oynt-
ment.

Take a clean Skillet or Postnet, and first put into it of Rosin the quantity of a Walnut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of Wax, and when that is also molten, put to them of tryed Hogs-grease half a pound, and so soon as that is molten, put into the rest of common *English* Honey one spoonful, when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, and so soon as it is dissolved, take it from the fire, and put into the Skillet of Verdegrease made into very fine Powder one ounce, and so stir it all together, but be careful it run not over, for that the Verdegrease will cause it to arise, then set it again upon the fire, till it do begin a little to simmer, then

then take it off, for if you suffer it to boyl it will turn red, and lose its vertue of healing, and become a corrasive, then strain it through a cloath into some earthen Pot, or Pipken, and keep it for your use, laying something upon the mouth of the Vessel, that dust get not into it, and if it be not strained, then the grounds in the bottom will corrasive a sore, and not heal it. * * This is the most soveraign Oyntment that I could ever know, for with it I have done so many great cures, as have made me admired by *Farriers* themselves, who have courted me not a little for this Receipt, yea they have proffered me ten pounds to teach it them; This cleanseth a wound, be it never so foul, or infected with dead, proud, spungy or naughty *Flesh*, it carnifieth, and healeth abundantly, and withal so soundly, and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth, it draweth forth Thorns, Splinters, Nails, and all such things in the *Flesh*, and in a word it cureth all sorts of sores and wounds.

S E C T. 5. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to be administred to a Horse whose Grease is molten?

Hippof. As touching this infirmity I have sufficiently shewed you before how it cometh, the signs how to know it, and how to cure the same, and therefore I may now forbear to spend any more time in the Declaration thereof, only I will give you one singular Receipt more, and this it is.

First, take *Blood* from the *Neck-vein*, to a reasonable good Proportion, to the end all his inflamed blood may be let forth, then give him to eat either Bran prepared as you are shewed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 4. F.* or dry Bran whether he will eat best, but if he will eat neither, and that he doth empty himself over much, then give him the Clister Restringent prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 8. Clister 3. letter C.* or else if you please, you may give him the 8. *Clister* in the same *sect.* either of these two so often as need shall require you may give. And if his appetite be not good, give him Arman prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 2. sect. 2. letter A.* and two days after let him *Blood* in both the *Flank-veins*, and if you cannot easily

easily find them then in the *Spur-veins*, and the next day after that give him to drink, two quarts of water warmed, and put into it of white Wine Vinegar one pint, for this will very much refresh his *Body*, and then the next day give him this drink,

Take of Tifan three pints, of loaf Sugar finely powdred three ounces, of Cordial powder one ounce, of Life-Honey four ounces, give him this to drink blood-warm. In maladies of this nature you must forbear to administer such drugs as be hot, for by such means more *Horses* dye then do recover and live: For such kind of drink as this is, being wholly cordial, are best for this infirmity. *** This cure I do assure you I have often administred, and have done very much good, and made many great and desperate cures therewith.

S E C T. 6. G.

Hippoph. **W**ELL, now let us come to the Glanders.

Hippof. Withal my heart, Sir. As touching this disease which we do call the *Glanders*, it is of all others the worst, noisome, and most infectious, insomuch as that *Horse* that hath it, if he be not removed and seperate from his fellows, will infect so many as shall be with him in the same Stable and Room. To find out the depth, root, and true nature of this disease, I have greatly laboured, as also how to cure the same. I have also had much conference with many of the most famous and exquisite *Marishals* and *Farriers* abroad, and I have seen very much of their practise therein, so also have I very serious discourses with a number of our best *Farriers* and *Smiths* at home, but I find not one in twenty can speak truly to any purpose of the nature of this disease, and therefore I do not wonder that they cannot cure a disease whereof they are so much to seek. Nevertheless what I do understand of this disease, I will ingeniously deliver unto you. The *Glanders* is an infirmity which proceedeth first of cold taken, which being neglected, will in time come to be the *Glanders*; you shall first perceive it by the inflamed *Kernels* and *Knots* which may be felt under
the

the *Chaul* of the *Horse*, and as they do grow in bigness, so do the *Glanders* grow and increase within the Body of the *Horse*, which first beginning with a thin Rheum, ascendeth up to the Head, and setteth neer to the Brain, and so venteth it self at the Nose, which yet may be easily cured, as I have before inculcated, where I entreated of Colds, afterwards it grows thicker, and then it is worse to cure, but yet faisable enough, in longer time it cometh yet to a thicker substance, and its colour is Yellowish, much like unto Butter, and then it is more hard to cure, but yet curable, albeit that now it is come to be a perfect *Glanders*: But when it cometh to be a Viscuous, and of a tough and slimy substance, and of a Green colour, and to stink terribly, and that it hath now run some months, or peradventure half a year or better, as also having some small specks of a reddish colour in it, then is it not every *Farriers* work or Art to cure the same, for in a case of this nature the ablest *Farrier* may receive the foil, and the *Horse* die under his hands and cure, as I have often by experience have been an Eye witnesses, albeit there hath been no defect in the Farrier, either in Art, Industry, Care or Diligence. I do therefore aver that I would not have any man, (be he never so expert an Artist) to promise to himself the cure of every *Horse* he shall take in hand, by the reason that the *Glanders* it self is the thing he must cure, but in taking upon him to cure that malady, he must before he can have perfected his cure, cure him also of many other diseases, which the *Glanders* will bring along with it, as (*v.g.*) the Consumption of the Flesh and Lungs, Grievs and Aches in the Head and Brain, inflammations under the *Chaul*, diseases in the Liver, Pursiveness, Hide bound, Dropsie, swelled Legs, and many other infimities too prolix to repeat, all which (I say) are inherent to the *Glanders*, and its Origine, that it is of Cold past all peradventure, howsoever it sometimes cometh of Surfeits, sometimes of Morfounding, sometimes by Infection, all which (the last only excepted) taketh its first source, from Cold, and when it runneth (as before I said) Greenish with Reddish specks, accompanied also with an offensive or stinking Breath, then are his Lungs ulcerated, by means whereof the cure is the more desperate

and difficile. I do therefore advise all Farriers my Brethren, who shall at any time take upon them this Cure, that they do first prepare the Body of the *Horse* with such Preparatives and Physick, as are meet to expel his peccant Humours, which must be also very carefully administred, yea and that according to the strength and Ability of the *Horse*; for the *Horse* cannot choose but be feeble and weak, having of a long time before been visited with a Sickness of this nature; yea, peradventure a whole year or two before together, during which time he hath continually wasted and languished, wherefore he cannot be strong, but a very weak *Horse*, and therefore his Physick must be very gentle, yet such also which may have operation whereby to work, otherwise Physick is but cast away. The signs how to know this Disease need no further Description, and therefore I will proceed to the Cure, for the which I will deliver you many Receipts, some whereof I have well experienced, to which I will give my particular Mark, like as I have formerly done. And I do the rather insert the more Receipts, because (as I have before remembred) that Receipt which will not cure one, will cure another.

Glanders.

The first therefore that is to be done in this case, is, to prepare his body by giving him for four or five daies together, instead of his Oats and Provender, wheat Bran prepared, like as I have before shewed you in the cases of sick *Horses*, especially in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 4. F.* to qualifie and dry up his moist and bad humours abounding in him, then let him blood in the Neck, and the next day rake him, and give him this Clister. Make a decoction of Mallows one pint and a half, and put unto it of fresh Butter, four ounces, and of sallet Oyl a quarter of a pint, and administer it blood warm, and then with a strap of leather tie it to his Tail, and then fasten the other end of the said strap to his Sursingle, so straight that his tail must be close to his tuell, that he cannot purge till it be loosned, then mount his back, and let him be gently ridden, sometimes a foot pace, and sometimes an easier trot for half an hour, then set him up warm cloathed and littered, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, during which time he will purge kindly, then give

give him white Water and Hay, and at night a few Oates, for he must be kept to a spare diet. The next day anoint two long Goose-feathers with the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, being first well wrought together, till it be brought to the colour of Gold, put them into either nostril, and fasten them to his headstall, as before taught you, and so ride him an hour or two, for this will purge his head, and cause him to send forth mattrative stuff which abideth in his Head and Lungs, then bring him in and take them forth, and an hour after give him Hay and white Water, and Bran prepared, which also he should have given him before his riding abroad. The next day give him his Clyster again, and so let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before, the next day give him his Goose-feathers again, anointed as before, and ordered in the like manner as you did before, and all this is, but to prepare him for his after Drink, but remember to keep him alwaies warm, and let him be evermore fasting and empty, when he is to have any kind of Physick administred unto him, and let him be aired Morning and Evening, if the Sun shine, or that it be otherwise warm and calm weather. And having thus begun with him, three days after give him this Drink.

Take of Aquavitæ half a pint, and of White-wine one pint, Aristolochia-Rotunda, Agarick, Gentian, Bayberries, Myrrh, Ivory, Aloes, of each three drams, make all these into fine Powder each one by it self, then mix them very well, and put them into a clean Posnet with the Wine and Aquavitæ, and so warm it upon the fire, then being well brewed, give it him blood-warm. This Drink must be given thrice, to wit, every third day, and he made to fast three hours after, and after ordered as is accustomed with *Horses* in Physick, during which time, and some time after, let him drink no cold water, but most commonly white water, which once or twice in a week may be changed into a sweet Mash, and let him eat the Bran and Malt, and dyet and feed him so, as that he may be kept to a Stomack, but be careful you neither cloy, nor pine him: Instead of the Oates which you should give him, let them sometimes be changed into Bread if he will eat it; and sometimes you may give him instead of Oates, some

Wheat either in the Ears, which is best, or else Wheat threshed and cleared ready for the Mill.*** Truly with this Cure as I have set it you down, I have recovered many *Horses*. But you must understand that this Malady as it hath run along upon the *Horse*, before it come to that height, as to be so rank a *Glanders*, to be termed the mourning of the *Chine*, so will it ask a long time to cure, and therefore you must not think that it can be cured with this one onely course of Physick, but you must let him rest a few days, whereby he may the better gather strength, and then to him again and again, but take no more Blood from him; and as you do perceive him to gather Flesh, and get Strength, so let his Exercise be increased, but withal, so as not to overlabor him, or to cause him to sweat violently, nor yet strain his Wind too much.

Another,

If you do find that together with his *Glanders*, he hath the Strangles, that is, that he be oppressed with Inflammations under his *Chaule*, clip away the hair from about the place, and clap a piece of Sheeps-skin newly killed, over all the place, which must be daily renewed, and you must keep warm, not only the place, but his Poll also; then,

Take Basilicon, old Bores-grease, and Dialthea, of each four ounces, and of Oyl de Bay one ounce, beat all these very well together, then anoint the place inflamed, once every day at the least, and then put to the Sheeps-skin, and so keep it on till it be ripe enough, then open it, and put into the Orifice a taint of Basilicon for three or four days, then heal up the wound with Taints of *Ægyptiacum*, prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 4. lit. A.* and during the time of his Cure, give him Wheat-bran, as well dry as prepared; and for his Drink, let it be white Water, unless sometimes a Mash; keep him warm, and after five or six days ride him abroad with a Goose-feather in his Nose, anointed as is before advised you; and if he do run at Nose very much, then take a stick, and wrap a fine linnen Rag about it, anoint it very well with black Sope, and put it into his Nostrils a good way, but not so as to cause him to bleed, and do this three or four times a day: or else

Take the seed of *Pordo accenta*, and bruise it, made up in
sweet

sweet Butter, so much of the Seed as you may take up betwixt your Thumb and two Fingers at a time. * * This is very good. *Another,*

Take the Ointment of the Oyl de Bay, and Unguentum Agrippa, of each like much; rub the Inflammation place, every night with this unguent well mixed, then apply unto the place a piece of a Sheeps-skin with the Wooll on: But this Medicine is much better in Winter then in Summer, by reason that this unguent of it self is very hot; wherefore in the summer Season, instead of such hot unguents take two ounces of these that be cooler, with three roots of white Lillies roasted or boiled, or Rye leaven six ounces, of old Hogs-grease as much as will suffice, and of the tender tops of Isop halfan ounce; mix all these together, and make thereof an unguent, with which rub and anoint the place well, and after apply it to the place Plaister-wise; this done, cover the place with a piece of Sheeps-skin, the Wooll being on, and continue to do this till it be ripe and ready to be opened, blow also into his Nose of Euforbium, and black Elebore pulverized, of each like much, to the bigness of a halse-nut of either; then put into each Nostril a long Goose-feather, first dipped in Oyl de Bay; which Pouder and Oyl will cause him to cast forth much of his *Glanders*, and of his bad humours which do feed them. * * This Medicine if it be rightly applied, will cure him. *Another,*

If your *Horse* together with his *Glanders* be troubled with inflamed Kernels under his Chaule, then give him this Drink.

Take of Elecampane dried, Anni-seeds, Fennel-seeds, Commin, Pepper, Grains, Licorish, of each three drams, all pulverized, and add thereto two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised; boil all these in strong Ale, two quarts to a moiety, then strain it, and set it over the Fire again, and put unto this Liquor the quantity of a Tennis-ball of tried Hogs-grease, and let it remain no longer over the Fire but until the Hogs-grease be molten, and so administer it blood-warm with a Horn; this done, leap his back, and trot him gently a mile upon fair Ground, and so home again, then set him up warm cloathed and littered, causing him to sweat in his cloaths

two hours, then by little and little flake his cloaths, cooling him by degrees, till you have brought him to his former coolness, and as he doth begin to leave off sweating, let him be well rubed till he be dry, then two hours after this give him a sweet Mash, and use this drink and sweating sundry times, every second day for a week. The next week

Take Wheat-meal, Horehound, Anniseeds and Licoris made into very fine Powder, of each as much as will suffice, make a paste thereof with ordinary Honey and Sallet-oyl, of each as much as will suffice, then every morning make three Pills the bigness of a great Walnut apiece, and give them to the *Horse* three Mornings together, keep him all this time warm, and let his drink be white Water, and his Manger-meat be either Wheat-bran prepared, or dried Bran; but if he have Kernels under his Chaule, then either ripen them, as you were taught before, or else burn them with the flame of a Candle, and open the *Skin* with an incision Knife, and then put into the Orifice the root of a red Dock, giving it a slit or two, and it will draw his Cold quite away from under his Chaule. But first you must understand that the Drink last before mentioned, ought to be applyed before you apply any other Medicines; and my Counsel is withal, that you do purge him before you give him this Drink, or any other Medicines, for purging doth the better prepare the Body of the *Horse*, whereby to cause his Physick, of what nature soever, to work more kindly. * * This Recept I have often tried, and have perfected very great Cures therewith. Another very soveraign, after your *Horse* hath taken the Drink next above prescribed.

Take Gumma Guaiacum, Amber, Coral, of each half an ounce, make all these into very fine Powder, and infuse it into red Wine, one quart, with a good quantity of Cinamon Arkanet Powdred, and give it to your *Horse* two mornings together blood-warm, and so order him as is usual with other Drinks, * * This is also very good. Another.

First give him this Drink following, but first purge him two days before; take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came Hides, one pint, of Sallet-oyl four spoonfuls, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruised, Featherfew and Sealandine,

landine, of each one handful chopped very small, Anniseeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one spoonful; boyl all these a little, and so give it your *Horse* blood-warm twice a week fasting, and he being thus four times drenched, will be perfectly cured. This I never tried, but I have been assured by able *Farriers* that it will cure the *Glanders* be it never so old. Another.

Take strong Ale one quart, Tar a quarter of a pint, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruised, and give it your *Horse* fasting, warm once in four days, till he be thoroughly cured. This I never tried. Another.

Take of the newest and strongest *Tanners* Owes one pint, Venice Turpentine shaved one ounce, Bay-berries in fine Powder one spoonful, Saffron powdered one penny-worth, *Aristolochia rotunda* one ounce, *Guaiacum* two ounces, both in fine powder, incorporate all these upon the fire till the Turpentine be dissolved; then give it your *Horse* blood-warm two mornings in a week, resting three days still betwixt, till he be cured, which will be in four or five times giving. Another.

Make Pills of Venice Turpentine with Past of Barly-flower, and give them to your *Horse*, and they will cure him. Another.

Take baked Barly-flower two parts, the dust of Oaken Bark, and Bay-berries in fine Powder of each one part, make a Past thereof with new *Tanners* Owes, and so make them into Pills, with the Powder of Cinnamon three parts, and Saffron one penny-worth, and so give them to your *Horse*. Another for the *Glanders* and Consumption of the *Lungs*, which must be given after you have made trial of the Drink before prescribed, which beginneth thus; take Elecampane, Anniseeds, Fennel-seeds, &c. and finding that your *Horse* is not therewith cured, give him these Pills following.

Take Barly-flower baked in an Oven, Cumfrey-roots, Bursa-Pastoris, Bramble-leaves, or the red and unripe Berries growing upon Brambles, which we do commonly call Balck-berries; these unripe Berries are much better then the Bramble-leaves, of each one handful, of Alkanet one dram, boil all but the Barly-flower in *Tanners* Owes newly made,

so

so much as will suffice, and when it is throughly boyled strain the Liquor from the other Simples, reserving only the Liquor, and so make a Paste thereof with your Barly-flower, adding thereto of the dust of Oaken-bark one handful or two, then make this Paste up into Pills the bigness of a good Wall-nut, give him four of these at a time, rowled up in the Powder of Cinnamon two parts, and one part in the Powder of Saffron, and use this till he be well, not adminiftring these Pills every day, but every two or three days, till you do find him well.*.* This I do recommend unto you for a special good Receipt, for that therewith I have effected many great Cures in this kind, but then withal let his drink be white Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, as in all other Cures for this Infirmitie, and withal put into his white Water Bramble-leaves, and Knotgrafs bruised, and be you very careful that he take no cold, but be kept warm during his Cure, and ayre him Morning and Evening in the warm Sun, if there be no Wind; and every time you lead him forth to be ayred, at his going forth of the Stable, spirt into his Nostriils the Juice of wild Dayisie-roots, mingled with the strongest White-wine-vinegar, which will purge his Head exceedingly, and cause the *Glanders* to run forth abundantly. Another, being an excellent Pill for the *Glanders*, which I have often used, and that to great good purpose.

Take Venice-Turpentine washed, half a dram, incorporate it with the Powder of Brimstone, Alkenet, and Oake-bark dust, of each like much, so much as will suffice to make up into Pills, give him every Morning two of these Pills fasting, as big as a good Wall-nut every one, till he be well.*.* Another which is a very good Drink, wherewith to dissolve the *Glanders* and Cold, after other Drinks have rotted and ripened them.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Figgs cut and sliced small, a quarter of a pound, live Honey one spoonful, Saffron pulverized one pennyworth, Ginger and Elecampane of each one dram in powder, Pepper in fine powder so much as will lye upon a Sixpence, fresh or sweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, boil all these together a pretty while, then strain it, and blood-warm administer it, only adding to the Drink

Drink the Yolks of two new laid Eggs well beaten into the said Drink, and after walk or ride him moderately a little space, and then set him up warm, and order him as in other physical Drinks. * * * This I have often tryed, and do approve it for special good: for this openeth the Pipes, causing him to void much Filth, and it begetteth a good stomack to meat. Another most excellent,

First before you do administer any Drinks or Medicine, give him this Purge.

Take of the best and strongest White-wine-vinegar one pint, and put it into a Pot, and put to it two new laid Eggs, and so let them steep in the said Vinegar four and twenty hours at least, and then give them to the *Horse* four Mornings together, and so soon as he hath taken them, let him be ridden a while gently and then set up warm, and set upon the Trench till one or two of the Clock, then give him white Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, and let his Provender be moistned with Ale or Beer, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and this will cause him to purge and scowre from him much Flegme and Filth: three or four days after you have purged him thus, give him the drink prescribed you before, which beginneth thus, *viz.* (take of Tanners Owe new made, wherein never came Hides, one pint, of fallet Oyl four spoonfuls, two heads of Garlick, &c.) which being administered as is in the said Cure prescribed, and he ordered as is convenient for *Horses* in Physick, will assuredly cure him. This I never made use of, but it was recommended to me for a special good one. Another,

Give him the last mentioned Purge of Eggs steeped in Vinegar, and keep him to it for four or five Mornings together, then for four days together after, give him a new laid Egg, shell and all, with as much powder of Brimstone as will lie upon a shilling, then for six mornings after, give him every morning a Pill of washed Venice Turpentine, made up with the powder of the Root of Alkanet, and let every of these Pills be of the bigness of a good Wall-nut, let him take this Medicine evermore in the Morning fasting, and fast after it till noon, and after order him as in other Physical Drinks: and withal you must know that until such time as he be perfectly

fectly cured, he must not be put to any hard Labor, either by riding or otherwise, for that will rend a new, and break open again, the *Ulcer* being newly healed, which as yet be but green and tender. * * * And this is a very good Receipt. Another for a *Glanders* or any Cold newly taken.

Take the long Moss growing upon the Lymbes of old Timber-oakes, but not that which groweth upon the main Body or the Trunk of the Tree, gather thereof a good quantity, dry it and make it into Powder, and give it your *Horse* four mornings together, in clear new Tanners Owes, one pint, mixing with the said Owes and Powder, old red Wine one pint, let this Drink be given him with a Horn blood-warm, and for four days after cover and litter him warm, and set him upon the Trench, and let him there remain fasting during those four hours; and for the time he taketh this drink, let his Manger-meat be dry hard Bread well baked, and his Rack-meat old dry Hay, but no Oates, and mix with his Bread some of this dried Powder, being the Moss of the Oak, together with Featherfew, water-Germander, and Sordium all dried and made into Powder, and let his Drink be fresh Tanners Owes, wherein came never Leather or Hides, and give it him with a Horn, if otherwise he shall refuse to take it, but howsoever let him not drink or take it but blood-warm only. This was taught me by a worthy Knight, who affirmed that he hath often used the same, and that he hath done very great Cures therewith, but I having many other approved Receipts, did never make trial thereof, nevertheless it seemeth probably good. Another which I have often used.

Take six heads of Garlick, pill the Cloves, and stamp them well, then put unto it of life honey six Spoonfals, and of wheat Meal, so much as will suffice, to make it into a Paste, making thereof Pills every one of the bigness of a good Walnut, and so give him these Pills three or four at a time, and after them three new laid Eggs, and after them cast into his Mouth of Bay-salt one handful; this must be given fasting and before he drink, at six or seven a Clock in the Morning, then let him be ridden until he do begin to sweat, then bring him into the Stable and cloath him warm, and litter him,

and

and so let him sweat an hour, then cool him by degrees, and after he hath fasted six hours give him meat, but no drink until six a clock in the evening, which let either be a sweet Mash or white water, and if need so require, let him have these Pills three mornings, resting every one a day betwixt, and thus ordering him, he will be perfectly cured. * * * This I have often proved, and have cured many *Horses* of Colds and *Glanders*. Another very good,

Take of Bay-berries one ounce, of Licorish two drams, of brown Sugar-candy, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each a penny-worth, of Garlick a half penny-worth, let all these be beaten and mixed, then take of Chamberly that is four days old, one quart, and boyl it by it self to a pint, and put to it of sweet Butter a half penny-worth, and with it the residue of the Ingredients, and so give it him blood-warm, &c. * * * Another most Sovereign receipt for the *Glanders*; and whereof I have had very great experience.

First clear his Head by pricking him in the Mouth, and rub the place with Salt whereby to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long Feathers of a Goose-wing, well anointed with Oyl-de-Bay, thrust it up and down his Nostrils, which will open and purge his Head, also perfume his Head with the stalks of Garlick broken into small pieces, with a Tunnel, or with a thick cloath cast over his Head, the better to receive the smoak into his Nostrils, and do this morning and evening, keeping him to a spare diet and moderate exercise, whereby the better to cleanse his Head and Stomach, and to empty him, by which means the Brain will be the better quieted. To perfume him also with Frankinsense, Storax, and Benjamen, of each like much well mixed together, is very Sovereign; but two or three days after, let him bleed in the Neck, after this let him be walked abroad, or gently ridden (if the Horse be of sufficient strength) to get him breath, then administer unto him this drink,

Take of Muskadine one pint, of London Treacle an ounce and a half, sweet Butter three ounces, give him this blood-warm, take then tryed Hogs-grease, and rub and chafe him under the *Chaul* very well therewith, and leave him anointed thick therewith, then make him this Poultilis,

Take of Mallowes two handfuls, of Worm-wood, Smalage and Rue, all small shred and stamped, of each one handful, of Wheat-Bran, and of tryed Hogs-greafe, of each one quart; boyl all these together, continually stirring them until the Hogs-greafe be almost consumed, and bind it under his *Chaul* so hot as he can well suffer the same, and keep his Head (especially his Poll) very warm, leaving only Air for his Mouth and Nose, and light for his Eyes. Then perfume him with Frankincense, and keep him warm in the Stable, and so let him rest with this Poultifs four and twenty hours. The next morning give him early of the best new Ale, one quart, with Anniseeds, and Licorish, made together into very fine Powder, one spoonful, and a good piece of sweet Butter, give him this with a horn blood-warm, then put into either Nostril along Goose-feather well dipped in Oyl-de-Bay and fresh Butter well mixed together, then remove the Poultifs, and if you do find the Ternels and Inflammations too ripe, open them, and let forth the matter, and taint the Orifice with Turpentine and Hogs-greafe molten together, then warm some of the Poultifs you left, but not so hot as before, and lay it to the place, and let it so remain until the next day, his Head being still kept warm, let his Manger meat be old clean Oates, well sifted and moistened in new Ale and Muskadine, if he will eat them so, if not, then Ale alone, and let his Rack meat be Wheat-Straw well threshed, and let his drink be white water for ten days after, and then let him not have afterwards any cold water, but with exercise, and let him sometimes instead of white water, a sweet Mash, keeping him to a spare diet, and let him be every day Aired, either by riding or walking, if he be able to be brought out of the Stable, but then evermore keep him warm after it, and let him either by exercise in moderate riding, or in his cloaths in the Stable, sweat a little every day once, and after let him be rubbed dry, neither let him sweat in his cloaths. Put also into his Provender the roots of Elecampane, white Lillies, and Polipodium of the Oak newly gathered, made clean and chopped very small, to the quantity of two spoonfuls every time, and give him no Provender but when he is very hungry, and fail not to continue.

continue this course of Physick and diet by the space of ten or twelve days together, and when these days be ended, give him this purging drink.

Take of white Wine one quart, or where Wine may not easily be acquired, then the like quantity of good new Ale, Aloes an ounce and a half, made into fine Powder, of Agarick half an ounce, the powder of Elecampane two spoonfuls, of Life-Honey three spoonfuls, brew all these well together, and give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm, six days after let him bleed in the Neck, and if the blood be good, then take not above a quart at most from him, but if it be naught take then a pottle from him; after this, order him both in feeding and exercise very moderately, and by this means you shall recover him, and bring him to his Pristine health again. * * * Another Receipt for the *Glanders*, very precious, which I have often tryed. *Glanders a purging drink.*

Take Life-Honey as much as will suffice, and mingle it with his Oats, rubbing the Oats and Honey together betwixt your hands, so as the Honey may be very well mixed with the Oats; let him eat his Oats thus mingled with the Honey until such time as he be perfectly cured, which will be when you shall perceive him wholly to have left the running at the Nose. * * * I had this cure from one of the ablest Farriers I ever knew in *England*, and I have cured many *Horses* therewith. Another,

Take of Sallet-Oyl, and white Wine-Vinegar, of each three spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into one of his Nostrils three mornings together, and so likewise convey it into his other Nostril the like quantity of Oyl and Vinegar three mornings together, remembering that evermore when you do administer this medicine, you do presently put up into the same Nostril a long Goose-feather dipped first in Oyl-de-Bay, stirring the Feather up and down in his Nostril, which will cause him to sneeze and snuff forth the Viscous Corruption which remaineth in his Head. Keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white Water. * * * Of this I have oft times made tryal, and it is special good as well for *Glanders*, as for any cold, if the *Horse* run at the Nose. Another right good,
Take

Take of Diapente and clarified Honey, of each one ounce, and with good Sack one pint, give it him blood-warm, being first well brewed together, drench him herewith eight mornings together, and so soon as you have given him this drink, inject into his Nostrils this Receipt following,

Take the Powder of Aristolochia-rotunda, as much as will suffice, and mix with it white or Claret Wine in such a proportion as may make it liquid, and inject or squirt it into his Nose. * * * Or else,

Take the juyce of Sceldine, mingled with fair water, and inject it into his Nose. * * * Or else,

Take Roch Allum and Salt dissolved in white Wine, and inject that up into his Nose. * * * Either of all these are very good to cause to cast such naughty Corruption forth of his Nose and Head, that doth much oppres him, which Lotions are to be administred evermore after the aforesaid drink. * * * Another also very good drink,

Take Tanners Oves new made, and new Milk, of each one pint, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, one head of Garlick, pilled and bruised, a little Turmerick in fine Powder; boyl all these together as much as will suffice, then take it off and put in your Sallet-Oyl, and so give it him blood-warm; give him this drink three times in fifteen days, that is to say, once every five days, and every time you do administer it unto him, convey half a hornful into each Nostril, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours; after, warm cloathed and littered, and then give him a sweet Mash, and such meat as is dry, sweet, and wholsome, but during the time of his Cure let his drink be white water. * * * This is very good. Another very good,

Take of fair water two quarts, of Comin, made into fine Powder and searsed two ounces, and of the inward Rine of Elder six handfuls; boyl this to a Moity, then take it off, and when it is half cold strain it, and put into the Liquor half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and give him thereof at his Mouth three hornfuls, and at either Nostril half a hornful, then leap his back, and ride him moderately till he be warm, so set him up warm cloathed and littered, and three or four hours after give him a warm Mash, but let him eat some Hay first. * * * This I can aver to be very good both for *Glanders* and *Cold*. Another, Take

Take Oyl-de-Bay, and sweet Butter, of each half a pound, Rosemary shred very well and small half a handful, Garlick one pound, beat the Garlick unpilled in a Stone Morter, with a wooden Pestel very well, then put to it your Oyl, Butter, and Rosemary, and so make it into one body, then with Wheat-flower so much as will suffice, make it up into Pills, and give him three or four of these every day for ten days together, and order him *ut supra*. Of this I never made tryal, but it was recommended unto me for a special good Receipt. Another,

Take Cloves, Long-Pepper, Brown Sugar-Candy, and London Treacle, of each two ounces, beat the Sugar-Candy and Spices to very fine Powder, and put to them your Treacle, and after add to these Ingredients, of good Sack or Muscadine one pint, and first warm it upon the fire, and when it is almost cold enough to be given him, put to it of Sallet-Oyl three penny-worth, and so blood-warm give it him, and in giving convey into either Nostril half a hornful of this drink, and then order him *ut supra*. Another,

Take of new Milk one quart, warm from the Cow, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised, boyl these together, keeping them with continual stirring, then take it off, and let it cool, and a little before it be cold enough to give him, put to it of Life-Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sallet-Oyl half a pint, give it him blood-warm, reserving for either Nostril half a hornful, then order him *ut supra*. These latter Cures I never made tryal of, but I think them to be very good. Another,

Take Isop, sweet Margerom, Lavender-Cotton, the roots and crops of Elecampane, of each one handful, chop and shred all these together very small, and boyl them in good Ale or Beer, so much as will suffice, then strain it, and when the Liquor is almost cold, break into it two new laid Eggs, and stir it well together, and so give it him blood-warm, give him this drink three times, that is every third day. This hath been recommended unto me for a very good Receipt, whereby to cure not only the *Glanders*, but the mourning of the *Chine*, but I never made use thereof.

But now sith hence I am come almost to the end of my Receipts

ceipts for this infirmity, I will give you two Receipts, the one for the *Glanders*, the other for the mourning of the *Chine*, which are Master *Markhams*, which he stileth thus. Two most certain and newly found out Medicines, which will without fail cure any *Glanders*, though our *Farriers* hold it impossible. The cure. If your *Horse* his cold be come to the worst *Glanders*, which is a continual running at the *Nose*, and hath so run by the space of divers months, so that the *Farriers* can do no good, then shall you take better then two handfals of the white cankerous Moss which groweth upon an old Oaken pale, and boyl it in Milk two quarts, till one part be almost consumed, then strain it and squeeze the Moss well, which done give it your *Horse* luke-warm to drink, then take two Geefe Feathers, and take sweet Butter, as a bigg Walnut, and with the Powder of Brimstone, finely beaten and searfed, work them together with your Knife or Splatter, till the Butter be brought to a high Gold colour, then take two clean Feathers the longest in all the Goosewing, and first at the quill ends with a Needle fasten two long Threads, then with your Salve anoint the Feathers all over, which done in the dry Powder of Brimstone, rowl them over and over, then putting the Feathers ends formost, open the *Horses* Nostrils, and thrust them up into his Head, then take the threads, which are at the quills ends, and fasten them on the top of the *Horses* head, which done ride him abroad for an hour or two, Airing him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tyed up a pretty season, untye the threads, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have the next occasion to use them, and keep his body warm. This disease you must understand, cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leisure: Therefore you must continue your Medicine, as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at the least thrice a week, if it be for four or five months together, and be sure it will in the end yield your desire.

Now the second and well assured, and certain Medicine
is

is to take Elecampane roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bring them to Pap, then with a horn give them to the *Horse*, together with the Milk luke-warm, being no more then will make the roots liquid, then having anointed your Goose-feathers put them into his Nostrils, and ride him forth as before is shewed. The other receipt for the mourning of the *Chine*, he entituleth thus,

A most rare and reprov'd Medicine, to cure any high running *Glanders*, called the mourning of the *Chine*, held of all men incurable. This disease to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or *Farrier* in this Kingdom can tell how to cure: For it comes not to the extremity, till the *Horse* hath run at the *Nose*, a year or more, and have at the roots of his *Tongue* a hard Lung gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine own part it is well known, that I have cured many with this Medicine only:

Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tussilaginis*, beaten into *Perfume*. fine Powder, of each four drams, then beating them with fine Turpentine bring them into a paste, then make of it little Cakes or Trofches, as broad as a Groat, and dry them. This done lay about two or three of them on a Chafingdish of Coals, and cover them with a Funnel, so that the smoak may come out only at the end thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the *Horses* Head through his Nostrils, then ride the *Horse* till he begin to sweat; this do once every morning, before water, till the running be stopped, which will be in very short space, considering the greatnes of this disease.

These be Master *Markham's* two great Cures, which by reason he hath so great Encomiums of their Vertues, and also what great Cures he hath wrought and perfected with them, I think it not amiss to insert them in this place. Thus I have deliver'd unto you a great number of Receipts for this one disease, many of which I have found very good, some I could never have means or occasion to prove, and therefore I must expect prompt opportunities, in the interim I do remit them to my brethren to practise. But I will now conclude this Chapter, with one only Receipt more, which I do esteem my Master-piece of this Malady,

having had much experience thereof, nor did it ever fail me upon often tryal made. This cure is called, The black drink of the *Glanders*. The Cure. First prepare his *Body* with Bran prepared, and after with a Clister, and your Goose-feathers, as before hath been taught you. This done,

The black
drink for
the Gland-
ers.

Take new made Chamberly, and of the best and strongest white Wine Vinegar, of each half a pint, then take of Mustard-seed two or three Spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vinegar, and let it be very well ground, that done, put your Vinegar and Chamberly to the Mustard, and so stir them well together. Then take of Tar and Bay-salt, of each like much, so much as will suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof, as three Eggs-shells will hold, the meat first taken forth, and having first prepared these things, let the *Horse* be taken forth out of the Stable (being kept that night to a very spare diet) and ride him till he begin to sweat, then give him the three Eggs-shells filled with the said Tar and Salt, and so soon as he hath taken that, give him with a horn the forenamed drink made of Chamberly, Vinegar and Mustard, all at the mouth, excepting only two small or half hornfuls, which let be conveyed into his Nostrils, which so soon as he hath taken, let him be ridden again, so much as before you did, then bring him into the Stable, cloath him up warm and litter him well, and so let him stand upon the Trench until three or four of the Clock, then unbit him and give him a warm Mash, and order him in all things as is usual for *Horses* in Physick. Give him this Medicine or drink every other or third day, three or four times, and it is an infallible Cure. *** This Cure I got from a Noble Knight, who had done many Cures therewith, who was very precise in teaching it, and since I came to know thereof, I have perfected many great Cures therewith, upon *Horses* far spent with the *Glanders*, infomuch as if it be rightly and carefully administred it will cure the rankest *Glanders* that is. And with this Cure I conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. XI.

SECT. I. H.

Hypophylus.

WELL Hippoferus, *ſith* hence we have finiſhed this Chapter, let us go to the next; and tell me, what means have you to help the falling away of the Hair from the Main and Tail of a Horſe.

Hippoſ. Sir, this diſeaſe cometh ſometimes by a heat which the Horſe hath taken, which hath ingendred a dry *Mainge* in the *Main* and *Tail*, which is the occaſion of the ſhedding of the *Hair* from thoſe parts, and ſometimes it cometh by a Surfeit, cauſing evil *Humours* to reſort to thoſe parts, which is the cauſe of the falling away of the *Hair*, and I have alſo known a *Horſe* to ſhed the *Hair* both of *Main* and *Tail* after he hath been violently and dangerously viſited with the *Stavers*, the ſigns are evident. And the cure is,

First take blood from the *Neck-vein*, if it be only in the *Main*, but if in both *Main* and *Tail*, and then after you have opened the *Neck-vein*, and taken from thence a reasonable quantity of Blood, then ſlit the *ſkin* of the inward part of the *Tail*, next to the *Tuel* from the *Buttocks* to the fourth *Joint*, and there with your *Cornet* you ſhall find a hard *Griſtle* which the *French Marſhals* do call *Barivole*, raiſe it up with your *Cornet* and take it forth: That done, fill up the cleft with Salt finely beaten, and then with a hot iron ſteep it in Buckly; burn the *Tail* in ſundry places, and then anoint the places ſo burned with Hogs-greaſe till they be whole. * * This cure I got in *France* among the *Marſhals* there, whom I ſaw cure ſundry *Horſes* of this malady, and I my ſelf have cured four or five after the ſame method. If it be both in the *Main* and *Tail*, and that you be fearful to experiment this cure by reaſon you never ſaw the manner of it, then ſearch both *Main* and *Tail* well with your finger as aforeſaid, and anoint the places with this Unguent. Take Quick-ſilver, and tryed Hogs-greaſe (the Quick-ſilver being firſt mortified

with fasting spittle) incorporate them very well together till the Hogs-grease be of a perfect Ash-colour, and anoint the forrance therewith every day once, holding a hot bar of iron neer, to cause the Oyntment to sink in, and in three or four days thus dressing him, he will be well. * * This is a very good Receipt, and I have often used it.

S E C T. 2. H.

Hippoph. **B**Ut then what is good to make the Hair to grow again?

HAIR TO
GROW.

Hippof. Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the blood of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine Powder: Boyl all these together, and rub and anoint the places therewith every day, and it will cause the Hair to come again apace. * * This is special good.

Hippoph. What is good for the Headach?

Headach.

Hippof. First let him bleed in the Mouth, and rub it with Salt to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long Feathers of a Goose-wing well anointed in Oyl-de-Bay, thrust them up and down his Nostrils, whereby to open and purge his Head, and then perfume his Head with the stalks of Garlic broken into small pieces, as is before shewed, keeping him to a spare diet, and moderate exercise, the better to cleanse his Head and Stomach, and to empty himself, by means whereof the Head and Brain will be the better quieted. It were very good also to perfume him with Frankincense, Storax, and Benjamin, grossly beaten and well mixed, of each like much, as will suffice, but two or three days after let him bleed, and give him white water for eight days after, during which time you may do well sometimes to give him a sweet Mash. * * This is very good.

S E C T. 3. H.

Hippoph. **W**Hat is good to help the Heels that be scabbed?

Hippof. You shall many times have small dry Scabs upon your Horse Heels, which will not be greatly noxious to him, and thereupon the best cure for his Keeper daily

daily to anoint them throughly with the Oyntment made of Elbow-greafe. But if there be any running *Hæmorrh* issuing from the *Heels* of the *Horse* then let him stand every day morning and evening up to the Belly in water till the Scabs do contract, then make a convenient *Cauterize* neer to the *joynts*, as well crofs as thwartwise, then heal it up as you use to do *kibed Heels*. * * This is very good.

S E C T. 4. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for Heels that be kibed?

Hippof. This disease the *French* do call *Favarrs*, which is a kind of Scratches, and the cure is to *Cauterize* the middle of the swelling along, both long and crosswise; that done take Ox-dung reeking hot, mix it upon the fire with Sallet-Oyl, and apply it to the forrance, once and no more, then do afterwards as I prescribed you in the cure of a Splent in *lib. 2. chap. 18. sect. 17. S.* This I never tried.

S E C T. 5. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat cure have you for Heels that are troubled with the Mellet?

Hippof. This forrance we call the *Mellet*, is a very dry scab that groweth upon the Heel, sometimes on the one and sometimes on the other Heel; sometimes it cometh of corrupt Blood, sometimes of a blow given by the *Toe* with the *hinder Foot*, for the *Mellet* grows commonly upon the *Heel* or *Fore-foot*, and sometimes for want of good rubbing and dressing after Tavel; it will also have a dry chop without any moisture at all. The signs to know it is easie, to wit, it will soon be felt with your hand. To cure it I have before shewed you in *sect. precedenti*. But yet I will give you one Receipt more for the same cure, whereof I have made often tryal, and it is very good.

Take of ordinary Honey half a pint, black Sope a quarter of a pound, mix these together, and put thereto four or five spoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allum finely beaten as a Hens-Egg unburned, and of Rye-flower two spoonfuls, mix

mix and incorporate all these well together, and having first clipped or shaven away the *Hair*, apply this medicine Plaster-wise to the sores, just so far as the sores goeth, and let it so remain five days, and then take it away, and wash all the Legg, Foot and sores with powdred Beef-broth, and after rope his Legs with Thumbbands of soft Hay wet, and he will be sound. But then you must understand that when at any time you do dress the sores, you do not fail to take off the dry scab, or what ever crusty thing shall be upon or about the place, and by washing and cleansing the sores that you do make it marvellous clean. * * This is a very good Receipt.

S E C T. 6. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to help a Horse that is Hide-bound? *Hippof.* This malady is when the *skin* of the Horse doth cleave to the *Flesh*, as you cannot with your hand pull up the *skin* from the *Ribs*; sometimes it cometh through extreme poverty and maceration; and sometimes through the indiscretion of the Groom for want of good tending; sometimes of a Surfet taken by over-riding, and violent heats given him, and then washt, or negligently suffered to stand long in the cold or in the rain: And sometimes again it cometh of corrupt *Cholerick blood* siccatating the *Flesh*, which wanting its natural course, causeth the *skin* to shrink and cling together, and so cleave the *Bones* and *Flesh*; it also maketh him sick, and to have a gaunt *Belly* shrunk up to his *Flanks*, and his *Hair* will stare, and his *Legs* will swell: And by these signs you may know the disease it is so conspicuous. It causeth also siccity and aridity in the *Liver* and *Lungs*, causing great torment throughout all the whole *Body*, and his *dung* will be very hard and dry, and of a naughty favour, for his *Body* will be very costive, and if he have not help in reasonable time, if death it self ensue not, yet will at last other desperate maladies attach him, whereof the least will be the *Mainge*, which will not easily or suddenly be cured. The cure is to let him *Blood* either on both sides the *Neck*, or on both the *Spur-veins*, then cloth and litter him warm, and do no more unto him that

that day, more then to give him good meat and white water, for cold water he must not drink till he be throughly well again. The next day give him this drink.

Take of white-Wine one pint, of Sallet-oyl one pound, of Venice Turpentine one ounce, of Mithridate, of Loaf-Sugar, and of Cassia prepared, of each two ounces, of the milk of sweet Almonds half a pint, and of Verjuce of the Crab one pennyworth, mix all these well together, and warming it upon the fire, give it to the sick *horse*, let him have this drink six or seven mornings together, always having a special care to the strength of the *Horse* as well in this, as in all other your cures. * * This is a cure I have used very often and have found it to be special good. *Another* singular good receipt, first, anoint his body all over with *Acopum* and *Sack* warmed together, or else with this *Bath*.

*Hids-
bound.*

Take fair water, Mallows, Smallage, Rosemary, and Bay-leaves; boil all these in the water till they shall become soft, and so *bath* his whole *body* therewith warm, and when you have dried him again, anoint him with this unguent.

Take of Hogs-grease tryed one pound, Camomile, Mal-lows, Grunsel, Smallage, of each one handful, chop the herbs very small, and boyl them with the Hogs-grease a good while with a soft fire, then strain it, and wring forth the oyl that cometh of the herbs, and with this Unguent anoint his *body* all over, for it will both supple and loosen his *skin*: the next day give him this drink.

Take of Muskadine and of strong Ale, of each one pint, Grunsel, Rue, Smallage, Rosemary, and Betony, of each like much: all together amounting to a handful. Then take Gum-Dracagant one ounce, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised: let all these boyl in the Muskadine and Ale, to the consumation of one pint, then put to it of sweet Butter a penny-worth, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and strain it very hard, and so give it him bloud-warm. Let this drink be divided into three parts, wherefore give him one part the first morning, the other second parts, the second and third mornings following; for you must understand that when I said that this drink must be boyled to the consumati-

on of one pint ; my meaning is, that it must boyl till one part be consumed, and not otherwise ; and in the interim you must keep your *Horse* very warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, and four days after he hath been thrice thus drenched, give him this other drink. Take Anniseeds, Licorish, Fennelseeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dried, Fenugrick, Turmerick, of each like much, all made into very fine powder, and searsed, let two spoonfuls of this powder (being well mixed,) be infused in good Ale one quart, with Sallet oyl two spoonfuls, give him this drink four mornings together, wherein you are to observe that the first time you are to administer this drink to your *Horse*, you are to put into the Ale two spoonfuls of this powder, and the other three mornings, but one spoonful : keep him warm, and order him as is behooveful for a sick *Horse* that is in *physick*, and he is certainly cured. * * This is a special good Receipt.

Another,

Let him *bloud* in both the *flank veins*, then take of good white Wine one quart, and put thereto of Sallet-oyl three ounces, of Cummin one dram, Anniseeds and Licorish, of each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searse them, and give it him blood-warm, then set him up, and let him be thoroughly rubbed against the *hair*, and along the *back* and *ribs*, and nape of the neck, half an hour together, then cover all his *back* with a *Sack* made thoroughly well soaked in a tub of water, and when it hath drained a while, lay it upon him, and upon that, two housing cloaths at the least, and gird them close unto him well wisped, which will bring him into a sweat, which truly will be the prime cause whereby to restore him to his pristine sanity, but let him not sweat above an hour at most, and cool him by degrees, taking away the *Sack* first, and keep him to sweet Mashs or white water during the time of his *physick*, and longer ; let him be thus drenched, sweated, and ordered, seven days together, and give him in stead of his Oates, Barly boyled, and dry Beans bruised in a *Mill*, and good old sweet Hay, well shaken and dusted, and sometimes green *Mault* from off the *floor* ; and after eight days let him *bloud* in both the *breast veins*, but take not above a pint of *blood* from him

him in all, and that day you *blondy* him, give him of good Sack one pint, and put to it of Sallet-oyl a quarter of a pint, and of *London Treacle* one ounce, warm this upon the fire, and brew them well together, and so administer it bloud-warm, then leap his *back*, and ride him till he sweat, then set him up warm cloathed and littered, and at night give him a sweet Mash, putting into it the powder of Brimstone two spoonfuls, and he will be well again. * * This is very good. Another ;

Take Hogs greafe two drams, and of the juyce of Dragon wort one ounce, of Incense half a dram, of Sirrup of Roses three ounces, dissolve all these in Tisan one pint and a half, set it upon the fire till all be dissolved, and so give it him bloud-warm, and exercise him moderately upon it till he do begin to sweat, then set him up warm, and exercise him moderately upon it till he do begin to sweat, then set him up warm, and let him fast three hours after, and this will scoure from him all his infection, loosen his skin, and procure a good appetite to meet, provided you take *bloud* from him the day before, and (if as well in this receipt as in all the former) you do give your *Horse* a *suppository* the day before you drench him, you will much better and sooner perfect your *cure*, especially if you find him *costive*, otherwise a gentle *Clyster* will not be amiss. * * This is a well approved cure, and I have often used it.

S E C T. 7. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you cure a Horse that is Hipshot? *Hippof*, Sir, this cometh sundry ways, that is to say, either by a stroke with another *Horse*, or by a wrench, by which means the *bone* may be slipped out, and then it must be put in again, or by a strain, which may cause him to halt, or by means of some thorne which he may get by leaping or running among bushes, which must first be gotten out, otherwise the place will fester, and he go lame. The cure is, first let him *bloud* in the *thigh veine*, on that side whereon the grief is, then charge him with this *charge* we call a *Honey charge*, prescribed you in the next *Section*, and so put upon the other

foot a patten-shoe, and let him not lie down in ten days (if that the bone have been out) after bathe the place well with that bath which is already taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 5. lit. B.* and the Receipt beginneth thus (take Smalage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps-suet, &c.) and put into the *Bath* some of the said *Honey-charge*, and if this do not cure him (as it is most probable it will) then apply to the place this *Ceroene* (as the *French* do term it) which is a Searcloth very hot, and this *Ceroene* is thus made :

Take of black Pitch half a pound, of Mastick two ounces, of Galbanum four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each half a pound; melt these in a pot together, and when it is half cold, charge the place up to the *hanch*, and so overthwart the *reins* of the *back*, and if he be not cured at the end of eight or ten days more with this *Ceroene*, or *Searcloth*, then take it off and apply to the place grieved this Unguent :

Take of Oyl de-Bay, Althea, tried Hogs-grease, of each half a pound; incorporate all these together to an unguent, and therewith anoint, rub, and chafe the place grieved, and he shall do well. * * This is a very good Receipt, and I have made great use thereof.

S E C T. 8. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make this Honey-Charge, Hippofe-
rus ?

Hoppof. I will shew you Sir, Take of Wheat-meal two pound, and put a little Wine to it, as much as will suffice, put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make a Poultefs, and when it is well mixed, add to it of Bolearmoniak in fine powder, half a pound, of common English Honey one pound, then set it upon the fire, and boyl it, keeping it continually stirring, and put to it in the boyling, of black pitch half a pound, still stirring till it be boyled so much as will suffice, and when it is almost enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, of Oyl de-Bay, Comin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugrick, and of Linseed-meal, of each two drams, boyl all these together again, still stirring
tlem

them till they be well incorporate, and herewith charge the grieved *members* of the *horse*. * * This is the very best charge that I do know for ordinary griefs of this nature; but if you be to apply this to many *horses*, then must you double your ingredients according to the number of your *horses*. This *charge* is singular good for any slip or wrench in the shoulder, hip, or other member, for all sorts of scratches, and for stiffness of *sinews* hurt or any way offended, as also for a *hip-shot* or *dislocation*, or for a *horse* that is overwearied with travel, as also to draw away all bad *humours*, to assuage swellings and tumours, and it will serve in the place of a *white plaister*. And this I have often tried.

SECT. 9. H.

Hippoph. **W**ell now let us come to treat of the hoof; what have you good to mollifie the hoof, and ^{Hoof to} _{grow.} to cause it to grow?

Hippof. I gave you a very good receipt in *lib. 2. chap 6. sect. 3. lit. C.* but now I will give you more which shall be very good. Take Elder-leaves, and of Wal-wort, of each like much; stamp and strain them till you have gotten of the juyce one quart, or better, then take of Mutton or Deers suet clarified, three pound, Turpentine, Honey, and Sallet-oyl, of each one pound: boyl these till all the juyce be consumed into the other ingredients; then when it is cold, reserve it, and when you have occasion to use it, anoint the *hoof* therewith. * * This is very precious. Another as good to cause the *hoof* to grow. You must observe this rule *viz.* you must at what time you would have him *shod*, cause his *hoof* to be pared well and even, and to open the *heels* and *frush* well, and so let him be *shod* up; which must be done when the *Moon* is three days in the increase after the *change*, by which means the *hoof* will grow more in eight days then (if he had been pared and shod in any other time of the *Moon*) in fifteen days, both faster and better; then to supple the *hoof*, and to cause it to grow the more, Take Goats-grease, Turpentine, Sallet oyl and new wax, of each two ounces, melt them together, then whilest they be hot, add to it of ordinary Honey

ney three ounces, of Sanguis-Draconis one dram, in fine powder: incorporate all these together, and bring them to an Unguent, with which anoint and rub the *hoofs* of the *horse* daily, which may well be done by using to each the quantity of a haffe nut of this oynment, which will cause the *hoof* to grow more in fifteen days, then without it in three months, and if you add to the former ingredients, of the juyce of the herb called *Hepatica*, six ounces, and of the root called *Hof-manderigalis* two ounces, it will be much better. For if you do find that the aforefaid Unguent do not make the *hoof* to come away to your mind, then will this addition assuredly do it. ** This is a very good receipt. Another,

Take Sallet-oyl four ounces, new Wax and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Goats-grease three ounces, melt all these together, and being all molten, take it from the fire, and put into it of Horfe-grease, Agrippa, and of Marciaton, of each one ounce, beat and incorporate all these together with the other ingredients, till it be through cold; with this oynment, rub and anoint the *coffins* of the *hoofs*, especially about the *crown* at the *hair*, every day once, and it will grow very much. ** This is singular good. Another very good,

Take of Hogs-grease three pound, of patch or pece-grease two pound, Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, and of Sallet-oyl one pound, melt, and mix all these together, bringing it to an Oynment, and herewith rub and anoint the *Coffins* of the *horse* especially about the *Cronets*, near to the hair. ** But if your *horse* be prickt in shoeing, or otherwise accidently hurt in or about the *Sole*, draw forth the *Nail* first, or whatsoever was the cause of his harm, then take a few of the longest hairs from his *Tail*, and wrap them about the point of the said *Nail*, and cast the said *Nail* (thus wrapped up in the *Hair*) into the fire, and he will go found, and upright again: provided you do not suffer any other *Nail* to be driven in the place of the former. ** This may have supposed to be a *Charm*, but I for my part do not think it to be any such matter. I have often used the same, and have evermore found it to make a perfect Cure.

Now as touching hurts and bruises in the *feet*, most certain it is, that a *horse* will many times have a *sofe foot*, which will

run with water and matter about the *Fruſh* and *heel*, which many will ignorantly imagine to be a diſeaſe in the *Foot*, not knowing how it might come, when as it is nought elſe but a very bruife, gotten by treading upon a ſtone or ſtub, and I have cured many *horses* in this wiſe, *viz.* Take a wild or garden Colewort, and beat it with old Bores-greaſe to an Unguent, and apply it unto the Sorance, then leap his *back*, and ride him an eaſie Trot upon ſward ground, to the end the Medicine may the better enter into the *ſore*, and thus dressing him once a day he will ſoon be well. * * This is very good. Hoof-weeping. But if your *horse* have a weeping *hoof*, or ſmall clifts, which diſeaſe the *France* do call *la Corne que Eſcume*, the *Coffin* which frotheth or weefeth; Then the cure is; Firſt to open the place with your *Drawing iron* or *Cornet*, I mean the outward part thereof only, till you come unto the *Maſter Vein*, which you muſt break with your *Cornet* and ſuffer it to bleed ſo long as it will, then fill up the wound with the powder of Salt, and hurds ſteeped in Vinegar, and bind them ſo on that they fall not off, and thus by dressing it every day once, and in ſhort time it will be well. This cure I never tried my ſelf, but I have been preſent ſundry times in *France*, where I have ſeen this cure fully perfected by *Marſhals* there.

But if the *hoof* be *loofe*, then: take Bettony, Roſemary, Rue, Red-Mints, Tanſie, Sothern-wood, of each like much: Hoof-loofe. bray all theſe herbs with Tar, ſo much as will ſuffice, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, ſo much as will ſuffice, and apply it to the *hoof*, till you find that it be faſt again. * * This alſo is very good. *Another*, Take Tar, Brimſtone in fine powder, Wheat-bran, and the Urine of a Man-child: boyl all theſe to a Pultis, and apply it hot to the *hoof*, and this will faſten it. * * This is ſingular good. But if the Vein lie bare in the *ſole* of the *hoof* to grow over it, whereby it becometh found again, make this Plaiſter, and apply it to the Sorance.

Take Stone-Pitch, and Roſin, of each two ounces, Brimſtone in fine powder one ounce; melt all theſe together till they be well incorporate, then when you take it from the fire, add thereto of Turpentine one ounce, and ſo ſtir them all together, and as it cooleth, make it up into Rows, and when Hoof-hurt. you

you would use it, pour the same into the *Orifice* by the help of a red hot-iron, and so all about the Sorrhance, then clap Hurds upon it, and over that a piece of Leather, cut and shaped for the purpose, and so splent it to keep it fast on. Use thus to dress him twice or thrice, and he will be cured. * * This is very good. But if the *foot* have taken any harm by an over-reach, stub, prick, or gravel, then making the wound very clean, and laying it bare,

Take Sope, and Salt of each like much, so much as will suffice, make them to an Unguent, then first wash the Sore with Chamberly and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and dry it again, with a linnen rag, then bind on the Medicine, and let it remain four and twenty hours; and do thus if the wound be great three or four days together: then having with this Medicine exhausted all the *Venome* (which it will soon do;) take of Train-Oyl one spoonful or two, and much Ceruse, that is, white lead in fine powder, and so work them to a thick salve; then apply that to the sorrhance plaister-wise till it be whole; which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or is more kindly, or Natural for the breeding of a new *hoof* than this. Another most soveraign for a *hoof-bound*.

Hoof-bound. First pluck off the Shoes, and shooe him up again with *half Moon or luner shoes*, then ease with your drawing-Iron or Rape the quarters of the *hoofs* on both sides of the *Feet*, from the *Cronet*, down to the end or bottom of the *hoofs*, so deep till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two-Rases it will be the better, and enlarge the *hoofs* the more, that done anoint the *hoofs* above next to the *hair*, about the *Cronet* with this oyntment:

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax, and of Sheeps or Deers-Suet, of each half a pound, of Tarr, and of Sallet-oyl, of each half a pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when it is almost ready to be taken off from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and so stir it well together till it be cold. Let his *hoofs* be anointed therewith once a day till you do perceive he mendeth, and then let him be ridden upon soft, moist-swardy-ground, an hour or two every day once, for the space of a *Month*, and if he do not grow well at the *Months* end, (as

(as I am confident he will) then take of the *Lunet-shoes*, and pare his *Soles*, *Frasbes*, and *Heels*, so thin, till you may see a dew to come forth, and the *blood* ready to start, then tack on his *Shoes*, and stop all his *Feet* as well within as without, with this Charge:

Take of Cow or Ox-dung, and of Wheat-Bran, of each so much as will suffice, of tryed Hogs-grease, and of the Kidney of a Loyn of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine, and Tar, of each half a pound, melt all these together (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in, when it is almost ready to be taken from the fire, continually stirring it, to the end the Ingredients may be the better mixed. Let this Charge be laid on good and hot, renewing it every day once by the space of nine days, to the end the *sole* may arise: But if this will not do it, then take out the *soles* clean, and after you have stanch'd the bleeding with the tender tops of Ilope well stamped in a stone Mortar, then apply the medicine of *Snails*, Bay-salt, and red Nettles shewed you in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 18. F.* renewing it once a day for three days, and after you may heal up the *Feet*, and bring a new, and perfect *sole* with your green Oyntment so often recommended unto you in many other of my *Cures*; and thus you shall rectifie the *Hoofs*, and make him sound, but then you must be shod with *Lavels* again, and turned forth to Grass. * * * But if he hath stood in the Stable with little exercise, whereby he may be in danger of a *dry Foundring*:

Take of Turpentine, of Sheeps-suet, and of Wax, of each one pound, of Sallet-Oyl one pint, of Tar half a pint, melt all these upon a soft fire, and stir them in the melting until they be all well incorporate, but put in your Turpentine last, which being well molten put it up in a clean Vessel, and keep it for your use, and herewith anoint the *Hoofs* of your *Horse* daily, they having been first washed very clean, and wiped dry, and this will conserve his *Hoofs* supple and moist, keep them cool, and make them very tough and sound. * * * This I have often used. But if the *Hoofs* be somewhat streight, and yet the *Horse* not *Hoofe-bound*, then administer this Medicine to his *Feet*.

Take

*Hoof
singsht.*

Take the fat of Bacon, the Sward cut away half a pound, of white Sope three ounces, Balm one handful, and five or six sprigs of the tender tops of Rue, chop, and stamp all these together very well in a Morter, and then fry them, and lay them to the *Hoofs* reasonable hot, and keep him from coming in any wet till he be well, and being thus dressed every day once, his *Hoofs* will in short time be sound, well and easie to him again. * * * This Receipt is very good. But let us discourse of a *loose Hoof*, yet a little more. Take of Tar three spoonfuls, of Rosin three ounces, of Tansy, Rue, Mints, and Sothren-wood of each one handful, pound all these very well adding to it of sweet Butter half a pound, of Virgin Wax half an ounce, and so try them altogether till it come to be a thick Salve, and apply it Plaister-wise warm to the *Hoofs*, seven or eight days together, and this will cure him, and fasten the *Hoofs* again. * * * This is very good. But if his Hoof be otherwise hurt, either by some other *Horse* treading upon his *Hoof*, or by any other accident, then

*Hoof troden
upon or
hurt.*

Take an Egg, and Soot so much as will suffice, to be beaten with the said Egg till it be stiff like a Salve, then add to it of Sallet-Oyl and Harts-horn made into Powder, of each two or three spoonfuls, boyl this to a thick Salve, continually stirring it in the boyling, and apply it to the *Hoofs* Plaister-wise, daily dressing them till they be whole. This I never made tryal of, howbeit it was commended to me to be a special good Receipt. Another very good to make a brittle or pomized *Hoof* tough.

*Hoof brittle
to make
tough.*

Take fresh Butter one pound, Wax and Turpentine of each half a pound, melt first the Wax, then put to it your Butter, and when that is molten put in your Turpentine, and so stirring them well together, reserve it to your use, and when you do use it, apply it thus: Make a Buskin of Leather, so as it may be buckled or tyed above or upon the *Pastern-joynt*, and then lay on so much of the medicine as will cover the *Hoof* all over thick, and then put on the Buskin, and fasten it to his *Leg* or *Pastern*, and let him stand so night and day till you have occasion to ride or exercise him, dressing him thus once a day, and the longer you use this medicine, the better will be his *Hoof*. * * * I have often made tryal

*Hoof to
grow.*

tryal of this Receipt, and I have found it to be very good. But if your *Horse* hath his *Hoof* broken, and that you have a desire it should grow, then

Take Garlick pilled seven ounces, Rue three handfuls, Alum powdred and searfed seven ounces, old Bores-greafe two pound, beat all these together with Asses-dung one handful, and then boyl it, and so reserve it, and anoint his *Hoofs* therewith, and they will grow very fast. * * This is very good. if he be hurt by being cast in his *Halter*, then

Take of Wax and Turpentine, of each one ounce, melt them together in a Pot: Take then of Verdegreafe and Hogs-greafe, of each one ounce, and incorporate them well together raw, *viz.* without boyling, the Verdegreafe being first made into very fine Powder, and put into another Pot by it self: Then when you have occasion to use it whereby to dress a fore: Take first of that you made of Turpentine and Wax two parts, and then of that other which was not boyled, made of Verdegreafe and Hogs-greafe a third part, and mixing them well together in the Palm of your hand, anoint the forrance therewith; thus doing every day once or twice, it will be whole, remembring to clip away the *Hair* first from about the place. And this is a most excellent Receipt. * * I have often proved it. *Halter cast*

S E C T. 10. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat may a man best apply to the Hoof of a Horse that is swelled, as if he were in danger to breed a Blood or Bog-Spaven?

Hippof. This cometh sometimes to young *Horses* when they be too hard ridden and journeyed in their youth, which is the cause they swell in that place, by reason the blood falling down there setleth, which if it be not speedily removed, will assuredly beget a *Wet-Spaven*. The cure is, anoint the place swoln four or five days together with natural Balsome, and after repress the *Humours* with this charge, having first given fire to the place lighted.

Take Oyl of Roses two ounces, Bolearmoniack in Powder one ounce, Wheat-flower half an ounce, and the white of *Hoof swell.*

M m m

an

an Egg, beat and incorporate all these together, and after you have ended to anoint the place swelled with Balsome : Charge every day for four or five days after, the place herewith, and he will be well. * * This is very good.

S E C T. 11. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to dry up Humours ?

Hippof. This kind of drying up of *Humours*, is but only to restrain them for working too much upon wounds, whereby the better to cure them. The way therefore is,

First bathe the sorrhance well with hot molten fresh Butter, and then strew upon it the powder of Rosin for a day or two ; then take of the thickest Cream, and of Soot, of each as much as will suffice, and work them to a thick Paste, and so apply it to the sorrhance Plaister-wise, and it will both dry up the *Humour* which possesseth it, and heal up and skin the fore in a short space. * * This I have often used, and it is right good.

S E C T. 12. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to cure the hurt in the Shoulder, or the Member ?

Hippof. There are many things good for a malady of this nature, and when I come to treat of Sprains, Sores, and Wounds, I shall deliver them unto you, and therefore I will now refer them to their proper place, only I will give you one for the present.

*Hurt Shoul-
der.*

Take Oyl-de-Bay, Dialthea, fresh Butter, Oyl of Turpentine, of each two ounces, boyl and mix them well together, and when they be well incorporate, anoint the place grieved therewith so hot as the *Horse* can well suffer it without scalding, and let him be thus anointed twice or thrice a day, and give the *Horse* moderate exercise by walking him a Foot-pace gently up and down. And this is a certain and an approved remedy. This I never tryed, but a great *Farrrier* who is cryed up for famous, taught it me, and wished me to make use thereof.

S E C T.

S E C T. 13. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat do you hold good wherewith to cure old Hurts?

Hippof. The only best way to cure and dry up old hurts and fores, is this: Take old shooes and burn them to Coals, and then beat them to fine Powder, then add to it unslaked Lime and ordinary Honey, as much as will suffice, to bring it to a stiff Paste, which done, knead them all together unto a Paste, and so make it into a Cake, and then lay it upon a Fire-pan, and so let it be well baked; which done, make it into fine Powder, and every day once put of this Powder into the Wound, and it will heal it up, nothing sooner. Hurts old to cure.
 *** This I have often used, and it is very good, and herewith we do conclude this Chapter.

C H A P. XII.

S E C T. I. I.

Hippopherus.

Vhat is good to help any imperfection in the Feet?

Hippof. First pare the Feet very thin, open the Heels and make the Shooes wide, large, and hollow: If the imperfection come by *Foundring*, then

Take a good quantity of Ox or Cow-dung, Tar, and Hogs-grease of each half as much, and of Soot the like quantity, as of either Tar or Hogs-grease, boyl all these well together, and herewith stop the horse feet very hot, and continue thus to do daily, and it will not only take away any anguish, but also strengthen the hoofs, and make them so perfect as that they will be able to endure labour, but when you travel your horse (for exercise is very good for him) let him be stopped herewith hot; but if cold, add then thereto the whites of Eggs as much as will suffice, for that will cool his feet very well, and it will comfort the *Frush*. Imperfection in the Feet.

very much, but if the *hoof* be naturally brittle, and by foundring become dry and streightned, then to enlarge the same, and to make it the more tough, and to grow the better also: Take of Hogs-grease, Turpentine, and Mastick of each like much, and half so much Lard as of either of them: Melt all these but the Turpentine on the fire, and when it is well dissolved take it off, and then put in your Turpentine, stirring it well till it be thoroughly incorporate; then keep it in a stone Pot by it self, and when it is through cold be sure to stop the Pot very close, and so reserve it for your use. With this Salve anoint the *Coffins* (but especially the *Cronets*) every day twice at the least, and it will cause the *hoof* to grow very much, and become tough and found. ** This I have often used, and it is very good.

S E C T. 2. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure an Impostumation ?

Impostuma-
tion to ri-
pen.

Hippof. To rippen any swelling which doth impostumate, you shall know by the heat, for if you lay your hand thereon, it will be hot and burn; wherefore to prepare and make it ready to be opened,

Take Mallow-roots, and white Lilly-roots, of each like much; bruise them, and put to them Hogs-grease and Linseed meal, of each so much as will suffice, and boyl them till they be soft, and so Plaister-wise apply it to the grief.

S E C T. 3. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for any inward sickness in a Horse ?

Hippof. I have shewed you that sufficiently before in *lib. 2. chap. 3. sect. 6. A.* where I gave you three excellent receipts together; nevertheless if you do find that your *horse* do not thrive, but droop and impair, I will here give you one receipt more which I do know to be most singular, and will do him much good, and whereof I have had very long and great good experience. First therefore if you do see cause, take *blood* from him, but not otherwise, and if he be subject to costiveness, then administer unto him either a

Clister

Clifter or a *Suppository*, and the day following give him this drink ;

Take *Aristolochia Rotunda*, Bay-berries, *Gentian*, *Anni-seeds*, *Ginger*, and of *Trifora-Magna*, of each one ounce : *Inward sickness.* Beat all the simples to very fine Powder, and mix them well together ; then take of white Wine one quart, of Sack the like proportion, which is better, then put of this Powder, and of your *Trifora-Magna* one spoonful into the Wine, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, and of *Mithridate* two drams, warm these upon the fire, and so administer it blood-warm, and let him be exercised as well before as after his drink, but not so far as to sweat by any means, neither let him drink any cold water in four or five days after, but either warm Mashes, or else white water. * * * This is most Sovereign for any inward sickness, droopings, forsaking of meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like.

S E C T. 4. I.

Hippoph. You speak hereof administering a *Suppository*, but what *Suppository* were best to be given in a case of this nature ?

Hippof. I will shew you Sir : If your *Horse* be so sick where-by you fear to give him any strong medicine, and that he be costive withal, then give him this *Suppository* following,

Take of Honey six ounces, of Salt-niter, one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flower and of Anniseeds in fine Powder, of each one ounce, boyl all these to a hard thicknes, and then make it into *Suppositories* ; and first anoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl or sweet Butter, and the *Suppository* also which he is to take, and so convey it into his *Fundament* a pretty way, and after tye his *Tail* betwixt his *Legs*, as I have elsewhere shewed you : Or else hold it close to his *Body* with your hand, by the space of a quarter of an hour at the least, till it be thoroughly dissolved, and this will cause him to purge kindly, and it will very much cool and loosen his *Guts* : Then you may be the more bold to administer what Drinks, Cordials, or ther things which you may think most requisite for his recovery. * * *

S E C T. 5. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to ripen inflammations, Pustils; and
Kernels, which do grow under the Chaul of the
Horse?

Hippof. This cometh to a horse that hath either Cold or
Glanders, which must be dissolved, otherwise the horse can
never be cured: Wherefore take Wheat-Bran two handfuls,
and so much Wine, Ale, or Beer, as one quart, with which to
thicken it, put to it of Hogs-grease half a pound, boyl these
together till the liquor be quite consumed, and so apply it
to the place so hot as the horse may well suffer it, renewing it
every day once, till it do of it self break, or be soft to be o-
pened, then let forth the Corruption, and taint it with a taint
of flax dipped in this Salve. Take of Turpentine and of
Hogs-grease of each like much, and of Rosin and Wax a much
greater quantity; melt all these together, and with the said
taint dipped in this medicine, put it into the wound, and re-
newing it every day once till it be whole. * * * This is an ap-
proved receipt. But if it be an inflammation impostumating
in any other part of the Body, take then the Grounds of a
Beer-Barrel, four quarts of Smalage, Penny-Royal, Winter-
Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of the
Misseltow, of each two handfuls, chop all these very small,
and put them to the said Grounds, and put to it of Sheeps
or Deer-suet tryed one pound, and three or four handfuls
of Rye or Wheat-Bran, so much indeed as will serve to boyl
this to a Poultice, and when it is boyled as much as will su-
ffice, apply it to the place, and if the swelling be very much
impostumated, it will break it, or at the least so soften it,
that it may be opened; if it be hard at what time you put
your Poultice thereunto, it will send it back again without any
more to do. * * * This I have very much experimented, and
have found it to be right good. But if he be troubled with
the Strangles, and that he is very much inflamed under the
Chaul, then cure them thus: Take Basilicon, old Bores-grease,
and Dialthea, of each four ounces, of Oyl-de-Bay one ounce,
incorporate all these very well together, and first-clipping
away

away the hair from under the *Chanl*, anoint the swelling and inflamed place therewith very well; this done, bind upon it a piece of Sheeps-skin, with the Wooll next to the inflammation, that the warmth thereof may the better help to ripen the *Pustils*, which being ripened, open them, and let forth the Corruption, that done, taint it first for three or four days with Basilicon only, but after heal up the sorrhance with your black *Aegyptiacum*, taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 4. A.* and during the time of this cure, let him eat good sweet Hay, and Bran instead of Oats, and let his drink be only white water. * * This is a most excellent receipt.

S E C T. 6. I.

Hippoph. *What is good for a Joynt that hath in it any Ach, Nunnests, Weakness, or Swellings which cometh of any cold cause?*

Hippof. This cometh sometimes of a Strain and sometimes of a Cold, taken after a great and violent riding or labour. The signs are apparent, and the Cure is,

Take Acopum, and mixing it with sweet Sack, all to rub and chafe the *Joynt* grieved therewith. And if it come of Cold, it will at four or five times thus doing, cure it. * * This is singular good. Another,

Take Aqua-vitæ, and warm it upon the fire, and therewith bathe and rub the grieved *Member* very well, and hold a hot bar of Iron before it, to cause it to sink in the better; take then a Rag, and wet it in the same Aqua-vitæ, and lastly take Pepper finely powdred and searced, and strew it good and thick upon the said wet Rag, and so bind it to the place grieved; then take a dry Rowler of Linnen, and swath the place therewith, and so let them remain; and thus do every day once, and in short time it will recover him. * * Of this I have made often tryal.

S E C T. 7. I.

Hippoph. *What is good to increase the Hoof of a Horse?*

Hippof. I have given you sundry good Receipts

ceipts before, but I will add one more, which the most famous *Marishal* of all *Paris* gave me, which he recommended unto me for *Tresbonne*, but I never had yet a good occasion to make tryal thereof. The Receipt is this,

Increase the
Hoof

Take of the Oyl of Hemp-seed, of Wax, of Venice Turpentine, Rosin, Pitch, Bay-seeds dried and powdred of each half a pound, Roch Allum two ounces, mix all these together, and let them boyl softly upon a gentle fire, then strain it through a Hair-cloth, and keep it for your use. With this anoint every day the *hoofs* of your *Horse*, and this will cause them to grow very much. This is probably a good Receipt.

C H A P. XIII.

SECT. I. L.

Hypophilus.

How do you cure the *Lampas*, *Hippoferus*?
Hippofer. This is a malady that every common Smith can easily cure, by putting into the mouth of the Horse a good big bat of Wood, whereunto two long pieces of the *Head-stall* of an old Bridle is nailed at either end, which will cause him to keep open his *mouth*, and then holding up his *lip* with your left hand, burn away the rank *flesh* with a hot Iron made of purpose, and after rubbing the place with Salt, and giving him Bran for Oats three or four days at the most, he will be whole. * * * This disease is a swelling proceeding from rankness of *blood*, which groweth in the *mouth* adjoining to the *Fore-teeth*, which said swelling is an impediment to his feeding; it is apparent enough to be seen, and therefore it needs no further remonstrance. * * * Nevertheless I will shew you how the *Marishals* in *France* do use to cure the *Lampas*, from whom I had the Cure, and wherewith I my self have cured many *horses*.

Lampas.

Take a roasted Onion, and very hot put it upon a Clout, or upon Hurds, and with it rub the *Lampas* very much, and do this two or three times a day till it be whole. * * * But many

many times they burn away the *Lampas*, like as do our *Smiths* with an Iron instrument, which they do call a *Bistory*, which is the very same that our *Smiths* use here in *England*.

S E C T. 2. L.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you stop a *Lax* or *Loosness*, when it cometh to be violent?

Hippof. Very easily Sir, but I had thought I had handled that point sufficiently before, in letter *F*. where you made your demand touching the *Flux* in a *Horse*, notwithstanding I will give you other very good Receipts by me almost forgotten. To illustrate the manner of it's coming, and the signs how to know the same, I hold unfitting for this place, by reason I have sufficiently already performed it. Take of Allum one penny-worth powdred, Bole-Armoniack powdred one ounce, put these into Milk one quart, continually stirring it till the Milk doth become all of a Curd, give him this with a horn, and it will stay his *Lax* be it never so violent. *** This I have used. Another,

Take Bean-flower, and Bole-Armoniack in fine powder, of each four ounces, put them into red Wine one quart, and give him this with a horn blood-warm. Let his drink be white water, only instead of Wheat-Bran, put in flower, and that for three or four days after; then let him blood in the *Temple-veins*, and give him warm Mashcs, made of ground Malt and Bean-flower, and having drunk up the Wort, let him eat up the residue, but if this do not stay him within two days, then put in each *Nostril*, Sallet-Oyl, and that will do it. *** This is special good.

S E C T. 3. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat means have you to raise a lean Horse, and to cause him in short time to become very fat?

Hippof. I have shewed you this before, but yet I will give you a Receipt which you yet have not.

Take Elecampane dried, Comin, Turmerick, Anniseeds, of each two ounces, Grundsel half a handful, boyl all these very well

well with three heads of Garlik picked, a little bruised in Ale four quarts, then strain it well, and give unto your *horse* of this drink one quart, in a morning fasting blood-warm, and then ride him upon it till he do begin to be warm, but not to sweat, and thus do for four mornings together, and within some short time after, turn him to Grass, if the time of the year be seasonable, and he will feed wonderfully and fatten suddenly; but if the time of the year do not serve for Grass, then shall ye keep him in the Stable, and besides his former drink, you shall give him in his Oats this Powder, *viz.* Take the Powder of Elecampane dry, and of Cumin, both pulverized and searced of each like much: Mix them well together, and every time you give your *horse* this Provender; take of this Powder half an ounce, and strew it by little and little among his Provender for fear of offending him, till he hath eaten up all clean, and do this but fourteen days together, and you shall perceive you *Horse* to thrive, mend, and prosper after a strange manner: provided that you do give him seasonable Airing, moderate Exercise, and Mashs or white water. * * * This is marvellous good.

S E C T. 4. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat is to be done to a *Horfe* whose *Legs* do swell?

Hippof. If this swelling be only in his fore-Legs and not behind, then is it a sign that this his Swelling came by over-violent labour, when the *Horfe* was very fat, (especially inwardly) by reason that the Grease that was molten fell down into his *Fore-legs*, which if it had staid in his *Body*, must of necessity have engendred either an *Anticor Feaver*, or a *Surfet* to the great peril of his Life; the signs are known by the swelling and therefore to anoint them with *Acopum* were very good. But the best cure is, first to take up the *Thigh-veins*, then with your *Fleam*, to prick the places most swelled, and hottest in sundry places, especially below, to the end that the corrupt *blood* may issue forth; then

Take of White-Wine lees one pint, of Cumin bruised one ounce, boyl them together to a Poultis with Wheat flower, three handfuls; then with a cloth apply it to the place good and

*Legs swell-
ed.*

and warm, renewing it every day once, and if in two or three days it doth draw it to a head (as it is very probable it will do) then lance it and heal it up either with Shooe-makers Wax laid on upon a Plaister of leather, or else with a Salve made of the yolk of an Egg, Wheat-flower, and common Honey well wrought together to a Salve, which you must also apply Plaister-wise.*.* But if it do not come to a head, and yet the swelling continue; then

Take of Pitch, and of Virgin-wax, of each three ounces, Rosin half a pound, of the juyce of Ispop, and of Galbanum of each half an ounce, and of Mirrah-lecondary half a pound, of Bdellium-Arabicum, Populeon, and of the drops of Storax, of each half an ounce, and of Deers-suet half a pound, boyl all these together in an earthen Pot, and when it is cold; take of Bitumen half a pound, Bolearmoniack and of Costus, of each one ounce and half; make all these into fine Powder, and then incorporate them well with the other, and so boyl them all over again very well; that done, pour this whole mixture or medicine into cold water, and so make it up into rowls like a Salve for Plaisters: And when you are to use it, spread thereof upon Plaisters of Leather, which must be so large as to cover the *Legs* full as far as the swellings are, which (if any thing can do it) this will assuage the swelling, and give very much strength, and comfort the *Senews* and *Nerves*: Neither is this Plaister to be removed so long as it will remain on.*.* This I have applyed to many *Horses* very much annoyed with *swoln-Legs*, and brought them to their former smallness, when as *Farriers* have spent much time upon the Cure, and given it over at last. But if the swelling do fall into the *binder-Legs*, or into all *four-Legs* together (being but a bad Sorrance (causing them to burn and swell exceedingly, and the *hair* to stare, the cause whereof coming, (as I have before said) from immoderate Riding, heat, and labour whereby the Grease melting falleth down into the *Legs*, by reason the *Horse* cannot void it in his Excrements, or else being over hot, he is washed or negligently set up without sufficient store of litter and rubbing so as the taking cold, the *Blood* with the Grease setleth in the *Legs*, and there congealeth and so causeth them to swell.

This forrance also cometh by having his feet beaten (especially in the Summer) with being ridden and galloped upon hard ground, which first occasioneth wind-galls, and those also cause the *legs* to swell, which truly is the worst kind of swelling of all other, by reason that *lameness* doth immediately follow it, unless great Art and diligence be speedily applied for prevention thereof. Wherefore the signs being so apparent, need no remonstrance, and therefore I will pass on to the Cure, which is thus,

Take Populeon, Nerve-oyl, Hogs-grease, of each one ounce, incorporate them very well together, cold, and anoint the forrance therewith morning and evening four days together, and at four days end, take of Claret-Wine-lees one quart, boyl it upon the fire with so much Bran as will bring it to a *Poultice*, apply this to the place grieved Plaster-wise with a cloth good and hot for four or five days more, renewing it every day once, and in a short time he will be found again. * * * This is a most excellent receipt which I have often experimented. Another, The swelling of the *legs*, may easily be cured, if in the beginning they be often times in the day laved and bathed in cold water, unless the malady come of too great a surfet, wherefore if this of cold water will not do it, then,

Take of Common honey one pound, Turpentine, common-Gum, meal of Linseed, meal of Fenugreek, of each four ounces, Bayberries made into very fine powder searced, three ounces, mix and boyl all these together well, and when you take it from the fire, put unto it of White-wine one pint, and then boyl it over again till it do become thick, spread this upon a cloath reasonable hot, and wrap it about the members swelled, and do not renew it above once in a week, and it will cure them. * * * This is a certain and most approved cure. Another. If you take up the *veins*, and make them to bleed below and not above, and then rope up the *legs* with thumbbands of soft Hay wet in cold water, and then cast more water upon them, in short time he will be found and well again. * * * This is also very good.

S E C T. 5. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure the Leprosie?

Hippof. This is a moist *maing*, very infectious, which cometh by means of great surfets, taken by over-riding, which is very easie to be seen and known, and therefore needs no further description. The cure therefore is: first, let him bleed well in the *neck*, then scrape away the scurf with an old Curry-Comb, Oyster-shel, Hair-cloth, or some such like thing, till the forrance do look raw, and that it be ready to bleed, then anoint the raw places with this ointment.

Take Arsnick, or Refalgar, and tryed Hogs-grease, (the Arsnick, or Refalgar being first beaten unto very fine powder) incorporate these well together to make them into a perfect ointment; then tie up the *head* of your *Horse* so high to the Rack, as that he may not be able to bite, rub, or lick himself, and so anoint the places therewith, and cause the ointment to sink the better in by himself, and so anoint the places therewith, and cause the ointment to sink the better in by holding a hot bar of iron neer to the place as you anoint him, and let him stand so tied three hours, and then wash away the Unguent with the strongest Chamberly you can get, and wash him so thoroughly, that you may be assured you leave none of the ointment upon the *Horse*, and then unty him, and give him meat: and thus dress him once every day till the sores be quite dried up. * * This is also good for Scratches and Kibed-heels.

Leprosie or elephantick malady.

S E C T. 6. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to kill Lice in a Horse?

Hippof. Lice commonly cometh to a *horse* when he is very poor, especially when he runneth abroad in the Winter-time in some Wood, Coppice, or places where are many high trees, for that the dropping of the trees falling upon the *Horse*, together with his poverty, doth cause them to engender, and albeit they may be at first but a few, yet will

will they in short time multiply abundantly : sometimes also a *Horse* will catch them by standing neer to another *horse* that is *lowfie*, and so long as he be visited with them, he can never prosper, but remain very meager and lean. You may easily know when he is anointed with this kind of *vermine*, for that he will often scrub and rub himself against Walls, Posts, and Doors with his *mouth* and *hinder-feet*. The way to destroy them is,

Take Staves-Acre, and boyl it in running water, and wash him all over with that water warm, and it will kill them.*.*

Another :

Lice.

Take Quick-silver two ounces, and first kill it with fasting Spittle, and when it is throughly mortified, take Hogs-grease tryed, and so work them together till it become of an Ash-colour, and anoint him therewith, and it will in twice or thrice dressing, kill them all.*.* Another :

Take Tobacco as much as will suffice, and shred it very small, and put it into small Beer, and put to it of Allum powdered, as much as will suffice, and when the Allum is dissolved, wash him therewith, and it will kill them. All these I have often tryed, and have found them to be very good.

S E C T. 7. L.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make your powder of Lime and Honey, with which you do heal and dry up sores?

Hippof. Take of English Honey, and of quick lime newly taken from the Kill unflaked, of each as much as will suffice, beat your Lime into fine powder, and with your Honey and your Lime knead it into a PASTE, and when it is throughly wrought make it into a thin Cake, then lay it upon a clean fire-pan, and set it upon the fire, and so let it bake, and as it is baking take the soles of two old shoes and cast them into the fire, and let them burn until they have done flaming and that they do become to be a fire-coal; then take them forth, and when the Cake is baked sufficiently and cold, beat the Cake together with the burnt shoes soles to very fine powder, and so keep this powder in a bladder or dry box for your use.

. This

** This will heal and dry up any wound or old sore, and I have often and long used this powder.

S E C T. 8. L.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What disease is that we call the Low-worm?*

Hippof. This is the disease which I cannot distinguish from Saint *Antonies-fire*, or the *Shingles*, for that it hath the self same *Symptoms*, and this I have cured. This is a *Worm* that breedeth in the *back* betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*, and runneth along the *breast* to the *brain*, and when it cometh to touch the *pannicle* of the *brain*, it maketh the *horse* stark-mad. You shall first discover it by these signs, *viz.* presently after a long and tedious journey, the *horse* will be sick and forsake his meat; and stand out of length with his *feet*, bending down his *back*, and he will often make offer to piss, but cannot, and if he do, yet will it be but very little at a time, and that in the *sheath*, and in time he will fall mad, gnaw the Walls, Rackstaves, and Manger, and bite and strike at every man that cometh within his reach or danger: and these be the most pregnant and apparent signs; and this disease doth deceive many a good *Farrier*. For albeit that this infirmity may be many times among *horses*, yet *Farriers* being ignorant thereof, by mistaking it meerly for the *Stavers*, and applying remedies only for that cure, do thereby lose many a good *horse* through their misprision. But now to come unto the Cure it self, I will give you two Receipts, the former of which I learned of a *Farmer* in *Suffolk*, who was cried up for a very expert man in this *faculty* (as indeed he was, and hath perfected in my presence many a great Cure.) Then thus,

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, six heads of Garlick clean pilled, of Rue and Turmentile that beareth the Yellow flower, of each one pound, stamp all these in a stone Morter, and put to it so much white-Wine, as that when it is strained there may be of the juyce and Wine two quarts, when you have of this liquor in a readines, let your horse blood under the *tail* a good quantity, then stanch him, and dividing this pottle of liquor into six parts, give it him six mornings together, that is to say, every morning one part

or

or portion, till he hath taken it all, and by that time he will be perfectly cured. * * *

The second Receipt was taught me in *France* by a famous *Marishal* of *Burbon*, who hath cured very many *horses* of the self same malady, but in a quite contrary way: For whereas the first Cure was wrought by medicine, this second is perfected by giving of fire. Take an Iron with a Button at one end, and make it red hot, then burn him therewith upon the top of his *forehead*; and a little under his *fore-top*, and another in the *fore-top*, and four other in the *neck*, clean through upon the *crest*, whereof two of the holes must be upon the one side of the *crest*, and two on the other side; and to take away and kill the fire, put into every hole *Unguentum Rosarum*, and then let him *blood* in the *neck vein*, and he is cured. * * * This is also an approved Cure. The French do call this malady *ver-coquin*, and the *Italians* do name *Vermiforme*, but they both have but one manner of Cure for the same. This *Ver-coquin*, or *Low-worm* is a living *worm* which breedeth upon the *back-bone*, running a long the *neck*, and so by degrees cometh to the *head* of the *horse*, where with its hard *beak* it first *pierceth* the *panicle*, and then worketh it self to the very *brain* of the *creature*, where it lieth biting, gnawing, and feeding, causeth the *Horse* to become enraged, and to die mad, if otherwise he be not cured in time, and therefore the *French Marishals* do affirm, that the prime remedy wherewith to kill and destroy this *worm*, is, by fire, and they hold that it cannot be destroyed any other way.

SECT. 9. L.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What remedy have you to help the disease of the Lungs?*

Hippof. This disease of the *Lungs* is a malady which is first engendred of cold taken, and let run till the *horse* be either fretized or putrified in the *lungs*, at what time they become inflamed, and to come at last to rottenness and corruption: the means how to come to the knowledge of this infirmity is, that by careful observance you may perceive his *flanks* to beat, and his ribs to work, but most chiefly when he *cougheth*, and then

then the more slowly they do beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the disease; he will also draw his breath at his *nose* short, and yet weakly, and he will groan often, and principally when he lyeth down and riseth up, and when at any time he *cougheth*, he will seem to chew some thing betwixt his *teeth*, and from his *nose* will issue much corruption. The Cure is,

Take of *horse-Lung-wort*, *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad hoary soft leaves which do feel like Velvet, shred it, stamp it and strain it, then take of Fenugreek a good spoonful, and of Madder as much, make them into fine powder, and give this to your *horse* in Muscadine one pint, or else in good Ale one quart, and administer this unto him every other day for twelve or fourteen days, and sprinkle his Hay with water, and let his Oats be washed in good Ale, and let his drink be white water, and sometimes sweet Mash^s. * * This is very good. Another;

Take a Snake, and cut off the *head* and *tail*, and flea it, and after cut the same into pieces the length of your finger, and roast it as you would and Eele upon a Spit, but do not bast it with any thing, for it will bast it self, reserve carefully the oyl that drippeth from it, and herewith anoint the *breast* and the *four short-ribs* of the *Horse* which be against the *Lungs*, but clip away the hair first from about the place where you are to anoint him, otherwise the hair will take up much of the said Oyl; and thus doing often for some time you shall recover his *Lungs* again, and make him perfectly sound. This was taught me by a great *Marishal* of *Tours*, but I never could come to make tryal thereof.

CH A P. XIV.

S E C T. I. M.

Hippophorus.

Now Hippophorus that we have ended this Chapter, let us proceed to another; and tell me what is good to cure a Malender? Hippof.

Hippof. This is a noysom forrance which groweth upon the inward part of the *fore-legs* in the bending of the *leg* over against the *knee*: it is a scab hard and dry, which hath a chop or chink upon it, and it hath hard and stubborn staring *hairs* growing in and about it, not much unlike to *Hogs-bristles*, by which means it cankereth, and corrupteth the *flesh*, which will cause the *horse* to go stiff, and to halt at first setting forth till he be warm, like as doth the *Scratches*. It cometh either through the negligence of the *Groom* for default of rubbing, and due and orderly dressing, or else from the corruption of the *blood* through hard and immoderate riding; and those *horses* are most especially subject thereunto, which have long *hair* growing all along the *legs* from the *pastern* up to the top of the *thigh*, as most commonly have your *Flanders* and *Freeze-land-horses*, by reason that the *hair* in that place, being thick, long, and shaggy, doth gather sand, dirt, and other filth, which not being continually taken off by the industry of his *Keeper*, will scald, burn, and fret into the joynt, and so breed this kind of forrance. I have already shewed you the signs how to know it, now I will also give you very many receipts wherewith to cure it, many of which are special good. First therefore (whatsoever you have to apply unto this forrance) fail not to wash and shave away the hair from off and about the forrances; first then,

Malender.

Take black-Soap, Unguentum Populeon, and fresh Butter, of each like much as will suffice: mix them well together, and so bring them to a formal Unguent, and apply it to the forrance every other day till it be whole. * * * But you must withall understand that unless you do pick away and rub off the dry crust or scurf, as well as wash and shave away the hair which doth annoy the forrance, you do nothing in the perfecting of the Cure, for be you confident unless you do this, the *Malender* will not be taken away, nor any medicine that you shall apply to it, be able to heal it up. Another,

Take black-sope and allay it with Buck-lye, and wash the place well wherewith: this done apply unto the forrance a plaister of Goose-dung, and renew it twice a day till it be whole. * * * Another,

Take quick-silver, and kill it in Orpiment, then take Buck-lye

lye, and mix ordinary durt which lyeth in the street (wherein must be neither stones nor gravel) with the Buck-lye, Quick-silver, and Orpiment, and herewith anoint the sore twice a day if need be, and when the ointment is well rubbed in, then clap a plaister of the same medicine to the grief every time you do anoint it. *.* This is very good. Another ;

Take of the strongest white-Wine-Vinegar, and boyl it, and so boyling hot, rub the Malender therewith twice every day till it do bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdigrease good and thick, and so bind it on with a clout, and let it so remain till a crust come thereupon, and when you shall find the crust to be dry, and withal to chop, anoint the grieved places with tryed Hogs-grease, and that will cause the crust to fall off, and the sore to heal up. *.* This is a most excellent Cure, and it did never fail me. Another ;

Rub the sore with the oyl of Hempseed, or with the oyl of Nuts, or with sharp Mustard, but the oyl of Hempseed is the very best, if it may be had. This was taught me by a *French Marishal*, but I never made tryal thereof. Another ;

First rub off the outward scurf till it bleed, then bind upon the place this medicine ; take of black-Sope, and of Quick-silver mortified with fasting spittle as much as will suffice, and so work them to a salve, and plaister-wise bind it to the sore, renewing it every day once till it be killed, and after heal up the sore with fresh or sweet Butter. Another ;

Take *Glovers-shreds* which he cuteth from his white leather, and boyl them in *Vinegar* of the best and strongest till they be soft, bind this to the *malender* very hot, and it will perfectly cure the same. I did never make tryal thereof, but it was given for me very good. Another ;

Take the fat or lard of Bacon one pound, red Lead, Verdigrease and Letharge of gold, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and boyl them well together with the said fat of Bacon, keeping them in the boyling continually stirring ; then having very well cleansed the sore, and made it raw, anoint it with this medicine morning and evening till it be clean dryed up. *.* This is very good. Another, which is only to anoint the sore with the oyl of Turpentine, and

it will heal it up, and make it marvellous sound. * * *. And this will likewise cure Scratches, Sores, Hurts, or the like maladies in a *horse*. Another,

Take a salt barrelled Herring out of the pickle, which hath a soft row, and cut off the *head* and *tail*, and cast them away, then mince all the Herring very small, and put it in a stone mortar, and put thereto of black-Sope two spoonfuls, and of Alum powdred half an ounce, stamp all these things together till you have made them to be of one body, and plaister-wise apply it to the Malender, renewing it once a day for three days; And this will kill the *humours* that feedeth it; which once done, anoint the place with oyl of Roses, and that will cause the Crust to fall away, then wash it once every day with Chamberly, and strew upon it the powder of Oyster-shells, and it is made whole and sound again. This I dare promise to be a very good Receipt.

S E C T. 2. *M.*

Hippoph. **W**ell what say you to the Mainge?

Hippo. This of all other is the worst, vilest, and most filthy, and it will cause the *Horse* to be ever rubbing, scrubbing, and scratching. It is a formal *Leprosie*, and the *French* do call it the *Elephantick malady*, by reason that *Elephants* are very much subject thereunto. The hair will stare and in many places pill and fall away, and a lothsom Scurf, will be upon the places touched therewith, and he will infect all other *horses* which reside in the same Stable with him: Wherefore so soon as the malady may be espyed, let him be seperated from his fellows, whether in the Stable, or abroad at Grass. This disease cometh of corrupt and melancholy *blood*, by means of its overheating, and sometimes by feeding upon naughty and unwholsom meat. It is so easie to be discovered, as that it needs no other discription, then what hath been already shewed: and I will give you many good Receipts for this Malady.

Take Spurge, Salendine, Brimstone, all in fine dowder, of each three ounces, Hogs-grease tryed, new-Wax, Sheeps-fuet, and quick-Silver well mortified with fasting-spittle, of each

each two ounces ; melt and incorporate all these two days together, and so bring them to an oyntment, then first wash and make raw the places infected with stale Urine and green Copporas boyled together, the infected places being scraped, and made raw with a Curry-comb or some such like thing, and then anoint him with this Unguent, but first of all you must take *blood* from the *neck-vein*, the day before you dress him with this Unguent. * * This is one of the best Receipts for a *Mainge* that I have, and with it I have done very many rare Cures.

Take the roots of Elecampane newly gathered, and the root of red-Docks, of each like much, slice and cut them thin, and put unto them of Chamberly three quarts, and of Bay-salt, one handful : boyl these till one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a rag fast'ned to the end of a stick, wash the places infected very hot, you having first made the places raw with an old Curry-comb, Oyster shel, &c. Use this four or five mornings together, then some three mornings after anoint the places grieved with this Oyntment.

Take quick-silver one ounce, let it be well mortified in fasting-spittle, and mix with it so much Hogs-grease as a Hens-Egg, or better : then take Powder of Brimstone so much as will suffice, and incorporate all these very well together, and anoint all the Maingy places therewith till they be perfectly whole. * * This is very good. Another,

Take the Oyl of Pilchards, and of chamberly of each one quart, Guinny-powder, and of the Powder of Brimstone, of each three ounces, White-Wine-Vinegar one pint, boyl all these together till they be thick, make the places raw, and anoint them therewith three times in nine days, that is to say every three days once, and this will cure him. * * This is very good, but you must not forget evermore for this Malady, to take store of *blood* from your *Horse* a day or two before you do administer any thing unto him, for until such time as the *Melancholy* and *corrupt blood* be first let out, he will not easily be cured. Another for a Mainge, Itch, or Running Scab, &c.

Take as much Auripigmentum finely powdred, and mixed with Hogs-grease as will bring it to be yellowish, but not

too yellow a colour, anoint the places infected therewith, and it will kill it in three or four dressings: This Unguent will take away both the Scab and *hair*, together: but have you no fear, for it will not be long ere new *hair* will come in it's place. * * With this receipt I have cured very many *Horses*, who have not been a little over-run with this disease. Another,

The first day let him *blood* on the left side of the *Neck*, then two days after open the other *Vein*, and three days after that let him *blood* on the *Spur-Veins*; and lastly two days after that under the *Tail*, and let him *bleed* in every of these *Veins*, then scarrifie all the places and wash them with new Brine made very salt: that done anoint the places with this Unguent.

Take of quick-silver one ounce, tryed Hogs-grease one pound, Brimstone made into fine powder four ounces, Rape-oyl one pint. First kill the quick-silver with fasting-spittle, and then incorporate them together throughly with all the other Ingredients, and having anointed all the raw places with this Ointment, cause it the better to sink in by holding a bar of hot-Iron near to the places, and then touch him no more in three days after, and evermore when you dress him, forget not first to rub and scarrifie the places infected till they do begin to bleed; but if all this will not avail, then burn the rankest places of the Mainge with an iron, having a button on the end thereof, but then take heed you enter not the *flesh*, but bear your hand light upon the *skin* only, and let each hole be wellnigh a span from the other. * * This I have often used. Another,

Take of Chamberly four quarts, Bay-salt four handfuls, boyl them well together, and wash the *Horse* therewith, so hot as he can well suffer it, and when he is well washed, take Neat-foot oyl and put it into water, and beat them well together, and there with anoint the raw places, and in four or five times this doing, he will be well. This seems to be a good cure, but I do not remember that I ever did use it. Another,

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the best and strongest, and wash the sores therewith so hot as the *Horse* is able to suffer it, and in three or four times dressing it, it will cure him. This I never tryed, but the party that taught it me, averred that it would

would not only kill any *Mainge*, but all Scratches, Pains, Rats-tails, &c. Another,

Take Sopers-lees, and first make the *Mainge* places raw, and after wash them with the said Sopers-lees, and in once or twice dressing, he will be well. * * This was taught me by the most able *Farriers* I do now know living in *England*, and I have often used it, and I have done with it very many great Cures. It cureth the *Mainge* both in *Horses* and *Dogs*, provided they get not to it with their mouth and teeth. Another,

Take of Hogs-grease half a pound, Oyl-de-Bay one ounce and half, Crude Mercury, and white Elbore of each one ounce, incorporate these well together and first make the places raw, and then anoint them with the said Oyntment. * * This is very good for I have often tryed it. Another,

Take of Hemp-feed, and Mutton-suet, of each one pound, bray the Hemp-feed marvellous well in a Morter, then take of old Bores-grease one pound, Verdegrease, Quick-silver, Elebore, Gunpowder, Tartar of each four drams, and of Brimstone three ounces, make all into very fine Powder, that is to be powdred, and mix them well, and make them into one *body*, and then dissolve them upon a gentle fire, keeping them always stirring till it be enough, and sufficiently dissolved, and when it is cold, put it into a clean Pot, and keep it for your use, and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first scarrifie the places, and then anoint them, holding a hot Bar of iron neer, and in three or four times this dressing he will be well. * * This is a most sovereign receipt for this malady, for I have had great proof thereof. Another whereby to cure the *Mainge* in the *Main* or *Tail*.

Take ashes of the herb called *Abscintus*, so much as will suffice, Quick-lime and Soot, of each so much as will suffice: Mingle all these together, and with warm water make a Lye thereof, with which you shall wash the *Mainge* and *Tail* in the places infected, and this Lye will not only cure this malady, but also cause the *hair* to grow again very fast. This was taught me by a very good *Marshall* of *France*, but I could never make use thereof, by reason the herb *Abscintus* was hard to get here. Another,

Take

Take a little Brimstone, Masculine Frankinsence, Niter of Tartar, of the Bark of Ashen-trees, Vitreol, Verdegrease, Black-Helebore, Aristolochia Rotunda, of each as much as will suffice, powder all your simples, and mix them well together with the yolks of Eggs and Sallet-Oyl, of each as much as will suffice, and so boyl it, and anoint the place well therewith warm. This seems to be good, but I never tryed it.

Another for the *Tail*: Take Mulberries which be not ripe, with the bark of the roots of the Mulberry Tree, and Barly, of each as much as will suffice, boyl all these in fair water, and wash the places grieved therewith, and if the sorrhance do open of it self, then take Sanguis Draconis, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Sallet-Oyl, and old Bores-grease, of each as much as will suffice, and make thereof a Salve, and apply it Plaister-wise, but this I never tryed. Another,

Take of Orpin one pound, Brimstone and Euforbium, of each one ounce, Cantharides twenty five, make all these into fine powder, and with Hogs-grease make it into an Unguent, and apply it to the sorrhance, rubbing it in all along the places vilited, and four or five days after, to the end the corruption may the more easly pass away, anoint him again with Hogs-grease only, and when the scurf is fal'n off, wash the *neck* of the *horse* with Buck-lye made blood-warm, and he will do well. * * This is a very good receipt. Another,

You must first scrape the *leprons* places till they do bleed; then take of Vinegar one pint, white Elebor, Cantharides, Euforbium, of each one ounce, make all these into fine Powder, and boyl them all well together, and apply it very hot to the place grieved, then when the scurf or crust is fallen away, wash the sorrhance with Buck-lye mixed with Black Sope, and it will be well. * * This is a special good receipt. Another,

Take of the Oyl of Hemp-seed half a pint, Brimstone in fine Powder, one ounce, Guapowder finely pulverized, and Quick-silver; of each half an ounce, and a little Vinegar, then beat them all together along time, and so apply it cold to the place, and as you do anoint him, let one stand by with a hot bar of iron, whereby to cause it the better to sink

sink in, and this will cure him in few times dressing, but suffer the crust to fall away of its own accord. * * * This is a most precious receipt. *Another,*

Take of Vinegar one pint and a half, Euforbiana half an ounce, made into fine Powder, boyl them well together, and boyling hot, wash the sores therewith, and it will heal it; neither need you to clip away the *hair*, unless you please. * * * This I have often used. *Another,*

Take of black or blew Salt, and make it into fine Powder, and mingle it with fresh Butter, of each like much, mix them well together to a perfect Unguent, and anoint the place therewith, and it will cure him, but this I never tryed. *Another,*

Take of the herb called in *French*, *Ouraige*, one handful, boyl it in Vinegar, two quarts, then take of green Copperas half a pound, and of Salt two handfuls, rub the place therewith so hot as he may well suffer it, and in few times dressing him thus, it will cure him. This I had of a *French Marshal*, but because I could never find the herb *Ouraige*, I did never make tryal thereof. *Another,*

Take of white Wine Vinegar half a pint, Cantharides in fine Powder, one ounce, boyl them together, and boyling hot apply it to the sores, and your *Horse* will soon be cured. * * * This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

Thus I have delivered you many receipts for this one malady, which we call the *Mainge*, most of them I have tryed, and can promise them to be special good, whereof many will not only cure the *Mainge* in the *Body* it self, but in the *Main* and *Tail* also if you please to make use of them.

Another most excellent receipt for the *Mainge*,

Take Lithergy of Gold two pound, beat it to very fine Powder, and searce it through a fine searcer, and put it into a Glass which will hold a pottle; then put thereto of the strongest and best white Wine Vinegar that can be gotten, three pints or better, and for four and twenty hours after, shake it together ever and anon, but the first time it must be beaten or shaken a good time together, to wit, a quarter of an hour at the least without intermission, and then let it settle, and so keep it in the same Glass close stopped for your

use. Now when you would use the medicine, you must make it into a Salve after this manner : Take of the Oyl of Roses two ounces, and of the cleereſt of the ſaid Vinegar in the Glaſs (which muſt not have any of the Lithergy in it) two ounces alſo ; beat theſe together, with a wooden Splatter, until you have brought it into a thick Salve : Take then of Quick-ſilver the weight of a ſhilling, and firſt mortifie it very well in a little of the ſirrup of Damask Roſes, the quantity of ſix or eight drops, and about three or four drops of the ſpirit or Oyl of Turpentine ; with the ſirrup and Oyl, mingle and work theſe things well until the Quick-ſilver be very well mortified, then mix it well with the former Salve, and then put it up into a clean Gally-pot, and ſo keep it ; and firſt making the places raw, anoint them with theſe Unguents, and it will kill any *Maigne* in the *Body, Main* or *Tail*, * * This is very good. *Another* very good :

Take of *Tar* a Gallon, of tryed Hogs-greaſe, and Bole-armoniack of each two pound, of Pepper one pound, beat the Pepper and Bolearmoniack to very fine Powder, and then mix all the ingredients together, making them into one body, then firſt ſcrape the ſorraine, ſo as you do raiſe the ſcurfe and dry cruſty ſtuff, but not to make it raw, or to bleed much, and then anoint all the places infected, rubbing and chaſing it in very well, as if it be in winter, let one hold a bar of hot Iron neer to the place as you anoint and chaſe it in ; but if in Summer, the ſun will do it much better as he runneth at Graſs, and thus dreſs him every three days ſo long as the Unguent laſteth, and he will be cured.

* * This is an approved cure.

Another to perfume this cure, the beſt way is, to give the fire to the place after this manner : The iron being hot, firſt draw it along either ſide of the chink, then draw it upon the top of the chink, then draw three ſtrakes (if need ſo require) overthwart, and in ſhort time the hoof will grow again, ſo as the chink will be cloſed, and remain ſound and whole. And over and above, you may exerciſe him that very next day after you have thus given him the fire, provided his exerciſe be not upon hard, but upon ſoft or ſandy ground.

* * This is a very able cure taught me by a ſingular *Maſtriſt*.
of

of *Bruxels*, and I have practised the same upon sundry good *horses* here in *England*.

S E C T. 3. M.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure a sore Mouth?

Hippof. This is a disease that sometimes comes by much corrupt *blood*, and sometime by cold: For this malady most commonly beginneth in the *palate* of the *mouth*, which will cause it to look red and be inflamed; and from the *palate* it will fall into his *chaps*, whereby he will not be able to shut them, as if he had there a *Convulsion*. *Mouth sore.* The cure is if it be but yet in the *palate*, then let him bleed there, and let him bleed well, then, Take of Life-Honey four ounces, Chibbals or young Onions half a handful, toasted Cheese as much as will suffice; boyl these in fair water very well, and blood-warm wash the *palate*, *tongue*, and all other places in and about the *mouth* well with this liquor four or five times, and he will do well. * * * This is very good. *Another,*

After you have let forth the corrupt *blood*, then take Verjuyce of the Crab, and Bay-salt, as much as will suffice, and warm it upon the fire, and blood-warm with a Rag wash well every part of the *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day till it be well. * * * This is also very good; but if it be come into his *chaps*, which you may easily know by observing his wide yawning and gaping, whereby his *chaps* will be so fallen, as that he will not be able to bring them together to shut close again, wherefore so soon as you do perceive him in that posture, Take Verjuyce of the Crab only, and make it warm, and then fast'ning a Rag upon a stick, wash his *mouth* very well therewith, the Verjuyce being blood-warm; and then with your hand help him to close up his mouth, and doing thus two or three, times he will be perfectly cured. * * * These be special good Receipts.

S E C T. 4. M.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure the Mellet in the Heels?

Hippof. I have shewed you that cure before,

fore, *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 9. lit. A.* But yet I will give you one Receipt more.

Stellet.

Take of Honey one pint, and of Sope three ounces, and of white Wine Vinegar five or six Spoonfuls, and as much Alum as an Egg, and of Bean-flower two Spoonfuls, mix all these together, and apply it to the forrance so far as the *nellet* goeth, and let it lye on five days, and then take it away: That done wash the *Leg, Foot*, and forrance with warm Beef-broth, and so keep his *Legs* roped up, well moistned in the Beef-broth two or three days after, and he will be well. *** This I have often used, and it is a most rare cure.

S E C T. 5. M.

Hippoph. *What is best to mollifie humours?*

*Mollifie
humours.*

Hippof. This I have also formerly handled, yet take with you this one Receipt more.

Take of Rosin three ounces, or fresh Butter five ounces, of new Wax one ounce, melt all these upon the fire, and so bring them to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the humours four or five days together and this will mollifie them very well. *** This is most precious for this cause.

S E C T. 6. M.

Hippoph. *What shall a man do to a Horse that is Morfound-
ed?*

*Morfound-
ed.*

Hippof. *Morfounded* is but the *French* word: Signifying melting of Grease or *Foundring* in the *Body*, whereof I have before sufficiently intreated; nevertheless I will give you for this malady two singular receipts, the one I had of an *Italian rider* in *Brussels*, and the other of a *French Marishal* in *Avinion*, a man esteemed most famous, and of both those receipts I have made often use, and I have perfected them for most rare cures. That which the *Italian* taught me is this; first open the *Neck-vein*, and draw away the inflamed and corrupt blood, then take of white Wine one pint, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, of Rhubarb and of Aloes, of each two drams, of Sene half an ounce, of Agarick three drams, Bay-berries half an ounce,

ounce, Saffron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of cordial powder, of each two drams, make what is to be powdred into very fine powder, and mix them well together, adding thereunto of Life-Honey four ounces, all which being made warm upon the fire, and well brewed together, give it your *horse* blood-warm, but you must withal understand that the same day you shall administer this drink unto him, he do stand fasting upon the Trench three or four hours before, and as many after; neither must you the same day give him any Oats, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash, or white water, and keep him warm, and with white water five or six days after, and then give him Oats, but in the interim instead of Oats, let him have either bread made for him of purpose, or else Bran prepared, and when you do give him Oats, put in amongst them Fænugreek bruised. * * * This is, I do assure you a most excellent receipt, with which I saved the life, and brought to perfect sanity a *horse* of price, which was visited with this infirmity; the second receipt which I had of the *Marishal* of *Avinion* is this: (*viz.*) so soon as you do perceive or suspect him to be *Morfounded*.

Take of Salt one handful, and put to it of fair water one pint, and give it him to drink, and ride him moderately upon it till he *sweat*, and this will cure him if it be administered so soon as you may suspect the malady, but if you stay three or four days, or longer, before you do give him this water and salt, then take of the powder of Hellebore one spoonful, and of Saffron one penny-worth, of *Assafætida*, and of *Sope* of *Venice*, of each two drams, of *Bacca alias* the seeds of *Bays*, a farthing-worth made also into fine powder, mix and pound all these together well, putting to them of *Vinegar* one pint, and give it him blood-warm, then cover him with a wet cloth, and cloth him warm, and set him upon the Trench, that he may neither lye down, nor vomit, but let him sweat an hour after, and then cool and dry him by degrees, and let him be well rubbed, and he will do well again. * * * This is also a very good receipt.

C H A P. XV.

S E C T. I. N.

Hippopherus.

Nose run-
ning.

W *EN* now Hippopherus, let us go on, what will cure the running at the Nose?

Hippof. I have shewed you that before, but yet I will give you two or three receipts more,

Take Orpin and Brimstone, as much as will suffice, and cast them upon burning coles, and so perfume his *head* and *nose* therewith, that will dissolve the *humours* congealed in the *head* and *brain*. * * * This is very good. Another:

Take Auripigmentum, and Tusilago, of each two drams, make them into fine powder, and with good Venice Turpentine washed, make it into a stiff paste, and thereof make small cakes the breadth of your Thumb-nail, and dry them a little, and therewith perfume your *horse* over a Chafing-dish and coles every day; but before you do perfume him, give him the drink prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. sect.* which beginneth thus (first let him bleed in the Neck-vein well, then take Assafætida as much as a Halse-nut, &c.) * * * And this is very good.

S E C T. 2. N.

Hippoph. *W*hat is good to cure a Navel gald?

Hippof. This is a naughty forrance coming by means of a Saddle behind, which being let run a while, will be long in curing. It is called a *Navel-gald*, by reason that the hurt is upon the top of the *back*, right over against the *Navel*, the signs are so demonstrative, as that they need no description the cure thereof is:

Take Oyl-de-Bay, Costus, Fox-grease, Oyl of Savin, of each one ounce, then take great Garden Worms a hundred and scowr them with white Wine and Salt, then put all the ingredients together into an earthen pot very well stopped, and
boyl

boyl it well, then add thereto of Sallet-Oyl one ounce and a half, and boyl it over again till it come to a perfect Oyntment, then strain into a Galley-pot or Glafs, and so keep it close stopp'd for your use, and when you are to use it, only warm it; and so dress the forrance therewith, with Lint or Hurds, and it will soon be whole. * * This by proof I do know to be very good.

S E C T. 3. N

Hippoph. **W**hat help have you for a Horse that is troubled with a disease commonly called the Night-mare?

Hippof. This disease is so called indeed, but yet all able and skilful *Farriers* do laugh at those that give it the same *Epiphraze*, ^{Night-} for it is none other thing but a *Melancholy blood* wherewith the creature is oppress'd, for it doth perplex the *heart* more then any other member or part of the body, causing him in the night to sweat more then in the day, bereaving him of his sleep and natural rest, and the best signs to know this disease is, by observing well the *horse*, when you come unto him in the morning, you shall perceive him to have sweat as well in the *Flanks* as *Neck* and *Short-ribs* next to the place where the heart lieth. ^{mare.}

The Cure for the malady is :

Take of Salt one handful, Sallet-oil half a pint, and of brown Sugar Candy made into fine powder, four ounces; mix all these very well, then warm them upon the fire, and so give it him with a horn blood-warm, give him this two mornings together, and it will cure him: But the day before you drench him, first open the two *Spur-veins*, and let him bleed there very well. * *

I have known many who have taken a good great stone which hath had an hole in it, and they have taken a withe and put it through the hole of the said stone, and so hung it upon the top of the Rack, just over the *horse*, whereby he hath been perfectly cured.

C H A P. X V.

S E C T. 1. O.

Hippophilus.

W *Hat good Receipt have you wherewith to cure old Sores?*

Hippof. Sir, I have many, and the most of them be very good, whereof I will give you only one, and leave the residue to their proper places :

Old Sores.

Take of Roch-Allum a good quantity, and burn it in a hot fire-pan, then take so much Bay-Salt, and burn that also ; beat these together to very fine Powder, then take of common-Honey and of sweet Butter, of each like much, so much as will suffice, and so incorporate all these Ingredients together ; neither must it be warmed upon the fire, but only thus brought to a Salve, and so keep it for your use : which must be applyed either Plaister-wise, or Taint-wise, or both, according as you shall see cause, and this will heal any fores very soundly ; neither will it permit any dead or proud *flesh* to remain in the place. * * * This I have often times tryed.

S E C T. 2. O.

Hippoph. **V V** *Hat is best to be applyed to an over-reach upon the Heel ?*

Hippof. I have handled this malady before in *l.2.c. 4. sect. 10. lit. A.* notwithstanding I will give you one or two Receipts more. First, cut out the over-reach with your incision knife, making it plain as may be, then wash it with Beer and Salt, and apply this plaister unto it,

Take Oat-meal and Butter so much as will suffice, to bring it to a Salve, pound them together in a Morter, working them into one body, and apply this Plaister-wise to the Sorrhage, renewing it every day once till it be whole. * * * This is very good. Another,

Mollifie the heels of the *horse* with supplying things, where-
of

of I have given you store, then open the sole of the *foot* round about, and press the *heel* to enlarge it, then when you have made the *sole* firm again, keep his *feet* moist with *Unguentum Rosatum*, or some such like suppling thing, and he will be whole and sound again. This I never tryed. Another,

If the malady doth proceed from a disease which the *French* do call *Encastelure*, then take out the *sole* of the *foot* where the Sorrhance is, open it close to the *hair*, then take up the *vein* in the ball of the *foot*, and give him the fire all along the *hair*, upon the said sorrhance, and lay unto it black Sope upon the Hurds, and when the scurf falleth off, dress it with black *Ægyptiacum*, until such time as it hath produced a circle of a new horn, and keep the *hoof* always supple with *Unguentum rosatum*, and the grief will heal up, and wear away in short time. This is very good.

S E C T. 3. O

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make Oyl of Oats, and what is its vertue?

Hippof. To deal ingeniously with you, neither my *Master* nor my self did ever know the nature of this Oyl, or how to make it, until such time as we met with *Master Markhams Master-piece*, from whence since we have made very good use thereof, and do find it to be a most singular Receipt: I will give it you just as we have it from him.

Take of Milk eight quarts, and warming it upon the fire, put thereto of burnt-Allum four ounces, which will cause it to run into a Curd like to a Posset; take off the Curd and cast it away, and strain the Whey through a course cloth into a clean vessel: then take of *Oats* a quarter of a Peck, dry and clean husked, that were never dried, and put them into the Whey, and so set the Whey upon the fire, and let them boyl untill the *Oats* do burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender, so that the Whey may go gently from them without any pressing: (for you must keep the *Oats* as moist as may be) this done, put the *Oats* into a Fry-pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till you see the vapour or smoak of them, not to ascend up-

wards: But as it were to run about the Pan; then suddenly take them off: and putting them into a Press, press them most exceedingly, and look what comes from them is only their Oyl, which you must reserve in a close glass and so stop it well.

Now there are other more artificial and curious ways whereby to distil and extract this Oyl, yet this above them all, is both the easiest, surest and least troublesome way, and the very best for every mean capacity. * * This Oyl of Oats is of all medicines whatsoever the most excellent, and sovereign for the *Body* of the *Horse*, as being abstracted from the most natural, wholesome, and best nourishing food which doth belong to the sustentation and lively-hood of the *horse*, this Oyl being given by four or five spoonfuls in sweet Wine, one pint, or strong-Ale one quart, and some of the Whey poured in his nostrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all *Purgations*, for it purgeth away all those venemous and *Peccant humours* that feedeth the most incurable *Farcin* whatsoever; & for my own part at what time I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, I will never use any other Oyl or unctuous matter in any medicine whatsoever, to be administered inwardly but this only: I having found by good experience, that it is the most Sovereign of all simples of that kind, and thus I have shewed you what Mr. *Markhams* opinion (which is the same both with my *Master* and my *Self*) is, both of this Oyl and its vertues, and so I remit you to the use and practice thereof. * *

C H A P. XVII.

S E C T 1. P.

Hippophylus.

What is the Receipt which I have often times heard so highly commended among Farriers, called Pastons, and to what use doth it serve?

Hippof.

Hippof. This thing which is called *Pastons* is none other than a plain *Plaiſter*; only ſome of our *verbal Farriers* have gotten hold of the *French* word *Pafton*, which doth ſignifie a *Plaiſter*, and that they deliver and vent among ignorant people, whereby to cry themſelves up for learned, and ſkilful *Doctōrs in Horſe-leech-craft*; now forasmuch as maladies and diſeaſes, are of fundry ſorts and different natures: ſo ought the *Paftons*, *Plaiſters* and *Medicines* be diſcrepant each from other, but ſince you were pleaſed to underſtand the true nature of this word *Pafton*, I have in a word delivered the ſame unto you, and now I will give you the receipt of one of the *Paftons* which will be well worth your acceptance, it being the moſt ſoveraign remedy of any that ever I could come to know, which is as good to diſſolve and take away evil *humours*, which ſhall at any time fall down into the *Legs* of your *horſe*, as any other *Medicine* you can uſe. And this it is.

Take of common-Honey one pound, of Turpentine half a pound, of Maſtick in fine powder, two ounces, of Frankincenſe and Bole-armoniack both made into fine powder, of each four ounces, of Sanguis Draconis, three ounces, of new laid Eggs ſix, of the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vinegar one pint, of the flower of Rice ſeven ounces, mix all theſe together, and hereof make a *plaiſter*, and lap the *legs* of the *horſe* from the *feet* to the upper *joynts*, and do this but four or five times, and you ſhall ſee it will perform a ſtrange and rare cure. * *

S E C T. 2. P.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good to help a ſtrain in the Paſtern-joynt?*

Hippof. If it be only a ſtrain in or upon the *paſtern-joynt*, and not upon the *back ſinews*:

Take then of Chamberly one quart, and boyl it untill the ſcum doth ariſe, then ſtrain it, and put unto it of Tanſey and of Mallows, of each one handful, and of ordinary Honey two ſpoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow four ounces, chop the herbs ſmall, and then mingle all theſe *Ingredients* together, and ſo apply the *Medicine* to the place with a linnen cloth bound up, and ſtitched cloſe with a needle and thread, that it may not

*Paſtern-joynt ſtrain-
ned.*

remove, renewing this plaister every day once, for three or four days, and he will be found and go upright again. * * This is special good. Another,

Take of Brine one quart, and boyl it till it arifeth, and then strain it, and put to it of Tansey, and Mallows, of each one handful, of Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow four ounces; chop all these together, and then pound them well: and set them upon the fire, and so boyl them, as much as will suffice, apply this warm to the place with a cloth *Plaister-wise* fowing it fast on, and so let it remain five days, and if this doth not cure him, then wash the place with warm water, and shave away the hair, and scarrifie the joynt, then apply the medicine of Cantharides and Euforbium, &c. as you are shewed in the cure for an upper attaint in l. 2. c. 4. *sect. 9. lit. A.* and so he will be cured this, is very good.

S E C T. 3. P:

Hippoph. **I** *Would gladly, Hipposerus, learn a good Pill for the Glanders.*

Hippof. I have delivered you many already, hut since you are pleased to renew this cure again, I will give you two *pills*, which shall be of most vertue, which shall cure any violent Cold or Glanders; prevent *heart sicknesses*, purge away all *molten-grease*, recover a *lost stomach*, keep the *heart* from fainting in and after hard travel, and violent riding and exercise, and these pills will raise a lean horse, and make him fat suddenly.

Take Anniseeds, Cumin, dried Elecampane, Canthamus of each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searce them; and add unto them of the powder of Brimstone, and of the juyce of Licorish, of each one ounce, which said juyce of Licorish must be dissolved in white Wine one pint, then take of the oyl of Anniseeds, and of the Syrup of Colts-foot, of each one ounce, of Sallet-oyl and life-Honey of each half a pint; mix all these with the former Ingredients, and with as much fine wheat-flower as will knead it into a stiff paste, and so make it up into *pills*, somewhat bigger

ger then a *French Walnut*, and so keep them close stopp'd in a glass or gally pot, for they will last good the whole year, and when you shall have occasion to use them, take forth one, and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it your *horse*, and continue thus to do every morning one, for some time, and ride him a little after the taking thereof gently, if the weather be temperate, and let him stand upon the Snaffle or trench three hours after, then feed him, and at night you may either give him a Mash, or white water. *.* And thus do (if it be to prevent sickness) three or four mornings together, but if it be to take away any infirmity, as Cold, Glanders, or the like, then administer it eight or ten days together at the least, but if it be to cleanse his *body* from *molten-grease*, or to take away foulness, then give it him either in his heat, or presently after; but if it be to make him fat being meager, poor, and lean, then use it fifteen days at the least. If you shall find any difficulty in the giving of this pill, you may then at your pleasure dissolve it either into sweet Wine, or else into good Ale or Beer, and so give it him with a horn drench-wife.

. The other *pill* is,

Take of Wheat-flower one pound, or so much as shall suffice to make a stiff paste, then take of Anniseeds, Fenugreek, Brimstone, of each two ounces, Sallet-oyl one pint, common honey one pound and a half, white-Wine two quarts; make the hard simples into fine Powder, and searce them, then with the residue make a stiff paste, and of this past make a *pill* the bigness of a mans fist, and dissolve it into two or three gallons of fair water, by washing and laving the same paste therein with your hands, and so let your *horse* drink the same at his ordinary watering times, or at any other time, when he is willing to drink, for he cannot take too much of this water, then ride him to warm it in his *belly*, but not otherwise, and when the water is spent, do not cast away the bottom, but filling again the vessel wherein he drinketh, with fresh water, the next time he drinketh dissolve another ball therein, and thus do for fifteen days together, at least, and you shall see some wonderful effects thereof. This water scowreth, cleanseth, and feedeth after an admirable manner, and the former lesser *pills* do purge the *stomach* and entrals from all foulness.

foulness, it avoideth and carrieth away in his ordure molten and dissolved greafe, and fortifieth nature so powerfully, as that it leaveth no evil *humours* in the *body*. *.* This was taught me by a Scotch-man who was Groom in *Prince Henry* his Stable under Monsieur Saint *Anthony*, and a singular good Groom he was. I have oftentimes made proof and use thereof, and have found it to be right good, and for that reason I do rather commend it unto you.

S E C T. 4. P.

Hippoph. *What good Antidote or preservative have you for the Pestilence?*

Hippof. This disease which we call the *Pestilence* or *Plague*, hath also sundry other names, for some do call it the *Murrain*, others the *Garget*, others the *Gargil*, and the *French* do call it *mal de mountain*, the Mountain evil: It is a most contagious and infectious disease, it is sometime engendred of a Surfeit by riding, when the *horse* afterwards taketh cold, and sometimes it cometh of the contagiousness of the Air, when as a *horse* cometh upon a sudden into *fenny* or *marshy* places, where he never was before, having been ever bred and kept in pure, sweet, and wholesome Air; as once happened to a young Gelding of mine own, when I coming into the hundreds in *Essex*, and travelling late, I came to my Inn, where my *horse* the very next day fell into a *pestilent Feaver*, whereof he had doubtless died, had not I administered help instantly: Wherefore whensoever you do suspect your *horse* to be never so little touched with this malady, remove him presently, lest he should infect so many *horses* as be in the Stable with him. This comes also to a horse many times by means of corrupt bood and bad *humours* which do lie lurking in his *body*, which washing, drinking being hot, and Surfeits do often cause; but let it come as it may, it brings with it a *pestilent Feaver*, which is seconded by ensuing death, if speedy prevention be not at hand.

The signs be these: After that he hath drooped and languished two, three, or four days at most, he will begin to swell under the roots of his Ears, as if he had the Veins, and under

under the *Chaul*, and so this swelling will run up his *Cheeks* through the malignancy of the disease, and become very hard; he will hang down his *Head* and *Face*, and seem always to *sleep* and forsake his meat, and his *Eyes* will be yellowish; he will draw his breath short, which will be also very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will put forth Carbuncles, and swellings in his Groin, bigger then a mans fist, and his Stones will hang, but this not always, and this I have known in *horses* more then in one or two. The cure is,

Take of white Wine one quart, and the herb called in French *Mairelle*, which we in English do term *Night-shade*: *Pestilence.*
Stamp it, and take the juyce thereof, and boyl it in the Wine, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, take then Linseed meal, and Barley-meal, and sift out the Bran, taking only the Flower of them both, as much as will suffice, and put it into the liquor, and so boyl them again to a Poultifs, and make Plaisters thereof, and apply it to the swellings, but before you lay on the Plaister, strew upon them the Powder of burnt Egg-shells, and thus renewing the Plaisters every day once, you shall either ripen or break them, or they will drive the swellings back again without further trouble; but if the swellings do break, then heal them with your green Oyntment so often shewed you; but then to drive away the malignancy of the infection from the Heart, and to send it forth, first let him blood in the *Neck*, and *Weeping* veins, and then give him of Diapent two spoonfuls, with white Wine one pint, and of London Treacle one ounce, and this will recover him. And for your other *horses* which you may have just cause to suspect to be infected, to prevent their danger, give him this preparative:

Take two Walnuts, the kernels only, and the older the Nuts be, the better: Take also two Figs, and twenty leaves of Rue, stamp them all well together, and let every horse have his proportion three or four mornings together fasting, being made up and given in *Pills*, and let them fast three hours after, and this will both preserve and free them. These things I have often used, and found them to be special good.

SECT. 5. P.

Hippoph. *What good purging Pills have you?*

Hippof. I have already shewed you many in *l. 2. c. sect.* But I will give one or two more,

Take fresh Butter one pound, Aloes and Fænugreek, of each one ounce, Life-Honey, and white refined Sugar powdred, of each four ounces, Agarick half an ounce, make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Hony, make *Pills* thereof and give them to your *horse*, and if he be a small or weak *horse*, then you must give him but two parts of three, but if your *horse* have a strong cold, and cough withal, then

Take of fresh Butter, and of Mel-Rosarum, of each four ounces, of Aloes and Senne, of each one ounce, Rubard and Bay-berries, of each three ounces, Colloquintida and Saffron, of each two drams, Cordial powder one ounce, Duck or Dutch Powder four ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mix them well with Mithridate two ounces, and with your Butter and Mel-Rosarum, beat and pound them well together, and so make them into *Pills*, and give them your *horse*, this receipt will purge him very well, albeit it may heat him for some time; and as touching the ordering him in his diet, or otherwise let all things be done as in other *Physical cures* of the like nature: If it be a small *Horse*, then give him two parts in three, and proportion the *Pills* according to the strength, greatness, and corpulency of your *horse*.
* * * This is very good.

SECT. 6. P.

Hippoph. *What is good to cure the pains in the Heels of a Horse?*

Hippof. This is a noisome Sorrance, coming to a *horse* either by ill *humours* and corrupt *blood* by means of Surfeits proceeding from great heats, by intemperate ridings, as I have sufficiently declared before, or else through the negligence of his *Groom* or *Keeper*, for want of good rubbing, cleansing,
and

and picking, this doth grow between the *Fetlock-joynt*, and the *Heel*, in the very *Pasterne*, which will cause the place to swell and to have chops, from whence will issue a thin and stinking water, and those *horses* which have shaggy and long *hair* upon their *Fetlocks*, are most subject to this Malady; the signs be easily known, by reason that the chops may be soon felt, for they will cause the *Legs* of the *Horse* to swell, and much filthy matter will come from the place grieved, being of that hot nature, as that it will scald the very *hair* from about the *Sorrance*, and this will cause the *Horse* to go very stiff and lame, at first setting forth: The Cure is,

Take of Lees of red Wine one pint, of Wheat-bran one handful, of House-leek one head, of common Honey, two spoonfuls, of the dust of *Tanners* bark, Allou, and tryed Hogs-grease, of each one pound, and of Vervain half a handful, bray all these well in a Morter, and add unto them of the lean of Martlemas or dried Beef, burned, and made unto fine powder, half a pound, and so work them to a kind of Salve, and apply it unto the *Sorrance*, so hot as the *horse* can suffer it; but before you do apply this medicine, you must draw the *skin* with a hot iron, a little above the *Hoofs* or *Knees*, or else take up the *Veins* (which I altogether use to do) then take of Tar, and of sweet Butter, and of Hony, of each two spoonfuls, and warm them upon the fire, and either anoint the places seared, or else the *Vein*, so taken up with this Unguent, once every day, till his Oyntment be all spent, and by that time, your *horse* will be perfectly cured, especially if you continue this former Emplaister daily to the *Sorrance*, having first clipped and shaven away the *hair*; from about the place grieved. * * * With this I have cured many *horses*. Another,

Take of Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Hony, of each like much, so much as will suffice, a little Bolearmoniack in fine powder, and yolks of two Eggs: With so much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the other ingredients: Incorporate all these well together, and so bring it to a Salve, and Plaister-wise apply it to the *Sorrance*, and so bind it up, renewing it every day, and let him not come out of the Stable, or

R r r come

come into any wet, and he will soon be cured. ** This is also very good. *Another,*

Take of tryed Hogs-grease one pound, Verdegrease one penny-worth, of strong Mustard two ounces, Nerval four ounces, of Oyl de Bay, of Hony and Wax, of each half a pound, Arsnick one ounce, Red Lead two ounces, and of white Wine Vinegar half a pint, powder your Verdegrease, and then boyl all together, (and the *hair* first clipt away, which must always be done in any of these Cures) apply this Medicine hot to the place, and renew it daily, and it will not only cure the pains, but all manner of scratches, scabbed, and kibed *Heels*; to wash also the Sorrance, with Vinegar and Gunpowder is very good to help the pains, and scratches. ** This I have often used.

S E C T. 7. P.

Pursiveness.
a Pill. Hippoph. **D**oe you not use to purge a Horse that is Pursive and Short winded ?

Hippof. Yea Sir, and I do it after this manner ;

Take of the fat of a Boar three pound, mince it very small, and lay it in fair Water four and twenty hours, to the end the Salt (if any be in it) may soak out of it, then, Take of Agarick Pulverized two ounces, of Colliquintida in powder half an ounce, *melrosarum* six ounces, incorporate all these well together, and work it to a paste; which you must make into Pills, the bigness of an ordinary Tennis Ball, one of which you must give him at a time rowled up within the powder of Licorish, but the night before you do administer it, you must give him no Oats at all, but a little Hay and Wheat-bran prepared only, then the next morning about six or seven of the clock, give him one of these Pills, and then cover him up warm; and ride or walk him two hours space; then bring him in, and let him stand upon the Tench two hours more, then unbridle him, and give him a little Hay sprinkled with water, and eight or nine hours after the taking of his *Pill*, (which will be three of the clock, give him white Water to drink, and let him eat of the Bran, then at night when you are to go to bed, put a muzzle upon his mouth,

mouth, and let him remain so all night fasting, and let him be warm covered, and the next morning unmuzzle him, and give him Hay sprinkled with water to eat, and continue to let his drink be white Water, only, the third day, give him another of these Pills, after which you may begin to give him Oats, but a little at once; but then the days he does not take his Pills, you must remember ever more an hour after you give him his white Water, to give him of Agarick; and of Rubarb in powder, of each one ounce, which he must take in fresh or sweet Butter made up like to a Pill. This *purgation* may be given to any Horse, but especially to that *Horse* you shall fear is in danger, to become either purfive or Glandery, and if perhaps the Malady have been longer upon him, give him then of Antimony thirty drams more or less, according to the strength and age of the *Horse*, and also according to the nature and quality of the disease; and if after the application of this medicine your *Horse* will not feed (as it may be very probably) you may cherish him with milk mingled with the yolks of Eggs and Sugar, well beaten and brewed together. * * This I applyed to a *Horse* of more than twelve years old, who in seven days eat not one bit of any thing but only the said Milk, Eggs, and Sugar, and yet in fourteen days after, I cured him, and made him perfectly healthy and sound.

SECT. 8. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for a *Horse* that Pisseth blood?

Hippof. This disease comes sometimes being troubled with the *stone*, like as we have often times among men; sometimes it comes to a *Horse*, that being very fat, is put to more then his strength is well able to perform; like as I once saw a very proper Gelding (a young Gentleman being upon his back in hunting) who coming to a great leap, and the *Horse* being ridden off from his wind, his Rider inconsiderately forcing him to take that leap, which the Gelding with much difficulty took, but withal fell, and was not able to arise but with the help of men, and coming home the same

night he pissed blood, whereof he died four days after, maugre the endeavours of three able *Farrriers*, and being opened they found two veins broken neer to the kidneys, and much black blood found in the place. This malady may also come by bearing too great a weight, as also when a horse is too hard ridden, he will piss water like to *blood*: your eye sheweth you the disease, and therefore it needs no further Demonstration. The Cure is,

Rising of
blood.

Take of *Ambrosia Sanguinaria*, alias *Bloudwort*, and *Burfa Pastoris*, of each three ounces, stamp them well; and boyl them in fair water very well, and so give the liquor thereof being strained, to the horse blood-warm. * * * Give him this five mornings together, and it will help him. Another:

Take *Barly*, and boyl it in the juyce of *Gumfolly*, and give him the *Barly* to eat, and the *Liquor* to drink, and this will cure him. * * * This is also very good. Another,

First cleanse his *yard* from all filth, and his sheath also with broken *Beer* and *Butter*, then let him *blood* in the *neck and mouth*, then take the juyce of *Leeks*, or *green onions*, to wit, the water wherein they have been steeped twelve or sixteen hours at the least, the vessel wherein they be steeped being kept close stopped.

Take of this liquor, and of *white-Wine*, of each one pint, and stir and jumble them together till they become slimy, then give it him to drink, and do this six or seven mornings together, and it will stay his flux of *blood*, and bring his *wine* to its natural and ordinary colour. * * * This is a very good medicine, and I have often tryed it.

Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take *Bean-flower* finely sifted, and add unto it the *Suet* of a *Stag*, as much as will suffice, and give it him three mornings together warm, with a horn, with a sufficient quantity of *red Wine*, and during that time, let this drink be either *sweet Marshes*, or *white water*, made with *Bean-meal*. * * * This is an approved good receipt.

S E C T. 9. P.

Hippoph. **V**hat good receipt have you for a horse that hath taken a surfet by Provender?

Hippof. This comes commonly to such horses as are insatiable feeders, and therefore it is requisite that they be dieted, especially if they have too much rest, and too little exercise; for such horses if they can either break, or steal to a Bing of Provender, and drink presently after, will undoubtedly surfet upon them, for drinking after Oats, Pease, or Beans, doth cause the Provender to swell in their belly and stomach, and so clogg the stomach, as that crudities will arise, and so cause him to be very sick, yea and perhaps to no little danger, that you shall see him to stand with his four Legs asunder, the one far from the other, and he will scowr and cast forth his fundament, corn which will go forth as whole and entire, as he did greedily swallow them without chewing, or grinding them. The cure is, first open a vein in the neck, to keep the blood from inflaming, then draw his yard, and wash it with broken Beer and Butter, then anoint it with soft grease, and put into the pipe of his yard a small piece of a clove of Garlicke, whereby to provoke him to stale, then rake him, and give him the *Clister* prescribed in l. 2. c. 6. Sect. 8. *Clister*. 8. C. and it is called a *Clister lenitive*, then keep him warm and to a spare diet, for four or five days after, and let his drink be white water, during that time. * * * With this receipt I have cured many a horse, but one horse amongst the rest of very great price, who otherwise had infallibly dyed.

S E C T. 10. P.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you cure the Poll-evil?

Hippof. This malady we do term the *Poll-evil*: because it breedeth in the top of the *Poll* behind the ears of the horse, but let it assume what name it shall, yet it is none other thing then a *Fistula in grain*, that is a formal *Fistula*, which doth begin like all other *Fistulaes*, with a great inflammation and impostume in the nape of the neck: sometimes it comes

comes by means of his unruly striving, the halter being new, and therefore hard, which doth so pinch and gall him, that the harm thereof by reason the *flesh* is bruised, doth fester and inflame, and from thence is ingendred this most loathsome sorrhance, and sometimes it comes again of billious and evil *humours*, which do approach to that place: sometimes it comes again by the means of a stroke or blow given by some cudgel by his *Keeper or Rider*, betwixt his ears, whereby it festreth inwardly, and inflaming, breedeth an impostumation, so as if it be not in time taken, it will grow to a very foul *Fistula*, not easie to be cured; for the *poll* of the *horse* is so tender a member, as to be soon offended, and therefore easily damnified; I need not to deliver you the signs, for the swelling will be so apparent, as that it cannot be mistaken, albeit it will putrifie much more inwardly then outwardly; and therefore you ought to apply your diligence to open it, before it do break of it self. The cure is,

Poll-evil.

First to lay unto the place swollen, such things as will ripen it, and to prepare it ready to be opened: and as touching the ripening thereof:

Take the Loam of a mud-wall which had never any Lime in it, but much straw or Litter; and the elder this Loame or mud-wall is, the better; boyl so much as you shall please thereof in the strongest white Wine-Vinegar, and let it boyl till it come to be a very Poultefs, then being very hot, lay it to the swelling, renewing it morning and evening till it be ripe enough to be opened, then open it with a red hot iron made sharpe at the end, and let the iron be the bigness of a nail rod, but you must begin below, thrusting your instruments upwards, clean through, that it may come forth in the softest place, and when it is thus opened, so as the corruption may issue forth at ease; anoint the Orifices with tryed Hogs-grease two or three days together, to get out the fire, but howsoever fail not to dress it twice every day with the said Poultefs, taints being dipped in the Poultefs, and put down to the bottom, as well to carnifie and heal the *Fistula* at the bottom, as to keep open the Orifices, and this Poultefs will cure him. * * But withal you must remember to make him a hood or night-cap to warm the *nape* of his *neck*, and to keep

in the taints also: this also cureth the Botch in the groin, hurts in the withers, navel-galles, galled-back, or Sit-fasts, &c. Another :

First ripen it as before, or else with tryed Hogs-grease scalding hot, making him a Biggin wherewith to keep his *poll* very warm, and renew this Emplaister every day, and it will ripen it the sooner ; then when you find it to be the softest, and most likely to break, open it with a hot iron two inches beneath the soft place, carrying your hand upward into the soft and most matterative place, to draw forth the corruption downwards, then taint it with Flax or Hurds dipped into molten Hogs-grease, and lay also a plaster of Hogs-grease upon it, renewing it for four or five days once every day, to get forth the fire : after this, take of Turpentine of *Venice*, half a pound thrice washed, and dried from the water, the yolks of two Eggs, and of Saffron one penny-worth in powder ; incorporate all these together very well, then with a probat, search the depth of the Sorraine, and taint it with a Sponge full as big as the hole of the wound, and as long ; and convey the taint down to the very bottom, well aointed with the said medicine : but this must be done with the help of your instrument, and then cover it with a plaister of Hogs-grease, renewing it twice a day, but when the swelling is allaid, then use no plaister, and in short time it will be perfectly whole and sound. * * This is a very good cure. Another :

First ripen and open it as before is taught you, and apply Hogs-grease to fetch forth the fire, then heal it thus :

Take Roman Vitreol, Allum and Rose water of each two ounces, boyl all these together on a quick fire till they do come to be as hard as a stone, and then beat it into a very fine powder, and when you are to dress the sore, first dip a taint into Unguentum *Ægyptiacum*, and so rowl it in the said powder, and convey the taint with the help of your instrument, to the very bottom, and it will in short time make it perfectly whole and sound. * * This powder being strewed upon an old sore or ulcer, will both heal and dry it up. Another ;

Take of Quick-silver one ounce, let it be well mortified with fasting-spittle, and mix with it tryed Hogs-grease the quantity

ty of a Hens Egg, and Brimstone pulverized; incorporate these very well together, and anoint the swelling very well with this Unguent; having thus done, take presently of red Tar one penny-worth, of the reddest and best, of Hogs-grease half a pound, and green Copperas and Bay-Salt of each one handful, both made into fine powder; boyl all these on the fire exceeding well, and then boyling hot (even as it comes from the fire) with a clout fast'ned upon the end of a stick; apply this medicine upon the place (being solately anointed with the Quick-silver, Hogs-grease, and Brimstone) and thus by scalding it three or four mornings together, you shall after those mornings but only warm the Tar medicine upon the fire, so that it be but molten, and apply it, and it will be cured; for this scalding of the place doth so kill the malice of the *Fistula*, that it can never break to annoy the *Horse* any further. * * * And thus with this medicine I have not only cured many *poll-evils*, but sundry other *Fistula's*; it cureth all *Impostumations* and foul *Ulcers*, being thus applyed.

S E C T. II. P.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What is good in case of Purfiveness or shortness of Breath?*

Hippesf. This disease cometh by two means: the first *natural*, the second *accidental*; *natural*, as when a *horse* is (as we do usually say) *cock-thropled* for that his *throppell* or *windpipe* being too long, and so becomes crooked as his wind is thereby so straightned or stopped, as that he is not able to draw it in, and put it forth with that ease and pleasure that other *horses* that do are loose *thropled*, for that the *wind-pipe* is (I say) straightened, which doth convey his breath into his *lungs*, and vent it forth again in like manner, a *horse* becometh *purfive* and *short-winded*, when the *pipe* is too much filled, with fat or other *phlegmarick* stuff, whereby he is very much suffocated, which causeth his *lungs* to labour the more, and therefore if you shall be pleased to follow my counsel, never breed with that *horse* that is *cock-thropled*.

This disease cometh secondly by *accident*, when a *horse* shall be

be too hard strained upon his water, like as many of your ignorant *Doctors* use to do, when morning and evening they do make them *watring courses* (as they are frequently so termed) so also this infirmity cometh by riding, galloping, or straining a *horse* upon a full *stomach*, before he hath either digested his meat, or emptied himself; for by this means *phlegmatick humours* do distil out of the *head* into the *wind-pipe*, and so fall upon the *lungs*, where they do rest, and there congeal, hindring the drawing of his *breath*: it comes also by colds, Glanders, and the like; the signs are so apparent, as that they need no description, only this inconvenience (besides many more) it bringeth with it; as to be heavy, sad, and dull in travel, be marvellous subject to sweats, and be ready to fall down if he be but a little strained. A right skilfull *Farrier* not long since told me of a strange cure in this kind, which a gentleman's *Groom* related to him of a gelding which the *Groom* had in his said keeping, who was so *pursive* (or as we plainly say) *broken-winded*, as that he became almost unuseful, and his cure was after this manner; he suffered his Gelding to eat what he would, as well his fill (*viz.*) of good Hay, as of Provender, but debarred him of all drink for the space of two or three days together, then leaping his back, he rode him upon a foot pace to the water, at which time he suffered him to drink his fill, then coming forth of the water, he clapt spurs suddenly to him, and ran him with a loose hand upon the top of his speed so long, until for want of *breath* he fell with him, and for some time lay as if he were dead, but recovering *breath*, he arose, and being well recovered of his *wind*, he rode him into the water the second time, where he also drank, and being come out of the water, he did as before, and so being again ridden from off his wind, he fell like as at first, having thus the second time recovered breath, he gave him water the third time, and then rode him as formerly, but now this third time being fallen, when he began to get *breath* again he coughed most vehemently, at what time through the violence of his coughing, the Gelding cast forth of his *mouth*, & that out of his *wind-pipe* a hard lump of congealed *Flegmatick stuff* of a good bigness, which by this means brought up, the Gelding was ever after freed from the malady, and made

found, and from that hour, had the use of his *wind*, as able and as well as ever before, and this was the story which one of the ablest *Farriers* I do know in *England* delivered unto me (as he affirmed, and I do believe him, for that I do know him to be a right honest man) from the *mouth* of the *Groom*, who with many vehement asseverations affirmed the thing to be most true, nevertheless albeit I do Mathematically believe that the *Groom* delivered this history to the *Farrier*, I must say with the *French-man*, *Je croy en Dieu* : But leaving this famous *Groom* to his rare cure, let us proceed to cures that are more probable, and now of such cures as I have met with for this disease, You shall participate :

Take of new Milk one pint, and of Sallet-oyl half a pint, give him this blood-warm, which done, put down his throat two new laid Eggs, do thus three or four mornings together, and then you shall perceive amendment, but for this Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and his Oats well wet in good Ale or Beer, and let his drink be altogether white water. * * This is very good. Another :

Keep your *horse* three or four days to a spare Dyet, before you do administer to him ; then give him this drink : Take Fenugreek three ounces, of Bay-berries one ounce and a half, of the inner rind of Elder half a pound, the whites of six new laid Eggs, of brown-Sugar-Candy, water-Cresses, Prim-rose-leaves, if they may be had, red-Mints, red-Fennel, white or Haw-thorn-leaves, of each one pound, bray all these together in a Morter, (the spices before beaten by themselves) and when they be well powdred, put to the ingredients of Ale one quart, and so boyl it, and after strain it, and so give the liquor thereof to your *horse* to drink blood-warm, and set him upon the Trench, and let him fast six hours after, then give him meat, and an hour after that, give him a warm Mash, or white Water, and let him be kept to a strict Diet, and let his drink be Mash or white water 9 days together after, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and his Provender wet in Ale or Beer ; and thus you may cure him. * * With this medicine I have done very great cures. Another :

Take the guts of a Hedg-hog, and hang them in an Oven till they be dry, then make them into Powder, then take three
or

or four Spoonfuls of the Powder, and put it into sweet Wine, Ale or Beer, and so give it him to drink; and the residue of the Powder mix with the powder of Anniseeds and Licorish, and with sweet Butter make it into Pills, and give him two or three of the Pills presently after his drench, and keep him fasting three or four hours after, then you may give him Hay first sprinkled with water, and after Provender or Bread wet or moistened in good Ale or Beer, putting also thereunto of this Powder; and if you have not enough of this Powder to serve, then take of Cumin, Licorish, Centaury, and Anniseeds, of each like much, make these into fine Powder, and give him thereof two Spoonfuls with his Provender, and put also into his Mashs and Bread of the Powder of Fennel-seed, mixed with the powder of Brimstone; this is very good for this Malady, for I have seen a *horse* for a month together to eat no other Provender, but what hath been mixed with this Powder, and also his Mashs and white Water, so made and compounded, and I have also brought him to drink new Milk mingled with the powder of Brimstone; by means whereof he hath been the sooner recovered, and made perfectly sound.* * And this is very good. Another,

First let him *blood*, then take of sweet Wine one pint, and of the juyce of Hore-hound half a pound, of the Oyl of Frankincense half an ounce, of the Powder of Anniseed, Licorish, and brown Sugar-Candy, of each half an ounce, let all these be made into fine Powder, incorporated well together, and give it him once or twice in a week for a while, and ride him not at all that day you drench him, but keep him warm clothed, and well littered, and let him stand upon the Trench four hours after fasting, then give him meat, and three hours after a sweet Mash, putting thereinto of the Powder of Licorish, and Anniseeds. Of this I never made tryal, but it hath been highly commended unto me for right good. Another,

Take of Barley two Gallons, steep it in water two days, and shift the water every day, then take it clean from the water wherein it was last steeped, and boyl it in three Gallons of fair clear water till it burst, putting thereto of Anniseeds and Licorish, and of Raisins of the Sun stoned, of each

one pound ; and so let it boyl one hour, then take it from the fire, and strain it very dry, and put unto the liquor, of Hony one pint, and of Sugar-Candy in powder six ounces ; then put the liquor into a clean earthen Pot, or Bottle, keeping it close stopped and thereof give your Horse blood-warm four mornings together, the quantity of an Ale pint at a time, and let him eat the Barley if he will, howsoever put it not away, but heat some of it every day, and being hot, put it into a bag, and therewith perfume his head. * * This is very good for I have often used it. Another,

First you must keep him to very spare diet, and inure him five or six days to eat his Oats steeped in Chamber-lye, and after that,

Take of Bay-berries, Fennel, Cumin, Smallage, Fænugreek, Fearn-roots dried, and Licorish four ounces in the whole, or, of each half an ounce, according to the bigness, age, strength, or Corpulency of the *Horse* ; make all these into powder, then take one part of the Powder, and put unto it of fresh or sweet Butter half a pound, and of new milk half a pint, and so give it your *Horse* blood-warm : The next day do the like with the oher half of the Powder, and the third day let him not forth of the Stable, and give it him so long as he shall be in *Physick* ; for his drink let it be white Water made of Barley-meal, but not with Wheat-bran, and let him stand upon the Trench, at least two hours before his drench, and two hours after, then after that give him that which followeth ;

Take of fresh Butter half a pound, of good Agarick, Night-shade, and Cassia, of each one ounce, make all these into Pills (being first powdred, searced, and well mixed) and administer them unto your *Horse*, then give him of white Wine half a pint, whereby the better to swallow Pills, the fifth day let him rest, and keep him always warm covered, and well littered, and if you do perceïve him to be loose in his *Body*, and that he hath purged well, let him rest three or four days quiet, without doing any thing unto him, but if he hath not purged after one days rest only, then give him this drink ;

Take Mithridate, Diacarthamus, Senne, of each two ounces, and

and of good white Wine one pint, mix and brew all these together, and so give it him to drink, and let him rest three days, giving him every one of these three days about noon, of fresh Butter only, half a pound, made into the manner of Pills; these three days being ended, you must administer unto him as followeth, and continue it weekly till he be perfectly cured.

Take of Agarick, Aloes, and of Diacarthamus of each one ounce, of Saffron, Mirrh, half an ounce, make all these into fine Powder, and so make them into Pills, and with fresh Butter four ounces, and give it your Horse, and then presently after give him of White Wine one pint, to wash down the Pills. *** This is a most excellent cure, and by me often practised. Another,

Take of white Wine one pint, of Sallet-Oyl three quarts, of Aloes and Licorish, of each one ounce, of Colloquintida, of Agarick, and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, of Aristolochia rotunda three drams, of Night-shade one ounce, of Bay-berries three drams; make all these into fine Powder, then take of Venice Turpentine two drams, of *Mel rosarum* three ounces, mix all these together and make it blood-warm, and so give it your Horse to drink with a horn, but give him no Oats in fifteen days, and let his drink be white water, it will not be good to give him much Hay, but Wheat-flower, which should not be much beaten or threshed, and instead of his Oats give him Wheat-bran, or Barley-meal, and keep him warm, six days after let him bleed in the Neck. *** Let him have this drink twice, to wit, after the first drink let him rest one day, and then drench him again, as you did before, Another. First give him this purgation,

Take of fresh Butter half a pound, of Senne, and of Agarick, of each half an ounce made into fine powder, of Aloes, and of loaf Sugar, both powdred, of each one ounce, of Cordial Powder half an ounce, make all these into fine Powder; then,

Take common Hony four ounces, mix and beat all these together, and so make them into Pills, and give them to your Horse; but before you do administer these Pills he must stand upon the Trench two hours, and so likewise two hours after;

that

that day give him no Oats, and let his drink be white water, and for your other directions you may give him his allowance of Oats all the other days, but you must then wet them either in strong Ale or good Beer, and you may travel or give him exercise, but with moderation all those other days, and three times every day you shall give him three or four handfuls of Wheat-bran prepared, as before is shewed you in *l. 2. c. 9. sect. 4. F.* and thus continue him to this diet at your pleasure. * * I have made tryal of this Cure, and I do know it to be right good, for in a month or six weeks I have brought a gaunt and Purfive Horse to have a belly as round, fresh, and as clear, as that of a sucking Colt, nor is this Cure very chargeable or costly; you must give him Wheat-straw instead of Hay, only in the night you may give him Hay, provided it be sprinkled with water.

S E C T. 12. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat care have you for a Horse that is Prickt?

Hippof. This Sorrhance hath many names: It is called *Accloyed, Cloyd, Retraite, Prickt, &c.* All which names, we for the most part do fetch from the *French*, and all is but only plain *Prickt*, which occurreth to the *Horse* either through the unskilfulness or negligence of the *Farrier*, in the driving of his *Nails*, or in the weakness of the *Nails* of their evil pointing, or if a *Nail* should fortune to break in the quick, and not be immediately drawn forth, it will in short time fester in the flesh, and soon after impostsunate; and so in time beget a fowl Sore, which may ask much *Art* to cure. The signs be, that he will complain when he treadeth upon stony or hard ground especially, which so soon as you perceive, you have then just cause to suspect him to be *Prickt* if he were lately shod; wherefore the better to make tryal, your way must be to search the *foot* whereof he complaineth, and you shall no sooner put your *Pinfors* to the place, but that he will presently shrink in his *foot* by reason the nipping of the *Pinfors* doth pain him to the quick; or if you do but cast water upon the *foot* whereon he halteth, in short time you shall perceive the *hoof* to be sooner dry
against

against the nail or place which grieveth him, before any other part of the *hoof*. Again, if you shall with your Hammer knock upon the top of the clenches, when you do come to that nail which grieveth him, he will lift up his foot; so likewise there may be many other such like signs, whereby to discover the place prickt, which be familiar to every common Smith, and therefore I shall not need to speak any more thereof. But let us now pass to the Cure:

First therefore after you have made tryal with your *Pin-Pricks*, or otherwise, as before is inculcated; pluck off the shooe, and either with your drawing iron, or your Buttris, search the place to the very bottome, and if you can see or feel any stub of any nail therein, leave not till you have got it away; and if the place be festred, or mattrative, wipe or wash the wound very well, so as you may leave no part thereof behind; then take of the tender tops of red Nettles, a little handful, and stamp them in a Morter, of *Badgers-grease*, two ounces, of red Wine Vinegar, and Black-Sope, of each two spoonfuls, or for want of *Badgers-grease* take the like quantity of the fat of Bacon, which is salt. Beat all these together in a Morter to an Unguent, and stop the wound well therewith, and after cover it with Hurds, and so tack on the shooe again, and do not remove it in two days, and when you dress it the second time with the said Unguent, you may shooe him up, but drive no nail at that place, and so you may travel him, for he will be whole and sound. * * * This is an excellent cure, and I have often used the same. Another,

Open the sorrhance well as before is shewed you, and wash it clean with Vinegar and Salt, and then lay unto it the tender tops of Elder-buds beaten to a very Unguent, if it be in Summer that those buds or leaves may be had, if not, then in Winter take the inward rind of Elder so pounded and brayed, and upon that melt into the wound hard Tallow, with a hot iron, and then lay upon it to keep it close stopped, some Hurds, and so tack on the shooe, and in few times dressing he will be whole. * * * With these two Receipts I have done many (whereof some have been very great) Cures. Another,

First open the place, cleanse the sore well as before, then take

take red Nettles, and Bay-salt, of each like much; beat them unto a Salve, then fill up the hole of the wound therewith; that done, lay upon it Bolster-wise Hurds, and melt upon the Hurds hard Tallow to keep wet, dirt, and gravel from it, which would annoy the forrance; then tack on the shooc, causing the foot to be well pared, and drive no nail near the place, and after twice or thrice dressing, you may ride him, for then the more exercise he hath, the sooner will he be whole. * * This is special good. Another,

Take off the shooc, and cause him to be well pared and searched as before, then take of Turpentine, brown Sugar-candy powdred, and white Ginger in powder also, of each the quantity of a Garden-bean, then melt them all together in an iron spoon, and so pour it into the wound hot, and lay Hurds upon it, and after do as you are directed in the former Cures. * * This is also very good. Another,

Search the place, as before is shewed, then take Roch-Allum and burn it, and make it into fine Powder, and so fill the hole therewith, and lay a Bolster of Hurds upon it, and after do as before you are taught. * * And this is very good. Another,

Search the place as before is shewed, then take Goats-greafe, or for want thereof Deers-suet, or Sheeps-suet, of Turpentine, Sallet-oyl, and new Wax, of each two ounces; melt them all together, and whilst it is upon the fire, add thereunto of ordinary Honey, three ounces, and of Sanguis Draconis one dram made into fine powder, incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and bring it to an Oyntment, and of this you must pour a sufficient quantity into the wound warm; then put on Hurds, and do as before is prescribed you, and let the foot be very well stopped, and let him come in no wet if you can prevent the same, neither let any nail be driven near the grieved place. * * This is one of the best Receipts of this kind. Another:

Search the place as before, and cleanse it with Salt and Vinegar. Then take Salt and make it into fine powder, then take four times so much Turpentine, and boyl them together, and so pour it hot into the wound, and then put upon it the powder of Brimstone dissolved in white Wine, and lay upon it

it Hurds, and then do as before is declared. ** This is very good. Another most singular Receipt which the *French* do call *Retovre*. First, searh and wash as before Then

Take of Oyl-de-Bay four ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and set it upon a gentle fire, stirring it till you have brought it to an unguent, with which dress him, as before is taught you.

S E C T. 13. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat hold you good wherewith to perfume a Horse?

Hippof. Perfumes are very necessary to be applyed to *horses* in some cases, viz. in Colds, Glanders, Rhumes, Murs, Pozes, Catars, &c. for the better expiation of which maladies, Perfumes are admirable helps, for sometimes they break a cold, sometimes they dissipate congealed *humours* which do annoy the *head, brain* and *stomach* of the horse, sometimes they expel and cause the *horse* to vent and send away at his *nose* and *mouth* much filth and corruption, which doth stop, clog, and pester his *head* and *body*, and sometimes they do siccate and dry up many bad humours which are ingendred in the *head* and *brain*, and so likewise many vertues *Perfumes* have, whereof very many of our *Farriers* here in *England* are most ignorant: for did they truly know the nature of *Perfumes*, and how rightly to apply them in their proper places, they might easily do cures, for which they should be not a little admired. The Ingredients and simples wherewith we usually perfume *sick horses* are many, as Frankincense, Storax, Benjamin, Brimstone, Olibanum, &c. sometimes Herbs, Roots, Grain, or Corn, and such like things, which are very much behooveful, for the cures of such diseases, for which they are frequently administred, as you shall find in many of my cures set you down at large: yet I will for example sake set you down two or three for your better satisfaction:

Take the best Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense of each one ounce, bruise all these, and mix them well together, but not too small, and when you are to perfume your

1 Perfum.

your horse, take all these so well mixed, & putting thereof upon a Chasing-dish and coles, cover the coles with a Tunnel, and so apply the small end to one *nostril* at once, and after to the other, to the end he may receive the smoke or fume up into his head, and let him be thus perfumed a quarter of an hour together. *** Another,

2 Perfume.

Take Brimstone made into fine powder, and mix with it fresh Butter and Sallet-oyl, as much as will suffice; let him not take this with fire, like as he did the former, but let it be conveyed into his nose with a linnen clout rowled up in the fashion of a great Taint, and this will bring forth much bad matter. *** Another,

3 Perfume.

Take Penny-royal, Sage, and Wheat, of each as much as will suffice, and boyl them in fair water till the Wheat do burst, put the Weat and Herbs being first drained from the water so hot as it cometh from the fire, and so fasten the bag unto the head of the Horse, whereby he may receive the fume up into his head. And thus you may perfume him at pleasure and as you shall see cause. *** The residue of perfumes and the manner how to apply them, you shall find among my Cures, and therefore it will be superfluous for me to treat any further of them.

SECT. 14. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the best manner of administering Purgations to a Horse?

Hippof. As touching *Purgations*, I have spoken before very largely, as well for inward *purging*, as for outward, and therefore what I shall say more, is in effect but one and the same thing: nevertheless for your further satisfaction, I will briefly deliver unto you, what can be said of *Purgations*. Five ways we have whereby to purge a horse, *viz.* by *Pills*, *Potions*, *Clisters*, *Suppositories*, and *Grass*. *Pills* for the most part do purge and cleanse the *head* and *brain*, by drawing the *peccant humours* down into the *body*, and so sending them forth with the *excrements*. *Potions* do free the *stomach*, *belly*, and *guts*, from such naughty *humours* which *Glanders*, *Colds*, and *Surfeits* have engendred in the *body*, *Clisters* are of sundry, and those of

of different natures, some to ease and appease griefes, some to allay the biliousness and sharpness of evil humours, some to bind, and some to loosen, and some to heal as in cuts of *ulcers* and old Sores within the *body* principally, and these do also cleanse the *guts*, refresh the inward parts and *spirits*, and prepare the *body* before hand for the receiving of *purging pills* or *portions*. Suppositories help the disease in the purging of nature and condition more gentle than *Clysters* are, and may be applyed when *Clysters* cannot. It therefore remaineth that the skill of the *Farriers* be such, as to be able judiciously to understand the severall natures of every of these things, to know how to make choice of the ingredients and simples aptly, to understand how to compound them punctually and artificially, to discern rightly before he do administer what be the *humours* and maladies wherewith the *creature* is annoyed and visited, as whether (*V. G.*) it be *Choler*, *Melancholly*, *Flegme* or *Rhume* as also in what part of the *body* the *humours* offensive is most predominant, and what simples will purge or move those evil *humours*, for it is requisite he be able to know right well, and *ad unguem*, the nature and property of every one of them in particular, by reason that some are much more asperours and violent than others be: yea many simples are *strong poyson* if they be not well prepared and corrected, and yet their qualities well weighed and compounded by true Art, and great good judgment, will work wonderful effects. Those simples which be strong, are *Colloquintida*, *Scamony*, *Elebory*, &c. the more gentle, are *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Whey*, *Prunes*, &c. But those that be of the mean, or indifferent working, are *Rubarb*, *Agarick*, *Aloes*, *Sene*, &c. and this I am bold to intimate unto you, to the end you may better understand their natures, vertues and qualities, and come to know the more securely how to know when occasion shall be offered. The fifth and last way of *Purging* is by *grass*, especially if the *horse* be surfeited, and hath been overtoyled the winter before, for this must be done in the *Summer* time, when *grass* is in its best heart; but that *grass* which will scoure and purge most, is a new mown-meadow, for that will rake his *guts* very well, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; I do therefore counsel you not to suffer him to remain in such grounds above fourteen or

fifteen days, and then take him forth, & put him into some other pasture where the Grass hath not been touched with the Sythe, for then he will Belly well, and in short time recover much Flesh, and become Fat and Lusty, This manner of Scowring will cause him to empty himself well, to purge, and send away all his bad Humours and Surfeits, ease his *limbs* marvellous well, do his *legs* and *feet* very much good, refine his corrupt *blood*, and make him agile and full of *spirit*. To mowe green Rye before it be eared, is also most wholesome, for it scowreth, cleanseth, and cooleth the *body* very much; so doth the leaves of Sallows, and of the Elme; but as touching the administering of Scowring and *Purgations* in the Stable, you must understand that some skilful *Farriers* who have been far travelled in this *Mystery*, have very diligently and studiously set you down many good rudiments and instructions, wherewith to work with all security, whose observations I do advise you punctually to observe: as first the seasons of the year are to be pondred: (*V. G.*) in winter, if his *body* be to be purged, it must be first prepared by *Phlebotomy* or *blood-letting*, together with artificial dyet, therefore you shall administer either *Suppository*, *Clyster*, *Potion*, or *Pill*, &c. You must keep him a day or two from hay, straw, or such like hard-meats of digestion, for that those things will be a great impediment to the working of *physick*, or medicine, and he must also be kept for a time from meat; because *emptiness* is a great help to *Physick operation*, otherwise it may happen (as it doth often times) that more danger then good may accrew to the *Horse*. Wherefore two or three days before you do intend to *purge* him, let his meat be either Wheat or Rye bran prepared, like as before is taught you, and give him also either good bread made of purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oats well sifted which must be dry and sweet, and let his drink be white water only, and that morning you intend to give him a *purge*, let him be fasting from either meat or drink, but about six or seven a clock in the morning, give him this or some other *purge*, which I have already taught you, or shall hereafter, which must be correspondent unto the malady, for which you are to *purge* him, for one *Purgation* will not sort to ever infirmity, but this *purge* is most profitable for

for the causes which I shall presently deliver unto you: And this it is, *viz.*

Take of white Wine one pint, or of strong new Ale one quart, so much of the powder of Mechoacan of the best, and choicest as you may take upon a shilling at four times, give him this drink warm with a horn, then Trot him out a matter of a Mile gently upon good ground, and so set him up warm, and let him stand upon the Trench till one of the clock, then give him a warm Mash. This will purge and fetch away his filth and slime, and carry away his *peccant humours*, which Surfeits have engendred; half an hour after he hath had his Mash, give him Bread or else a few Oats mingled with Wheat-bran, and that little and oft for fear of cloying his *stomach*, and at night give him white water, and so give him Bread and Hay sprinkled with water for all night. * * * This is an excellent *Purge*. *Another*,

If it be in the Spring prepare him as before, then for, three or four days together give him green Rye so much as he will eat, and after feed him with Bread or else Oats and Bran, like as you are told before, but instead of Hay, continue him those nights with green Rye, by reason his Teeth will be on edge. * * * This cooleth his *Body*, and cleareth it from all *Flegmatick* and *Rheumatick humours*: As for his *blood-letting*, let that be according as your judgment shall dictate unto you, and you may use this so long as you may see cause. * * * if you do perceive your *Horse* to be sick, Surfeitted, full of Colds, or otherwise ill disposed, whether in *Summer* or in *Winter*, after you have opened a *Vein*, give him this *Purge*:

Take of Aloes, Siccotrina, made into fine powder two ounces, and make it up into *Pills*, with fresh or sweet Butter, and give it your horse over night, he having been kept fasting the whole day before, and prepared also with the *Dyet* before prescribed; and after he hath taken those *Pills*, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water the next morning early, for that will cause his *Pills* to work the more kindly that day, and so let him fast till night; during which time he will purge freely: Then at night (he having stood upon the Trench all day) give him white water, and after Oats and Bran, and then give him Hay sprinkled with water
for

for all night, nevertheless he may not the first day purge, by reason that some horses are of a strong *Constitution*, as that *Physick* will not easily or suddenly work, but then be you confident it will the next day: You must therefore be careful how you do order him. After this purging keep him still warm clothed and well littered, take him from the Trench, and put on his Coller-halter, give him sweet Mash or white water, and after feed him well, but by discretion, both with Hay, Oats, and Bran, and keep him to white water two or three days after, or longer, if you shall so please, and when you give him cold water, let it be without excess.

* * This I have often tryed. Another,

If your *Horse* be newly taken from Grass, and that you hold it needful his *body* be cleansed, and to free him of his many bad *humours*, which either his Grass or former Surfeits might bring: Then first Rake him, and administer unto him the *Clyster* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. sect. 8. letter C. Clyster 4.* and the next day after give him this drink;

4 Purgati-
on.

Take of the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of London Treacle two ounces, mix and brew all together well, and so give it him blood-warm: This done, keep him upon the Trench warm clothed, and well littered six hours after, and let his drink be a sweet Mash or white water, and let his Rack meat be sweet Wheat-straw, Oats, and Bran. * * This both purgeth and comforteth. Another which must be given the next day.

5 Purgati-
on.

Take of White-wine one pint, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused all night in the Wine; the next morning betimes strain it, and put into it of the best and choicest Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, and Agarick half an ounce, of Licorish powdred one spoonful, warm this a little upon the fire, and mix and brew it well together, and so give it your *Horse* blood-warm; then walk or ride him gently a quarter of an hour, and so set him up warm clothed and littered, nor let any cold Air come unto him, neither let him eat or drink in six hours after, and at night give him a sweet Mash, or white water, and let his Rack-meat be sweet Wheat-straw, and Oats with Bran. * * The next day (if the sign be good) open a *vein* in the *neck*, and prick

prick him in the *nouth*, and if the blood be bad, take from him two quarts, but if good, then not fully one quart; keep him warm, and let his drink be either sweet Maffes, or white water, and put into his drink, either the powder of Limestone, or of Fenugreek, or Turmeric, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them, which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink one spoonful at once. * * These are very Sovereign purgative receipts, whereby to cool the *body*, purge *Choler*, and other *peccant humours*, and to purifie and refine the *blood*: But besides, this is not only good for *Horses* newly taken from Grass, but for other sick, surfeited and diseased *Horses*. Another,

Take of Gentian two ounces, slice it into very small slices, ^{6 Drogues} then boyl it in Beer one quart, till it come to one pint, and ^{0 1} give it him blood-warm, but it will make him very sick for a short time, but have no fear, for the *Patient* will do him much good: Let him fast upon it four or five hours at least, then give him a warm Mash, or white water, and the next day give him this Receipt;

Take of Life-Honey, or for default thereof, ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oats that he is to eat, which must be mixed by rubbing the Oats and Honey betwixt your hands, so that the Honey may be very well mixed, let him eat his Oats thus mingled, until you do find him to be quite cured, which will be when he hath quite done running at the *nose*. * * This is one of the best, and most certain cordials that I know, neither have I made use of any so much as of this, for the time I have known the same, for this disperseth all flegm and choler; it also purgeth the *head* and *brain*; it purifieth the *blood*, it venteth the evil *humours*; it causeth good digestion, and freeth a *Horse* from Glanders, Colds, Catarhs, Rhumes, Running at the *nose*, and the like.

CHAP. XVIII.

SECT. I. Q.

Hippopherus.

What cure have you for the quick or running Scab?

Hippof. This is a noysome disease, and infectious, a very formal *Mange*, and neer neighbour to the *Icrosie* or *Elephantique disease*. It cometh by Sunfeit taken by over-riding, when the *blood* is over-hot; it doth putrifie and corrupt the *blood*, and consequently the *flesh*, and at last breaketh forth into this malady, which we call the *quick-scab*. And the reason why we do give it this name is, for that it runneth from one member of the *horse* to the other; sometime it will be in the *neck*, and at other times in the *breast* of the *horse*, now in the *Main*, and then in the *Tail*, &c. The cure is,

*Quick-
Scab.*

First shave or clip away the *hair* from that place visited, so close as may be, and take off the *scurf* and *scabs* with some old Curry comb, Oyster-shell, or some such thing. Then

Take fair cold water with a linnen cloth, wash and bathe the places very well, and lay the linnen cloth wet upon the place, and so touch it no more in ten days, and if in that time the *quick-scab* do not heal, then dress it as before, and so a third time, or a fourth, or so oft as necessity requireth, till it be thoroughly healed. But remember that the day before you thus dress the Sorrhance after this manner, you take (to a reasonable quantity) of blood from the *Neck-vein*.
*** This is an approved cure. Another as good as the former.

First let him *blood*, and then shave or clip away the hair close, as in the former cure. Then take Mallows and Marsh Mallows, of each like much, and boyl them in fair water as much as will suffice, till the herbs be soft, and with the herbs and decoction, bathe and wash the sorrhance two or three days together warm; then take of common Hony one pint,

pint, Copperas, Allum of Glafs, and Verdegreafe, all made into fine Powder of each four ounces, Turpentine and Quickſilver mortified, of each two ounces; boyl all theſe together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and herewith dreſſ him every day till he be whole. * * This I ſay is very good.

S E C T. 2. Q.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you cure a *Quitter bone*?

Hippof. This cometh to a *horse* by ſome hurt he hath taken in the *foot*, either by a prick with a nail in ſhooring, or by gravelling, or by a ſtub, or the like, when it was not ſo well healed that it impoſtumated, and ſo brake out above the *cronet*, which bred the malady; or elſe being neglected it brake out above the *hoof* before it was perceived. It is bred alſo ſometimes by a hurt upon the *hoof* by a blow, or by ſtriking one *foot* upon the other; and ſometimes it cometh by evil *humours* which fall down into that place, and it groweth moſt uſually upon the inſide of the *foot*, where when it beginneth it cauſeth a hard round ſwelling upon the *cronet* of the *hoof*, betwixt the *heel* and the *quarter* of the *long talent*, it begetteth an Ulcer at what time it doth begin to impoſtumat, and it breaketh out above the *cronet*, like as I ſaid before. The ſigns I have already given you, for the place will be ſwelled the bignefs of a Haſſe-nut, and the *Horſe* will halt right down. The cure is, ſo ſoon as it is eſpied to open it above, if it do begin to be ſoft, then take *Quitter on e.* Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and infuſe it in the ſtrongeſt white wine Vinegar can be gotten 28 hours, and then apply it to the fore, and it will ſo eat about the *quitter bone*, that you may pluck it away with your *finger* or *pliers*, which ſo ſoon as the *bone* or *griftle* is taken forth, you may heal up the wound with your Copperas water, and green Oyntment preſcribed in *l. 2. c. 10. ſect. 4. G.* till it be whole, but he muſt not come into any wet during the time of the cure. * * This is very good. *Another,*

Fiſt cut the *hoof* to the quick, then

Take a Snake the greateſt you can get, and cut off his *Head* and *Tail*, and flea it, and ſo boyl it in water till the fleſh come

U u u

from

from the bone, and then you may bring the flesh to be a very Oyntment; put of this into the sorrhance down to the bottome, and this will kill the *quitter bone* and dry up and heal it; but you must not suffer him to come into any wet dirt, or gravel, during the time you have him in cure. *.* With this medicine I cured one *horse* only, for that I had no cause to use it to any other since. *Another,*

Take of Arsnick the quantity of a small Bean, make it into powder, and put it into the hole of the Sorrhance, conveying it down to the bottome, with your instrument, and then stop the mouth of the wound with Hurds, and bind it on with a clout; and a rowler, that the *horse* may not bite it away; and so let it remain four and twenty hours: Then open it, and if you shall perceive the wound to look black within, it is a token that the Arsnick did its Office, in well working, then to allay the fire; And to restore the *flesh* that is thereby become mortified, *taint* the hole with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together. Then take Pitch, Rosin, and Wax, of each like much, and of Turpentine as much as of all the other three, and melt them, and so make a Plaster of Leather, with which you must cover the top of the Sorrhance, but first be sure to convey the aforefaid *taint* to the bottome, and then lay on your Plaster, and thus dress him daily till you have gotten forth the Core or sharp *Gristle*, if the Arsnick have not eaten it out before, for if the *Gristle* be in the bottom of the wound and uncovered, you may raise it with your fingers or Instrument, and so pluck it quite away, for till that it be out, the Sorrhance will not heal; that done, heal it up with your green Oyntment, or else with this Unguent:

Take of common Honey, and of Verdegrease in fine Powder, of each so much as will suffice, boyl this till it be red, and therewith *taint* the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the *mouth* of the wound open, lest it heal up above, before it be well healed at the bottome; neither let your *horse* come into any wet, or go forth of the Stable until he be throughly cured. *.* Thus I have cured many *quitter-bones*. *Another,*

Cut the place to the quick, then take Virgin Wax, Pitch
of

wounds, and so dry up bad *humours* which do preoccupate the *body*. I will commend unto you one only receipt which shall be special good :

*Refringent
charge.*

Take of Oyl-de-Bay, four ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mix them with your Oyl-de-Bay very well, and therewith *charge* the place grieved. * * This is also very good to *charge* the swelling of a *Back sinew sprain*.

SECT. 3. R.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a Ring-bone?*

Hippof. A *Ring-bone* cometh two ways, to wit, either by *Nature*, or by *Accident* ; by *Nature*, when as either the *stallion* or *mare* have it, from whom the *Colt* is ingendred, whereby he taketh it as *Hereditary* from them, and therefore (as I have formerly admonished) I will dissuade you from breeding upon any such *Horse* or *Mare* that either had or have this malady. It cometh also accidentally by some knock or blow given either by some other *horse* or by his *Keeper* or other person, and sometimes by some evil *humour*, which through over-heats do fall down into the *Legs*, and maketh its residence upon the top of the *cronet*. It-beginneth first with a slimy *humour*, which in time groweth to a hard *Gristle* ; you shall know it, for that there will be a swelling round about the *cronet* of the *hoof*, adjoyning unto the lower part of the *pastern*, and the *hair* will stare, and be bristly, and it will cause the *horse* to halt. The cure is, first wash the place, and shave away the *hair*, then

Ring-bone.

Take quick or *unslacked lime*, newly taken from the *Kill*, which must be well burned, the best burned you may know by its lightness, make your *lime* into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind upon it a linnen cloth made fast about the *foot* ; and so put the *horse* into the water, and let him stand in the water a pretty while, then take him forth, and unbind the *foot*, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the *Lime* doth kill the *Ring-bone*, even unto the very root thereof. * * With this Receipt I have cured not so few as an hundred *horses* at the

the least, but when you are thus to dress your *horse*, let him be brought close to the water whereinto he is to be ridden, that so soon as you have applyed your *Lime* unto the Sorrhance, you may presently put him into the water. Another, First, shave away the hair as before is advised, then scarrifice the place.

Take then Cantharides half an ounce, Euphorbium, and Oyl-de-bay of each one ounce, your Cantharides and Euphorbium must be made into fine powder, and then boyled with your Oyl-de-Bay, stirring it continually, that it run not over, then with two or three *feathers* lay it boyling hot upon the Sorrhance good and thick, let him be dressed in the same place where usually he standeth in the Stable, and let him have no litter near him but tye up his head so as he may not reach the medicine with his mouth; but when the *hair* do begin to grow again, give the fire to the Sorrhance, to wit, three or four straight lines right downwards, drawing the swelling quite cross, and let the edge of the iron be no thicker then the back of an ordinary knife, neither must you burn him any deeper then that the *skin* may look yellow, that done, apply to the place this charge:

Take of Pitch and Rosin, of each like much, let them be molten together, and whilst it is hot, apply it to the place all along, from the one end of the swelling to the other, and before it be cold, clap flocks upon it, and about three days after, lay on more of the said charge, and new flocks again upon that charge; and so let it remain until the flocks and charge fall off of its own accord. * * This is also very good. Another, First wash and shave, and scarrifice, as before, then,

Take gray Sope, and Arsnick pulverised, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the sorrhance so far as the *Ring-bone* goeth, and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and bind a clean linnen cloth upon it to keep it on, neither let it be removed in four and twenty hours, then take it away, and stir not the *asker* or *scab*, but only anoint it with fresh Butter, till it do fall away of it self, and so heal it up with some healing Salve, whereof I have given you plenty. * * This I have tryed, and have

have found to be very good. This medicine will cure a *Bone-Spaven, Splint, Curb*, or any other bony excretion.

S E C T. 4. R.

Hippoph. **H** Ave you any way to recover and make sound a Horse that is rotten?

Hippof. Truly Sir, for any man to promise that, were great precipitation, only thus far he may wade therein, as to give ease and help to a *horse* that hath the *Rot*, for it is one thing for a *horse* to be *rotten*, and another thing for him to have the *Rot*. For a *horse* to be *rotten*, is to have his inward parts wasted and consumed, or at least so *rotten* as never possibly to be recovered, to wit, his *Liver, Lights, &c.* But for a *horse* to have a disease called the *Rot*, I do find the same to be either a formal *dropsie*, or else a disease so allied neerly thereunto, as not to be distinguished easily: As we say, a *Sheep* is *rotten*, when his *Liver* is become foul and tainted; nevertheless men do eat the *carcass*, and do aver it to be good meat, wherefore the *Sheep* is not rotten, but hath the disease called the *Rot*. This malady cometh oftentimes to *horses* unhandled, to wit, in their youth, whilst they be yet *Colts*, which be bred, and do feed in *Fenny, Marsh* and *wet grounds*, and sometimes it cometh to them after they have been backed and ridden, when they have too hard and violent riding, being yet but young, whereby the *blood* is first inflamed, and after putrified and corrupted, begetting obstructions in the *Liver*, and those do cause putrification, and knots and so pustils do engender in the *Liver*, which breedeth either a *Dropsie*, a *Fel-trick*, or a *Rot*. The signs how to know this infirmity are these: After his journeys, his *Hair* will *stare*, his *Legs* swell and burn, and when you shall press the places swollen with your finger, upon taking your finger away, there will remain a pit or dint, he will forbear his meat very much, and when he doth eat, it will be without any stomach or appetite, he will pant much, lift and beat in the *Flanks* many times, he will swell under the *Belly*, neither will he cast his *Coat* in seasonable time, when other *Horses* that be sound do, and he will be so faint of *body*, as that he will become *Lunt*, and utterly

terly to have lost his mettle. These and such like be the Symptoms of this malady. Now come I to the cure:

Let him first *bleed* well under the *Tail*, then

Take of Mares-milk two quarts, if the same may be had, if not, the like quantity of the milk of a *red Cow*, then take a lump of Arement, then take a young *horse* of or about the age of four years, and of colour black, if it may be, if not, then of some other colour, run and chafe him about that he may sweat much, then with a spoon, or with some other such like Instrument, rake the sweat from his *Head, Neck, Breast, Back, Sides, Ribs, Buttocks, Legs*, and in a word, from each part or *Member* of the said *horse*, and get of the sweat so much as you can possibly, and so put your Arement and your sweat into the milk, which all being well mixed, give him this by equal portions three mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drink none other drink after it in six or seven hours, but immediately after his drink, let him be led forth into some *Pasture* where other *horses* be, the better to cause him to *sneeze, stale, dung,* and *empty* himself; for it is very *wholsome* for him so to do, before he either eat or drink. Having thus done, set him up warm and well littered, and if the season serve, give him of the green blades of Rye, if not, give him Barley steeped in Milk three days, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these drinks if you feel him cold in the *Pastern-joynts*, or that he *trippeth* or *stumbleth* as you lead him in your *hand*, meddle no further with him, for he is past cure; otherwise for nine days together after morning and evening give him white Water only, unless now and then a sweet Mash, and sometimes give him milk with his white water, if the *horse* be not above nine years old, and so you may cure him, but if he be elder, this may prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. This I never did experience, but a *Noble Knight*, and a very good friend, told me that he hath thus recovered sundry *horses* which hath been visited with this disease.

Rot.

C H A P. X X.

S E C T. 1. S.

Hypophilus.

W *Hat good Salves have you wherewith to heal up sores and wounds?*

Hippof. I have many, according as I have before shewed you, but yet I will give many more, the greatest number of which I have tryed, and am able to commend them unto you for very good, and those not Salves only, but Unguents, Powders, Waters which be most Sovereign.

Take of Perosen, and of hard Rosin, of each one pound, of Frankincense, Virgin-wax, or for want thereof new Wax, and Sheeps-fuet, of each half a pound, of old tryed Hogs-greafe one pound and a quarter, boyl the Gums and Wax in white-Wine half a pint, and then put into it your Sheeps-tallow and Hogs-greafe, and when all is well molten and incorporated, strain it, and whilst it is yet hot put in of Venice Turpentine one ounce, and so work all well together, and when it is cold, pour in the liquor from the Salve, which put up into a clean Galley-pot, or other clean vesselfor your use. * * This is a most sovraign *Treat* or Salve wherewith to heal any wound (that is not come to an *Ulcer*) and so dry it up. Another most excellent Powder.

Take unslaked Lime, the dry dust of Tanners Oken Bark, and old shoee-sole burned to a cole, of each like much, make these into fine Powder, and mix them well, and keep it in a clean box or glafs for your use. * * This Powder healeth the *buds* or *knors* of the *Farcin*, after they be broken, and it skineth them, and if they be first washed with the juyce of Vervine and strong Vinegar mingled together, and then this Powder being cast upon them, will (I say) heal and skin them. It also healeth and skineth all other sores. Another.

Take tryed Hogs-greafe half a pound, Verdigreafe in fine Powder one penny-worth, boyl these upon the fire two or three

three walms, then take it off, and put unto it Venice Turpentine half an ounce, and stir it well together till it be cold.*.* This unguent will heal any wound or sore in a horse. Another;

Take of Roch Allum a good quantity, and burn it, and as much Bay-salt, and burn that also; make these both together into fine Powder, then take of common-Honey, and of sweet Butter, of each like much as will suffice, incorporate the Allum and Salt with the Honey and Butter by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a taint or plaister apply it.*.* And this cureth any foul sore. This I have often tryed. Another;

Take of fair water one pint, and put into it of green Copperas, and of Bay-salt, of each the quantity of a good halle nut, both made into very fine Powder; let these boyl a little upon the fire, With this wash any sore before you do apply your Salves, Unguents, or Powders.*.* This is a right good Water. Another,

Take of Common-Honey two ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdigrease, and Vinegar of each one ounce, make your Allum and Verdigrease into very fine Powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdred, two ounces, boyl all these a walm or two on the fire; this laid on a Spatula Plaister-wise once a day, or if the wounds be deep, with a taint, cureth both speedily and soundly: but before you dress him with this salve, let the sore be well washed and injected with the water last above mentioned, made of fair water, Copperas, and Bay-salt.*.* This is a most approved cure, and good beyond all peradventure, for it cureth not only sores and wounds in many parts of the *body* of the horse, but in the *foot* which way soever it may happen, and it cleanseth any wound from dead or proud *flesh*. Another:

Take the buds or tendrest tops of the leaves of Elder, one handful, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a perfect salve, and apply this to the sore, binding a cloth upon it to keep it from falling off.*.* This will cure any old or new sore whatsoever, in any part of the *body*, *galled-backs*, *Spur-galls*, *gravelling*, *pricks*, or *accloyed*, the wound being dressed herewith every day once, it

will cure any *Fistula* if the juyce thereof be injected to the bottom. With this one thing alone I have done cures which very good *Farriers* could not cure. Another :

Egyptiacum. Take common Honey and Verdegrease finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boyl them together till the medicine Wax red, and this will heal up any old or green sore in short space. * * * This is also very good. Another,

Ointment. Take the white of a new laid Egg, and Sallet-oyl as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you do apply it unto the wound, pour into the wound burnt butter, and then lay on your medicine with Hurds plaister-wise, and this will cure any green wound. * * * This is very good, and thus much for sores.

S E C T. 2. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for a Horse that hath gotten a wrench in his shoulder ?

Hippof. If you do find that the grief be in the *shoulder*, and that you do know it to be a wrench, make this charge, and charge the grieved *shoulder* therewith.

Shoulder-wrench.

Take Wheat-meal two pound, and allay it with red Wine in a Pipkin or Postnet, as if you would make thereof a paste, then take of Bole-Armoniack made into fine powder half a pound, and so keep it continually stirring untill your Pitch be throughly molten, but before you take it from the fire, put into it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, of Comin, oyl de-Bay, Dialthea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Linseed-flower, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take of the oyl of Aspick one ounce, boyl and mix all these very well together, that done, charge the grieved shoulder all over very well, even down the knees. * * * The charge is most severaign for any wrench or strain in the *shoulder*, *knees*, or *hips*; it also cureth Kibes, Scratches, and all such like sovrances, it is also most excellent to comfort the *sinews* offended or hurt; it is very good for a *black-sinew-sprain*, it draweth away all bad *humours* and abateth swellings. * * * I have often made use of this Receipt, but if it be a *shoulder-pight*, or *joynt-dislocated*, then thus he is to be cured, *viz.*

Charge.

First

First cast him and lay him upon that side which is not hurt, then fasten with a cord the foot of the same *legg* along a board, and so fasten the *foot* to some tree or post which must be some two or three paces distant from the horse, and near to the ground, and let one stand at the middle board with a stick to turn it easily and by degrees in the middle thereof; and whilst that is in doing, let another with a pail of cold water, rub, wash, and bathe the grieved place with his hand or foot, and that very hard, and in so doing, he must take up the member grieved, which he must chafe from the very top to the farther end of the leg, and by thus doing you shall put in the *bone* which was out, into its right place, and after this is done, you must raise him as gently as may be, and when he is up let him bleed in the *breast-vein* on that side the grief lyeth, putting a *patten-shoe* upon the contrary foot, and let his fore-foot be trammelled fifteen days after at the least, to hinder him from lying down, and charge the grieved shoulder daily with a *restringent charge*, and look upon the grieved member every two or three day, by the space of fifteen days; after that you have thus set the same, neither let him be removed out of his place during that time, and after swim him, and apply baths unto the *shoulder* made of good hearbs, such as I have prescribed you in the Section of *baths*, and lastly anoint him with this Unguent.

Take Oyl de-Bay, the oyl de-Petra, oyl de-Spike, and Nerval, of each like much: and thus ordering him, he will be found and well again. * * I have proved this upon six *horses*, and cured them all. Another,

If the *shoulder* be either strained or dislocated, it were very good to *swim* him, then take *blood* from the *breast-vein* on that side the grief lieth, then tramel his *forefeet* that he do not lie down, and so let him remain three weeks, then anoint the *member* grieved with Sallet-oil only, and the first time you shall take but of Sallet-oil half a pound, which you must rub in against the hair very hard, both upon the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of half an hour, the next day after you shall likewise rub and chafe the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of half an hour more, without applying any thing unto them, and so continue rubbing and chafing him for the space of eight

or ten days together; as for the Sallet-Oyl, you must take four ounces thereof every third day, wherewith to chafe, rub, and anoint the *shoulder*, and the other two days betwixt, you must not rub and chafe it with any Oyl at all, and at the end of eight or ten days, his *shoulder* will be swelled down to the very *knee*, then take of the Oyl, and apply a restraining charge to the place grieved and swelled, and add to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, to cause the charge to remain on the better, and the next day, and all other days after instead of this *restringent charge*;

Take Vinegar and bathe the *shoulder* therewith upon the said charge, and by degrees the *hair* will fall away, and when the swelling is allwaged, send your *horse* in the beginning to the water, upon a *foot* pace, and he will be cured; this receipt certainly is very good, and not costly; but I did never make tryal thereof, albeit it was *highly* recommended unto me by a famous *French Marishal*, who averred that he had recovered very many *horses* therewith, but for a *horse* that hath gotten a wrench or slip, the only remedy is to put in a *French Rowel*, and then to *blow* him, and put on a *Patten-shoe*, and let his *Keeper* turn the *Rowel* every day once, as well to cause the putrefaction better to issue forth from growing to the flesh, and after twenty days you may take it forth at your pleasure. * * This is good for a new *strain*.

S E C T. 3. S.

Hippoph. **W**ere it not much better Hippoferus, that after you have thus roweled and blown him, and set a *Patten-shoe* upon the contrary foot, that he were turned forth to *Grass*, for that the horse keeping himself in continual agitation and motion, as he feedeth in the pasture, the humour may the better descend, and so issue forth, whereby he may sooner be cured?

Hippof. Sir, I answer negatively to your assertion, for by his being abroad, the wind will take the wound and cause him to swell, and thereby do the *horse* more harm then you are aware of: Secondly I say, if when he is abroad there might happen to fall rain, that the place rowelled might take wet and cold, it might thereby indanger a *Gangrene*, and therewith

therewith endanger the life of your *horse*, for the like I myself have done; but having roweled your *horse*, and that you be to blow him, if you use to take *Tobacco*, then forbear to blow him your self, but let some other who taketh not any, to blow him, for the very sent and steam of *Tobacco* will cause your *Horse* to swell both in the *shoulder* and all along under his *Belly*, even to the *sheath* and *stones* most violently, and the effect thereof I have very often seen. * * * With roweling I have cured very many *horses*, if the *strain* be newly taken, but if the *horse* have gotten hurt on his *shoulder*, that the *skin* be broken, then first cut away all the dead and bad flesh if there be any, then

Take the white of an Egg, and beat it, and lay it upon a few Hurds *Plaster-wise*, but first wash the wound with a little white Wine made blood-warm, and then apply your *Plaster* to the *sorrance*, and then anoint the *shoulder* round about the *sorrance* with sweet Butter; do this every day once, and it will be whole. * * * This I have often tryed. Another,

Take your *lancet* or *fleam*, and make a little hole in the *skin* upon the pitch of the *shoulder*, and blow the place with a quill, that the *skin* may arise from the *flesh*, then

Take of stale Urin two quarts, and boyl it to a Moiety, then strain it, and put thereto of sweet Butter, and of tryed Hogs-grease, of each half a pound, then take of Mallows Tansey, Vervine, red Nettles, Sothern-wood, and of the tender tops of Broom, of each half a handful, chop all these together, and boyl them in the Urin till they be soft, and then first bathe the *shoulder* with the decoction of Urin and after anoint the *shoulder* with the herbs, being first made into an Unguent, using thus to do every day once or twice till it be well; but during this cure, the *horse* must be kept within doors, and in a few days he will go sound again. * * * This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another,

If your *horse* have any grief in his *shoulder*, first put into it a *French rowel*, and blow it, and put a *Patten-shoe* upon the contrary *foot*, then apply this *charge* unto the place: Take of Pitch and Rosin of each one pound, and of Tar half a pint, melt them upon the fire, and before it be cold, *charge* the *shoulder* therewith, and clap Flax upon it, and let the *charge*

charge lye on till it fall away of it self, and once a day turn the rowel for fifteen days together at least, then take out the rowel, and heal up the wound, then if the season be fit for it) turn him to Grass with his *Patten-shoe* on, and let him run three or four months, and he will go upright again.

* * * This is very good. *Another,*

First swim him, (as you may do well to do for any grief in the shoulder or hips) and before you do rowel him, apply unto the grieved *Member* this *Bathe* and *Unguent*.

Take Pimpernel an arm full, Bay-berries, Primrose-leaves, Camomile, Crows-foot, Mallows, Fennel, Rosemary, and fine upland Hay (which was cut about Midsummer) of each like much, and of each a good quantity, put all these into a Lead or Cauldron, and there let him steep in fair water two days and two nights, then boyl it until the herbs be soft, and bathe your *Horse* therewith every day once good and warm, and bind of these herbs with the Hay to the *shoulder* or place grieved, in what place or joynt soever it be, use this bath four days, and at the expiration of four days, let him blood in the *breast*, on that side the grief lyeth if the grief be in the shoulder, but if the *knee* or *Fetlock-joynt*, then let him blood in the Pastern-vein, and so likewise if the pain be behind, and let him bleed well, but if you have not skill or knowledge enough to open any of these *Veins*, then pare the foot very close, and open the *Toe-vein*, and there let him bleed well; after this his four days bathing, when he is dry again, anoint the grieved *Member* with this *Unguent* :

Take Petroleum, Narvel, Patch or Piece-grease, and Oyl of Worms of each like much, and anoint herewith by the space of half an hour, and then for half an hour after, trot him in your hand in a fair soft ground, then bring him into a Stable, and observe if any of the said Oyntment be come forth, or doth stick to his *hair*, which if it do, let it be rubbed and chafed in again; also bathe him morning and evening, and at noon anoint him, as before is advised, but at night only bind or rope on the herbs, and this is the cure, use this but four days only for fear of making his *Joynts* too supple and weak, (and if this help not, as I do believe it will) then rowel him, this I never tryed, but my opinion is that it is a very good Receipt. *Another,* If

If your horse be *Shoulder-splat* then put upon him a pair of *short Pasterns* upon his *Fore-feet*, then take of *Dialthea* one ounce, of *Sallet-Oyl* one pint, of *Oyl-de-Bay* half a pint, of fresh *Butter* half a pound, melt all these together in a *Pipkin*, and anoint the grieved place round about (*viz.*) as well all over the *shoulder*, as the *breast*, and betwixt the *Fore-legs*, upon and about the *brisket*, and in two or three hours after all the *shoulder* will be swelled, then with your *scam* strike the swelling in very many places, that the corruption may illue forth, and continue to anoint him with the said Oyntment, and if it gather to a head (as it is likely it will) when it is ripe enough, open it where you do find it to be softest, and then heal it up with your green Oyntment so often commended unto you, and thus your horse will go found again. * * * This I have often tryed, and let this suffice for this malady.

S E C T. 4. S.

Hippoph. You have delivered your self very well, but yet **Hipposerus** (but yet) I am to seek to know and understand when I see a horse doth halt or complain, where the grief lieth, being a thing most needful for a Gentleman to be very perfect in, but more especially for him that is a Farrier, who is to cure and set upright the Horse that is lame.

Hippof. You speak pure truth Sir, and therefore I will give you such assured rudiments whereby you shall not at any time fail in the discovery of the least lameness that shall proffer it self to your Eye, if you will be pleased diligently to observe my documents. You must therefore first understand, that if he do halt before, his grief must of necessity be either in the shoulder or knee, or in the shank, or in the pastern, or in the foot; if it be in the *shoulder*, it must be either towards the *witbers* or in the pitch of the *shoulder*, or in the *elbow*; if in any of these places of the *shoulder*, you may know it, in that he will a little draw his *legg* after him, and not handle it so nimbly and dexterously, as he doth the other; if he cast his *legg* more outward then he doth the other, it is a manifest sign that he is lame, and that the grief lieth in his

Rules how
to know
where a
horse halt-
either be-
or behind.

shoulder;

shoulder; and for the better tryal thereof, let your man but turn him short on either hand, and in that *shoulder* where the *lameness* is, you shall perceive him to complain and to yield, for he will either favour that leg, or trip in the turning: You may also find his lameness by his standing in the Stable, for there he will hold forwards his lame leg more then the other, but yet you come not to understand in what part of the *shoulder* the grief lieth; wherefore take for an infallible rule, that if he do complain more when a man is upon his *back*, then otherwise, when he is from his back, then be confident that the grief lieth in the *withers*, and gripe him hard, and you shall perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite; if the *horse* do tread thick and short before, then is the grief upon the pitch of the *shoulder* close to the *breast*, which you may easily find by setting your thumb hard to the place, and by thrusting him with it, as if you would have him to go back, whereat he will shrink, and put back his *leg, foot, and body*; if the grief be in the elbow, you shall discover it by pinching him with your Fore-finger and thumb good and hard upon that place, at the doing whereof you shall perceive him to shrink and hold up his leg, and to offer to bite; and these be all the griefs which do lie in the *shoulders* of the *Horse*, which not being visible, you shall thus discover them, as touching those griefs which lie lower, they must be either, in the *knee* in the *shin*, in the *pastern*, or in the *foot*. If it be in the *knee*, you shall find it by his stiff going, for he will not bend it so actively as he doth the other, if it be in the *shank* or *Shin-bone*, you may both see and feel the same, it being then a *back sinew sprain*, splent, or some such like forrance or annoyance; so likewise if it be in the bending of the *knee*, then it is a malender, which is also most easily described; if it be in the *pastern* or *joynt*, then may you know it by his not bending it so well as the other; besides if you put your hand upon the place, you shall find it to be very hot, and to burn much: First if it be in the *foot*, it must then be either in the *cronet* or in the *sole*; if in the *cronet*, it is then probable it came by some strain or wrench, if in the *heel*, then it came by some over-reach, or else by some disease in or about the *Push*; if in the *sole*, then it came by some prick, acloy, reitor,

when in the
knee.

when in the
Shank.

when in the
Pastern.

retoire, cannel, nail, stub, stone or gravel. And thus have I discovered unto you all the several sorts which causeth a *Horse* to halt before, and how to know and distinguish the places grieved, together with the occasion of every particular grief. It followeth that we discuss yet further the means how to distinguish an old grief, from a new taken strain or hurt, which without an exact scrutiny, cannot easily be discovered, for oft times a *horse* hath gotten a strain, for which he is presently turned to Grass, where peradventure he runs the whole Summer, and so by that means seemeth to go upright, till he be heated and strained a new, and then will it appear again, howbeit upon his first riding it may not appear: You have therefore three ways whereby to find out his lameness, in what *joint, limb, or member* of the *body* soever it lieth. 1. The first way is to take him out of the Stable, and to cause him to be turned at the halters end on either hand suddenly and swiftly upon as hard a way as you can pick out, and if he have any ach, wrench, or grief in his *Fore-parts*, it will appear, for that when he shall turn upon that hand in which the grief is, you shall perceive him to favour that *legg*, and so likewise run both towards you and from you, especially down a little yielding hill, and if he have any imperfection, he will soon shew it, for that he will favour that *legg* wherein the grief resideth; but if you be not able to find out his *lameness* this way. 2. Then your second way must be for you to take his *back*, and to ride him out a good round trot or pace a full hour, or so long until such time as you have thoroughly heat him, then set him up, and let him stand quiet two or three hours, and then either take his back again, or else turn him at the halters end as before, and by thus doing, you may discover the least grief that may be in him, especially when you thus stir him, if it be done upon any stony or hard ground, for then he can neither will nor choose, but either to favour the member grieved, or else to halt right down. 3. A third way we have, and that is, to know whether the grief doth proceed from a hot or cold cause, for if it proceed from a hot cause, then will the *Horse* halt most when he is hot, and in the midst of his travel; but if it be of a cold cause, then will he halt least

whilst he is hot and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilst he is cold; and thus much for lameness and halting before.

Now you perceiving your *horse* to halt, and that you be assured that his lameness is not before, then may you be confident it must be behind, which being so, the grief must of necessity be either in the foot, or in the nether joynt, in the pastern, or in the leg, in the hamm, or in the hough, in the stifling place, or joynt, or in the hip. If the grief be either in the leg, pastern or foot, if you do observe him well, you shall understand it by the very same signs which I have inculcated already in the legs, pastern, or feet, for that the signs be the very same; if it be in the bending of the hamm, you may then easily know it to be a plain Selander. If it be in the hough, then it is either a bone or blood-Spaven, which is easily enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some blow, wrench, or strain, neither then will the swelling easily appear, but you shall perceive it either by the stiffness of the joynt, or else you shall find the place to be hot and burning; if the pain shall lye in the stifling place, it is manifestly discovered by his gate, for then you may perceive him in his going, to cast the stifle joynt outward, and you may plainly see the bone on the inside to be bigger then the other, besides, his toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the hip, which is upon the side of the buttock, and if the hurt or wrench be newly taken, you shall easily know it, in that the Horse will go side-long like a Crab, not being able so well to follow with the grieved leg as he can do with the other. Notwithstanding if it be a hurt taken long before, you shall perceive the Hip to be fallen lower then the other, and the flesh to shrink, you may also perceive it the better, as by going up a hill, or upon yielding ground, by reason he cannot go with so great ease, as when he goeth upon even or plain ground. But the better to discover in what part behind the grief lyeth, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable in a long rein or collar-halter, and let him run him in his hand the full length of the rein, for that in which leg soever the grief is, you shall perceive him to favour it, but if you find him to go upright, without favouring any leg, then let your man take his back, and ride him out.

a good trot or hand gallop, till he be warmed, then set him up and let him stand an hour or two till he be cold, then take him forth again, and let your man trot him in his hand at the end of the Rein as he did before, and thus you shall perceive him to halt and complain, and well observing him and his gate or going, you may easily find the place grieved. And if any lameness whether before or behind, do proceed from any hot cause, then you shall best know it, for that the more you travel or exercise him, and the warmer he is, the more he will halt. But if his grief shall proceed from any cold cause, then will he halt most, being cold after he hath been travelled and set up warm.

S E C T. 9. P.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have spoken well of lameness in general terms, but yet would I gladly understand from you somewhat more in particular, as (V.G.) I would know how to distinguish between a pinch in the shoulder, and a wrench in the shoulder; as also betwixt a shoulder-splat, and of the shoulder-pight, and so of the other members?

Hippof. In answer to this demand, I say that if you can be cautelous in observing duly and justly the *postures* and *gestures* of your horse, you may easily come to know in what *member*, *joynt*, or *limb* the grief lyeth, and from whence it proceeds; for you must understand that when a horse is pinched in the *shoulder*, it must come either by carrying too heavy burdens, or by being put to draw, and be over laboured too young, his *joynts* and *limbs* not being knit, and this you may easily find, in that the horse will appear to your eye to be very narrow breasted, and to consume and waste in his flesh from those parts where grief remaineth; and you may also perceive it, in that same *shoulder bone* will stick out further then the other, and thus you may find it; but if he hath gotten a wrench in the *shoulder*, it comes commonly by means of some *slip*, or by causing him to make too sudden a stop upon false ground, or by some fall upon yielding or slippery ground, or by too short or sudden turning him upon false grounds, or upon the *planks* in a Stable, or by some rash going out of a door, or other narrow place, or by some

Shoulder-
pains.Shoulder-
pight.

stroke given by another *horse*, you shall know it (like as before I told you) by his not well lifting and handling his *leg* with that dexterity he doth the other; as also by taking him upon the pitch of the *shoulder-bone*, and as touching a *shoulder-plat*, which also cometh by a slide or slip, especially upon some slide or yielding ground, where one *leg* doth slide from the other, whereby he teareth the *flesh* which is in the inside near the *brisket*, which causeth a bawke to be underneath the body, which will after be swelled, and the *horse* will thereupon halt right down, and he will draw his *leg* after him; but if he be *shoulder-pight*, this cometh by some brush, strain, or fall, which the *horse* received by some *leap*, *skip*, *stroke*, or *bruise* against some door, tree, or the like: insomuch that oftentimes the joynt is dislocated, and this will also cause him to halt down-right, wherefore your Cures for each of these mischiefs and mishaps must be handled accordingly; and if the pain do lie in any of the nether joynts, it cometh most commonly by means of some wrench, as by putting his foot into some cart-root or rough uneven ground or by going upon loose stones, and many times by turning him too short in places that may be dangerous for his limbs, for by such like causes do occur lameness to a horse, which when it shall happen, you shall thus know them, and know also in what joynt or member the grief hath its abode, and the manner of curing each of these several griefs, I have already sufficiently shewed you, and therefore now let us pass to other matters.

S E C T. 6. S.

Hippoph. **V**Vell then tell me what is good to cure the Scratches?

Hippof. Of this malady we have sundry sorts and degrees, unto which albeit we do give several names, nevertheless they be all in effect but one and the same disease, as Mules, Kibes, Rats-tails, Crepanches, Pains, &c. every of which are none other thing but the very *Scratches*, being certain scabs which ingender betwixt the heel and the *pastern-joynt*, and so goeth many times above the *pastern*, even up to the *hough*, and albeit you may have this sorrance sometimes upon all four *legs*, yet

not

not ordinary, for that it breedeth most commonly in the *hinder legs*, this is a noysome sorrhance, & comes sometimes through the negligence of the *Groom*, in that he doth not daily anoint the *horse heels* with store of *blow-graese*, (as we term it) especially after journeys and hard travel; or when he plunges his *horse* in fresh water, and then doth not rub his *legs* and *heels* dry, for that the sand and dirt doth burn and fret his *heels*, which do occasion swellings, and such like swellings do occasion the *Scratches*. It is therefore requisite that the *Groom* do clip away the long *slag-hair* from about the *pasterns* (if he have any) and *fetlocks*: as also from the inside of his *legs*, unto the bending of the *knee*, by means whereof he may the better keep the *legs* of his *horse* from this disease, sometimes it also comes from the corruption of the *blood* after great heats and *furfeits* taken; sometimes again for that the *horse* hath been bred in *marshes*, *fenny*, and *watery grounds*, sometimes it is ingendred from *melancholly humours* which do fall down to the *legs* and sometimes by standing continually upon his own *dung*, which will through the heat and steam thereof breed the *Scratches* without other help, and sometimes again, the *Scratches* will fall down into the *heels* of the *horse* and there make its way forth after a desperate sickness taken by *furfeit*; and lastly it comes by reason the *grease* of the *horse* had been molten by over-riding or labour, whereby the *grease* falleth down and resteth in the *pastern* and *fetlocks*, and so causeth the *Scratches* to be engendred. It beginneth first with a dry *scab*, and after it sendeth forth fretting, watrish, and matterative stuff, which will stink and be most noysome, and his *pasterns*, and *fetlock-joynts* will be full of *chaps* and *chinkes*, sometimes all along, sometimes right down; and sometimes over-rhwart, and the places will swell, and the cracks or chinks will cause the *legs* to be very *gourdy*, and to run with much noysome and offensive matter, and the *Horse* will be many times so lame, as not to be well able at first setting forth to go, but with much trouble, and no less pain, and by these very signs you shall know this malady: neither shall you want store of receipts wherewith to cure it; the *French* do call this disease *grappes*, or grapes, and *Invars*, and *maistles*, as also such other like terms and epithetons, all which (as before is touched) makes

but

but only one and the same disease : the first thing which is to be done towards the cure, is to bathe and wash the places all about, and then either to shave or clip away the hair very close, otherwise you can hardly make a perfect cure thereof ; then

Scratches.

Take the spawn of Toads, which in the beginning of *March* you shall find in pools, ponds, ditches, and standing water ; and first drain the water from the said spawn, and then distill it and keep the water in a glass close stopped, to serve you for the whole year, and herewith wash and bathe the places every day warm, and in short space it will cure them : this I have often used. Another,

Take Honey, and Pepper made into very fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyl them together, and anoint the sovrance therewith, and they will soon heal and dry up ; that I did never try, but a famous *Farrier of France* taught it me. Another,

Take of Lime and Salt, and make them both into fine powder, which being well mixed, apply it to the places grieved good and thick, then take Hurds, and cut them very small, and clap them upon it, and so bind up the place with a linnen cloth, that it doth not remove, and so let it remain two whole days and nights, and this will cause the Sovrance to purge, and after heal it up very kindly: This I did never try. Another;

Take Verdigrease and the fat of Bacon, and pound them to a formal Salve, and so *plaster-wise* apply it to the sore, and it will heal up the *scratches* in short time. This is very good. Another ;

Take old Bores-grease and common Honey, of each as much as will suffice, and work it to an Unguent, anoint the sovrance four or five days, and no longer, and it will cure the *Scratches*. * * * This is very good. Another,

Take Verdigrease in fine powder, Galls, Brimstone, and Bole-Armoniack, of each one ounce, make all into fine powder, and mix them with Bores-grease, as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Unguent, and anoint the sovrance therewith, and this will both heal and dry them up. * * * This I have often tryed. Another,

First cauterize five strokes on either side, and your iron must

must be somewhat broad, and you must go but only one cross-wife, and after heal it up as it is usual in your Cures of Cauterize. This I never did practise. Another,

Take Pepper, Garlick, Cole-wort-leaves and old Boares-grease, of each so much as will suffice, pound them together to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the Sorrhance, and in few days it will ripen the *Scratches*, and kill the malice of the disease, and heal it up. * * * Of this receipt I have made often use, and it is good; you must not fail always before you dress any horse that hath the *Scratches*, first to wash and bathe the place well with warm water, and then to shave or clip away the hair very close, also every time you are to dress any horse of this malady, wash the place with Chamberly and green Copporas boyled together, and after dress him up with your other Salves, Unguent, &c. Another;

Take Hogs-grease and strong-Mustard, & anoint the sorrhance therewith, and in short time he will be whole. * * * This is very good. Another;

Take of white-Wine-Vinegar, one pint, and put unto it of the strongest Tobacco in the Rowl you can get, one ounce, open the leaves, and shred the Tobacco small, and boyl it until the Vinegar do begin to consume, then take it from the fire, and strain it, wring it hard, then take white-Wine one pint, of Roch-Allum the quantity of a Walnut, of Bay-salt, and of common Honey, of each one spoonful, red-Sage, Rue, Honey-suckle-leaves, of each like much, half a handful in the whole, boyl all these in the Wine till one quart be consumed, then strain this water also, and mix them both together, and set it upon the fire till it begin to boyl, then take it off, and when it is through cold, put it up into a glass, and so keep it close stopped, that no *ayr* come unto it, and when you would use it for the *Scratches*, wash the Sorrhance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt Allum; and this will cure the *Scratches*. * * * This I have often tryed, and it is singular good. Another,

Take Verdigrease and make it into fine powder, and then take common Honey, and work them together to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the Sorrhance, and in short time it will infallibly cure him. * * * With this Receipt I have cured very many *Horses*. Another,

Take

Take tryed Hogs-grease, and Gunpowder, of each so much as will suffice, first beat your Gun-powder to very fine powder, and incorporate them very well together, and anoint the places grieved once a day therewith, and it will soon cure *Scratches*. *.* This is a special good Receit. Another,

Take Train-oyl, white lead, made into very fine powder, and the Jelle which you shall find upon the ground, which many do report to be the falling of a Star in the night where it shooteth, of each like much, incorporate these well together, and anoint the sore twice every day therewith, but if you cannot get of this jelly, then add to the former ingredients a little Arsenick pulveris'd, and in ten or twelve days this will heal him. *.* This also is very good. Another,

Take the tender tops of Elder-buds, and the berries of the Brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each one handful, boyl them in Wort two quarts, and put unto it of Allum the quantity of an Egg, and therewith wash and bath the Sorrhance good and hot twice every day, and this water will cure him. *.* This is also very good. Another,

Take of Hemlock a good quantity, shred it very small, then take of Cream one quart, and boyl it with the Hemlock, till the Cream do turn into an Oyl, which done take it from the fire, and strain it into a clean gally-pot, and keep it for your use: with this anoint the Sorrhance, and it will soon heal it. Of this I never had tryal, Another,

Take Brimstone, and make it into fine powder, and mix with it of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, to bring it to an Unguent, which will be of the colour of gold, herewith anoint the sores, and it will cure them. This I never tryed. Another,

Take unslaked Lime, Salt, and Soot, of each like much, all made into very fine powder; boyl this in the strongest white-Wine-Vinegar you can get, so much as will suffice, till it become as thick as a Pultis; then soften it with tryed Hogs-grease, and so work it to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the places grieved till they be perfectly cured. *.* This

is very good ; but to prevent all sorts of Scratches, Kibes, Rat-tails, &c. take up the *Thigh-veins*, and your *horse* shall never have any of these maladies, or if he have them, yet by so doing they will themselves be cured. * * This I have oft experienced.

S E C T. 7. S.

Hoppoph. **H**ow do you cure a Sit-fast ?

Hippof. This malady the *French* do call *Mal de la Cron* ; it is a hard knob which hath been formerly a *Saddle-gald*, but by reason that the owner of the *horse* was unwilling to spare his work till it was fully cur'd ; it was converted into a *sit-fast*, wick is oft-times troublesome to the horse, by reason it is grown to a dry knob so hard as a horn. The Cure is,

Take the green outward leaves of a Cabbage, and stamp them with old Boars-grease, or tryed Hogs-grease, and work them to an ointment ; and then mount his back, and set the Saddle, to the end that the oyntment may the better enter, or sink into his back, and in a few days it will cure him. * * This is a very good Cure.

S E C T. 8. S.

Hippoph. **T**Here be yet certain Scabs which do grow upon horse heels, which Farriers do deny to be the Scratches, but they will have it to be a disease wholly different. How do you cure them ?

Hippof. Sir, men may say what they shall please, but I do assure you these are all plain Scratches. But yet I will give you a few receipts for them.

Take of Sallet-oyl three ounces, Red-wax gummed one ounce, common Honey two ounces, mix and melt all these together, and make them into an Unguent, with which you must oft anoint the fores, and this will cure them * * I have often used it. Another,

Take ordinary Turpentine two ounces, new Wax, oyl de-Bay, quick Brimstone, of each three ounces, common Ho-

ney one ounce, Allum and Zacacon, of each half an ounce; mix, melt, and incorporate all these well together, and every evening anoint the places grieved therewith, having first cleansed the Sorrances, as before is taught you. This I did never try, but I hold it to be very good. Another,

Take the strongest white-Wine-Vinegar, Mustard, and Soot, of each so much as will suffice, and mix them well, then add to them the yolks of two Eggs, and of Hogs-grease one ounce, Rape-oyl, and new Wax, of each two ounces; quick-Brimstone in fine powder half an ounce; melt all these, and make them into an Unguent, and therewith anoint the grieved Sorrances. *x* This I have often tryed, and I know it to be very good.

S E C T. 9. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for a horse that can neither stale nor dung?

Hippof. This accident oft-times hapneth to a horse that is suddenly travelled, being newly taken from Grass, or hath been long time kept and pampered in the Stable without any exercise at all, for as those who be too hard riders do soon surfeit their horses, so likewise do these much wrong their horses, who be too indulgent and tender of them; and therefore the *golden* mean is evermore the best. The sign to know this malady is plain, for that his pain will be so great, as that it will cause him oft to lie down and tumble, as if he had the Potts. I will give you one only Receipt which a famous *French Marishal* gave me, with which I cured one *horse*, for that I had never occasion to practise it upon any since, but I do hold it to be the most soveraign in a case of this nature.

Take the root of Male-brake or Fearn, and put a piece thereof upon his tongue, and it will cause him both to *stale* and *dung*, and so he will be cured. The male Fern is to be known by the root, from the female, for if you take a Fearn-root, and cut it in two pieces, you shall see the perfect figure of an Eagle, and thereby you may know it to be the *male*, which is for your turn. And the *female* root will bear another effigies different from the *male*, which wanteth its vertue.

tue to perfect this cure. ** This (I say) I have once try-
ed.

S E C T. 10. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is to be done to a Horse that falleth sick in his
journey or travel?

Hippof. This also hapneth as the former doth, but yet oft-
ner and sooner, especially if he be very fat and purfivè, and
wanting *breath*, as also if he be travelled being fat & heavy, the
Sun shining and scorching much, for such a *horse* is in danger
either to tire, or to fall desperately sick, which may also
endanger his life, as I have frequently known. The cure must
be,

Take Muskadine or sweet Sack one pint, Aqua-vitæ a quar-
ter of a pint, of *London-Treacle* two ounces, and of the best *Sallet-oil*, a quarter of a pint : warm all these upon the fire, *sick in travel.*
and brew it well, and give him one hornful thereof; then take
his tongue in your hand: and put down his throat a new laid
Egg, breaking it with your fingers as you put it forth of your
hand: then give him a second hornful, and then another Egg,
and after all the residue of the drink, and so after that a third
Egg; then let him *blood* in the *Palat*, and rub it well with
white Salt, then fet him upon a Trench, cloth, stop, and
litter him again warm, and let him fast an hour or two after it,
and then feed him by degrees both with Hay and Oats, giving
him either a sweet Mash or white Water, and he will do well
again. This drink refresheth all the spirits, being over laid
through heat and labour, and causeth a good appetiteto meat.
** With this drink I have cured many sick horses, as well
of mine own, as of my Friends, which have fallen very de-
sperately sick upon the way in travel; but if I do find that
his blood is inflamed, as many times it will be, I then use to o-
pen a *vein* in the neck.

S E C T. 11. S.

Hippoph. **B** *U* what is given to a Horse that falleth suddenly sick?

Hippof. First let him bleed in both breast-veins, or if you have no skill sufficient to open these veins, then let him bleed in both sides the neck, and let him bleed well nigh two quarts, then give him this comfortable drink.

Take of sweet Sack one quart, and burn it with Grains, Cloves, and Cinamon, of each like much, being all beaten gross, put to it of Sugar three ounces, and when it is burnt, add unto it of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and of *London* Treacle two ounces; warm all these, and brew them well together, and so give it to your Horse blood-warm, then ride him gently untill he do begin to sweat, and so set him up warm clothed and littered, but be sure to keep his head and heart warm, neither must you stuff and cloath him too hot, for this drink will cause him to sweat sufficiently of it self, yet litter him well, keeping the Stable close, & so let him fast six hours after, against which time let him be rubbed very dry, and give him to eat sweet Wheat-straw, and after give him either a sweet Mash or white Water, and boyl therein of Mallows and Water-crelles, of each one handful, of Fennel-seed, and Parsley-seed, of each one ounce, if he will drink the same, after that morning and evening (your horse being fasting) ride him a mile or two, to the end he may take the ayr, which is very wholesome for him, if the weather be temperate, and let his meat be sweet straw, old clean dry Oats, and some Wheat, and Pease mixed therewith: give him a little at once, and often, untill you do perceive his stomach to come well unto him, and let him be daily well rubbed, and warm clothed, to provoke him to sweat, and let him be also well littered, and his drink either sweet Mashs or white Water; and by this manner of keeping and ordering of him, in short time he will recover his pristine sanity. *.* This I have often tryed, and it is very good

S E C T. 12. S.

Hippoph.

W *What Cure have you for a Selender?*

Hippof. This disease is the very same with the *Malender*, but the sole difference is, in that the *Malender* breedeth upon the bending of the *knee*, or the *leg* before, and the *Selender* engendreth of the bending of the *hough*, in the *leg* behind: but it cometh just as doth the *malender*, and the cure is the very same with it: but yet I will give you one good receipt which will cure both: First wash and shave away the hair, and rub the sorrhance with a wisp or hair-cloth till it be raw, then take the shreds of white Leather untanned, which *Glovers* do make, and boyl them in Vinegar till they be soft, and bind of this hot to the place; but if you do not find that by once or twice dressing, it taketh not away the scurf or scab, renew it daily untill it doth, for by this means the roots of the bristly hair which groweth in and about the Sorrhance, is the only thing that feedeth the *malender*, wherefore the roots of the hair being taken off (which this medicine will do) the Sorrhance will soon be cured; and to heal up the rawness thereof.

Selender.

Take fresh or sweet Butter, bay-Salt, and Frankincense, both made into fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyl them all together on the fire, and with a rag upon a stick apply this medicine to the place scalding hot two mornings together, and after heal it up, and cause the hair to come again, being daily anointed with Mallows, and sweet Butter made into an Unguent. * * This is a very good cure.

S E C T. 13. P.

Hippoph.

VV *What is to be given to a horse Sick, Surfeited, and his Grease molten?*

Hippof. The only way is first to take blood from him, if there be just cause, and after to scower his guts with this *sick or surfeited.* purge.

Take Cassia one ounce, Filonio-perfico, and Trifora magna, of each half an ounce, sirrup of Violets two ounces, dissolve.

*Sinew-
sprunge.*

olve these in mel Rosarum four ounces, and give it him with a horn in a morning fasting, and after either ride him gently, or else walk him up and down an hour or better, and for an hour after at the least let him stand upon the Trench; then give him a sweet Mash, which when he hath dispatch'd, give him old dry Oats clean and well sifted, and after sweet Hay, neither let him have any cold water in eight days after, nor after that time, but with exercise. * * * And this is a special good cure.

S E C T. 14. P.

Hippoph. **N**OW let us come to the sinews, what say you to a sinew-sprain?

Hippof. I have already handled this point sufficiently in l. 2. c. 4. sect. 9. A. for an Attaint upper, nevertheless I will give more receipts for a *Sinew-sprain*, albeit it be the same malady; the first shall be for a *Sinew-sprunge*, or when the *Sinew* is broken, and severed from the *flesh*, as many times it falleth out, then

Take Tartar, and the Lees of Claret or red Wine, of each three ounces, Wheat-bran one handful, boyl these with the juyce of Smallage, two handfuls or better, and when you take it from the fire, put into it of Turpentine one ounce, bind this to the *Sinew* grieved, so hot as he may well suffer it, and using this medicine four or five days, he will be found again. * * * This is very good. *Another.* If the *Sinew* or *Artery* be broken with Corrasive, or other accident, to cause it to foder or joyn again.

Take the leaves and roots of *Solomons-seal*, and of great Cumfry, of each like much, pound them small and infuse it in White Wine four and twenty hours, bathe the sorraine herewith warm (you having first boyled it) and after you have bathed the place well, bind the herbs and roots to the place grieved, dressing him every day once, until he be perfectly consolidate. And if the *flesh* be still broken, when you do find the *Sinew* to be knit, strew thereon the powder of Lime and Honey, which will heal and skin it in short time. * * * This is good, for I have often tried it. *Another* for a *Sinew* grieved.

If

If the *Sinew* be so far grieved, whereby to cause the *horse* *Sinew* to complain, and to halt, *grieved.*

Take then of Mallows a good quantity, boyl them in fair water until they shall become tender, then drain the water from the herbs, and so stamp them to mash, and apply them to the *member* grieved, hot over night, and the next morning he will be upright again, but then he must have eight or ten days rest at the least after, but if it be Sinew-sprain, then clip away the hair close, or shave it, then

Take of the Oyl of Sulphur, and of the Oyl of Turpentine, of each one ounce, take first the one half thereof being well mixed, and chafe and rub it into the *Sinew* well, and so let him be tied up to the Rack, that he may not come unto it with his mouth, for that it will greatly perplex him for four or five hours after his dressing; and the next day anoint him, as you did the day before, and he will be cured, but the place will be raw, and therefore heal him up with sweet Butter or Hogs-grease, and when the place healeth, the skin will peel, and yet the *hair* will come again, but he must either run at Grass, or else be kept in the Stable without any exercise at all, by the space of a month at least. If the sinew be cut, then

Take new Wax, and Gum-Arabick, of each two ounces, of the marrow of an Ox or Cow four ounces, of the Oyl of Roses three ounces, melt and incorporate all these on the fire, and so keep it for your use, and when you are to use it, warm it, and so apply it either Unguent-wise, or Taint-wise, according as you shall see cause, and it will cure any forrance of this nature, * * I have often tryed. *Another,*

If your *horse* have a *sinew* sprained by an over reach, stroke, or otherwise weakened, the better to strengthen the same,

Take tryed Hogs-grease, Horfe-grease, May or fresh Butter, Sallet-Oyl, of each six ounces; take also of the Oyntment called Agrippa two drams, or new Wax two ounces and a half, and of Camphire a third part to all the rest, melt them together upon the fire, and so work it to an Unguent, and good and warm anoint the swelled or grieved part therewith morning and evening, and what remaineth of this medicine, let it be reserved in a Gally-pot for other times, for
it

it will keep a whole year. * * This is very good. Another; if it be a *sinew sprain* only, then

Take Goats, Kids, or Deer-fuet, and Rosin, of each one pound, Fig-dust half a pound, Verdigrease in fine powder, half a pound, melt and mix all these well, and therewith anoint the *sinew grieved* every day, and chafe it into the *sinew* by holding a hot bar of iron near it. This will both comfort and strengthen the *sinew*, but I did never make tryal thereof.

SECT. 15. S.

Hippoph. **B**Ut Hippoſerus is it needful that by applying your Unguents, you do evermore work them in with a hot bar of iron?

Hippof. Truly Sir, those that are for Strains, Aches, Mainges, Farcins, and such like maladies, and forrances, the further they do sink into the *skin* and *flesh*, the sooner and better will the cure be performed, and therefore albeit I do not always put you in mind of the hot bar of iron in every of my *receipts*, yet it is needful to be used: But to proceed with another receipt for a *sinew sprain*.

*Sinew
sprain.*

Take ordinary Sope, and Aqua-vitæ, of each as much as will suffice, boyl them, and in the boyling, keep it continual stirring, then take it off, and (so hot as he can well suffer it) bathe and chafe in the Oyntment, and he will be found again. This was commended unto me for most Sovereign, but I never made tryal thereof. Another for a *strain* taken in travel:

Take so much of the best gray Sope as will serve to anoint the *sinew* strained, but before you do anoint him, having caused his legg to be cleansed from dirt, sand, or gravel, and made dry again, anoint him therewith, and then swathe the legg with a Thumb-band of Hay, and so let him stand all night and the next morning he will be found again, so that you may securely travel him again, without fear. * * This I have often used, and it is very good. Another, if it be a strain newly taken:

Take then of the strongest white Wine Vinegar you can get,

get, one pint, and May or fresh Butter half an ounce, then put to it of Wheat-bran as much as will suffice, which by boyling will bring it to a Poultefs, and apply it so-hot as he can suffer it; do this morning and evening, until the swelling be allwaged. * * * This is very good. Another, but if it be an old taken strain, then

*Strain
newly ta-
ken.*

Take Mallows and Chick-weed, of each like much, boyl them either in the grounds of Ale or Beer, or else in old Chamberlye, and apply it to the place. * * * This is a special good cure. Another, for an old *strain* which is thought to be incurable, infomuch as the *sinew* being swelled, is become very hard and knotty.

Take Patch-greafe, *alias* Peer or Peece-greafe, as much as will suffice, melt it upon the fire, and anoint the strain therewith very hot, and chafe and heat it very well, then rope the place as before is shewed you, but before you rope him, wrap a rowler of linnen upon the place, and do thus daily; and it will dissolve the hardness, and make him sound again. * * * This is most excellent. Another, for a *sprain* of the same nature.

Strain old.

Take Nerval, Bolearmoniack, Bores-greafe, black Sope, of each like much, melt them together, but first pulverize your Bolearmoniack, and anoint the sorrance herewith, chafing and heating it in very well; continue thus to do twice a day till it be well. * * * This is also very Sovereign.

SECT. 16.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good for a Horse that hath a stinking Breath?*

Hippof. This cometh by means of corrupted and infected *lungs*, the signs how to know it is by the smell only, the cure is,

Take Cinamon, Cloves, Galingal, Comin, and Coriander-seeds, of each three ounces, Fænugreek eight ounces, make all these into fine Powder, and searce and mix them well with Wheat-flower two pound, and put thereto so much white Wine as will bring it to a stiff past, and make a cake thereof and bake it in an Oven till it be as dry and as hard as *bisket*, and when it is cold, beat it into fine powder, and give him e-

*Stinking
breath.*

very morning an hour at least before his water, of this Powder four spoonfuls in white Wine, or strong Ale of each one pint. This will take away all the corrupt and evil savours of his Breath, for this powder healeth all his inward parts that putrefieth, from whence its bad Breath taketh its origin.* * This is very good and approved, and a better remedy you shall find none.

S E C T. 17. S.

Hippoph. *What is the best way to cure or take off a Splent?*

Hippof. This is to be done many ways, but because we are come to treat of this cure, I hold it not amiss to make you understand what a *splent* is, by what means it cometh, how to know it, and which way to cure the same, and to take it clean away. A *splent* is in the beginning, a very *Gristle*, howbeit if it be long let alone, it will come to be a hard *bone* or *excretion*, and then it will not be easily cured. It cometh to a *Horse* by means of too hard travel and fore riding, whilst he is very young, or by bearing in his youth too heavy burthens, by both which means the Grease being molten falleth down into his *leggs*, and so breedeth this forrance, you shall have it bigger or lesser, according as the cause of its coming was, it taketh its residence for the most part upon the inside of the *shank* about the middle thereof, but sometimes again higher even adjoining to the *knee*, which if it be there, then it is more difficile to cure. It will many times cause the *Horse* to halt, but howsoever it will make him oft to *stumble* and to *trip*, and many times to *fall* in his travel. Sometimes it cometh to a *horse* Hereditarily, like as doth the *spaven*, and other forrances and maladies, as if either the *Stallion* or *Mare* be visited therewith, as I have formerly intimated. The signs how to know it are most facile, *viz.* Either by the *sight* or *feeling*, for that you may both *see* and *feel* its swelling. Now to the cure, for which I shall give you very many receipts.

First wash the place with warm water, and shave away the *hair*, then with your *Incision-knife* slit a hole clean through the *skin*, more then the length of a Barly corn, and then convey into the said hole so much *Arsnick* as the fourth part of a *Hallenut*,

nut, which must be bound on with a bolster and rowler of linnen, and made fast with a needle and thread, and so let it remain untouched three whole days and nights, in which time the *Arfnick* will eat and corrode clean away the *splent*, then to kill the fire, anoint the place (having first taken off the rowler and bolster, and washed clean the forrance) with sweet or fresh Butter molten eight or ten days after, and it will be whole. * * * With this I have done very many cures of this kind. Another,

First, anoint the place with ordinary soft washing Sope, then tye a red woollen cloth about the *legg* just upon the *splent*, that done heat a brick glowing hot, and lay it upon the cloth against the place where the *splent* is, and hold it so close unto it a pretty space, then so soon as you do take that away, have another as hot in readiness, and clap that too also, doing as before, and so a third, or so many as shall be needful, till you do find that the *splent* is dissolved and taken away, which commonly will be in applying two or three hot Bricks. * * * With this I have taken off very many *splents*. *Another*,

First wash and shave the *hair*, then *knock*, *rub*, and *prick* it with your *blood staff* and *fleam*: And after you have so done, rub and knock it again, then

Take Vervine and Salt of each one handful, pound them together to an Unguent, and apply it to the place, and bind it up with a rowler stitched on fast with a Needle and Thread, and so let it remain, four and twenty hours, and then unbind it, and it is cured without any more to do. * * * This is very good. *Another*,

Wash and shave as before, and rub and knock as before also, then with your Incision-knife lay open the place a little, then knock and rub again with a little Salt, then apply unto it this Oyntment which the *French* do term a *Retoire*:

Take of Oyl-de-Bay four ounces, Cantharides, Euforbium, and Orpin, of each one ounce, all these being made into fine powder, let them be well incorporated into the said Oyl, and wrought to an Unguent, lay of this to the splent, and bind it up with a Bolster and Rowler, and sew it up fast, and let him stand so by the space of three hours upon the

Trench, so tyed up that he bite not off the rowler and Medicine: At three hours end unrowl the place, and put unto it again the said Retoire or Oyntment, being made warm, and let the *Horse* stand tramelled four days, and at four days end send him to the water a *foot pace*, where every day he must be ridden up and down, to the *Belly*: If you do love the *Horse*, and have a desire to have him perfectly cured, let him not be ridden more than a *foot pace* to the water in a *month* after, for indangering the growing of it again, for nothing can be more Sovereign for him than rest. * * * This *Retoire* is a special good thing for this Malady, and I have often used it, and it did never fail me. I had this in *France* of a *famous Marishal* who cured many *Horses* therewith in my presence.

Another,

After you have washed and shaven, knocked, rubbed, and laid it open, as before is taught you, take a head of Garlick, picked and pilled, three or four drops of the best white wine Vinegar, a penny-weight of Green Copperas, all well beaten together, apply it to the *splent*, and then bind and stitch it up, and let it lye on four and twenty hours, then open it, and if the *splent* be not taken quite away, make more of the same medicine, and administer it again, binding it up as before, and after other four and twenty hours take of the medicine, and then you shall need do nothing unto him, but only what you are prescribed in the precedent cure. This I did never try.

Another, First, burn away the *hair* with a hot *Tyle*, then shave it close with your Razor, that done have in a readines a piece of Leather, the breadth of the Sorrance, and bind it hard upon it, and let it so remain for the space of an hour, then take him off, and lead him to the water, without doing any more unto him, and he is cured. This cure I never tryed.

Another,

Take Mustard-feed, and beat it, and let it steep a little in fair water, and after make a Plaster thereof, and lay it to the place, and three days after take it away, but have a care your *horse* come not unto it with his Teeth, the *hair* also being shaven away before you do apply your Plaster, and this will cure him. This also I never proved.

Another, First wash and shave away the *hair*, then take of the tender tops

tops of Worm-wood, Smallage, Pellitory, and of Branca-
urina, of each like much, and beat them together with old
Bores-grease, so much as will suffice, and apply it to the place:
Neither did I try this. Another, First wash and shave as be-
fore, and knock, beat, and rub the *splent* three or four times,
then take marsh Mallow-roots boyled with the *skin* on, and
laid to the place, and it will take away the *splent*: This I ne-
ver made use of, but a very good *Farrier* taught it me, who
avowed it to be right good. Another,

Take Mustard-seed, Mallow-roots, and Ox-dung, all stamp-
ped and boyled together, and Plaister-wise apply it to the
place three or four times. This I never used. Another,

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and lay it
upon the *splent*, and it will take it off; but beware that this
powder do touch neither vein nor sinew, for it is a very cor-
roding thing. * * * Another,

Take two heads of Garlick and pill them, and cut them
small, but do neither stamp nor bruise them: Then take of
Salt the like quantity, and mix them with your Garlick, and
divide them into two equal parts, and put them into two fine
linnen clouts, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, of
a foot in length a piece of the fashion of two short wooden
Foyles, but not so long, being not above twelve inches a piece.
Take then your blood stick, and rub, knock, and beat, the
Splent therewith very well to soften it, then prick it through
the *skin* with your *blood staffe* and *Fleam*; then take of the
Oyl of Nuts one pint, and put it into a small Pipkin; and
set it upon the fire in a Chafing-dish with coles, and make it
boyling hot, and when it is ready to boyl, put into it your
short sticks or *Foyls*, which hath the Garlick and Salt fast-
ned unto them, and first with the *Foyl*, and then with the o-
ther (I mean by turns) apply them hot to the *splent*; and be-
tween-whiles rub and stroke the *Splent* down-wards, with
your Thumb, whereby to bring forth the *blood*, till having
with the *Foyls* very well mollified the said *Splent*, you may
the more easily crush forth the *blood* whereof the *splent* is in-
gendred, and formed; it being indeed compact of bad and
corrupt *blood*: And thus is the *Splent* cured, only you must
remember to anoint the place two or three times after with
sweet

sweet or fresh Butter. * * This of all the cures I have is the best, for this Malady, how be it, it may seem intricate; I got it of a *French Rider* to a *Noble Knight in England*, and I have herewith taken off more then one hundred *splents*, I have used this more then thirty years since. *Another,*

Take up the contrary *Legg*, and beat the *Splent* with your *blood staffe* till it do begin to be soft, then with your *Fleam* prick it in sundry places, that the *blood* may issue forth. Take then the greatest red *Onion*, and cut off the top, and pick out the core, and put into it so much of the powder of *Verdigrease* as the end of your *Thumb*, then put on the top again, and wrap it up in a wet brown paper, and so rost it in the hot embers, as you do a *Warden*, till it be as soft as pap, then take it out of the *Embers*, and put away the paper, and all that is burnt from about it, and stamp it, and being yet very hot apply it unto the *Splent*, and lay a bolster upon it, and then swathe it up with a linnen *Rowler*, stitching it fast, and so let it remain five or six days, and then open it, and after anoint the place every day once, with sweet Butter till it be whole. * * This is a very good cure. *Another,*

Take a great *Onion*, and pick out the core, and put into it of the powder of *unslaked Lime*, and of the powder of *Verdigrease*, of each as much as will suffice, but so much as will fill it up, then rost it, as before is shewed you, and stamp it in a *Morter* well, then slit the *skin* a little, that the medicine may come unto it, to eat away the splent, and shave not away the hair, but lay on the medicine and bolster, and bind it up fast, and so let it remain three days without stirring it, then unbind it and wash it clean, and anoint it every day with sweet Butter till it be whole. * * This is very good. *Another,*

Take an *Elecampane* root, and make it clean, and wrap it up in a brown paper, and rost it in the embers as you did the *Onions*, and being soft like pap, apply it to the splent, you having first rubbed, knocked, and prickt it as before is taught you, the hair also being washed and shaven off, it must be laid on so hot as he is able to suffer it, and let it lie on two days and two nights, then take off that, and lay on a second, and after a third, till the splent be quite consumed, and then anoint

anoint the place with sweet Butter only every day till it be whole. *.* This is special good. Another,

Take of the Oyl of Exeter and taking every day once or twice a little thereof upon the brawn of your Thumb, rub and anoint the place therewith, and thus doing, it will take it quite away, but this will ask long time to do it. *.* This I have tryed. Thus have I given you very many Receipts for this malady, most of which I know to be good from my own experience: The residue which I never tryed, where cryed up unto me by very skilful Farriers and Marishals, for very good. The *French* do call this malady *Surots* and *Epineles*, or *Espinuls*.

S E C T. 18. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat help have you for stumbling?

Hippof. This inconvenience cometh many ways, sometimes it cometh *naturally* and sometimes *accidentally*, it cometh *naturally* by reason the *sinews* of the *Fore-legs* are somewhat straight, so that the *Horse* is not able to handle his *Legs* with that dexterity and agility he should, and the only remedy to cure him of this defect is to cut him of the *Cords* (as we term it) *viz.* by cutting a slit upon the very top of his *Nose*, and with your *cronet* to take up the two great *Sinews* which you shall there find, and so cut them in sunder, and after to heal it up again with some healing Salve, and this will do him no harm, but good, for by this doing it will give him use of his *leggs* so perfectly, as that he will seldom or never after *trip* any more, and this can every ordinary Smith do. *.* And my counsel is, that when at any time you shall either breed or buy a young *horse*, before, or presently after you shall *back* him, let him be thus cut of the *Cords*, and you shall find great profit thereby. The second cause that maketh a *horse* to *stumble*, is *accidental* and this cometh either by means of the putting forth of a *splent* or a *ridge bone*, or about *Wind-galls*, or by some detriment taken in the *foot*, as by being hot, foundred; prick't stub'd, gravel'd, or the like, or by some *Sinew-sprain*, or some hurt or wrench in the *shoulder*, or by some pinch in the *Withers*;

Stumbling.

thers; and it cometh also by over-riding, and then negligently set up, which causeth him to go *stiff*; and then the cure must be done with *bathes* and *Unguents*, whereby to stretch, supple, mollifie, and to comfort the *stiff members*, for remedy and ease whereof, I have given you very many good *receipts* before prescribed you, as well of *bathes* as *Unguents*. But yet I will give you one more which I have often made use of, and have done much good therewith for *stiff leggs*, *viz.*

Stiff Leggs. Take of Hogs-grease one pound, of fresh Butter, Altheæ, and of Oyl-de-Bay, of each half a pound, mix and incorporate all these together, and therewith anoint, rub, and chafe the *leggs* and *sinews* of the *horse* every third day three times a day, and let his shoes be made wide enough, especially at the *heels*, and let him be pared thin; the *sinews* being well suppled, it is needful he be out of the *Cords*, which will prevent his *stumbling*; the better *Stumbling* cometh also by means of carrying heavy *burdens*, and when the rider is a man of extraordinary weight, especially if the *horse* be young. *** This is a very good cure.

S E C T. 19. S.

Hippoph. **V V** *Hat is to be given to a Horse that cannot Stale or Piss.*

Hippof. This infirmity cometh either of the *Collick*, or by means of too much hard riding: The cure is,

Stale or Piss.

Take Grummel-feed, Saxafrage-feed, and the roots, of each half an ounce, make them into fine Powder, boyl them a walm or two in white Wine one quart, and give it him warm. *** This is very good. Another,

Take the tops of green Broom, and burn a good quantity of them, so as you may have so many of the *Ashes* as will come to be a pretty handful, searce them and put them into white Wine a pint, and after it hath infused an hour, give him the Wine, but not the *Ashes*. *** This is very good. Another,

Take Black-buds of the Ashen-tree, and burn them, then take the *Ashes* cleansed, and as before is shewed you of the *Broom ashes*, and minister it to the *horse* just as you did the other. *** This a most approved cure.

S E C T.

S E C T. 20. S.

Hippoph. **V** *What good cure have you for the Stavers?* *Of Melancholly.*
V *Hippof.* This disease is *secundum vulgus*, called the *Staggers*, but the true name thereof is the *Stavers*, it is a dizziness in the *head*, neerly allied unto the *frenzy* when it seizeth the *brain*. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *blood*, and heavy and bad *humours*, which do intoxicate and oppress the *brain*. It is a disease incident to almost every horse, yea and that most dangerous if it be not soon espied. Sometimes it cometh by feeding and grazing, at what time the *Horse* is hard ridden, that he be hot and sweateth, for by his feeding and holding down his head so low as to graze upon the ground, the *peccant humours*, do fall down to the head, and there settle, and in short time seizeth the *brain*, which bringeth this mortal disease. Sometimes it cometh by what was occasioned by hard and over-violent riding, whereby the whole *body* became distempered, and the *blood* inflamed and putrified: And sometimes it cometh by eating over much, for thereby is the *stomach* so over-charged with meat, as not to be able to digest and convert it all as it ought into good *blood* and nutriment, and therefore must necessarily breed evil *humours*, which attaching the *head* and *brain*, it is in conclusion the cause of this disease. The Symptoms whereby to discover it, is, in that his *sight* will fail him, and he will hardly be able to *see* a white wall, he will flaver at the *mouth*, and his *eyes* will be swelled and run with much water and other filth, and his gate will be reeling and staggering, he will oft lye down and beat his *head* against the planks, floor, and walls, and when he is laid, his *body* will quiver and shake, and he will forsake his meat; and these be most certain signs, which I have ever observed to be in *horses* oppressed and exercised with this infirmity. *Covrups blood.*

But now to come to the cure: I will give you first a cure which a *French Marishal* taught me, which by reason it founded to be so much improbable, I would never make trial thereof, but such as it is you shall have it. Fasten unto the end of a stick a linnen Ragg, and anoint it well with Bar- *Stavers.*
 Bbb b bary

bary Sope, and put it up into his *Nose* gently, and by degrees, and so draw it out again as treatably. *Another,*

If you do perceive your *horse* in his travel to fall sick suddenly of the *Stavers*, and that you be in such a place, where for the present you can get no help, then thrust up the greater end of your riding rod into either *nostril* good and hard, causing him thereby to *bleed* well, and this will preserve him for the time, till you come where you may meet with better remedy: Then take a piece of wheaten leaven, Bay-salt, Rue, Aqua vitæ, and strong white wine Vinegar, of each as much as will suffice, bray all these in a stone mortar very well, then put this medicine into two thin fine linnen cloths, or rags, by equal portions, and then moisten it well in the liquor, and so convey those cloths into either of his *Ears* one, and then stitch them up close, that he get not the medicine forth, but that the substance thereof may be diffused into his head, and let the medicine remain so four and twenty hours, then take forth the rags, and this will make him a found and whole *horse*. * * * But before you apply this medicine to his *Ears*, run him through the *Gristle* of the *Nose* with an *iron Bodkin*, and the next day after let him *blood* in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, and then give him this drink, which will keep off the *Yellows* for coming too fast upon him; then take Turmeric, Myrrh, Ivory, or Hearts-horn, of each one ounce, of Saffron one penny-worth, pound all these by themselves to very fine powder, then take Selandine a good handful, stamp it and strain it, and put the juyce thereof to the other Ingredients, then put unto it of Muskadine or sweet Sack, one pint, or for want thereof, of strong Ale one quart, adding unto it of *London Treacle* one ounce, set these upon the fire, and let it boyl one walm or two, and in the taking off, put unto it of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, and so having well brewed the same, give it him blood-warm, and for three or four days, give him either sweet Mashs, or white water. * * * This is very good. *Another,*

First take *blood* from him in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, and let him chew and swallow down his *blood*, being most wholsome for him; and whilst he is thus *bleeding* thrust an *iron Bodkin* through the *Gristle* of his *Nose*, skin and all, then

Take

Take Assa-fetida, the quantity of a Hasle-nut, and dissolve it into a Sawcer full of white wine Vinegar, then take Lint, or fine flax, and dip it into the liquor, and so stich both *Horses Ears* therewith, and so stich them up, and at the end of four and twenty hours unstich them, and he is cured. * * * This is very good. Another,

First let him *blood* in both the *wceping veins*, and in the *Mouth*, then

Take of Bitter Almonds one Ounce and a half, of the Gall of an Ox two Drams, of black Elebore made into fine powder, a half penny-worth, of Grains, Castoreum, Vinegar, and of Varnish, of each five drams, boyl all these together, until the Vinegar be all consumed, then strain it, and put it into his *Ears*, and do as before. * * * This is very good. Another,

Bloody him as before, then with your Incision-knife, make a slit down his Forehead an inch long and better, and with your *Cronet* loosen the *skin* round about, but most toward the *Foretop*, then put into the place the root of a red great Dock, cut thin; and let it remain there fourteen or fifteen days, and once in two days at farthest; crush out the mattrative stuff, and then take forth the Dock-roots, and heal up the place with your healing Salve, and give him during these fourteen days white water only, and he will do well. * * * This I assure you is very good. Another,

Bloody &c. Then take Aqua vitæ, and Garlick, of each so much as will suffice, stamp them together, and convey it into his *Ears* doing *ut supra*. * * * This is singular good. Another, Let him *bleed* well in the *Neck* and *Mouth* (for the abundance of bad *blood* is the cause of this disease) then with your *Incision-knife* slit the *Forehead* of the *Horse*, and with your *Cronet* raise the *skin* especially upwards, and put in three or four *Cloves* of *Garlick* pilled, and put upon it a little lint or fine *Flax*, to keep away the *Wind* (for that is dangerous) and then give the *Orifice* a stich to keep in the *Medicine* the better. Then,

Take the seeds of Cresses, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Parsly, of Dill (I say the seeds only of these herbs) and take also pepper, and Saffron, of each two drams, make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barly water two

quarts, as it cometh boyling from the fire, and let it infuse therein three hours, and then strain it, and give him one quart thereof, if it may be, in the morning fasting blood-warm, and walk him up and down an hour or better, and then set him up warm, and give him Hay sprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart fasting, and then do as before, neither let him drink any cold water in four or five days after, but only whiter-Water, unless sometimes a sweet Mash: And thus doing he will be cured. * * * This is a most excellent Receipt, and I have often used it.

S E C T. 21. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for a Horse that hath Swelled-Legs?

Hippof. This Malady of *swelled* or *gourdy-legs* cometh estoones by long standing in the Stable, when as the upper parts of the planks at the *fore-feet*, are much higher than those at the *hinder feet*, as I have before observed in l. 1. c. 4. for by that means the *horse* not standing even, and therefore not at his ease, the *blood* setleth in the *hinder-legs*, which causeth them to *swell*. Sometimes they do come by reason the *Horse* being hard ridden, was brought into the Stable too hot, and carelessly set up, who taking cold, the *blood*, *grease* and *humours* do fall down into the *Legs*, and so cause them to *swell*. Sometimes it cometh by over-riding, whereby the *horse* hath his *blood* stirred, and his *grease* melted, which falleth down, and resteth in the *hinder legs*, causing them to *swell*. Sometimes by being ridden and galloping upon hard ways in the Heats, and by that means the *blood* and *grease* falleth down into the *Legs*, congealeth there, whereby they do become *gouty* and *gourdy*. And sometimes *gourdy legs* cometh by sickness and surfeits taken, which after remedy had, yet the *faces* or *dregs* thereof still remaining in the *body* of the *horse*, falleth down, and causeth the *legs* to *swell* as I have frequently seen, and these be the prime causes and reasons which we have observed for this malady, The signs your eye doth demonstrate, and you may without teaching point,

Swelled
legs.

to

to it with your *finger*, and therefore we may say nothing thereof. Wherefore now we will to the cure. If the *swelling* come by ordinary means, then take up the *Thigh-veins*, and then you need do no more, for that alone will cure him, and after open the *heel-veins*, and lay a *Retoyre* to the *Legs*, or else give him the *fire* which will siccate and dry up the bad *humours*, which must be given gently, and lightly, neither would I have you give him the *fire*, unless you might think or find it in your judgment to be very requisite. But my meaning is not that this remedy of the *fire* be applied, but only to an old grief, otherwise not at all. * * * This is good. But if besides his *swelled Legs*, they also be stiff, coming to him after much labour and travel; therefore

Take of Violet-leaves, Primrose-leaves, and Straw-berry-leaves, of each a handful, boyl all these in new Milk till they become very soft, and then take it from the fire, and put to it of the oyl of *Nerval* of *Petroleum*, and of *Pam-Phillion*, of each one ounce, and so stir all together until it become blood-warm, and therewith chafe, rub and anoint the *Legs*, *Nerves*, *Sinews*, and *joynts*, holding a hot bar of Iron near to the place, to cause the Unguent to sink the better in: Anoint him thus with this Unguent five or six days together, and it will help him. * * * This I have often used. Another,

Take Train oyl, and warm it upon the *fire*, and therewith bathe his *legs* morning and evening, and in short time he will be well. * * * This is very good; also to ride your *Horse* into the water morning and evening up to the *belly* doth take away the swelling of his *legs*. * * * This is marvelous good.

S E C T. 22. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to assuage the swelling of the Cods in a Horse?

Hippof. This malady cometh many ways, to wit, by violent riding and heats, when there was not sufficient care had of him, but was neglected in the setting up; also it cometh

cometh by washing, walking and cold taken after immoderate labour, and sometimes by feeding intemperately upon Provender, and sometimes by feeding upon unwholesome meat. The signs to know it, are, his *stomach* may be peradventure good to his meat, but yet it will do him little good, for he will be always meagre and lean, his hair will flare, neither will he cast his coat at usual times like as other *horses* do, he will lose his mettle, and become very *lunt*, and his *eyes* will run with water and matter, and his *stones* will swell; in a word he will be out of *joynt*, that is out of good temper throughout every part and member of his *body*. Other causes there be of this malady, whereof I have intreated before in *l. 2. c. 6. sect. 2. let. C.* to which place I do refer you; nevertheless I will give you a Receipt or two which I ave often used, and do know them to be right good.

*Swelled
cods.*

Take Turmerick and long Pepper, of each a penny-worth, Anniseeds and Fenugreek, of each half a penny-worth, sweet Butter so much as will suffice, boyl all these (being first powdred) in ale three pints, till one pint be consumed, and then take it from the fire, and strain it and dissolve it in *London Treacle* one ounce, and so well brewed, give it your *horse* blood-warm; let him have this drink sundry times, and let otherwise his drink be white Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash till it be well. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the best Tar two spoonfuls, Life-Honey one spoonful, Black-Sope the quantity of a Nutmeg, Diapente one ounce, and of Bay-salt two spoonfuls, mix all these well together, and convey it into two or three Egg-shells, the tops being so opened as that you may but get forth the meat; then fill up the shells with this medicine, and so put them down his *throat* in a morning fasting, give him presently after two or three hornfuls of Ale or Beer, to send down the medicine the better, let it be spread upon the roof of his *month*, do thus every morning for eight days together, and when he hath taken his medicine, let him be ridden gently an hour or two: and then set him up warm cloathed and littered; and set him upon the Trench three hours, and let his drink be

be white-Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, both then, and for some time after. * * * This is very good.

S E C T. 23. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you take off a Spongy-wart?

Hippof. A *Spongy-wart*, is that very thing which our *Farriers* call an *Anberry*, which is a kind of *Wen*, which swelleth sometimes to a great bigness, sometimes again it will be but small, but then commonly they are many, and do grow into *clusters*; this cometh by means of *peccant humours* caused of *blood*, and that *Horse* that is inclined to *warts* will seldom be ever free of them, for take them off in one place, and he will put forth more in other parts of his *body*, but to breed of either *Horse* or *Mare* inclined to them, I will dissuade you; for most commonly he will put them forth about the *eyes*, yea, and oft-times so neer to the *eye* it self as to endanger the *sight* thereof; They be easily known by reason they be so apparently seen, and therefore need no further description. The cure is. It were good first to purge him, and to take *blood* from the *Master-vein* which you do find doth most feed them, as well to divert as to stop the malice of that bad *humour* which doth occasion the *maldy*. If the *Wart* or *Anberry* be far enough extant from the *skin*, then tie two of his longest *hairs* taken from his *tail* hard about the *Sorrance* so fast as you possibly can, and so as that it may not loosen, and in few days it will fret and eat it clean off, which done, strew upon it the Powder of *Verdigrease* to kill it at the root, and after heal it up again with your *green Salve*. But if you cannot come to tie it either with hair or thred, then either with your *Incision knife* cut it away close to the *skin*, or else burn it off with a hot *Iron*, and then first kill the fire with *Turpentine* and *Hogsgrease* molten together, and after heal it up, as before is prescribed you. * * * This is very good.

Spongy
Warts

S E C T. 24. S.

Hippoph. **V**V *What is good to be applied to a Horse that is Surbated?*

Hippof. Two ways a *horse* doth surbate; the first is when a horse is newly backt and weighed, upon his first shoeing, and when the owner of the *horse* will not have patience with him, but will presently journey him upon hard and stoney ways, his hoofs and feet being yet but tender to what they will be afterward, and so the horse must needs surbate. The second way is, when a horse hath of himself bad feet, and is also either ill shod, or else his *shoes* be very thin worn, or that they be too narrow or too short, and that he be ridden upon bad, hard, stony, and rough ways; in such like cases your horse will surbate; you shall find it by the handling of his feet, especially the next day after a long journey, by reason he will not stand still long upon his feet without hitching them up, and removing them, for they will be so sore as that he will not know how or where to place them; and you shall also perceive him to be *surbated*, by reason that after a journey he will lie much, standing being painful unto him; and in his lying you shall see him covet to lie & stretch himself all along upon one side and if you feel the *coffins* of his *hoofs* you shall find them to burn very hot, and his *hoofs* to be very dry. The cure is very facile.

Take two new laid Eggs, and after you have well pickt his *fore-feet*, break them raw into the *soles*, and then stop them up with Oxe or Cow-dung, and he will be well by the next morning, This is an approved good cure.

S E C T. 25. S.

Hippoph. **H** *ow do you cure a Horse that is stified?*

Hippof. This mischief cometh *accidentally*; to wit, either by a *strain* in leaping, or by a slip in travel, or by the stroke of some other *horse*, and thus the *bone* is either out of its place, or else the joynt is very much *strained*

ned or hurt. The signs to know it is, if the bone be out, you may see it plainly, for besides his halting, the bone dislocated will so stick out, as that the *horse* can do no more than touch the ground with his *toe*, till it be put in again; and the way to put it in is thus: First tie down his head to the manger, then take a cord and fasten it to the *pastern* of the *stifled leg*, and draw his *leg* forwards, and so the bone will come right by helping it with your hand, which being in, your care then must be to keep it in with your *hand*, and then tie the other end of the cord to the Rack, so as he may not put back his *leg*, to dislocate the *bone* any more for an hour or two after, till it be settled and dressed. Wherefore let his *Keeper* stand by him all the time, lest the *horse* should lie down, or be unruly. This done, take pitch which you must have molten in a pot, in a readiness, and with a clout upon a stick anoint the stifling three or four inches broad at the least, and ten inches long, and presently before the Pitch can cool have a strong piece of new Canvas cut fit for that purpose, which being made very warm by a fire, clap it upon the place so neatly, that the bone cannot go forth again. This Plaster must not lie towards the *flank* and *foot* longways, but cross-ways upon the *joint*, as it were about the *thigh*, otherwise it cannot hold in the *bone*. Having thus done, anoint the plaster on the outside all over with the said molten Pitch, and whilst it is warm clap flocks of the *horses* colour all over the outside of the Canvas, and let the Plaster remain on until it fall away of it self, and after that you may apply such good Unguents as you may think to be most expedient for the malady. But if the bone be not out, then put in a *French Rowel* a little beneath the stifling place, and let the *Rowel* remain in fifteen days, turning it once every day, and at fifteen days end take it forth, and heal up the Orifice, like as before you have been taught. * * This is special good.

S E C T. 26. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy may be had for a Horse that is troubled with the Stone?

C c c c

Hippof.

Hippof. This is a very troublesome disease, and it cometh of gross and bad *humours*, gotten principally by violent exercise, and intemperate riding, and it cometh from the *Liver* and *spleen*, which falling down into the kidneys and bladder, settleth there, whereby there groweth in the *mouth* of the *conduct* certain inflamed hard knots which stoppeth his *urine*, whereby he is not able to *piss*, but with great difficulty, by reason the *sinews* and the *pores* about the neck of the *bladder* are benumbed, which taketh away the sense and feeling of the *bladder*. And sometimes this infirmity cometh by reason that in his travel, the *horse* is kept so long in agitation, as not to suffer him to *stale* and *piss*, for the water being made hot by exercise, doth conglutinate, and becometh viscous and thick, so as it cannot pass away from him as nature requireth it should do, whereby there is made too great a retention of the *Urine*, by means of the obstructions he hath in his *kidneys*, which engendreth gravel, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling down into the *conducts*, engendreth *phlegmatique* and *gross humours*, which occasioneth conglutination, and so becometh to be the *stone*, waxing so hard and thereby stopping the current of his *water*, so as he will not be able to *piss* or *stale*. And you may come easily to know it, by reason that he can neither draw his *yard*, nor *piss*, but with great pain and difficulty in his sheath, and that many times drop by drop.

The cure is, take Saxifrage, Nettle-roots, Parsly-roots, Fennel-roots, Sperage-roots, and of Dodder, of each one handful, bruise all these things, and boil them on a gentle fire with white-Wine, until a third part be consumed, then put to it of Salt one handful, of Sallet-oyl, and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three ounces, Honey half a pound; when all this is boyled, strain it, and wring it very hard, and of this give your *Horse* one pint every morning fasting, made blood-warm, and if in the boyling or by standing, it happen to become thick, dissolve it again with white-Wine, and after the first boyling it must be but only warmed. And give to him drink every morning so long as it will last. * * This is very good, for I have tried it. Another as good as the former.

Take

Take of strong Ale one quart, and put it into a pottle-pot, then take so many of the reddest Radish-roots clean washed and sliced into small pieces, as will fill up the pot, then stop up the pot so close, as that the *air* cannot get in, and let it remain four and twenty hours, then strain the roots from the Ale very hard into some other clean pot, and so give it him in a morning fasting with a horn; then ride him a while upon it, and so set him up warm covered and well littered, and in a little while you shall see him piss, give him this drink sundry mornings together, and during this cure, let him have but only white water to drink. * * This is special good.

S E C T. 27. S.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a String-halt?*

Hippof. This is a malady which for the most part the best metled *horses* be many times troubled with; it cometh meerly of cold, as by taking cold suddenly after hard riding, especially when by being washed, for the blood and *sinews* being by that means stupified and benumbed, is the cause of the disease, by reason the sense and feeling of the *member* is taken from him; you may easily know it by the manner of the unsightly lifting, and sudden snatching up of his *leg* much higher than the other, and it commonly cometh into the *hinder leg*, rather than into the *fore-leg*. The cure is, first to take up the vein in the thigh, & after to anoint all the leg and the thigh from the body down to the very foot a long time together, one holding a red hot bar of Iron neer to the place, and let him be anointed with this ointment.

Take of the Oyl of Petroleum of the Oyl of Worms, of the Oyl of Nerval, of Patch or Piece-grease. of the Oyl of spike, of each one ounce, of *London-Treacle* two ounces, and of Hogs-grease one pound, melt all these upon the fire, and then take it off, and keep it with continual stirring till it be through cold, and with this anoint the visited member every day once, and then wispe him up with a soft thumb-band of Hay from the pastern to the top of the hoof, and

thus do for ten days together; rubbing and chafing in the ointment very well a long time together, holding (as before I have advised) a hot bar of iron near to it, to cause this Unguent the better to sink into the *sinews, nerves and joynts*. But after you have done anointing him, you must keep him warm and well littered, and let the thumb band be daily made lesser and lesser, and shorter and shorter, till you perceive him to handle both legs alike, and your horse to be recovered; but you must not ride him that he may sweat much in a month after, and so soon as warm weather cometh, turn him to grass in some dry pasture where is water, and take him up again about *Bartholomew Tide*, or before the cold cometh, and whilst he doth remain in the Stable, keep him warm, and so he will be free of his *String-halt*, and be a sound horse again. To anoint him also with *Acopum* is very good. * * Thus I have recovered sundry horses of this malady.

SECTION 28. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the nature of Suppositories?
 Hippof. The nature of *Suppositories*, are to help a horse that cannot well empty himself; for a *Suppository* causeth him to discharge himself of many superfluous and evil humours which do disturb, annoy, and distemper his body with their peccant qualities and conditions; for they breed bad nutriment, which oft-times good diet cannot amend, and therefore must be sent away by *purgation*, that is to say, by *Suppository*: or *Clyster*, or *Potion*; I have spoken already sufficiently, and therefore I will now treat of *Suppositories* only, which of all other ways is the gentlest, wherewith to purge and cleanse the guts; for a *Suppository* is but a preparative to a *Clyster* or *Potion*; whereby to loosen the guts, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard excrements, which a *Suppository* rather than a *Clyster* can loosen; and as I have already given you Receipts for *Clysters*, so now will I give you for *Suppositories*, whereof you may make use according as occasion and necessity shall require.

Take

Take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three inches at the smaller end, and then anoint the bigger and longer part either with Sallet-oyl, or fresh or sweet Butter, and so convey it into his *fundament*, then with your hand hold his *tail* to his *tuel* a good half hour, or else his *tail* with a *strap* to his girt or Sursingle, by which time the *suppository* will be dissolved, then let loose his *tail*, and then presently leap his *back* and trot him up and down till he do begin to *empty* & *purge* himself, for by this means it will work the better and more kindly. * * * This is the most gentle of all *suppositories* can be given. * * * This dissolveth all hard, dry, and hot *excrements*, and sendeth them forth, and besides it suppleth the *guts*. Another, If you do find your *horse* to be so exceeding weak, as that you dare not without peril of his *life*, administer unto him any *Potion*, or *purging medicine*, then give him this *Suppository*.

Take of common Honey six ounces, of Salt Niter one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flower, and of Anniseeds in fine powder, of each one ounce, boyl all these to a stiff thickness, and so make it into *suppositories*, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Sallet-oyl, and your hand also, and so put it up into his *fundament* the length of your hand, then tie his *tail* betwixt his *legs*, as before is shewed, and let it remain so half an hour, by which time the *suppository* will be dissolved, then ride and order him as before. * * * This is also very good, especially in case of *surfeits* or inward *sickness*. Another,

Take a piece of Castle-Sope, and paring it, bring it into the fashion of a *suppository*, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you. * * *

This is special good to purge *phlegm*, and it is very gentle. Another,

Take Savin so much as will suffice, and stamp it to mash, and stamp with it Staveaker and Salt, of each two ounces, boyl these in common Honey so much as will suffice, till it be thick, and so make it up into *Suppositories*, and administer one of them, like as you are before shewed, and order him so likewise. * * * This purgeth *Choler*. Another,

Take an angry red Onion and pill it, and jag it cross ways with

with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. *** This purgeth *Melancholly*. Another,

6 *Suppositori-
y.*

Take common Honey one pint, and boyl it till it be thick, and make it up into *Suppositories* as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before is prescribed you. *** This purgeth evil *humours*, it cooleth and comforteth the *body* very much, and causeth a good appetite to meat. All these I have often used, and I do know them to be very good. But you must take with you some instructions fit to be known, which are; First, when at any time you do administer either *suppositories*, *Clysters*, *potions*, you must do it in a morning fasting, unless necessity urge the contrary: Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink any cold water, no not with exercise, but either sweet Marshes or white water. Thirdly, it is very needful that before you shall administer either *Suppository*, *Clyster*, or *Potion*, that the *Horse* be raked. And fourthly, that he be after kept warm.

S E C T. 29. S.

Hippoph. *What benefit cometh to a Horse by sweating?*

Hippof. Truly Sir very much, for by moderate and judicious giving of *Sweats*, as well in his cloaths in the stable as abroad in his exercise, you may cure him of many *Maladies*, and prevent many infirmities which otherwise might accrew unto him. For *sweating* doth open the *pores*, and sendeth forth those *peccant* and *malignant humours* which do annoy, oppress, and vex him. But as touching this manner of *sweating* by you proposed, it hath relation unto what I have already handled in *l. 2. cap. 2.* where I treating of what is to be done to a *Horse* newly taken from grass, I there took occasion to advise *sweating*; and there I referred you to this place, and therefore I will here illustrate it: Wherefore if you be in the way of *ensaying your horse* having already *purged, blooded and cleansed* him, and prepared his body fit for *sweating* (if need shall require.) Then if the weather be fair and warm, ride him a mile upon his trot, and then home again, then presently litter him very well, and cloath him up so warm as that he may *sweat*, but

Sweating.

NOT

not yet so violently as to stir the *humours* in the body too much, neither let him sweat above an hour, then cool him again by degrees, and that with great care and moderation; and thus ride and *sweat* him for three days together; then for six days together keep him warm, but not to sweat any more, and during the time of his *sweating* and six or eight days after, let him have no cold drink, but white-Water and sometimes a sweet Mash. And thus briefly of *sweating*. * * * This manner of giving *sweat* I have often used, with great commodity to the *horse*. But let us pass on to another chapter.

C H A P. X X I.

S E C T. I. T.

Hippophylus.

Hippoph. **W** *hat cure have you for a horse whose tongue is hurt?*
Hippof. This malady cometh by accident as with a Bit, Halter, or the like.

Take therefore of Arman half an ounce, and roast it in the embers till it be red hot, then take it up and beat it to very fine powder, then take of Life-Honey a Sawcerful, and of white-Wine one pint, mix and steep these with the Powder together, and so let it boyl over the fire, stirring it continually together; then take it off, and let it cool, and so wash his *tongue* therewith morning and evening, or as you shall please till it be whole. * * * This is very good. Another.

Take the juyce of Salendine, and wash the *hurt-tongue* therewith nine days together and it will cure it, albeit it be half cut in sunder, for the juyce of Salendine will conglutinate and fodder the tongue together being cut or wounded. * * * This also is very good.

S E C T. 2. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you help a Horſe that hath an Itch in his Tail?

Hippof. This cometh of rankneſs of blood, and therefore it is requiſite that firſt he be let blood in the Tail, and that he bleed well. After,

Tail an
itch.

Take Buck-ly, and with a Rag or Hurds in the Lye waſh the place infected every day often, or as many times as it ſhall dry, and continue thus doing four or five days, and this will cure it. * * This is very good. Another, but if the hair do fall away with the Maing or Itch, then ſlit the ſkin from within two inches of the Tuel to the fourth joynt, and with your Cronet take out a certain bone or griftle, which the French do call *Barivole*, then fill up the cleft with Salt made into fine powder, and with a hot Iron burn the tail in ſundry places, & waſh it with Buck-lye, as before; but your Lye muſt be made very ſtrong. This cure I never practiſed, but I once ſaw a *Marſhal of Paris* drefs, and ſo cured a horſe in this manner of this malady, of whom I had the cure.

S E C T. 3. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you make your Unguentum Theriacum?

Hippof. This *Unguentum Theriacum* is moſt ſoveraign for any ach in the joints; it is alſo ſpecial good for horſes that do fall lame, if the grief be in the Hip, *Stifling-place*, legs, ſhoulders, paſtern, or any other part of the legs, a *black ſinem*; ſprain only excepted. And thus I do make it.

Take of Nerveſ, of Oyl of Pamphillon, and of black-Sope, of each two ounces, and of tried Hogs-greaſe half a pound, melt all theſe upon a gentle fire, and being molten, put into it of ordinary Treacle two pennyworth, then take it from the fire, then with a Splatter or ſpoon, keep it by continual ſtirring till it be through cold, then will it be of a dun colour; keep this in a gally pot for your uſe; and when you ſhall have occaſion to uſe the ſame, anoint the place grieved therewith, rubbing and chaſing it in very well, and let one hold a bar of hot

hot iron neer, as you do anoint the grief. And thus it is made.
 * * This is moit excellent to raise the *vein* from the *sinew* at
 what time you are to take up the *vein*. I have tried it *sape* &
sapins.

S E C T. 4. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you destroy a Tetter ?
Hippof. This malady or Sorrance the *French*
 do call *Fer-volant*, the *Flying-worm*, which is a *Tetter* or *Ring-*
worm, and the cure is this.

Take the roots of Elecampane, and the roots of red-Dock, Tetter or ring-worm,
 of each like much, slice them thin, and put them into Urine
 three quarts with Bay-salt, two handfuls, let it boyl until
 one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a clout
 fastened to a stick wash the Sorrance very hot. Use this four
 or five mornings together, and it will kill it. * * This is ve-
 ry good.

S E C T. 5. T.

Hippoph. **V**hat is to be done to a horse that tyreth in tra-
 vel, and falleth sick ?

Hippof. For a horse to tire upon the way, the causes are ma-
 ny: First for that he is travelled when he shall be too young; Se-
 condly in that he is lately taken from grafs whilst he is yet foul
 and foggy, before he be well *ensaimed*; thirdly in that he hath
 been long kept & pampered in the Stable, without giving him
 breath or moderate exercise; Fourthly, by being travelled
 beyond his strength in longer journeys, and deeper ways then
 he is well able to perform; Fifthly it might be through the co-
 vetousness or carelesness of his *riders*, in not feeding or seeing
 him fed so well as was fitting; Sixthly and lastly, by reason
 the *Horse* might have some secret infirmity whereof his *ma-*
ster might be ignorant. Wherefore if your *horse* may happen
 in his travel to *tire* or *faint*, have patience with him, and do
 not force him beyond what he may be able to perform, either
 by spurring or beating him, like as many *cholerick* and *passio-*
nate people do usually, but get to some house or Inn so soon

as conveniently you may, when first you see him begin to sink or to faint under you, set him presently up warm clothed, and well littered, that he take no cold, and let his *Keeper* or the *Ostler* of the *Inn* rub and chase him all over with fresh dry straw, but especially let him rub him against the *hair*, and let him have no meat till two hours or more after you have given him this drink.

Tryng in
travel.

Take of the best sweet sack one pint, but if that cannot be had, then take the same quantity of White or Claret-wine, and put thereto of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Grains, Cloves, Anniseeds, and Fennelseeds of each one ounce, all made into fine powder: then take red-Sage, Rosemary-tops, Mints, Camomile, and wild Thyme, of each like much, so that in all they amount to half a handful, chop the hearbs very small, and then put all these hearbs and spices into the Wine, and then boyl them a pretty while, then take it from the fire and strain it hard, and unbit your *horse*, and give him this drink blood-warm; this done, bit him up again, and with a switch stir him up and down as he standeth in his place tied to the rack, then cool him, and two hours after his drink, give him first some Hay, and half an hour after that, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water; and after feed him at your pleasure; but be you considerate in giving him his Provender, by little at once and often, and howsoever feed him well, and thus ordering him, by morning he will be well recovered, and able to travel again. *.*.* This is an excellent drink, and of great vertue for any *horse* that *tyeth* or falleth sick upon the way. It is also very requisite that with a Syringe you do inject of this drink into his *nostrils*, Another,

If you do fear that your *horse* may tire in his journey, for prevention, carry with you a box of powder of dried Elecampane-roots, & let the powder be feared, and when you do come unto your Inn, let him not be walked, but set up warm in the Stable clothed & littered, and let his *legs, body, head, and neck*, be by the *Groom* or *Ostler* well rubbed, but chiefly his *Poll* betwixt his *ears*. Then take of strong Ale one quart, or of sweet Sack one pint, which is much better, and put into it of your Elecampane half an ounce, brew them well together,

together, and give it him with a horn, then bridle him, and tie him to the Rack, but not too high, so as he may put down his *nose*, and let him stand so an hour, then unbridle him; and give him Hay; and an hour or better after that, give him either a sweet Mash or white-water, and then Provender sufficient, but with discretion and by degrees, and so also in the morning, give him both Oats and bread, whether he will eat best, feeding him little by little so long as he will eat, and in the morning when you are ready to take his *back*, give him the same drink again, and you shall find him to travel with spirit and mettle, and if you tie a branch of Penny-royal upon his Bit, it will greatly comfort him. But yet for all that which hath been said, if he happen to tire, then

Take Arsmart, and rub his *bare-back* where the saddle resteth, and lay also some of the leaves upon his back under the Saddle, and so clap on the Saddle, and this will cause him the better to hold out. * * This is good. Another,

Take of the best Spanish Tobacco you can get, shred it small, and dry it, and make it into fine powder, and mix therewith the powder of Cockle-shells of the like quantity, which must be searced, and put this powder into a glass, keeping it close stopped, and keep it for your use. And when you are to use it, take of this powder, and mix them therewith of the Oyl of Dill, and of the Oyl of Cloves such a quantity as will make this powder into a stiff paste, and so make it into pills, every Pill the bigness of a Walnut, which must be dried in the shade (these Pills must be made in Canicular or Dog-days only) then keep them close stopped in some glass or gally Pot, that no ayr can get into it, and when you have cause to use any of them, give him one of them at what time you shall perceive your horse to faint or tire, or that you do perceive him to have taken a cold or surfeit, which may very well be the cause of his debility, give him (I say) one of these Pills when you do come unto your Inn. But if he hath taken a cold or surfeit, then give him a Pill in the morning fasting, and let him be well rubbed, clothed warm, and well littered, and suffer him not to drink any cold water, but either a sweet Mash or white water, for there is not any thing more noxious than to give a horse in this case cold water, and let his

travel be moderate and with great discretion, and he will both hold out his journey, and get strength and flesh also in his travel. * * * And this I have often tryed both upon my own *horses* and others, in whose company I have travelled, as well in *England* as in parts abroad.

C H A P. X X I I.

S E C T. I. T.

Hippophylus.

How do you prescribe a Vomit to a Horse?

Hippof. Of this I have spoken a little already where I did remit you to this place, we do usually give vomits unto *horses* newly taken up from grass, by reason they are thereby full of very gross phlegmatick humours, which do abound in the stomach, and head, which if they be not fetched from the horse in its due time, will be means to impair greatly the health of the horse, which must be oft times necessarily expulsed by vomit, and you shall have a receipt of a vomit which I had in *France* from a special Farrier there who (as I have before touched) hath in my presence administred to sundry horses, which did work very kindly upon them, and I my self have administred the same to sundry *Horses* here in *England*, to very great profit unto them. The Receipt is this,

Vomiting.

Take two of the greatest roots of Polipodium you can get from the Oak, wash and scrape them very clean, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench, or Bit, then let it be steeped in the Oyl of Spike a whole night, and in the morning fasting, put on his bridle with the said roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an hour or better, fair and softly; and if he be troubled with any Rheumatick or Phlegmatick humours or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way pester, clog, or annoy his stomach: This thing will force him to vent them at his mouth and nose, and it will cause him to cough and reez; where he will send forth a great abundance of filth,

filth, and evil slimy stuff from off his stomach and head, as that in short time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood, and exhaust all his watry humours, in such sort as by temperate ordering him, and doing as I have here prescribed you, you may be confident to keep him a long sound perfect and serviceable *Horse*, and this is not to be applyed only to a horse newly taken from grafs, but to any other *horse* that hath taken a cold, or to any ketty, foul, foggy, or purfive horse whatsoever. * * This may seem strange here amongst us, but let any man make tryal, and he shall find it to be most admirable.

S E C T. 2. F.

Hippoph. *What is to be given to a Horse that hath a violent Cough?*

Hippof. If this great and violent *Cough* proceed from a cold (as commonly all *Coughs* do) then give him first wheat-bran prepared, as sundry times before is prescribed you, and take blood from the neck vein, then with his Oats give him this powder following,

Take of Comin, Fenugreek, Sileris, Montany, *alias* Sifi- Violent-
Cough. *leos*, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linfeed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimstone, six ounces, make all these into fine Powder, and of this powder give him every night with his Oats, one spoonful. But because this powder disperseth the corrupt, gross and Phlegmatick humours which are predominant in the body of the *Horse*, which do occasion the said violent *Cough*, so soon as you shall perceive that with this powder he hath purged sufficiently, use it then no longer, but fail not to continue his white water, but before you give him his water, take a stick about the bigness of your thumb at least, and well nigh a foot long, and wrap a fine rag about it four or five times, steeped before-hand in Oyl de-Bay, and so put it into his mouth, like as you would do a Snaffle, and with straps made fast to the ends of the stick, fast'ned then over his Poll, like as Smiths use to do, when they burn *horses* for the Lampas, and let him drink with it in his mouth; that done, let him stand with it in his mouth one hour after at the least, to the end he may lick and suck up the said Oyl upon

upon the rag or cloth, and when you do give him his Oats, mix them with this powder following, *viz.*

Take of Fennel-seeds four ounces, of Fænugreek two ounces, of Cardamome one ounce, beat all together but grossly, otherwise he will blow it away as he eateth his Oats, and keep him warm as before is advised you. * * This is very good, for I have often used it.

S E C T. 3. V.

Hippoph. **F** Or what causes do you take up Veins?

Hippof. As touching taking up of *veins* you shall understand, that it is a thing in many cases so much behoofful, as that many times the most exquisite Farrier living shall not be able to perfect this cure, but by that way and means, or unless such *veins* be either taken up, or some ways stopped which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the malady with its peccant humours, the Farrier can never work by true art. Again, *veins* well taken up do prevent many maladies whereunto many *Horses* are much more propense than others are. And lastly, the taking up of veins cureth some diseases, which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the thigh-veins, sendeth away Spavens, Splents, Curbs, Kibbed-heels, Swelled-legs, Scratches, Malenders Faricion in the legs, and the like Sorrances; besides it causeth all pains, aches, strains, stiffness in limbs, &c. Take up the *Shackle-veins*, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, swelling in the lower joynts, foundrings, &c. Wherefore forasmuch as ignorant people, whatsoever opinion they may have of their super-abundant skill, yet are they very much to seek in that they do so much exclaim against taking up of veins, absurdly affirming it to be a great means of laming of horses: but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only remedy against these and many more maladies, and when they shall have made tryal, they will not be of so prejudicate opinions.

*Veins to
take up.*

C H A P. X X I I I.

S E C T. I. W.

Hyppophilus.

What good thing have you wherewith to preserve the
mind of a Horſe?

Hippof. Sir, for this infirmity I make a Cata-
plaſme, which is this.

Take Wheat-flour four pound, Elecampane and Gentian,
of each one ounce, Annifeeds, Fængreeks, Comin, Brimſtone
and Licoriſh, of each half a pound, let all theſe be made into
very fine powder and ſearced, then put into it of common
Engliſh Honey half a pound, and ſo much white-Wine as will
make all theſe into a Cataplaſme; boyl all theſe ſufficiently,
till it be ſo thick that you may make it into Pills, and give your
Horſe of them three or four at a time, for ſix or eight morn-
ings together. Uſe this often, for it will conſerve a horſe in
health, and keepeth him ſound of his body, wind, and cou-
rage. * * This is moſt excellent. But if you do perceive a
taint in his wind, then

*wind to
preſerve.*

Take a cloſe earthen Pot or Pipkin, and put thereinto of the
ſtrongeſt white-Wine-Vinegar three pints, and four new laid
Eggs unbroken, and four heads of Garlick clean pilled and
bruifed, then cover the Pot very cloſe, and bury it in a Mix-
en or Dung-hil twelve hours, then take it up, and take forth
the Eggs, but break them not; then ſtrain the Vinegar
and Garlick through a fine linnen cloth, putting unto it the
liquor of Life-Honey four ounces, and of brown Sugar-Can-
dy, Annifeeds, and Licoriſh, all made into very fine powder,
of each two ounces, and your horſe having faſted all night till
morning, give him one of the ſteeped Eggs, and then one
hornful of this liquor or drink, and then another Egg, and
after that another hornful, and ſo a third Egg, and
then a hornful, and laſtly a fourth Egg, and ſo the
reſidue of the liquor, remembering to give him into either
noſtril half a hornful of his drink, and it muſt be admini-
ſtered blood-warm; then ſet him upon the trench, cloath,
ſtop,

stop, and litter him warm, and let him stand so four hours, then unbit him, and if it be Winter time give him sweet Wheat-straw, but no Hay; and if it be in Summer give him Grass, green Corn, or the leaves of Sallows, and for nine days give him either sweet Mash, or white-Water, putting therein some Sallet-oyl, and be you assured he will do well again. *.* This is also very good. Another,

Take a Hedge-hog alive, and bake in the Oven in an earthen-pot, close stopped until he do become so dry as that you may make him into fine powder; give him also of this powder one spoonful in a quart of good Ale every other day, and this will infinitely help and preserve his wind. *.* This is also special good.

SECT. 2. W.

Hippoph. **I**S there such a disease which is called the Wild-fire?

Hippof. Yea Sir, there is, and it is a disease most dangerous and very difficult to cure, but by a Receipt of a powder which once I obtained of a skilful Chirurgion, which said powder is not fit to be applyed to any living creature, but to a *horse* only, it is so terrible. And thus it is to be made. *viz.*

Take of living Toads four, the greatest and blackest can be found, living Moles or Ants three, and of old Shoo-soles six, and heads of Garlick unpilled, and with their beards and roots remaining upon them forty, then take of the leanest and fatest Martlemas beef three pounds, cut it into thin and small pieces and slices, such Martlemas beef I mean which hath longest hanged in the smoak: take also of Oats eight pints, and of old woollen-rags the courser the better two pounds; take also of Swallows dung a good quantity, and four or five living swallows, put all these things into an Earthen-pot new, and well nailed, and let it be big enough to be able to hold all the Ingredients, and put also those living creatures among them alive, and then make a cake of Clay, and therewith lute up the Pot close, as that neither smoak nor air can either get in or out; having so done carry your Pot into some Orchard or o-
ther

ther Close, or Backside, from Housing or Straw, and there place it, and so make a great fire both round about it, and upon it, and so keep the fire upon the Pot, till it be as red hot as the very fire coals themselves, and let the fire continue so great after the pot is red hot by the space of half an hour at the least: then let the fire remain untouched, until it be all consumed to ashes, and so go forth of it self, without either quenching the same, or taking away any of the fire about it, and so let it stand till it be through cold, which will hardly be done the same day, so when the Pot is through cold, take it from the place, and opening it, take forth the stuff, and put it into some Trough or great Morter made for the purpose, which must stand in some out or open place where no wind can come, the Trough or Morter being covered with a cloth, that the powder may not fly away, then pound and stamp these things together into fine powder, and in the stamping, add thereunto of slaked-lime one pound. Let him that stampeth it be close muffled, and his eyes covered with a glass case made for the purpose for fear of hurting them; and when it is throughly powdred, searse the powder through a course hair-cloth, and so keep the very finest of the powder for your use in some clean glass or gally pot. This powder killeth all *Wild-fires* whatsoever, and all running Sorrances and Ulcers, provided it be applied to fleshy places, and not to places where *veins* or *sinews* be, for that it will burn them in sunder. * * This I have made fundry times, and often used it, and to cure & dry up old sores & Ulcers (this powder, being discreetly used and rightly applyed) a better thing then this truly I know not, especially if the cure be either desperate or dangerous.

S E C T. 3. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Plaister have you to lay upon a Wound, where by to keep in the Taint or Salve?

Hippof. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, Turpentine, Hogs-grease, of each so much as will suffice, melt all these together; and so keep it: and when you would use it, spread what will serve upon a plaister of Leather, and so cover the

E e e

wound

wound therewith. * * This salve doth infinitely comfort a wound green or old, be the same Fistula or otherwise. Very good.

S E C T. 4. W.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you take away a Wen, or other excretion arising in the flesh?

Hippof. A Wen is a hard rising out of the flesh which cometh sometimes by bad humours, but most commonly by some Hurt, Stroke, Bruise, Blow, or with a stone thrown at that place, it is outwardly flesh, but towards the root it is matterative, you need no signs whereby to know it, for it will betray it self by its swelling. The cure is,

Wart or ex-
cretions.

If you cannot come to tie a double thred about it whereby to eat it off, as I have formerly shewed you in the cure of a spongy Wart: then with your Incision knife cut it across into four equal parts or quarters to the very bottom, but beware you touch not either veins or sinews, then with Mercury eat away the four quarters, or else burn them off with your hot iron; then heal the place with your healing salve. * * This is very good.

S E C T. 5. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to take away Wind-galls?

Hippof. Wind-galls are terrible forrances, which do breed in the legs of a horse, as well on the outside as on the inside, a little above the Fetlock joynt, and by their swelling are plainly discovered, and made visible to the Eye, for they be bladders, wherein lyeth a jelly, which being let forth is thick, and of the colour of the yolk of an Egg, whereof some will be bigger, and some lesser. It cometh most commonly to Horses in the Summer time, by reason they are ridden upon hard ground, and the Horse being over-heat by two hard riding, his greafe fallt h down into his legs, and setteth there, and by that means breedeth this Malady, we call Wind-galls, and they will be so painful unto him as to cause him many times halt. The signs to know them are by the swellings

swellings in that place before named, which be most easie to be seen and felt. The cure is either to strike with your Fleam or to open them with your Incision-knife, and to let and crush out all the congealed stuff which is therein, opening the place no further then through the skin, and you must be careful of the sinew, which lyeth close to that place: then,

Take the white of an Egg, and Oyl de-Bay so much as will suffice, incorporate them together, and apply it with Hurds, Plaister-wise, and in three or four days thus dressing it, he will be cured. * * * Thus have I cured many *Horses*. Another, After you have let forth the Jelly

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, boyl or but melt them together, and as it cooleth, make it up into rowls bigger or lesser at your pleasure, and being thorough cold, apply it with a hot iron to the orifice, and so round about the place of the sorrhance on either side of the leg, and so soon as you have laid on this charge, and before it can be cold, clap on Flocks, and this will dry up the Wind-galls, and heal them. * * * This is special good. But during not only these two cures, but all other for this malady, you must not suffer your horse to come into any Well by any means. Another. First shave away the hair as you must do in all these kind of cures, then open the sorrhance as before is taught you, and crush forth the jelly and filth, then

Take Tacha-mahacha, Mastick, Perrosin, of each to the quantity of a haffe-nut, with a little Brimstone powder, melt all these together, and when it is molten, put in so much Turpentine as a Wall-nut, and so stir them together, and when it is cold make a plaister thereof upon leather, and apply it warm to the place upon the outside, only upon the orifice which ought evermore to be made on the outside, then put on the plaister it self, and round about it with the same salve, and clap Flocks upon it, and so let him rest in the Stable, and by keeping him from wet till he be whole, and let the plaister remain on until it shall fall away of it self. * * * This is a most excellent cure, and I have often made good use thereof. Another,

Take the Oyl of Vinegar, and dip your thumb therein, and rub the sorrhance therewith every day till the hair do fall

off, which will cause the Wind-galls to break out and bleed, and then heal and cure the Wind-galls well and soundly. * * * This is as good as the former. Another. Wash and shave as formerly is shewed you, then give fire to the place, that done, open the Wind-galls just in the middle line or stroak half an inch at least, and so crush forth the jelly with your thumb, then

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, and therewith charge the place as before is taught you. This is very good. Another. First wash and shave, and open the place with your fleam, &c. then take of Oyl de-Bay, and of Turpentine, of each one spoonful, Verdigrease in fine powder, one penny-worth, the white of an Egg, and of red-Lead two ounces in powder, boyl all these to a salve, and administer it to the place plaister-wise. * * * This is one of the best cures for Wind-galls that I do know.

S E C T. 6. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for a horse that is wrung or hurt in the Withers?

Hippof. This is a thing that I have handled before, yet I will give you a few more receipts. Having travelled him, and coming home, or to your Inn, when you take off the saddle, and that you do find the horse to be wrung in the *withers*, and his back or *withers* thereby to be swelled, immediately clap on the Saddle again, and lay upon the swoln place some wet litter, and so let the Saddle abide on again; then cut up a thin Turf of grass and earth together, that done, put the Turf upon the fire, and let it there remain till it becometh red-hot, and being well burned, take it from the fire, and moisten the grassy-side very well with white Wine-Vinegar, then take off the wet litter, and lay the Turf very hot with the grassy-side next to the place, and so put on the Saddle again, and let it so remain for all night, and this presently helpeth any swelling in the *withers*, or any other part of the back, as also any swellings by spur-galls or Navel-galls. * * * This is very good. Another. If the skin be broken or ulcerated, then

wither.
wring.

Take

Take sweet Butter, Bay-salt, and powder of Frankincense, of each as much as will suffice, boyl all these upon the fire, and with a clout fast'ned to the end of a stick, even as it cometh boyling from the fire, scald it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption then make incision on both sides from beneath, that the matterative stuff may the more easily avoid away downwards, and after use none other thing, wherewith to heal it up, but only your usual powder of Lime and Honey, which will heal that, or dry other such like hurts. * * * This is most excellent, I have often experimented the same. Another. But if it be a wrinkle either in the shoulder or in any other joynt or member, then

Take of white-Wine one pint, half a porringer full of Wheat flower, of common Honey one pint, of Syzes three ounces, boyl all these together to an Unguent, and anoint the places grieved therewith. And this also is very sovereign for Cones, Cracks, and chops in the heels of the *horse*. * * * This I often using have found it to be very good. Another.

Take three great Onions, pick forth the cores, making a concavity or hollowness in them, then fill them up with the powder of Frankincense, then wrap them up in three or four handfuls of Hurds or Tow, then wet the Hurds, and so cover and heal them up in the hot embers, and lay upon the top of the embers a good Shovel-full of hot burning coals, and so let it remain until the onions be thoroughly roasted, then take them forth and separate the Hurds, and burned part from the other, and the soft and pappy-part you shall apply to the forrance very hot, and let it remain threedays before it be removed, and do thus so oft as need shall require, until it be through whole, but unless the hurt or bruise be very great, it will be cured at first dressing. * * * This is very good. Another. But if the place grieved be broken, Take then of the Oyl of Worms, of Turpentine and common Honey of each two ounces, incorporate all these together very well till you have brought them to be onebody, and either by Taint or Plaister dress the forrance therewith, and it will heal it up sound. * * * And this also is very good. Another. If your Horse hath taken a wrench in the shoulder, or in the hip, knee or hoof; then first swim him; then after, for thirteen

teen or fourteen days together, anoint the member grieved all over ; and a good way about with this Unguent.

Take of the Oyl de-Bay, of Nerval, or Dialthea, of tryed Hogs-greafe, of each two ounces, melt all these together, and stir them well till they be well incorporated, and here-with anoint him against the hair, with a hot bar of iron to be holden before you as you anoint him, and after let him be rowelled with a *French Rowel*, and let a Patten-shoos be put upon the contrary foot, and let him be kept in the house, and the Rowel turned daily, and the corruption put forth, and let him be either gently ridden or walked every day half an hour, and let the Rowel remain in the Horse fourteen days at the least, then take it out, and heal up the orifice with your green Ointment, and so soon as he is whole, with your cauterizing iron draw cross lines eight or nine inches long over against the joynt that was pained, so as the rowelled place may be in the middle, but yet burn him no deeper then that the skin may look yellow, and then charge all that place with this charge.

Take Pitch one pound, Rosin half a pound, and Tar half a pint, melt these together, and whilst it is warm, charge the place therewith, and clap flocks upon the charge, and then if the season of the year will serve, let him be turned to grass, and so let him run three months at the least. *✕* This is very good.

S E C T. 7. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure worms of what sort soever in a Horse?

Hippof. Of this malady I have treated sufficiently before in the *sect.* of Bots, where I have given you many good receipts. Nevertheless I will give you one or two more for Worms only, and so leave you to practise.

Take the intrails of a great Chick, and with the powder of Brimstone and Bay-salt rowled in the said entrails, give it him down his throat, and cause him to swallow them so warm as they come out of the belly of the Chicken, but cast away the Gizard, give him this three mornings together, and eve-

ry time ride or walk him till he dungeth, and keep him warm, and give him white-Water, and at three days end give him Rice boyled in water, and after dryed in the Sun, and give him also to eat the leaves of fallows, and it will cause him to void the worms with his ordure, but if you shall rake him first, it will be the better. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Broom and Saven, of each half a handful, chop them very small, and work them into Pills with sweet Butter, and having kept your horse fasting overnight, give him then in the morning, to wit, three of those Pills at a time, and then set him upon the Trench for two or three hours after, and then give him meat, but no drink at all till night by any means, and then let him have warm, but no white-Water. * * This I have often experienced, and do know it to be a most excellent receipt.

C H A P. XXIV.

S E C T. 1. r.

Hippophylus.

W *Hat is your best Cure for the Yellows?*
Hippof. This disease of the *Yellows* in a Horse is the very same that Physicians do call the Jaundise in a man; and as there be two sorts of Jaundise in a man, so also are there the like in a horse, *viz.* the Yellow and the Black, the yellow being moist, the black dry, the yellow proceeding from the overflowing of the gall, occasioned of choler, and the black coming from the overworking of the Spleen, by means of over much melancholly, both bad infirmities, but the black worst, more dangerous and most mortal, the yellow is more easily discovered by reason of its colour, for it coloureth the whites of the eyes, the tongue, the lips, and the inward parts of his nostrils, which the black Jaundise doth not apparently, albeit by due and strict observation, you may come to know when your horse hath

a black Jaundise, for then you shall perceive the whites of his eyes, lips, tongue and mouth to be a thick and dusky colour, and not so clear, and sanguine as before when he was not visited with any such infirmity, both which are so mortal (especially the latter) as that if very great care be not taken whereby to pry into its symptoms, the Horse may fall down upon a sudden (as I have often seen and known) even as he travelleth, and dye ; or else he appearing to be sound and healthy, and to eat his meat like as he was accustomed over night when you left him, coming again unto him in the morning, you may find him dead, stiff and cold. And the origin of this malady cometh principally of unkindly and unnatural heats, given him by most violent and intemperate riding, whereby the Liver becometh inflamed ; the Liver, the Blood, Gall, and the Spleen, which causeth choller to have sovereignty and dominion over the humours, and so engendreth this perillous disease, which seldom bringeth a lingering or languishing death, but that which endeth him suddenly, and therefore is most requisite that the greater eye and care be had unto it. The best symptoms how to know it is thus. Your horse will be dry in his body, mouth and nostrils, being marvellous hot through the abundance of choller that reigneth in him, and he will be very gaunt in his belly towards the flanks, he will be also very faint and not only sweat upon every the least motion, but also as he standeth in the Stable : his eyes, the inside of the lips, mouth, and tongue, will be yellow as saffron, and he will seldom lie down, and being laid, he will sometimes groan. The cure. First let him bleed in the neck and mouth, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink.

Receives.

Take of Turmeric and long Pepper, of each one pennyworth, Anniseeds and Licoris in fine powder and feared, of each half a spoonful, Selendine, the leaves and roots one handful, chop, stamp, and strain the Selendine, and so put all these together into strong Ale one quart, warm this upon the fire, and in the warming add unto it of London Treacle one ounce, and of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, and give him white-Water, and he will do well. * * This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, and then

Take

Take Turmerick, Myrrha, Ivory, or Harts-horn, of each half an ounce, Saffron one penny-worth, make all these into fine powder, and searce them, and put unto it the juyce of Selendine a good quantity, put all these into Muskadine, one pint Sack or Ale, and let it boyl upon the fire a walm or two, then put unto it of sweet Butter as much as will suffice, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, and so give it him blood warm, but let him first be raked. This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, then

Take of white-Wine one quart, of Saffron two drams, and of Turmerick half an ounce, and a good quantity of the juyce of Selendine; give him this blood warm, and keep him warm, and give him white-Water. * * * This is very good. Another. First let him blood, as you are prescribed before, then

Take of sweet Wine one pint, of strong Ale and Beer one quart, and put unto it of the juyce of Selendine six spoonfuls, and of the juice of Rue two spoonful, and let all these boyl upon the fire a little, then strain into it of English Saffron half an ounce, and put into it of Life-honey three ounces, and so give it him blood-warm, then leap his back, and so ride or else walk him a foot-pace a quarter of an hour, then set him up warm, letting him to fast three hours after, and after give him meat, and a sweet Mash, or white-Water. * * * This is very good. Another. Bloody him as before. Then

Take of the best Life-honey half a pound, of Saffron made into fine powder, and of the powder of Fenugreek of each so much as will suffice, incorporate these with your Honey to a stiff paste, and so make thereof three Pills, and dipping them into Sallet oyl, give them to your horse, which after he hath taken ride or walk him gently an hour, then set him up warm, and order him as before. * * * This is a particular good Pill. Another. First let him blood as before; then take of white-Wine one quart, or Ale to the same quantity, and put therein of Saffron one ounce, and Turmerick one ounce, both made into fine powder, with the juyce of Selendine so much as will suffice, and give him this blood-warm, and order him as before. * * * This also is very good.

S E C T. 2. Y.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for the mattering of the Yard?*

Hippof. This disease cometh commonly in Covering-time, by overmuch spending upon *Mares*, for that the heat of the *Mares*, and the *Horses* own heat and Coity doth burn the *Horse*, giving him the running of the reins, as we truly term it. And the signs to know it is, you shall perceive the end of the *Yard* to be swelled, and when he pisses you may observe him to do it with much pain, and you may also see at other times the *Yard* to drop with yellow matter. The cure. Give him first a purge prescribed you in *l. 2. c. 16. sect. 14. let. P.* and it is the first Purgation which will ease his pain in pissing; then next day

Take Roch-Allum one ounce, and white-Wine one pint, boyl them till the Allum be dissolved, then blood-warm inject this Potion with a Syringe, putting it up into his *Yard* so far as may be, four or five times a day till it be well. *** This is a perfect cure; nor shall you need any other.

*The Jockies Master-piece, or Advice to
the Traders in Horse-flesh, &c.*

THere cannot be too much said of this Excellent Creature, so necessary and serviceable to Man. Wherefore notwithstanding the many Treatises that have been written on this Subject; I think it no ways inconvenient, but altogether profitable to enlarge and lay down such Rules and plain Directions, as may best Administer Satisfaction to the Curious, especially in such a manner as will render matters easie and attainable, in all Cases necessary to the knowledge and ordering a Horse; and so without further Ceremoney I shall proceed according to Method and Order.

Directions to choose your Breeders, and how to order them in all Respects.

That it is altogether necessary to be careful in choosing your Breeders, if you intend to rear good Horses and Mares, none will object against, as also to observe times and seasons in putting your Stallions to your Mares, &c.

First then let your Stallions be of an able and compleat body, in good case, but not over lean or foggy. Now the marks whereby you may chuse him or indeed know any good Horse, are these; let his Head be small and lean, his Cheek-bones even and small, not standing far asunder, his Mouth well compacted and moist, though not subject to slaver; his Eyes great and bloody, standing as it were like Eagles-Eyes out of his Head, his Ears short, thin and standing upright, his Nostrils wide and plyable, his Neck soft and

The description of a good Horse.

broad, bending Arch-wise, his Crest stiff, his Main thick and inclining to the right side, his Breast great and broad, his Shoulders large and strait, the Sides turning inward, the Ridge-bone over the Soulder being somewhat high which affords the better Seat, his Sides deep, well knit behind and something bowed up; which is better for the Rider, and signifies great strength, his Loins large and his Belly well compacted, not hanging or paunching out, his Stones neatly hung, his Tail long, bristly and curled, his Thighs large and well Brawned, his Knees round Flexible and small, not bowing inward nor being stiff, his Legs even strait and not over-fleshy, his Hoofs firm and found, neither too long nor too short; and according to these directions, you may make choice of your Mares, and be directed in buying; of which I shall more amply treat hereafter.

How to order and oblige your Mare to receive the Horse.

Thus having chosen, handle your Mares, and make them gentle before you put your Stallion to them, for if they be wild and unruly, they will never receive the Horse as they ought, and by that defect render the Colt weak, and incapable of making a perfect Horse, which is best to be effected by driving or leading them from one Pasture to another, and giving them Meat out of your hand, which you must begin to do, when they are two years old and vantage; but for good Colts suffer them not to take horse till three years old or upwards, the Stallion being four or five, and then having well kept your Stallion, put the Mare you design to have covered, into a close and warm Pasture, and put a small Stone-Nag, to render her Tractable, and invite her to Copulation, so that perceiving her willing, take him away and suffer the Stallion to enter, when the more to incite him thereto, rub his Nose with a Sponge, which has first been in the Mares Privity; which having provoked him to effect your desire, by covering the Mare you design twice or thrice, take him up and being well Provendered, put him to the Mare again the next Evening, and that Night let him cover her as often as he will, and so will she be Sped. But if the Mare refuse to receive the Horse, rub her Privy parts with Cow-itch, Pepper, or a strong Onion.

If your Mare be satisfied at twice putting the Stallion to her

her, which you may perceive by her biting or striking at him, put him to her no more, but put her into a warm Pasture, and look well to her till she has Foaled: In which if she prove uneasy or difficult, you must help her with your hands.

How to know when your Mare is Sped, and to order her afterwards.

The best time to be covered, is from the end of *May* to the end of *July*; so that by such means the Mare going Eleven Months, will bring forth at such a time, as the Weather will be warm, and the Earth replenished with Grass.

A Stallion used after the aforesaid manner, being well looked to, will last for six or seven years, each year to cover seven or eight Mares, and between whiles do Service over and above; but more particularly at the time your Stallion shall be put up for covering, let him feed on the best Hay, and have every Noon half a peck of Oats, and a quart of Beans, and now and then sweet short Grass.

Within fifteen days of the Mares Foaling-time, take her from the stud, and put her into a sweet Pasture, where she shall find no occasion to strain her self by attempting to leap, &c. and hearten her between whiles with Oats washed in new Wort or new Ale, and the better to rear the Colt, by the proportion of whose Limbs as soon as Foaled, you may discern his future goodness, let him have store of Milk and dry Lodging, taking him up in stormy or Excessive rainy Weather. Now the time that a Mare is capable of bearing to advantage, is from three years to ten, and the Horse of getting from five to twelve.

To wean your Colts the best time in the year if fair and warm, is at Candlemas on Shrovetide next following his Foaling, bringing him into a warm House, and feasting him with sweet Provender, and sometimes a little Milk, having removed him out of hearing the Mares Neighing, lest by hankering after her he pine away, and become regardless of his Sustenance, and when the Weather is fair, turn him or them into adjacent dry Pastures, well fenced and yielding sweet Grass, not being rank nor too near the Ground.

How to order your Colts.

When your Colt is two years old or somewhat more, let him feed in short Pasture, and be help with fine Hay of the latter cut, that so by his Grazing along he may stir his body.

to

to get his Belly full, but by no means let him lye wet or be put into damp ground; for that it is that destroys many brave Horses, by reason of cold and moist Diseases contracted in their tender Age, and thereby much lessens the esteem of the English breed in general, when indeed no Country is so capable of producing stately Horses, were but the management accordingly. It having been the opinion of the most experienced: That if that particular were better observed, neither *Spain, Turkey, Barbary, Friezland, Thessalia, Holland, Peloponnesus, nor Artois*, so famed for excellent breeds, could compare with the product of our Native Country. And therefore I shall proceed somewhat largely on this point.

Backing too soon, a great fault.

The first thing next to observing their Diet, and well ordering, when young, that obstructs their Arrival to the height of perfection, is their being taken up too soon. To which many will object it, our Horses being great and well fed, if not taken up in time will be Head-strong and unruly; inso-much that it will be difficult and dangerous, if not impossible to break them; which opinion is grounded upon a weak Foundation, for even from their being Foaled, they may be made Tame by continual handling, and using to take Meat from their Keeper, and by degrees laying small Weights upon them, not any ways capable of Prejudicing their growth, may be Innured to the Saddle; and the same may done in case of the Bridle, by using soft Lists or a small Cord, or if this be at first neglected, yet by watching and hunger, they may in six Weeks time be brought to a ready compliance, so that they will suffer you to rub them, take up their Feet, pick them, and sound their Hoofs.

How to make Horses Tame.

Another thing to remove this Error, is by putting them to Tame Horses and Mares, whose Example they will learn to imitate, & lose their fear from the beginning, as also patient of bearing the Saddle and Bridle, by it's being often shewn them, and hung up by them, when at any time they are housed. But to be plain, the main reason why they are so soon backed, is grounded upon Intrest for that the owner will not keep them upon the Spoil longer then necessity requires; & their common time of Backing is at four years, which gives a Check to the Galantry of the Horses, and renders them incapable of
such

such performances, as if they remained till six years they would be capable of manifesting, and will inable them to continue much longer Serviceable, then they ordinarily do.

Having thus far proceeded, I shall move to the next thing absolutely necessary, which is, the ordering a Horse in his Diet after backing, and training him up for Racing, Hunting, War, Travel, &c.

What is requisite to be observed, in training a Horse for Racing, War, Travel, &c.

Your Colt being become a Horse, and made tractable by a skilful hand, it is left to your discretion, to what end or purpose you design him, yet let it be what it will his Diet in general and looking to, ought to be as followeth.

Let your Keeper be an Experienced careful Person, not an Eye-Servant, lest in your absence, your Horse or Horses be spoyled through his neglect, for he must be up with the day-light every morning, to tend and dress them, and be greatly diligent therein; when to begin let him give to each horse three pints, or two quarts of sweet dry Oats, adding a pint of Spelt Beans, and then before watering, let him dress them according to Art, viz. First curry them over with an Iron-Comb, then with a French brush, dusting them over with a Dusting-Cloth, then must he rub them with his wet hands, and so with a clean Woollen-cloth, and afterwards with a Linnen one, observing to cleanse their Sheaths, Cods, Nose, Eyes, Ears, and between their Thighs, so that no moisture remain on them; which done, Comb their Mains and Tails; then putting on their Saddles or Cloths, Ride them forth to water moderately, not obliging them to sweat, causing them by the way to Stale, by riding them into Stable, Bushes, Brakes, or smelling to such Horse-dung, as you shall meet within the Road.

*Of Diet and
usage in ge-
neral.*

Having well Watered your Horses, bring them into the Stable, and rub them down as before, beginning always at the head, and so descending downwards by degrees, suffering them when Clothed to stand in their Bridles for the
space

space of an hour, giving them the same quantity of Provender as before, and casting a pretty bundle of Hay into the Rack, that they may tear it out, and by that means keep themselves in Exercise, and so suffer them to stand till about one of the Clock, and at that time let their meat be renewed as before, and from that time adjourn till eight or nine at night, repeat the same a fourth time, when having rubbed them and tolled up their Litter, suffer them to rest till morning; and in like manner day by day, which is not only a cheap, but an excellent way to keep Horses in health and good case. But if at any time you travel, and have not opportunity to be exact in the time, you must according to the giving double the quantity, or at least augment it according to the times you bestow it, observing to give the least quantity first, for the oftner and lesser quantity is given, the better it digests and turns into good Nutriment; and his eating will be freer and cleaner then otherwise it would be.

If you intend to give a heat, as to Hunt, Gallop, Travel, or the like; which is necessary for the exercising of good Horses, to be observed once a Week at the least: give him the Oats and Beans, but no Hay, and let his Oats be over and above well sifted, and washed in Beer or Ale, especially those he has in the Morning before his first dressing.

After heat, &c. rub him or them very well, beginning at the head, and by degrees descending to every part, not leaving till he is throughly dry, and in good order, lest molten greafe should contract, or humours that occasion the Glanders settle, suffer him when cloathed to stand on his Bridle for the space of two hours; at the end of which feed him as you have directed, only adding a handful of Hemp-seed to his first Oats.

The Evening come warm him a little Water, and scatter a small quantity of Bran in it, and suffer him to drink it an hour before he has his last Bait or Portion of meat, and then putting a small bundle of Hay into the Rack, let him stand or lye upon good Litter all night, and the next morning repeat your labour and care as before.

Observe for the benefit of your horse in any journey, to ride

ride moderately for a Mile or two, that your beast may heat by degrees, and the better feel his Legs; for if you do otherwise he will be apt to tire, and in the end it will subject him to founder. And if any opportunity offer before you come to your Inn or resting-place, water him, so that riding a Mile or two after, the cold humours may not have power to settle about his Stomach or in his Belly, &c.

What is to be observed in journeying.

When you come into your Inn, before to see your horse well rubbed down, and if dirty his Legs washed with warm water, and then, if you can get it, supple them, especially about the joynts, with Neats-foot-Oyl, which will innable him to indure Travel to admiration.

Thus far having proceeded, I think it not amiss to describe the best, and most commodious Stable for good Horses, and the order to be observed therein for the better Accommodation.

Your Stable must be built in a dry place, to avoid as much as possible wetting the Horses-hoof, let it be so built that the Windows made therein may open towards the South and North, to receive the warm Air in the Winter, and the cold in the Summer, not being made too dark or too light, by reason the former will dazle him when he comes abroad, and the latter render him careless in feeding. Let the Rack be as high as a Horse can well reach, and the Manger placed even with his Breast, with a convenient Sink to carry away the Stale. The best bottom is strong flat Stone, so well laid down that all the Stale may run off as soon as voided, the which in case of Planks it cannot do, by reason they will lye hollow in some place or other, and so consequently it must sink under them, or get into the Crevices, and by that means annoy the Horse; observe further that the Stable be cleansed every Morning and Night, and that the Litter which must be Wheat-straw, be renewed each Morning, and tossed up each Evening, and so will your Horse or Horses thrive to your wish.

The description of the most Commodious Stable.

What is required in order to prepare Horses for Racing, Hunting, War, Travel, &c.

IF you design a Horse for any particular Exercise, you must if possible innure him to it when young, nor is it possible that any one Horse can be capable of divers Exercises, so as to perform them with dexterity, or be as expert in the one as the other, for it is seen in those whose owners are desirous to oblige them thereto, that whilst they practise all, they are never capable, or at least perfect in any; nor can any one horse carry himself compleatly in all paces, for could he perform the latter, there might be a probability of the former. Now if you design to train your Horse chiefly to Racing, you must Morning and Evening give him gentle Breathings, before and after Sun-set, and try him up all manner of grounds, Galloping him moderately up Hills, and pacing him down, so that by Innuring him thereto, he will be fitly qualified for all advantages; then to bring him into an easie and swift pace, there is no better way than the Tramel, tho some are for riding or leading their Horses in ploughed Land with great Weights on them, which I utterly disallow; for it not only weakens the Horse in all parts, but makes that tedious and uneasie, which would otherwise be pleasant and delightful, and others again for loading them with heavy Shoes. The best Tramel is made of fine twisted Cord, which must be fastened to the right fore Leg, and the left hinder Leg, and so the other two; the Cords being of an equal length, not too short, lest it cause him to Trip, nor too long lest he outstretch, and mind not or be ignorant what you would have him do, but fitted to each Leg, when he stands fair and in just Proportion, and the knots so fast'ned, that they may neither slip nor gaul his Fetlocks. To support them, take Tape, Girthwoof, or Lifts, and bring them over his back, so that you may not fret him, then try him first by hand, and when you perceive he manages his Legs to the purpose, in a smooth way mount his back, having one to lead him in a long reined Snaffle, and with your Switch and Calves of your Legs, manage him to
the

Of the Racing-Horse.

Of the Tramel and its use.

the best advantage, sometimes riding him with a double, and sometimes with a single Tramel, and as he grows perfect, use him to more difficult Grounds, and when he does well cherish him, and when on the contrary, rate him exceedingly, but strike him not, and by such means being brought to understand what he is to do, he will perform it with delight.

Having by this time, by your diligence caused your Horse to understand the use of the Saddle, Bridles, and every Check and motion, commonly called helps or corrections; as the voice of the Rod, the Calves of the Legs, the moving of your Body, the Spur, the Stirrop, the Calves of your Legs, &c. Use great diligence to make him tread his ground, so as he may on all occasions be sure footed, and keep a strait and even Path without writhing his head or turning out of the way, startling or suddainly altering his motion, and in such sort will he be fitted for any Race, and unquestionably bear away the prize, if not unequal matched, especially if he be dieted well; for that purpose directions for which you may find at the end of *Markhams-Master-piece*; a Book especially well approved, and whither for brevities sake I refer you.

If you design your Horse for the Wars, order him in the manner following. Having taught him to bound and rebound, and use a lofty carriage by steadily, and to advantage managing your Reins, so that his head may neither mount too high, sink too low, nor stand too far out; then bring him into a ploughed Field, and choosing a deep furrough, enter it, Trotting him therein divers times upon the Streight-line, not permitting any ExcurSION, the which having done backwards and forwards, make him observe divers sudden stops, and Bearing or Wheeling to the right and the left. Then making an ExcurSION to the right, make him tread out a Ring of about 25 or 30 Paces in Circumference, and the like on the left side the Furrow, making him go twice round, then mending his space, let him with a lofty Trot begin again on the right hand, and so coming round, enter upon the left Ring; and do it so often till he has performed the right Ring six times, and the left four times, and then

To order
your Horse
in Training
him to the
Wars.

over again, using it Morning and Evening till he is perfect, then use him to the full Carieer, stop, half stop, swift turn, and suddain facing, which would be better done at the post with the help of the long Rein, the Wand and Calves of the Legs; as thus, having brought your horse to a Post set up for that purpose, and one to assist you with a Rein fastened to the rings of a half Cannon Bit or a Scatch, you having mounted his back, let your assistant hold him to the post with his head facing it, suppossing it an Enemy, but so that he may have liberty freely to move; then with your Rod strike him on the Flanks and Buttocks, so that he may move his back parts swiftly, his head and fore-legs not appearing to stir from their center, and when he is perfect therein, then set his Back-parts to the Post, and by the help afore-said, let his fore-parts move swiftly round, or at least bring him to do so by degrees, the which will make him Expert at facing an Enemy and Moving in War to such advantage, that he may never lose his Ground, or be out of order.

The next thing to be considered in case of War, is to oblige him to stop in full Carieer, and wheel to the right, and which must be done with deliberation, that your Horse may the better understand it; and to effect it, ride him in a half Scatch a convenient pace, when on a suddain bearing your body back a little, give him a gentle Check, and make him move three paces backward, and then let him go forward again, and mending his pace do the like; so that he may at length come to understand it, and by that means upon the least motion by often using, he will stop in full Carieer; especially if you cherish him when he does well, and rate him with your voice when he does ill.

To oblige your Horse to turn to the right and the left, or suddainly face about, you must have a rod, in which Needles are stuck, and being on plain ground, gently strike him on the contrary side you would have him turn to, and at the same time with the like gentleness direct his head, permitting him to make two or three offers before he turns, and then so order him on the other side.

When you would have him face about, clap your Spurs

or the Calves of your Legs to him suddainly, when he is in a full Trot or Gallop, and with your hand restrain him, pulling the rein on that side you are desirous to move him, suffering the Cheek of the Bridle to have a little wire sharpened in it, so that if he refuse to comply, you may check him, and at the same time strike him behind gently, not forgetting to cherish him when he readily obeys, and in so often using him upon all places, you may bring your horse to effect your desire.

The best pace for a War horse, is a lofty bounding Trot, carrying his head Arch-wise, and strongly Champing on the Bit, and to make him take up his Legs the better, you must Rein him short, and as it were by drawing him back, prevent his large Steps, making him cut them in halves, and every hundred paces give him a side turn, a quarter to the right; and the like to the left.

Thus having inured him to his carriage, the next thing to be considered is how to harden him, and so well acquaint him with the postures of War and Warlike Instruments, that he will abide without the least Consternation, the noise of Guns, glittering of Swords, or rattling of Spears, and of these in their order.

First acquaint him with the Rod, so that he may be in no wise fearful thereof in any posture, using it to all parts about him, rarely keeping it out of his sight, when being familiar therewith, let some footman having a staff in his hand stand in your way, and as you move towards him by degrees, let him offer at the Horses Head; upon which with gentle encouragement oblige your horse to move forward, and retire back as you see occasion, but not to toss up his head, nor throw it on one side, and by so using him often he will become less fearful.

When he dares indure the staff, oblige him in like manner to abide the Sword, but let that Party that holds the one or the other beware he strike him not, lest thereby he discourage him and spoil him for the future. This done, let divers persons stand on Foot in the way, and incounter him with loud shouts, having Swords and Staves in their hands, and by degrees mend his pace a full Gallop, at what time

time let him break through them, whilst they seem to retire as in flight and confusion, and by often so doing, he will be emboldened to make any attempt in charging.

To make him so hardy, as to indure with patience the thundring of Cannons or noise of Drums and Trumpets; let him go in the company of such horses as have been inured to the Wars, and coming into a narrow place, where divers persons are planted with Drums, Trumpets, Muskets, Pistols and Blunderbuses, force him on, whilst they give fire, beat the Drum, and sound the Trumpet, and if he start or recoil gently, draw him off, and face again, trying him the second time, and so the third with encouraging Words and good Management, till by the example of the other Horses he breaks through, and returns to the charge afresh with like fury, the which he will in a short time take pleasure in. And thus much for the War-Horse.

If you design to train up your Horse for Hunting, bring him to a running pace, and Gallop more then usually swift, the former of which you may do by leading him in a long Snaffle, and running with him in your hand, whilst one with a Whip follows you; when having practised it often, mount his Back with sharp Spurs and a steady Bit, then ride him somewhat up Hill, and then fiercely upon the Plain, suffering him to have at one time more Weight then at another, that so he may (finding himself light) run with pleasure, observing always how he takes up his Legs, and that he throw not up his hinder parts, go outwards nor interfere; having brought him by often use to a swift pace, commonly called a Racking-pace, use him to the Gallop, making him fall often out of the one into the other, Galloping him moderately upon all grounds as well high as low, often riding amongst the Brakes, Bushes and Bryers, that he may neither start at them nor shun them upon occasion, and coming into a plain Field where the Ground is soft, let two men hold a Pole a considerable highth between them, over which oblige him to leap, and if he chance to fall thereon, then must they let it fall for his better encouragement, then try him again, sometimes leading him

How to order your Horse in Training him to Hunting.

in a long Rein, and sometimes sitting on his Back, till he is apt to take the leap; the which you may oblige him to, by Checking a little, Striking on the knees, & Clapping on the neck, being expert at the Pole, try him over a shallow Trench broad, according to his reach, and so by degrees over a Style, Ditch, Rail or Gate, exercising him so every Morning and Evening, yet beware that he break not his knees, for that will discourage him, and render him fearful. Having thus trained him, use him to the sound of the Horn, and cry of the Hounds, riding amongst Horses that have been trained up to the sport, and at any time when you ride out on that occasion, give him the powder of Licorish and Cummin-seed, made up into a Ball to the Weight of two ounces, with sweet Butter, and the juyce of Sage, and after it a pint of hot Ale or Beer, and it will wonderfully prolong his Breath, and prevent him from tiring.

For Travel if you design your Horse, you must in some measure acquaint him with the Trot, the Amble, the Gallop and Racking-pace, that by falling out of one into the other as well as he can, he may take the advantage of all ways, and mightily ease himself when to make him hold his Journey the better, at his setting out give him three ounces of the juyce of Smallage in a pint of Red-wine, sweetened with brown Sugar-Candy, and anoint his Limbs with Neats-foot-oyl, or for want of it with Hogs-lard well warmed, chafing it in with your hands, and when you set out, ride gently the three first Miles, and so by degrees mend your pace, when if you find him through defect, or tediousness of the way to tire, put Arsmart a Herb so called under his Saddle, if the Season affords it, or for want of that a few young Nettles under his Tail, fastned to the Crupper or Pebles in his Ears, or the like; but lest you spoil your Horse, besure when you Inn him that he be thoroughly dry, and that he be well rubbed down, and dieted before you take your repast. And thus much as to these particulars, leaving which I shall next proceed to describe several Vices incident to Horses, and the remedies to help or prevent them.

How to order your Horse for Travel

Of Vices in Horses, and by what means to prevent, correct, and remedy them.

AMongst other things the following discourse is altogether necessary to be observed, on it consists the well or ill management of a Horse, and rendring Serviceable and Tractable or the contrary, for the Vices are such things as happen either by Nature or evil Custom; and first I shall begin with the head and neck.

*Wry Head
and Neck.*

If your Horse carry his Head and Neck awry or unhand-
some, observe to which side he inclines it, and having
plainly seen it, correct him by striking him twice or thrice
with the contrary Spur, but if he be very stiff-necked on
the right side, and soft plying or bending on the left, then
usually hold the right Rein shorter then the other,
and when you perceive him to incline that way, give him
suddain Checks, having a sharp Wire fastened in the Rein,
that striking in his Neck it may oblige him to hold his head
strait, observing to Check him upwards as much as you see
convenient, lest if you do the contrary, he fall into ano-
ther Vice, which is ducking down his Head on every slight
occasion, and so by often using him he will understand your
meaning.

*Unevenness
in the lower
part of the
Head.*

If your Horse carry not right the lower part of his head,
commonly called the Mofel, ride him with a Moufrole,
putting three short, but sharp Nales on the inside of his Ports-
mouth, and the like in his Moufrole, and if in such sort he
carry his whole head awry, then put the like on his Head-stall,
or the contrary Cheek; suffering them to be so fastened,
that they may not easily start aside or fall out, and then by
gentle touches make him feel them, the which he often do-
ing will become fearful in offending in the like nature; ten
days continuance is enough, and more may prejudice him by
making the places fester, yet at any time when you ride him
without, if upon the least effect you suddainly stir the Bri-
dle, the Terror of the former Pain will make him sensible
of the fault, and induce him to amend it.

If your Horse duck down his head, which is an unseemly
sight,

fight, make him upon the place where he doth it, bring his head into just and due proportion, by Checking him suddainly with the Bridle, and striking him with the Spurs, so that he may be sensible of his fault, and so do as often as he does it, if standing, make him do it standing, if going let it be whilst he moves a little, and if he readily retract his failing, cherish him with a gentle Voice, but if not rate him, but strike him not.

*Ducking
down the
Head.*

If your Horse over-reach in his going, and for want of due proportion in his steps, strike his hinder Leg against his fore one, commonly called interfering, or strikes in treading the ring or any other Exercise, ride him into new ploughed ground, so that he may be obliged to lift his Feet so high, as will altogether shorten his strokes; the like you may do in Stony-ways, striking him on the side he trips with your Rod, and causing his Shoes to be made as large behind as before, striking him sometimes upon the shoulder, which will make him step short, and in often so using him, he will forget his reaching, and fall into a moderate round pace.

*Overreach-
ing.*

If your Horse be subject upon the least occasion to shake his Head and Ears, or move the latter, when he intends to kick, or bite, or cast you, strike him on the head with your wand, at the same time giving him a Check with your Bridle, and a stroke with your contrary Spur, putting him suddainly out of his pace, and then make him stop and stand till that he may have leasure to understand your meaning, and be cautious for the future how he offends, and the like do when he starts, or capers at the sting of Wasp, Bee, or biting of a Fly; to prevent which flies, &c. in summer time, rub Oyl of Turpentine between his Legs, and in such places where they usually settle, and they will not during the scent thereof come near him. The like correction you may give him when he wincheth, which is a sign of his intending to bite, or strike with his Heels.

*Shaking his
Head, &c.*

If he be troubled with the Vice of Restifness, which is occasioned by ill usage or stubbornness. The former is when through ill management in riding, the horse has been haired, frightened, and put into confusion, by being forced upon ma-

*Of Resist-
ness.*

ny things at once; yet made to understand his defect in none of them; to remedy which you must cherish your Horse, and gently move him, when if he pass on, you must cherish him yet more; but if he stand, turn aside, fall back or flounce, then must you have Men behind him with smart Whips, who must lace him to some purpose, not letting him as little as may be see them, and at the same time affright him with their Voices, or put Nettles or a small Serpent or Cracker under his Tail, which will set him forward. The rider may likewise fasten a Cord about his Stones, and bringing it between his fore Legs, pull it as he sees occasion, and by that means make him advance forward, and soon understand his Duty. The like force may be used in case of Stubbornness, for some Horses there are that perceiving the fearfulness, and little experience of their riders will not obey them.

*Running a
way, &c.*

If your Horse be addicted to run away, which proceeds Originally from the hardness of his mouth, and unevenness of his Jaws, but more through the little experience of him that first undertook to break him, in not making him punctually observe his stops, and so permitting him to do it without order to redress, which you must at the first mounting, be sure to be furnished with a whole Cannon-bit, strong Girths, and double Reins; when riding with many Weights about you, let the horse at first go gently, till you see him beginning on a suddain as it were to alter his pace, then let him know what manner of Rider he carries, not by Checking him, but by holding him in with so strong and even a Hand, as he shall not be able to proceed faster then you would have him, then lose him again, and if he Attempt to run, use him so the second time, writhing his head, and making him Face about, then let him Gallop the contrary way, and in the midst thereof swiftly wheel him about by drawing the right Rein, and so to the left. Having thus ordered him, make him stop in his Carreer by swaying back your Body, and Checking him with the side-Rein; clapping at the same time the Calves of your Legs close to his Sides, and by so often using him, he will become gentle; but after this usage, if he continue head-strong, chuse out ploughed Land of a large length, and let him run therein till he is tired,

tired, and when he is so tired, whip and rate him extreamly, and that will make him altogether out of Love with his humour, and dread that which he before delighted in.

If your Horſe upon every little occaſion be ſubject to rear an End, and bound aloft thereby to endanger himſelf and his Rider, obſerve when he is about to riſe, and with a convenient Stick ſtrike him hard on the fore knees, as alſo between the Ears, leaning forwards with your whole weight, and in ſo often uſing him and ſuffering the Stick to be ſtill in his ſight, you will make him out of love with this Vice; or you may do the like by faſt'ning a ſhort Rein to the Cheeks of his Bridle, and ſo to his Girths holding him ſtrait.

*Rearing an
end.*

If your Horſe is ſubject to fall down, you muſt have divers to aſſiſt you, who when they ſee him about ſo to do, muſt with Whips, Staves, and Goads fall upon him with ſtroaks, and terrible Voices, holding him up by main force, and continuing to beat him, putting a lighted Match under his Tail, and ſo forcing him forward, the which three or four ſeveral and diſtinct times repeated, will ſo terrifie him, that he will never after be deſirous to commit the like Vice.

*Falling
down.*

If your Horſe be skittish, fearful and apt to Start, whereby you are never free from danger whilst on his Back. Then to reduce him to a better temper, obſerve whether the cauſe proceeds from fear or humour, if from the former, then is it occaſioned by ſome ſtrange ſight or ſound the Horſe was never before acquainted with; when to bring him into a better order, you muſt by leading him in your hand, oblige him to come near the thing feared, and ſuffer him ſo well to view it, that he may become familiar, and well acquainted therewith, then get upon his Back, and retiring a diſtance, bring him up again, and by that means he will be ſo well acquainted therewith, that he will not ſtart for the future.

*Skittishneſs
and Start-
ling.*

If your Horſe by nature be apt to ſtart, the cauſe proceeding from a head-ſtrong humour, then force him into places of greateſt danger, and where the moſt amazing ſights are to be ſeen; and then if he ſtart, recoil or be fearful to proceed

ceed, let a person stand behind him with a Cudgel and beat him forward; but by no means let the rider strike or Spur him; so that he will be induced to believe the thing which he sees is the cause of those stripes, and therefore when he again beholds it, he will advance with all Celerity to avoid the punishment.

If his Starting comes by defect of sight, and thereby things are represented to him otherwise than they are, you must lead him up to them, and often ride him where Sounds and confused Noises are, but offer him no Violence, lest you confound him, he not understanding your meaning, but rather cherish him with words and gesture to imbolden him, and cause him to forget his fear, and by such usage he will be soon brought to good order.

To harden him against other Horses.
If your Horse be fearful of other Horses, and by that reason dare not freely feed, to imbolden him and make him the freer from fear, use him to the company of tame and gentle Horses, suffering him to feed with them, but laying the Oats or Hay on their side, that he may be forced to reach for it, and likewise to shift for his Lodging: After which put him to Horses more wild and unruly, and by the same rule he will shift amongst them. When he is so hardned ride him abroad, and meet divers Horses upon a full trot, force him in amongst them and juffle, gently making him bear forward with a strong Resolution, and soon upon return, which usage will inure him to such familiarity, that the like otherwise would not be by him attainable.

The Vices of the Mouth.
The Vices of the Mouth are many, the principal of which and their causes take as followeth, *viz.* A Horse may have an Evil Mouth divers ways, as when his Chin or Beard, where the Kerb should lye is too hard; or the like may happen in the place where the Bit and Kirb should rest, or contrary-wise both those, and the Tongue may be too soft and tender, and thereby render the Guidance uneasy to your Horse, so that he is tимерous to stay the Bit upon his mouth as he ought, and again his Mouth may be too little, or his Jaws too thick or great, of which causes do proceed divers Vices, as to draw up the Bit with his Tongue, as if he would swallow it, not suffering it to rest upon his

Gums or Bars, also to bear too hard upon the Bit, and to wry his Mouth, shooting one Jaw over another, so that the Rider be he never so good a horseman, can have no direct command of his Horse. Now to correct these Vices, many use rough and sharp Bits, which instead of reducing the horse to a better temper, quite spoil his Mouth; therefore according to my opinion, the best way that may or can be used, is to anoint or wash the horses mouth, in case of hardness, with Honey, Hogs-lard, Allum, and Bole-Armonick dissolved in Ale, and use a smooth and gentle Bit, not any ways offensive, and withal give him good words in every Management, observing not to Check him, but upon an extraordinary occasion, but rather cherish him; and by such gentleness and by the operation of the things he will become gentle. If his Mouth be soft, use Allum, Oyl of Turpentine and the Juyce of Scabious, with which wash it every morning and evening, using him to a Bit, round which you have wrapped soft Linnen, till you find his mouth hardened by the aforesaid Ingredients, and then let him take the former Bit still, using the Ointment or mixture till you find he can well indure any moderate Bit, not by any means chafing, hairing, or hurrying your Horse, but often riding him gently, and cooling his mouth with Spring-water, and suffering him to brouse if he will on fresh Boughs, or feed on short Grass.

If your Horse have not a hard nor soft Mouth, yet got the Vice to draw up his Bit, as if he would swallow it. Take a piece of Whip-cord about a span-long and tye one end thereof to the Eye of the Bit under the Kerb; that done, turn down the Horses nether Lip, to the intent you may easily bring the Cord between it and his nether Gums, unto the other Eye of the Bit, fastening it to the same, so that the more the Cord is strained, the faster and stronger the Bit may be; so that the knot being dextrously knit at either end, few can perceive what is done, and in so doing he will by force be obliged to suffer the Bit to rest in the right place, and thereby render himself better for the advantage of the feller and buyer.

If your Horse be subject to move or wry his mouth, then shall

shall you use to ride him with a Mouferol strait buckled to his head, and so often as he moveth his Head, so often shall you correct him with your Spur on the right, and then with that on the left, sometimes also giving him a Check with the Bridle upon the one or the other side, or upon both sides at once with a steady hand, or if you see he does not altogether regard those corrections, you may strike him with the Stirrup, and Calves of your Legs on either side, but if the port of the Bit be the cause of such defect, then you must change it, and by such means will your horse be brought into good order. And thus much may suffice as to the knowledge and correction of Vices incident to Horses: The next thing to be considered being as Material as any yet premised, *viz.* How to know a good Horse in all particulars, and prevent frauds in case of purchase.

How to know a Horse in all particulars, and thereby prevent the Deccits of the Fockies, &c.

I Having already given Instructions to such as rear their own breed, think it altogether as necessary for the accommodation of such as have not the conveniency of breeding, to give them directions how to make a good Choice, and lay out their money to the best advantage.

*To what end
your Horse
is designed.*

The first thing necessary to be observed in making an advantageous choice, is well to understand to what intent or purpose you chuse your Horse, whether for the Wars, Racing, Hunting, Travel, Draught, or the like; and in such cases their Make, and Linaments, together with their Colour, Constitution, and Perfections are to be considered and had regard to. Now as to the Colour, altho there may be Horses good of all colours; yet these succeeding are by the most expert Traders in Horse-flesh, accounted the best, *viz.* The Daple-Grey for Beauty, the Brown-Bay for Service, the Black with Silver-Hairs for Courage, the Layard or true mixed Roan for Countenance, as for the Black without White, the Sorrel and unchangeable Iron-Grey, they are accounted Cholerick, the Bright-Bay, Fleabitten and black with white marks are accounted Sanguine, the Dull-

*Colours to
be observed.*

White

White, the Yellow-Dun, the Kite Glewed, and the Pide-Bald are reputed Flegmatick. The Chesnut-Mouse Dun, Red Bay and Blew-Gray are taken for Melancholicks, so that in this sort, according to the opinion of the Learned, the four Humours Emblems of the four Elements are divided, and by this Rule you must observe what diseases such like Horses are most incident to, as in this Treatise you may be advertised, and be sure narrowly to make Inquisition on that particular.

The next thing to be considered is the Paces, and the Horses aptness therein; if you design him for War, then the lofty Trot is most to be esteemed, and to know that he is cleaner therein; take these observations in the taking up his Legs and cross moving his Limbs, as when the far hinder Leg and the near fore-Leg move and go forward, and in the same manner the two other Legs in good order and equal distance, and in this motion the nearer a Horse taketh his Limbs from the ground, the opener, the evener and the shorter he treadeth, the better will be his Pace, and the contrary declares much imperfection.

If you buy a Horse for pleasure, the Amble is the best, in which observe that he move both his Legs on one side together neat, and with compleat deliberation, for if he treads too short he is apt to stumble, if too large to cut, and if shuffling or rowling he does it slovenly, and besides rides no ground.

If your Horse be designed for Hunting, a racking Pace is most expedient, which little differs from the Amble, only is more active and nimble, whereby the Horse observes due Motion; but you must not force him on too eagerly, lest being in confusion he lose all knowledge of what you design him to, and so handle his Legs confusedly.

The Gallop is requisite for Race Horses, and the things to be observed therein are these. First let the Horse take up his feet nimbly from the ground, but not rise over high, neither Rowling, Beating, nor Stretching out his fore-Legs beyond his reach, but following with his hinder, Aptly and Nimbly, not being Subject to the swift cut, Crossing or Claping one foot upon the other, but ever leading with his.

his far fore Foot. If he Gallop round and raise his fore-Legs, he is then said to Gallop strongly, but not capable of much speed, and is fitter for the War than Racing, but if he take up his Feet, as if he did it unwillingly or was in pain, then it shews he has some hidden distemper to find out, which must be your care, or else if you purchase you will be cheated.

To chuse a
good Horse.

As for the Stature of the Horse, it is always left to the Buyer, but as to the Infirmities and Deformities, I think it my part to discover them. First then, when you intend to purchase a Horse, being satisfied of his breed as well as you can, as also of his Pace and Colour, suffer him to stand before you without Bridle, Saddle, or Cloths, your self standing just before his Face, and so take an exact view of all his Parts and Proportions, but especially of the Liveliness of his Countenance, and all other marks according to the directions given in the foregoing part of this Treatise, wherein a perfect Horse is portrayed in every Limb and Part, &c. yet what has been there inserted, I shall here set down with Remarks thereon, for the Readers better understanding, and make some Repetition in a point so necessary to be observed: As thus, If his Ears stand upright, be short, thin and well fixed at the roots, it signifies courage and comeliness, but if the contrary, dulness and ill nature.

Ears.

If his Face be clear, his Fore-head swelling outward, the mark or feather in his Face being high, if he have a white Star or Blaze, a white Snip even placed and not too large, they signify Beauty and Goodness; but on the contrary if his Face be Fleshly, Cloudy, Scowling, and his Fore-head flat, then is he deformed and defective, to which defects may be added a Blaze, a wry, a Raw-nose, and unhairly Face.

Face.

If his Eyes be round, shining, black and somewhat bloody, staring or standing out of his Head, the Black filling the outward Circumference, and the Balls, the Pits, it is a sign of Courage, Goodness and Comeliness, and the contrary of Weakness and Deformity, subject to Spots, and Moon-blind or Wally Distempers incident to Horses of weak-sight, and sometimes even to perfect blindness: If the Eyes are Watery and much bloody, it is the effect of some unhappy bruise

Eyes.

If they matter it happens through Excessive Riding; if Sunk and Hollow, he is either old or of an old Generation. Great Whites are signs of ill temper and dogged Disposition.

If upon handling his Chaps and Cheeks you find his Bones Thin, Lean, and the space wide between them, with a large Throple or Wind-Pipe, not infested with Kernels, the Neck seeming to couch within the Jaws, they are signs of good Wind, great Courage and Swiftnes, and the contrary of the contrary defects, as Dullness, short Wind, and uneasiness in Travel, subject to broken Wind, Strangury and Glaunders.

*Chaps,
Cheeks, &c.*

If his Nostrils be dry, Thin and Wide, his Muzzel small, Mouth deep, and Lips equally meeting, it denotes good Wind, Comliness and Swiftnes, but on the contrary Evil Wind, Dulness, and subject to the Vices of the Mouth beforementioned.

*Nostrils,
Mouth &c.*

If his Lips be uneven or shrunk, that his upper will not reach his nether, either some Distemper is settled in his Head, or Age has seized him. If his Nose be moist and dropping, beware of the Glaunders, Violent cold, &c.

Let his Breast be broad and strong, well Feathered and Compleatly set, which denotes Strength and Courage, when on the contrary a narrow Pinched Breast subjects the Horse to Stumble, and is a palpable sign of a weak, faint hearted Beast, as well as uncomliness.

Breast, &c.

If the Knees carry an Equal Proportion, be not Broke, Scarred or Scabed, but even, round and fair, well knit with strong Sinews, they signifie the Horse to be Sound, well made and fit for Travel, but on the contrary Gouty, Lame and very Defective.

If his Legs be Clean, full of Sinews, but not too Fleshy, Bowing somewhat inward without a Seam, then they are strong, and as they should be, but if the contrary, then are they subject to Lameness, by Founder, Farcine, Swelling, or the like; especially if Scars and Scabs appear under the Knee, or a great Seam be Apparent with much Foggy or Spungy Flesh, so that he is not capable of Labour or Travel.

Legs.

Pasterns.

If his Pasterns be clean, well knit together, clean, short, strong and strait, then is it a Token of Beauty, Strength and long Indurance, but if on the contrary, then he is subject to the same strain, and not capable of Travel.

Hoofs.

The Hoof ought to be indifferent round, black, sound and well fixed on, High-set, and Toughable to indure a Shooe in all ways; for if on the contrary it be long, flat and white, it will carry a Shooe in no way, but by reason of its Brittleness be frequently subject to let the Nails slip, and thereby Subject the Horse to Foundering, and if the Cronet of the Hoof be not close, smooth and well fixed, it is ten to one if he escapes the Crown Scab.

*Head,
Mane,
Neck,
Brest, &c.*

Thus having Viewed the Horse before, come to the Right-side of him, and View him well, first beginning with the observation of the setting on his Head, observing that it stands neither too high nor too low, but upon the direct at the setting on his Neck, being small and long, still increasing in thickness in the Shoulders, with a thin Tough, strong and high Crest: his Main long, thin and soft, and somewhat Curling. These are Characters of great Beauty and Goodness, whereas to have any Bunch or Swelling in the Nape of the Neck, denotes the Pole-Evil, or beginning of a Fistula. If the Neck be short and thick, and subject to have a weak, thin Crest with falling in, the Withers signifies a deficient Horse in Mettle, Courage, Patience in Travel, and the like; and if his Main shed, it betokens Worms breeding in it, or him subject to Itch or Mange.

*Chine and
Ribs, &c.*

If his Chine be broad, even and strait, his Ribs strong and well Arched, his Filets upright strong and short, there not remaining above a Fingers length between his last Rib and Huckle-bone, his Body well let down, yet hidden without his Ribs, his Stones even hung and close Trussed up, then is he perfect in those parts and worth buying, but if the contrary appear, then is he rendred deformed, not only subject to divers Diseases, but will neither become Pillion nor Saddle.

Thighs.

If his hinder Thighs or Gascoyns be well let down even to the middle Joynt, thick, full, Brawny and Swelling, it denotes

denotes strength, and a Horse capable of doing much Service, when on the contrary the clean, Lank, slender Thigh betokens Difability and Weakness.

If his middle-joynt behind be clean, well Boned, Sinew-^{Middie-joynt.} ed, and not Fleшы, a little bending, &c. it is as it should be, but if chopped or sore, inward bowed or bending, then it shews a Sellender; but if the Joynt and Veins in General swell and are hot, it proceeds from some unfortunate blow. If the swelling be particular as in the Plot, hollow part, or inlid, the Veins being full and proud, the swelling also short, beware of a Blood Spavin; but if the said swelling be behind, just below the Knuckle, then it is a Curb.

If the hinder Leg be clean and Sinewy, not too Fleшы,^{Hinder-Legs.} it is as it ought to be; but if the contrary, he will not endure labour; if they swell the Grease is Molten into them, if Scabed above the Pasterns, he is subject to the Scratches; if Chops appear under, he hath the Pains, also very dangerous and subjecting him to Lameness.

As for his Tail if it be well Fixed and Carried well, it cannot be amiss, and for his Hoofs, let the Directions be taken by those before mentioned.

To know a Horses Age by many Visible Tokens and probable Conjectures.

WHat more remains is to inform the Reader how to prevent the worst of Cheats, he may at any time understand a Horses Age. The manner take as followeth.

Every Horse at his full number has forty Teeth, ^{Age by his Teeth.} viz. six great Wang-Teeth on either side above, six below on the one side, and as many on the other, commonly called the Grinders, six below and six above in the fore part of his Mouth, called Gatherers, four Tusshes, viz. one below and another above on each side which makes the just number.

The first year he has his Foals Teeth, which are only Grinders, and gather small and White. The next year he changes the four foremost Teeth, which appear browner

and bigger then the other. The third year the next changed are so, that no Foals Teeth remain before, except two of each side above, and two below. The fourth year he changes the Teeth next to them, leaving but one Foals Tooth on each side, above and below. At five year all his fore Teeth will be changed, and then he has his Tusshes on either side compleat, and the Foals Tooth which he casteth, when as those that come in their places will be hollow, and the Marks appear thereon, which are little black Specks in the middle, and those continue till the eighth year. At six years old his new Tusshes come up at the bottom, of which grow little rising Circles of young Flesh, the Tusshes being little, sharp and white. The seventh year all the Horses Teeth will be compleat. The Mark plainly appearing. The eighth year the Teeth will be full, plain, and the Mark hardly to be discerned, then will the Tusshes turn yellowish, and at nine years old will the foremost Teeth appear longer, yellower, and fouler then before, and the Tusshes much blunter. The tenth year the holes in the inner side of his Tusshes will be filled up, and the Temples of his Head begin to be crooked and hollow. The eleventh year his Teeth will be extraordinary long and yellow, inclining somewhat to blackish foul and uneven standing, directly opposite one against the other. At twelve his Teeth will be long, yellow and black, his upper Teeth over-reaching and hanging over his nether. The thirteenth year his Tusshes will be Woven close, if he used to Travel, or otherwise will be black and somewhat long, his Teeth now failing you, for after thirteen years you can give thereby but Conjectural Guesses, you must apply your self to these following observations.

Hoof. If the Hoof be rugged, rumpled as it were in Seams, dry and brittle, it is a sign of old Age.

Skin. If raising his Skin it fall not presently, but stand on a heap, 'tis sign of Age.

Tail. If you feel his Tail near the setting on, and find a Knot there on the joynt about the bigness of a Hazel-Nut, the Horse is under ten years of Age.

Eyes. If his Eyes be round and stairing, the Pits full, then is he young, but if the contrary, old.

If he be of a dark Colour, yet grows Gizled with Silver Hair. Hairs about his Eye-brows, or underneath his Main, it is a sign of Age, or if he be white and Menaled with either Red or Black Menals, it denotes the same.

If the Bars of his Mouth be great, rough and deep, and handle hard, then is he old, but if the contrary then is he Bars. young.

And thus much for these Particulars.

A

A TABLE of the CONTENTS.

The first Book.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the first Book.

T He Introduction Ch. 1. p. 1.	Of the marks, colours, and shapes of Horses	4, 19
Of the best manner of breeding	2. 15	Of the Office of the Groom and rider
How to make and order your Stable	3, 13	5, 31

The Second Book.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the second Book.

O F what points consisteth the Office of the Farrier, handled Dialogue-wise: also a formal examen of the Farrier	Ch. 1. p. 42	Arman 2.	85
Of the causes of sickness in general, and the causes of health and long life	2. 55	Ach in the head	86
Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Farrier before he do adventure to administer	3. 68	Egyptiacum 1	Egyptiacum 2.
The manner of handling the particular cures	4. 79	Accloy	89
Chap. 4. A.		All diseases a Cataplasme 1. ibid.	90
A Copum and its virtues	80	All diseases a Cataplasme 2.	91
Arman 1	83	All diseases 3.	91
		S. Anthonies fire	93
		Anticor	95
		Attaint upper	96
		Attaint upper or back sinews	
		sprain	97
		Attaint upper.	96
		Avives	100
		Arvaistes or Rat-Tails	102, 219
		Airing	175
		Ch. 5. B.	

The Table.

Chap. 5. B.		Charge for surbating	140
B	Ack, swelled	Cleanser a Horse	ibid.
	Barbs	Clifts and cracks in heels	141
	Bath for humours to dry them up	Clysters	143
		Clyster 1.	146
	Bath for stiff Legs	Clyster laxative 2.	147
	Bath 1, 2, 3, 4.	Clyster restraining 3.	ibid.
	Belly gaunt	Clyster for a fat Horse 4.	148
	Belly pain	Clyster for melancholly 5.	ibid.
	Bit wherewith the Tongue is hurt	Clyster in case of desperate sick-	
		ness 6.	ibid.
	Bleeding to stanch	Clyster for the pestilence 7.	149
	Blindness	Clyster lenitive 8.	ibid.
	Biting of a mad Dog	Clyster for the Colick 9.	ibid.
	Blood-Spaven	Cloyed	150
	Bath for a blood-Spaven	Cods swelled	ibid.
	Bone Spaven	Cods swelled a charge	151
	Blood-shotten eyes	Colick	152
	Blood-shotten eyes : a charge	Colick and Stone	153
	Blood-running itch	Colt-Evil	ibid.
	Blowing and Purfiveness	Cold	154
	Bots, &c.	Consumption	171
	Bots 1.	Consumption of the flesh	172
	Bots	Convulsion	173
	Brittle hoof	Costiveness or belly bound	177
	Bruised heels and feet	Crown scab	ibid.
	Burning with shot	Curb	178
	Bunches, knots, &c.	Cold or running at the nose	201
	Bran prepared	Copperas water	54
	Black drink for the Glanders	Charge	162
Chap. 6. C.		Corrupt blood	193
C	Cast in a Halter	Chap. 7. D.	
	Canker	D angerous sickness how it	
	Casting the hoof	cometh	179
	Cordial powder	Dangerous sickness how to know	181
	Cautery actual	Dangerous sickness how to prevent	183
	Cautery potential	Danger. sickness how to cure	184
	Corrosive 1.		184
	Caustick		Diapente

The Table.

<p><i>Diapente</i> 185 <i>Diateffaron</i> 186 <i>Desperate & dangerous sick</i> 187 <i>Dissolve tumours</i> 189 <i>Desperate sickness</i> 190 <i>Drooping</i> 192 <i>Dropse</i> 194 <i>Dead flesh</i> 196 <i>Deep wounds</i> 197 <i>Desperate strain</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Dissolve grease</i> 198 <i>Disease of the Liver</i> 200 <i>Draw his yard</i> 202 <i>Draw a thorn</i> 203 <i>Drink to preserve lungs</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Diseases to prevent</i> 206 <i>Drink comfortable</i> 207 <i>Dislocated joynt</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Disease of tranchaisons or the colick</i> 208 <i>Dry up sores</i> 209, 17</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Chap. 8. E.</p> <p>E <i>At a taint</i> 211 <i>Eat a feather</i> 212 <i>Eat a Spider</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Eye a stroke</i> 213 <i>Eye Flim, Pin and Web Dragons</i> 214</p> <p><i>Eye a canker</i> 216 <i>Eye a charge</i> 218 <i>Electuarium Theriacum</i> 219 <i>Excretion to cure</i> 274 <i>Eye a Wart</i> 220 <i>Eye broken</i> 221 <i>Excretion</i> 222 <i>Ears impostumated</i> 223</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Chap. 9. F.</p> <p>F <i>Arcin</i> 1 <i>Farcin wet</i> 10 <i>Flanks</i> 11</p>	<p>185 186 187 189 190 192 194 196 197 <i>ibid.</i> 198 200 202 203 <i>ibid.</i> 206 207 <i>ibid.</i> 208 209, 17 211 212 <i>ibid.</i> 213 214 216 218 219 274 220 221 222 223 1 10 11</p>	<p><i>Fat Horse</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Fat a lean Horse</i> 12 <i>Falling of the fundament</i> 13 <i>Feaver defined</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Feaver how to know</i> 16 <i>Feaver ordinary</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Feaver Hectique</i> 19 <i>Feaver pestilent</i> 20 <i>Flying worm or Tetter</i> 22 <i>Feet to mollifie</i> 23 <i>Fig in the foot</i> 24 <i>Fistula</i> 25 <i>Fistula water</i> 26 <i>Fetlock hurt</i> 28 <i>Froathy or weeping hoof</i> 29 <i>Foundring in the feet</i> 30 <i>Foundred long</i> 31 <i>Foundred in the feet and body</i> <i>ibid.</i> 34 <i>False quarter</i> 38 <i>Flanks, Moraldeflanks</i> 41, 42 <i>Flux</i> 43 <i>Foul and old sores to mundifie</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>For saking meat</i> 46, 45 <i>Frush running</i> 47 <i>Felrick</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Fret</i> 48, 49</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Chap. 10. G.</p> <p>G <i>Alled back</i> 51 <i>Galled with the shackle</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Gravelling</i> 52 <i>Green ointment</i> 54 <i>Grease molten</i> 55 <i>Glanders</i> 58, 56 <i>Glanders a purging drink</i> 69</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Chap. 11. H.</p> <p>H <i>Air from the main and tail falling away</i> 75 <i>Hair to grow</i> 76 <i>Head</i></p>
--	---	--

The Table.

<i>Head-ach</i>	ibid.
<i>Heels scabbed, Heels kiced</i>	77
<i>Heel Mellet</i>	ibid.
<i>Hide-bound</i>	79
<i>Honey-charge</i>	82
<i>Hoof to grow</i>	83
<i>Hoof weeping</i>	85
<i>Hoof loose, Hoof hurt</i>	85
<i>Hoof bound a charge</i>	86, 33, 871
<i>Hoof brittle, Hoof straight, Hoof loose</i>	ibid.
<i>Hoof trodden upon or hurt</i>	88
<i>Hoof brittle to make tough</i>	88
<i>Hoof to grow</i>	ibid.
<i>Halter-cast</i>	89
<i>Hough swelled</i>	ibid.
<i>Humours to dry up</i>	90
<i>Hurt shoulder</i>	ibid.
<i>Hurts old to cure</i>	91
<i>Honey</i>	86
<i>Horse-bread</i>	187
<i>Haw</i>	215

Chap. 12. I.

I <i>mpfections in the feet</i>	91
<i>Impostumation to ripen</i>	92
<i>Inward sickness</i>	93
<i>Inward sickness a suppository</i>	ibid.
<i>Inflammations</i>	94
<i>Joynt griev'd</i>	95
<i>Increase the Hoof</i>	ibid. & 96

Chap. 12. L.

L <i>ampas</i>	96
<i>Lax to stop</i>	97
<i>Lean Horse to make fat</i>	ibid.
<i>Legs swelled</i>	98
<i>Leprosie or Elephantick malady</i>	101
<i>Lice</i>	ibid. & 102

<i>Lime and Honey</i>	102
<i>Loe-worm</i>	103
<i>Lungs a disease</i>	104
<i>Lint wherewith to heal ulcers or old sores</i>	209
<i>Lunatick eyes</i>	220
<i>Lameness to find out, three ways</i>	168

Chap. 13. M.

M <i>Alender</i>	106
<i>Maigne</i>	108
<i>Mouth sore</i>	115
<i>Mellet</i>	116
<i>Mollifie humours</i>	ibid.
<i>Morfounded</i>	ibid.
<i>Melancholly</i>	193

Chap. 14. N.

N <i>ose running</i>	118
<i>Navel galled</i>	ibid.
<i>Night mare</i>	119

Chap. 15. O.

O <i>ld sores</i>	120
<i>Over reach in the heel</i>	ib.
<i>Ointment</i>	121

Chap. 15. P.

P <i>Astern joynt strained</i>	123
<i>Pill for the Glanders</i>	124
<i>Pestilence</i>	126
<i>Preparative</i>	128
<i>Pastons</i>	122
<i>Purssiveness a Pill</i>	130
<i>Pissing of blood</i>	131
<i>Surfeit by Provender</i>	133
<i>Poll evil</i>	ibid. & 134
<i>Powder for old sores</i>	135
<i>Purssiveness or shortness of breath</i>	136
	142
<i>Prickt</i>	142

The Table.

<i>ingender in the body of an Horse</i>	123	<i>Wen or excretion</i>	218
Chap. 20. V.		<i>Wind-galls</i>	ibid.
V omiting	212	<i>Wither-rung</i>	220
<i>Violent cough</i>	213	<i>Worms</i>	222
<i>Vinegar</i>	106	<i>White-water</i>	104
<i>Ver volant</i>	2.	<i>Water</i>	155
<i>Veins to take up</i>	214	<i>When in the knee</i>	168
Chap. 21. W.		<i>When in the shank</i>	ibid.
VV ind to preserve	215	<i>When in the pastern</i>	ibid.
<i>Wild-fire</i>	216	Chap. 22. Y.	
<i>Wounds</i>	217	Y ellows	223, 224
		<i>Yard mattering</i>	226

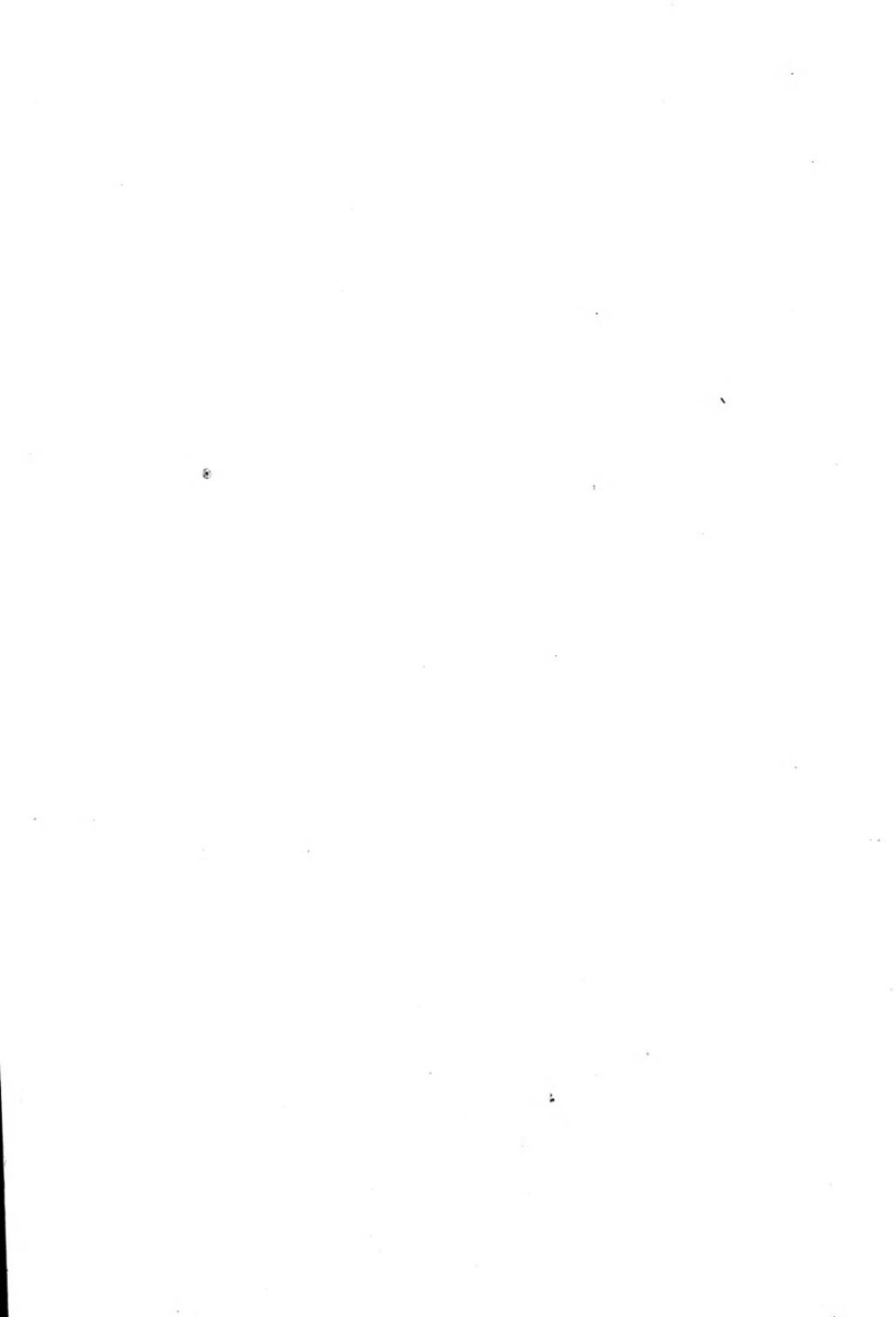
The Contents of the Jockies Master-piece, &c.

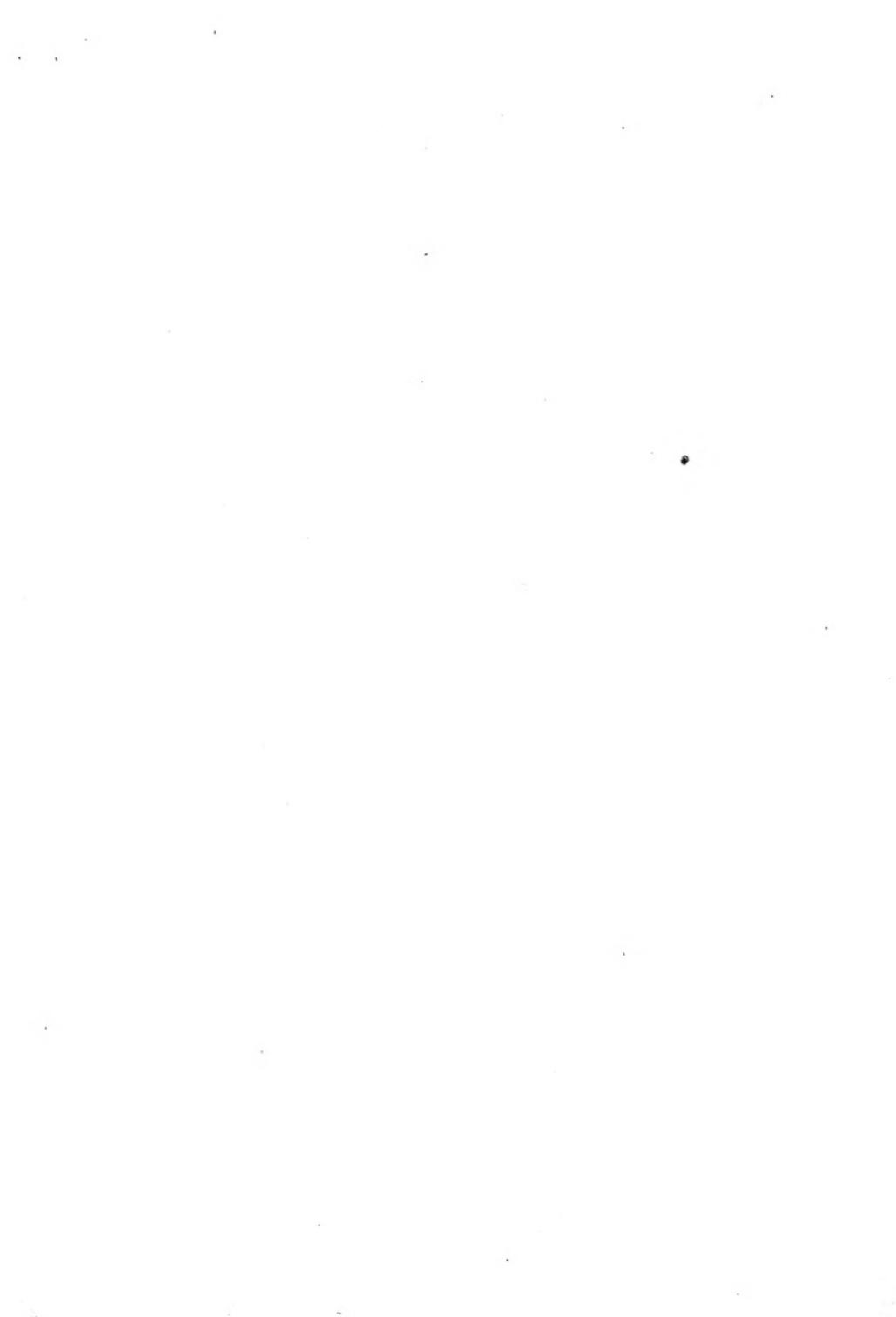
H ow to choose your Breeders	227	<i>train him for the War</i>	235
<i>The discription of a good Horse</i>	ibid.	<i>How to order your horse when you</i>	
<i>How to oblige the Mare to receive</i>	228	<i>train him up to hunting</i>	238
<i>the Horse</i>	228	<i>How to order your horse for Tra-</i>	
<i>How to know when your Mare</i>	229	<i>vel</i>	239.
<i>holds, and how to order her</i>	229	<i>Of vices in horses, and how to re-</i>	
<i>afterwards</i>	229	<i>medythem</i>	240
<i>How to order your Colts</i>	ibid.	<i>Wry head and Neck</i>	ibid
<i>When to back your Horses</i>	230	<i>Unevenness in the lower part of</i>	
<i>How to make your horses tame</i>	ib.	<i>the head</i>	ibid.
<i>How a Horse is to be trained up</i>	231	<i>Ducking down the head</i>	241
<i>for Racing, War, Travel, &c.</i>	231	<i>Over-reaching</i>	ibid.
<i>What their Diet and Usage in</i>	ibid.	<i>Shaking the head, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>General</i>	ibid.	<i>Of Restifness</i>	242
<i>What to be observ'd in journeying</i>	233	<i>Running away, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>The most Commodious Stable de-</i>	ibid.	<i>Rearing an End</i>	243
<i>scrib'd</i>	ibid.	<i>Falling down</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Rasing horse</i>	234	<i>Skittishness and starting</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Tramel and its use</i>	ibid.	<i>How to harden your horse against</i>	
<i>How to order your horse when you</i>		<i>other Horses</i>	244
		<i>The vices of the Mouth and how</i>	
		<i>to cure them</i>	ibid.
		<i>How to know a horse so as not to be</i>	be

The Table.

<i>be cheated</i>	246	<i>From his Hoofs</i>	ibid.
<i>What Colours are the best</i>	246	<i>From his Head, Mane, Neck,</i>	
<i>Of their Paces</i>	247	<i>Brest</i>	ibid.
<i>What horse is best for Travel</i>	ib.	<i>From his Chinc, Ribs, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>What best for hunting</i>	ibid.	<i>From his Thighs</i>	ibid.
<i>How to chouse a good horse</i>	248	<i>From his middle joynt</i>	251
<i>Observations from his Ears, Face,</i>		<i>From his hinder Leg</i>	ibid.
<i>Eyes</i>	ibid.	<i>How to know a Horses Age by his</i>	
<i>From his Chaps, Checks, &c.</i>	249	<i>Teeth</i>	251
<i>From his Nostrils, Mouth, &c.</i>	ib.	<i>How to know it by his Hoof, Skin,</i>	
<i>From his Brest, Knees</i>	ibid.	<i>Tail, Eyes, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>From his Legs</i>	ibid.	<i>And how by his Hair and the</i>	
<i>From his Pasterns</i>	250	<i>Bars of his Mouth</i>	253

F I N I S.





Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Curriculum of Veterinary Medicine at
Texas A&M
2001-2005
North Charleston, SC 29505

